angular separation. In Figure 36-11*a*, the objects are not resolved because of diffraction; that is, their diffraction patterns (mainly their central maxima) overlap so much that the two objects cannot be distinguished from a single point object. In Fig. 36-11*b* the objects are barely resolved, and in Fig. 36-11*c* they are fully resolved.

In Fig. 36-11*b* the angular separation of the two point sources is such that the central maximum of the diffraction pattern of one source is centered on the first minimum of the diffraction pattern of the other, a condition called **Rayleigh's criterion** for resolvability. From Eq. 36-12, two objects that are barely resolvable by this criterion must have an angular separation θ_R of

$$\theta_R = \sin^{-1}\frac{1.22\lambda}{d}.$$

Since the angles are small, we can replace $\sin\theta_R$ with θ_R expressed in radians:

$$\theta_R = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{d} \quad \text{(Rayleigh's criterion).} \qquad (36\text{-}14)$$

Human Vision. Applying Rayleigh's criterion for resolvability to human vision is only an approximation because visual resolvability depends on many factors, such as the relative brightness of the sources and their surroundings, turbulence in the air between the sources and the observer, and the functioning of the observer's visual system. Experimental results show that the least angular separation that can actually be resolved by a person is generally somewhat greater than the value given by Eq. 36-14. However, for calculations here, we shall take Eq. 36-14 as being a precise criterion: If the angular separation θ between the sources is greater than θ_R, we can visually resolve the sources; if it is less, we cannot.

Pointillism. Rayleigh's criterion can explain the arresting illusions of color in the style of painting known as pointillism (Fig. 36-12). In this style, a painting is made not with brush strokes in the usual sense but rather with a myriad of small colored dots. One fascinating aspect of a pointillistic painting is that when you change your distance from it, the colors shift in subtle, almost subconscious ways. This color shifting has to do with whether you can resolve the colored dots. When you stand close enough to the painting, the angular separations θ of adjacent dots are greater than θ_R and thus the dots can be seen individually. Their colors are the true colors of the paints used. However, when

Maximilien Luce, *The Seine at Herblay*, 1890. Musée d'Orsay, Paris, France. Photo by Erich Lessing/Art Resource

Figure 36-12 The pointillistic painting *The Seine at Herblay* by Maximilien Luce consists of thousands of colored dots. With the viewer very close to the canvas, the dots and their true colors are visible. At normal viewing distances, the dots are irresolvable and thus blend.

you stand far enough from the painting, the angular separations θ are less than θ_R and the dots cannot be seen individually. The resulting blend of colors coming into your eye from any group of dots can then cause your brain to "make up" a color for that group—a color that may not actually exist in the group. In this way, a pointillistic painter uses your visual system to create the colors of the art.

When we wish to use a lens instead of our visual system to resolve objects of small angular separation, it is desirable to make the diffraction pattern as small as possible. According to Eq. 36-14, this can be done either by increasing the lens diameter or by using light of a shorter wavelength. For this reason ultraviolet light is often used with microscopes because its wavelength is shorter than a visible light wavelength.

Checkpoint 4

Suppose that you can barely resolve two red dots because of diffraction by the pupil of your eye. If we increase the general illumination around you so that the pupil decreases in diameter, does the resolvability of the dots improve or diminish? Consider only diffraction. (You might experiment to check your answer.)

Sample Problem 36.03 Pointillistic paintings use the diffraction of your eye

Figure 36-13*a* is a representation of the colored dots on a pointillistic painting. Assume that the average center-to-center separation of the dots is $D = 2.0$ mm. Also assume that the diameter of the pupil of your eye is $d = 1.5$ mm and that the least angular separation between dots you can resolve is set only by Rayleigh's criterion. What is the least viewing distance from which you cannot distinguish any dots on the painting?

KEY IDEA

Consider any two adjacent dots that you can distinguish when you are close to the painting. As you move away, you continue to distinguish the dots until their angular separation θ (in your view) has decreased to the angle given by Rayleigh's criterion:

$$\theta_R = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{d}. \qquad (36\text{-}15)$$

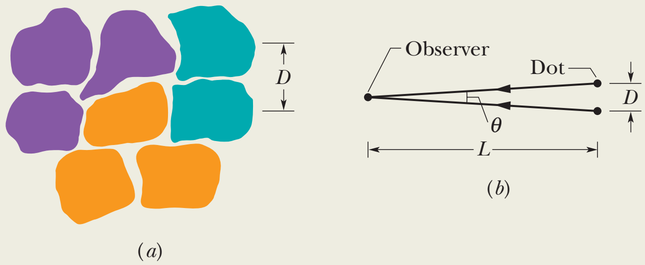


Figure 36-13 (*a*) Representation of some dots on a pointillistic painting, showing an average center-to-center separation D. (*b*) The arrangement of separation D between two dots, their angular separation θ, and the viewing distance L.

Calculations: Figure 36-13*b* shows, from the side, the angular separation θ of the dots, their center-to-center separation D, and your distance L from them. Because D/L is small, angle θ is also small and we can make the approximation

$$\theta = \frac{D}{L}. \qquad (36\text{-}16)$$

Setting θ of Eq. 36-16 equal to θ_R of Eq. 36-15 and solving for L, we then have

$$L = \frac{Dd}{1.22\lambda}. \qquad (36\text{-}17)$$

Equation 36-17 tells us that L is larger for smaller λ. Thus, as you move away from the painting, adjacent red dots (long wavelengths) become indistinguishable before adjacent blue dots do. To find the least distance L at which *no* colored dots are distinguishable, we substitute $\lambda = 400$ nm (blue or violet light) into Eq. 36-17:

$$L = \frac{(2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}{(1.22)(400 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} = 6.1\ \text{m}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

At this or a greater distance, the color you perceive at any given spot on the painting is a blended color that may not actually exist there.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Sample Problem 36.04 Rayleigh's criterion for resolving two distant objects

A circular converging lens, with diameter $d = 32$ mm and focal length $f = 24$ cm, forms images of distant point objects in the focal plane of the lens. The wavelength is $\lambda = 550$ nm.

(a) Considering diffraction by the lens, what angular separation must two distant point objects have to satisfy Rayleigh's criterion?

KEY IDEA

Figure 36-14 shows two distant point objects P_1 and P_2, the lens, and a viewing screen in the focal plane of the lens. It also shows, on the right, plots of light intensity I versus position on the screen for the central maxima of the images formed by the lens. Note that the angular separation θ_o of the objects equals the angular separation θ_i of the images. Thus, if the images are to satisfy Rayleigh's criterion, these separations must be given by Eq. 36-14 (for small angles).

Calculations: From Eq. 36-14, we obtain

$$\theta_o = \theta_i = \theta_R = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{d}$$

$$= \frac{(1.22)(550 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m})}{32 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}} = 2.1 \times 10^{-5}\text{ rad.} \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

Each central maximum in the two intensity curves of Fig. 36-14 is centered on the first minimum of the other curve.

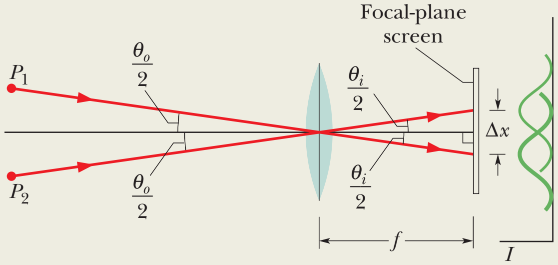


Figure 36-14 Light from two distant point objects P_1 and P_2 passes through a converging lens and forms images on a viewing screen in the focal plane of the lens. Only one representative ray from each object is shown. The images are not points but diffraction patterns, with intensities approximately as plotted at the right.

(b) What is the separation Δx of the centers of the *images* in the focal plane? (That is, what is the separation of the *central* peaks in the two intensity-versus-position curves?)

Calculations: From either triangle between the lens and the screen in Fig. 36-14, we see that $\tan \theta_i/2 = \Delta x/2f$. Rearranging this equation and making the approximation $\tan \theta \approx \theta$, we find

$$\Delta x = f\theta_i, \tag{36-18}$$

where θ_i is in radian measure. We then find

$$\Delta x = (0.24\text{ m})(2.1 \times 10^{-5}\text{ rad}) = 5.0\ \mu\text{m}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

36-4 DIFFRACTION BY A DOUBLE SLIT

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

36.18 In a sketch of a double-slit experiment, explain how the diffraction through each slit modifies the two-slit interference pattern, and identify the diffraction envelope, the central peak, and the side peaks of that envelope.

36.19 For a given point in a double-slit diffraction pattern, calculate the intensity I in terms of the intensity I_m at the center of the pattern.

36.20 In the intensity equation for a double-slit diffraction pattern, identify what part corresponds to the interference between the two slits and what part corresponds to the diffraction by each slit.

36.21 For double-slit diffraction, apply the relationship between the ratio d/a and the locations of the diffraction minima in the single-slit diffraction pattern, and then count the number of two-slit maxima that are contained in the central peak and in the side peaks of the diffraction envelope.

Key Ideas

- Waves passing through two slits produce a combination of double-slit interference and diffraction by each slit.
- For identical slits with width a and center-to-center separation d, the intensity in the pattern varies with the angle θ from the central axis as

$$I(\theta) = I_m(\cos^2 \beta)\left(\frac{\sin \alpha}{\alpha}\right)^2 \quad \text{(double slit)},$$

where I_m is the intensity at the center of the pattern,

$$\beta = \left(\frac{\pi d}{\lambda}\right)\sin\theta,$$

and

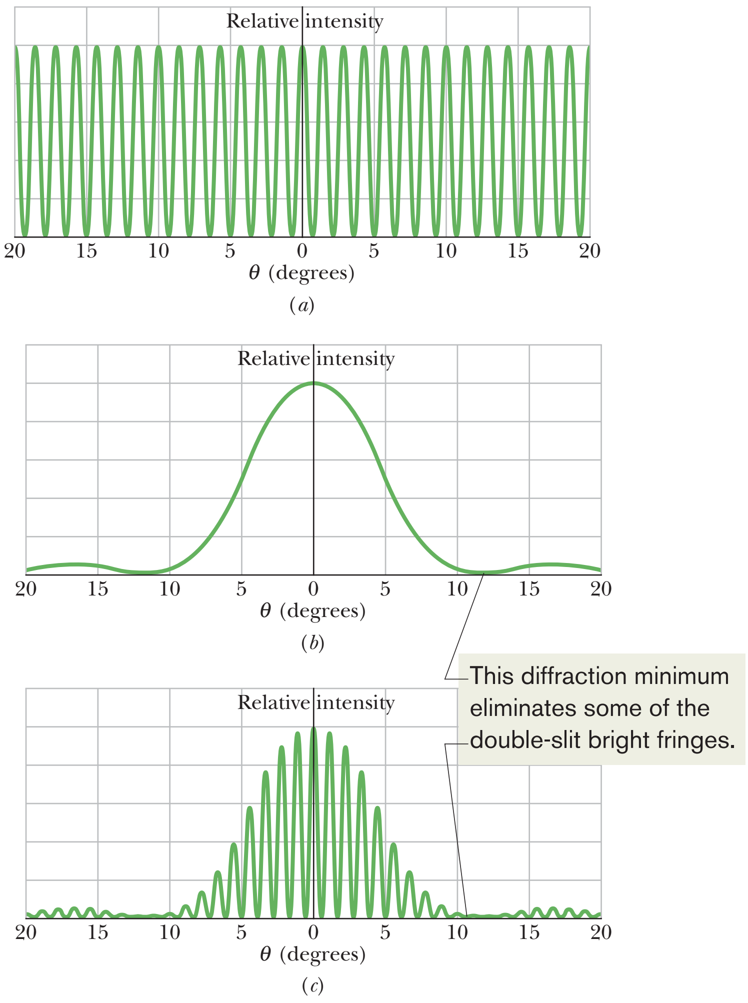
$$\alpha = \left(\frac{\pi a}{\lambda}\right)\sin\theta.$$

Diffraction by a Double Slit

In the double-slit experiments of Chapter 35, we implicitly assumed that the slits were much narrower than the wavelength of the light illuminating them; that is, $a \ll \lambda$. For such narrow slits, the central maximum of the diffraction pattern of either slit covers the entire viewing screen. Moreover, the interference of light from the two slits produces bright fringes with approximately the same intensity (Fig. 35-12).

In practice with visible light, however, the condition $a \ll \lambda$ is often not met. For relatively wide slits, the interference of light from two slits produces bright fringes that do not all have the same intensity. That is, the intensities of the fringes produced by double-slit interference (as discussed in Chapter 35) are modified by diffraction of the light passing through each slit (as discussed in this chapter).

Plots. As an example, the intensity plot of Fig. 36-15*a* suggests the double-slit interference pattern that would occur if the slits were infinitely narrow (and thus $a \ll \lambda$); all the bright interference fringes would have the same intensity. The intensity plot of Fig. 36-15*b* is that for diffraction by a single actual slit; the diffraction pattern has a broad central maximum and weaker secondary maxima at ±17°. The plot of Fig. 36-15*c* suggests the interference pattern for two actual slits. That plot was constructed by using the curve of Fig. 36-15*b* as an *envelope* on the intensity plot in Fig. 36-15*a*. The positions of the fringes are not changed; only the intensities are affected.



This diffraction minimum eliminates some of the double-slit bright fringes.

Figure 36-15 (*a*) The intensity plot to be expected in a double-slit interference experiment with vanishingly narrow slits. (*b*) The intensity plot for diffraction by a typical slit of width *a* (not vanishingly narrow). (*c*) The intensity plot to be expected for two slits of width *a*. The curve of (*b*) acts as an envelope, limiting the intensity of the double-slit fringes in (*a*). Note that the first minima of the diffraction pattern of (*b*) eliminate the double-slit fringes that would occur near 12° in (*c*).

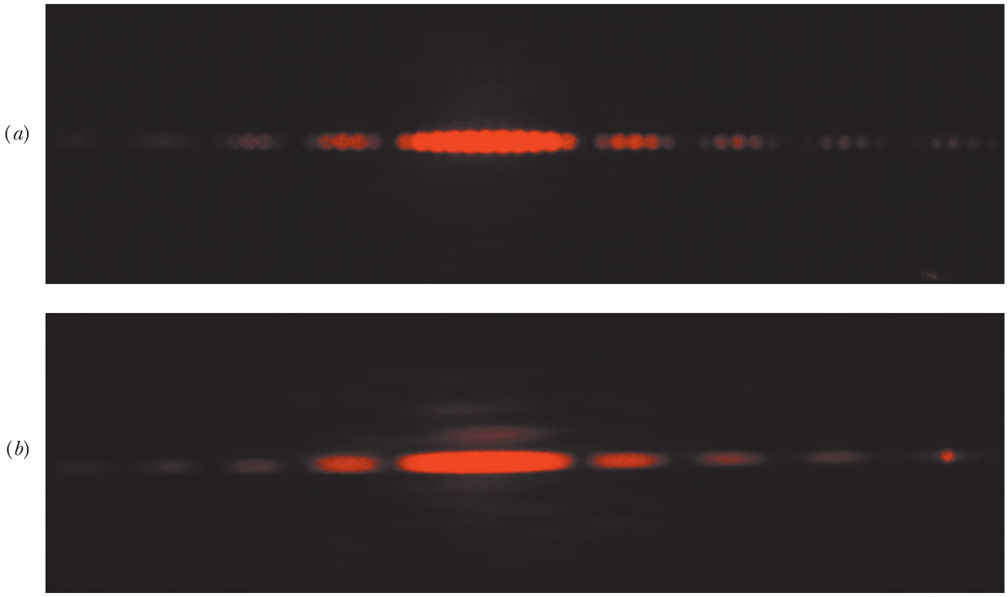


Figure 36-16 (*a*) Interference fringes for an actual double-slit system; compare with Fig. 36-15*c*. (*b*) The diffraction pattern of a single slit; compare with Fig. 36-15*b*.

Courtesy Jearl Walker

Photos. Figure 36-16*a* shows an actual pattern in which both double-slit interference and diffraction are evident. If one slit is covered, the single-slit diffraction pattern of Fig. 36-16*b* results. Note the correspondence between Figs. 36-16*a* and 36-15*c*, and between Figs. 36-16*b* and 36-15*b*. In comparing these figures, bear in mind that Fig. 36-16 has been deliberately overexposed to bring out the faint secondary maxima and that several secondary maxima (rather than one) are shown.

Intensity. With diffraction effects taken into account, the intensity of a double-slit interference pattern is given by

$$I(\theta) = I_m(\cos^2\beta)\left(\frac{\sin\alpha}{\alpha}\right)^2 \quad \text{(double slit)}, \tag{36-19}$$

in which

$$\beta = \frac{\pi d}{\lambda}\sin\theta \tag{36-20}$$

and

$$\alpha = \frac{\pi a}{\lambda}\sin\theta. \tag{36-21}$$

Here d is the distance between the centers of the slits and a is the slit width. Note carefully that the right side of Eq. 36-19 is the product of I_m and two factors. (1) The *interference factor* $\cos^2\beta$ is due to the interference between two slits with slit separation d (as given by Eqs. 35-22 and 35-23). (2) The *diffraction factor* $[(\sin\alpha)/\alpha]^2$ is due to diffraction by a single slit of width a (as given by Eqs. 36-5 and 36-6).

Let us check these factors. If we let $a \rightarrow 0$ in Eq. 36-21, for example, then $\alpha \rightarrow 0$ and $(\sin\alpha)/\alpha \rightarrow 1$. Equation 36-19 then reduces, as it must, to an equation describing the interference pattern for a pair of vanishingly narrow slits with slit separation d. Similarly, putting $d = 0$ in Eq. 36-20 is equivalent physically to causing the two slits to merge into a single slit of width a. Then Eq. 36-20 yields $\beta = 0$ and $\cos^2\beta = 1$. In this case Eq. 36-19 reduces, as it must, to an equation describing the diffraction pattern for a single slit of width a.

Language. The double-slit pattern described by Eq. 36-19 and displayed in Fig. 36-16*a* combines interference and diffraction in an intimate way. Both are superposition effects, in that they result from the combining of waves with different phases at a given point. If the combining waves originate from a small number of elementary coherent sources—as in a double-slit experiment with $a \ll \lambda$—we call the process *interference.* If the combining waves originate in a single wavefront—as in a single-slit experiment—we call the process *diffraction.* This distinction between interference and diffraction (which is somewhat arbitrary and not always adhered to) is a convenient one, but we should not forget that both are superposition effects and usually both are present simultaneously (as in Fig. 36-16*a*).

Sample Problem 36.05 Double-slit experiment with diffraction of each slit included

In a double-slit experiment, the wavelength λ of the light source is 405 nm, the slit separation d is 19.44 μm, and the slit width a is 4.050 μm. Consider the interference of the light from the two slits and also the diffraction of the light through each slit.

(a) How many bright interference fringes are within the central peak of the diffraction envelope?

KEY IDEAS

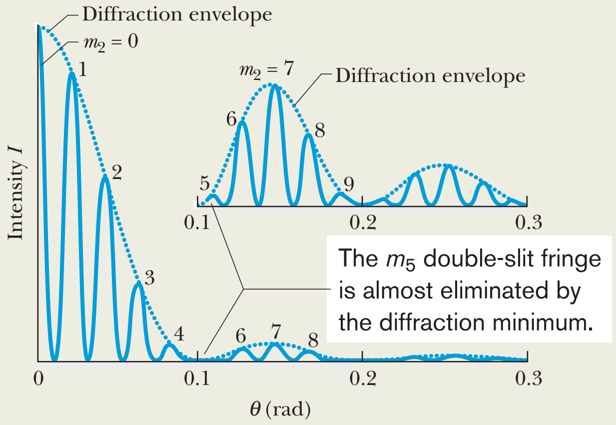
We first analyze the two basic mechanisms responsible for the optical pattern produced in the experiment:

1. *Single-slit diffraction:* The limits of the central peak are the first minima in the diffraction pattern due to either slit individually. (See Fig. 36-15.) The angular locations of those minima are given by Eq. 36-3 ($a \sin \theta = m\lambda$). Here let us rewrite this equation as $a \sin \theta = m_1\lambda$, with the subscript 1 referring to the one-slit diffraction. For the first minima in the diffraction pattern, we substitute $m_1 = 1$, obtaining
$$a \sin \theta = \lambda. \qquad (36\text{-}22)$$
2. *Double-slit interference:* The angular locations of the bright fringes of the double-slit interference pattern are given by Eq. 35-14, which we can write as
$$d \sin \theta = m_2\lambda, \qquad \text{for } m_2 = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \qquad (36\text{-}23)$$
Here the subscript 2 refers to the double-slit interference.

Calculations: We can locate the first diffraction minimum within the double-slit fringe pattern by dividing Eq. 36-23 by Eq. 36-22 and solving for m_2. By doing so and then substituting the given data, we obtain

$$m_2 = \frac{d}{a} = \frac{19.44\ \mu\text{m}}{4.050\ \mu\text{m}} = 4.8.$$

This tells us that the bright interference fringe for $m_2 = 4$ fits into the central peak of the one-slit diffraction pattern, but the fringe for $m_2 = 5$ does not fit. Within the central diffraction peak we have the central bright fringe ($m_2 = 0$), and four bright fringes (up to $m_2 = 4$) on each side of it. Thus, a total of nine bright fringes of the double-slit interference pattern are within the central peak of the diffraction envelope. The bright fringes to one side of the central bright fringe are shown in Fig. 36-17.



The m_5 double-slit fringe is almost eliminated by the diffraction minimum.

Figure 36-17 One side of the intensity plot for a two-slit interference experiment. The inset shows (vertically expanded) the plot within the first and second side peaks of the diffraction envelope.

(b) How many bright fringes are within either of the first side peaks of the diffraction envelope?

KEY IDEA

The outer limits of the first side diffraction peaks are the second diffraction minima, each of which is at the angle θ given by $a \sin \theta = m_1\lambda$ with $m_1 = 2$:

$$a \sin \theta = 2\lambda. \qquad (36\text{-}24)$$

Calculation: Dividing Eq. 36-23 by Eq. 36-24, we find

$$m_2 = \frac{2d}{a} = \frac{(2)(19.44\ \mu\text{m})}{4.050\ \mu\text{m}} = 9.6.$$

This tells us that the second diffraction minimum occurs just before the bright interference fringe for $m_2 = 10$ in Eq. 36-23. Within either first side diffraction peak we have the fringes from $m_2 = 5$ to $m_2 = 9$, for a total of five bright fringes of the double-slit interference pattern (shown in the inset of Fig. 36-17). However, if the $m_2 = 5$ bright fringe, which is almost eliminated by the first diffraction minimum, is considered too dim to count, then only four bright fringes are in the first side diffraction peak.

36-5 DIFFRACTION GRATINGS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

36.22 Describe a diffraction grating and sketch the interference pattern it produces in monochromatic light.

36.23 Distinguish the interference patterns of a diffraction grating and a double-slit arrangement.

36.24 Identify the terms line and order number.

36.25 For a diffraction grating, relate order number m to the path length difference of rays that give a bright fringe.

36.26 For a diffraction grating, relate the slit separation d, the angle θ to a bright fringe in the pattern, the order number m of that fringe, and the wavelength λ of the light.

36.27 Identify the reason why there is a maximum order number for a given diffraction grating.

36.28 Explain the derivation of the equation for a line's half-width in a diffraction-grating pattern.

36.29 Calculate the half-width of a line at a given angle in a diffraction-grating pattern.

36.30 Explain the advantage of increasing the number of slits in a diffraction grating.

36.31 Explain how a grating spectroscope works.

Key Idea

- A diffraction grating is a series of "slits" used to separate an incident wave into its component wavelengths by separating and displaying their diffraction maxima. Diffraction by N (multiple) slits results in maxima (lines) at angles θ such that

$$d \sin\theta = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \text{(maxima)}.$$

- A line's half-width is the angle from its center to the point where it disappears into the darkness and is given by

$$\Delta\theta_{\text{hw}} = \frac{\lambda}{Nd\cos\theta} \quad \text{(half-width)}.$$

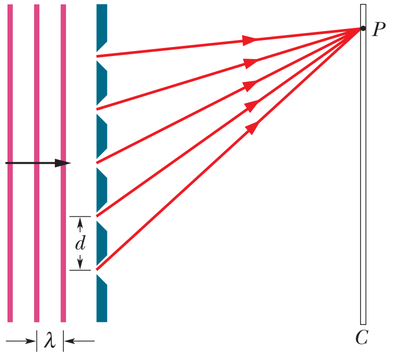


Figure 36-18 An idealized diffraction grating, consisting of only five rulings, that produces an interference pattern on a distant viewing screen C.

Diffraction Gratings

One of the most useful tools in the study of light and of objects that emit and absorb light is the **diffraction grating.** This device is somewhat like the double-slit arrangement of Fig. 35-10 but has a much greater number N of slits, often called *rulings,* perhaps as many as several thousand per millimeter. An idealized grating consisting of only five slits is represented in Fig. 36-18. When monochromatic light is sent through the slits, it forms narrow interference fringes that can be analyzed to determine the wavelength of the light. (Diffraction gratings can also be opaque surfaces with narrow parallel grooves arranged like the slits in Fig. 36-18. Light then scatters back from the grooves to form interference fringes rather than being transmitted through open slits.)

Pattern. With monochromatic light incident on a diffraction grating, if we gradually increase the number of slits from two to a large number N, the intensity plot changes from the typical double-slit plot of Fig. 36-15c to a much more complicated one and then eventually to a simple graph like that shown in Fig. 36-19a. The pattern you would see on a viewing screen using monochromatic red light from,

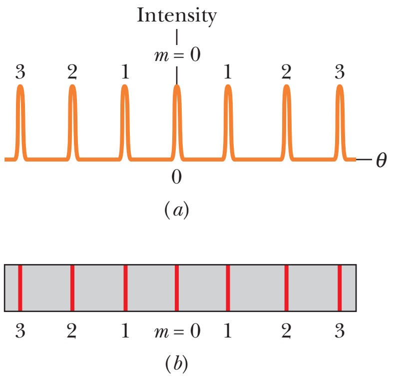


Figure 36-19 (a) The intensity plot produced by a diffraction grating with a great many rulings consists of narrow peaks, here labeled with their order numbers m. (b) The corresponding bright fringes seen on the screen are called lines and are here also labeled with order numbers m.

say, a helium–neon laser is shown in Fig. 36-19*b*. The maxima are now very narrow (and so are called *lines*); they are separated by relatively wide dark regions.

Equation. We use a familiar procedure to find the locations of the bright lines on the viewing screen. We first assume that the screen is far enough from the grating so that the rays reaching a particular point P on the screen are approximately parallel when they leave the grating (Fig. 36-20). Then we apply to each pair of adjacent rulings the same reasoning we used for double-slit interference. The separation d between rulings is called the *grating spacing.* (If N rulings occupy a total width w, then $d = w/N$.) The path length difference between adjacent rays is again $d \sin\theta$ (Fig. 36-20), where θ is the angle from the central axis of the grating (and of the diffraction pattern) to point P. A line will be located at P if the path length difference between adjacent rays is an integer number of wavelengths:

$$d \sin\theta = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \text{(maxima—lines)}, \qquad (36\text{-}25)$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light. Each integer m represents a different line; hence these integers can be used to label the lines, as in Fig. 36-19. The integers are then called the *order numbers,* and the lines are called the zeroth-order line (the central line, with $m = 0$), the first-order line ($m = 1$), the second-order line ($m = 2$), and so on.

Determining Wavelength. If we rewrite Eq. 36-25 as $\theta = \sin^{-1}(m\lambda/d)$, we see that, for a given diffraction grating, the angle from the central axis to any line (say, the third-order line) depends on the wavelength of the light being used. Thus, when light of an unknown wavelength is sent through a diffraction grating, measurements of the angles to the higher-order lines can be used in Eq. 36-25 to determine the wavelength. Even light of several unknown wavelengths can be distinguished and identified in this way. We cannot do that with the double-slit arrangement of Module 35-2, even though the same equation and wavelength dependence apply there. In double-slit interference, the bright fringes due to different wavelengths overlap too much to be distinguished.

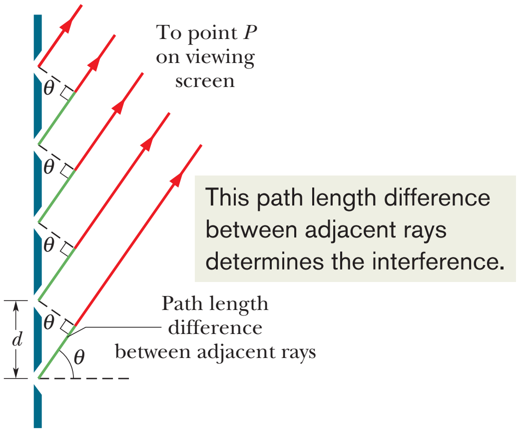


Figure 36-20 The rays from the rulings in a diffraction grating to a distant point P are approximately parallel. The path length difference between each two adjacent rays is $d \sin\theta$, where θ is measured as shown. (The rulings extend into and out of the page.)

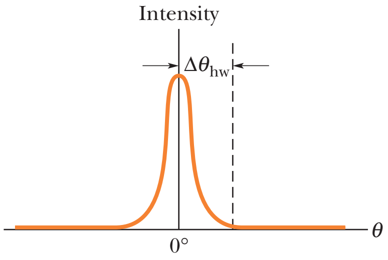


Figure 36-21 The half-width $\Delta\theta_{hw}$ of the central line is measured from the center of that line to the adjacent minimum on a plot of I versus θ like Fig. 36-19*a*.

Width of the Lines

A grating's ability to resolve (separate) lines of different wavelengths depends on the width of the lines. We shall here derive an expression for the *half-width* of the central line (the line for which $m = 0$) and then state an expression for the half-widths of the higher-order lines. We define the **half-width** of the central line as being the angle $\Delta\theta_{hw}$ from the center of the line at $\theta = 0$ outward to where the line effectively ends and darkness effectively begins with the first minimum (Fig. 36-21). At such a minimum, the N rays from the N slits of the grating cancel one another. (The actual width of the central line is, of course, $2(\Delta\theta_{hw})$, but line widths are usually compared via half-widths.)

In Module 36-1 we were also concerned with the cancellation of a great many rays, there due to diffraction through a single slit. We obtained Eq. 36-3, which, because of the similarity of the two situations, we can use to find the first minimum here. It tells us that the first minimum occurs where the path length difference between the top and bottom rays equals λ. For single-slit diffraction, this difference is $a \sin\theta$. For a grating of N rulings, each separated from the next by distance d, the distance between the top and bottom rulings is Nd (Fig. 36-22), and so the path length difference between the top and bottom rays here is $Nd \sin\Delta\theta_{hw}$. Thus, the first minimum occurs where

$$Nd \sin\Delta\theta_{hw} = \lambda. \qquad (36\text{-}26)$$

Because $\Delta\theta_{hw}$ is small, $\sin\Delta\theta_{hw} = \Delta\theta_{hw}$ (in radian measure). Substituting this in Eq. 36-26 gives the half-width of the central line as

$$\Delta\theta_{hw} = \frac{\lambda}{Nd} \quad \text{(half-width of central line)}. \qquad (36\text{-}27)$$

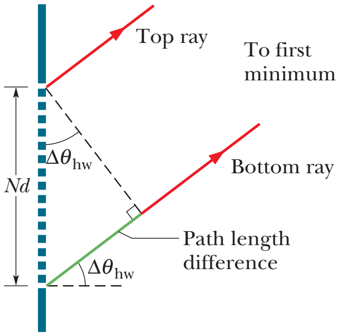


Figure 36-22 The top and bottom rulings of a diffraction grating of N rulings are separated by Nd. The top and bottom rays passing through these rulings have a path length difference of $Nd \sin\Delta\theta_{hw}$, where $\Delta\theta_{hw}$ is the angle to the first minimum. (The angle is here greatly exaggerated for clarity.)

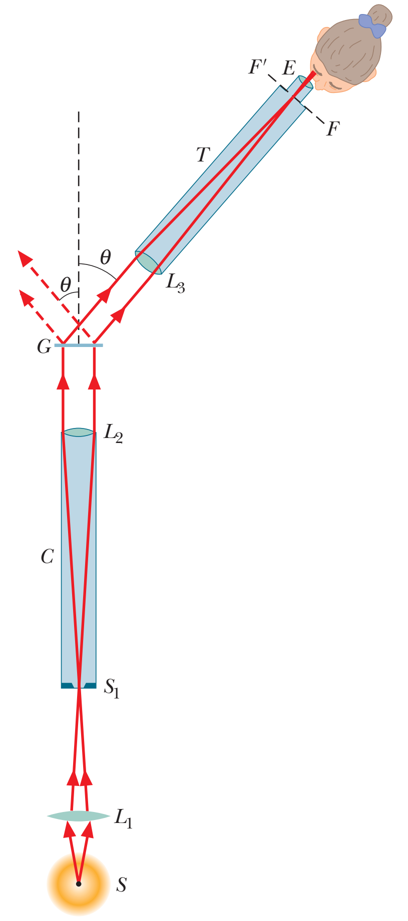


Figure 36-23 A simple type of grating spectroscope used to analyze the wavelengths of light emitted by source S.

We state without proof that the half-width of any other line depends on its location relative to the central axis and is

$$\Delta\theta_{\text{hw}} = \frac{\lambda}{Nd\cos\theta} \quad \text{(half-width of line at } \theta\text{).} \tag{36-28}$$

Note that for light of a given wavelength λ and a given ruling separation d, the widths of the lines decrease with an increase in the number N of rulings. Thus, of two diffraction gratings, the grating with the larger value of N is better able to distinguish between wavelengths because its diffraction lines are narrower and so produce less overlap.

Grating Spectroscope

Diffraction gratings are widely used to determine the wavelengths that are emitted by sources of light ranging from lamps to stars. Figure 36-23 shows a simple *grating spectroscope* in which a grating is used for this purpose. Light from source S is focused by lens L_1 on a vertical slit S_1 placed in the focal plane of lens L_2. The light emerging from tube C (called a *collimator*) is a plane wave and is incident perpendicularly on grating G, where it is diffracted into a diffraction pattern, with the $m = 0$ order diffracted at angle $\theta = 0$ along the central axis of the grating.

We can view the diffraction pattern that would appear on a viewing screen at any angle θ simply by orienting telescope T in Fig. 36-23 to that angle. Lens L_3 of the telescope then focuses the light diffracted at angle θ (and at slightly smaller and larger angles) onto a focal plane FF' within the telescope. When we look through eyepiece E, we see a magnified view of this focused image.

By changing the angle θ of the telescope, we can examine the entire diffraction pattern. For any order number other than $m = 0$, the original light is spread out according to wavelength (or color) so that we can determine, with Eq. 36-25, just what wavelengths are being emitted by the source. If the source emits discrete wavelengths, what we see as we rotate the telescope horizontally through the angles corresponding to an order m is a vertical line of color for each wavelength, with the shorter-wavelength line at a smaller angle θ than the longer-wavelength line.

Hydrogen. For example, the light emitted by a hydrogen lamp, which contains hydrogen gas, has four discrete wavelengths in the visible range. If our eyes intercept this light directly, it appears to be white. If, instead, we view it through a grating spectroscope, we can distinguish, in several orders, the lines of the four colors corresponding to these visible wavelengths. (Such lines are called *emission lines.*) Four orders are represented in Fig. 36-24. In the central order ($m = 0$), the lines corresponding to all four wavelengths are superimposed, giving a single white line at $\theta = 0$. The colors are separated in the higher orders.

The third order is not shown in Fig. 36-24 for the sake of clarity; it actually overlaps the second and fourth orders. The fourth-order red line is missing because it is not formed by the grating used here. That is, when we attempt to

This is the center of the pattern.

The higher orders are spread out more in angle.

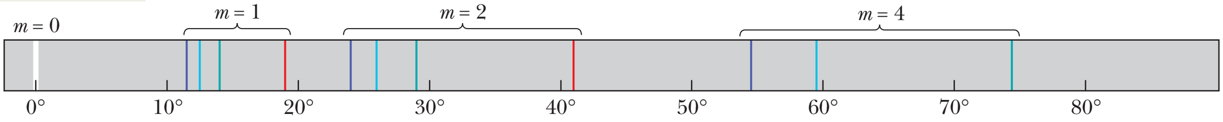


Figure 36-24 The zeroth, first, second, and fourth orders of the visible emission lines from hydrogen. Note that the lines are farther apart at greater angles. (They are also dimmer and wider, although that is not shown here.)

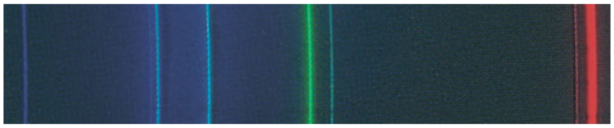


Figure 36-25 The visible emission lines of cadmium, as seen through a grating spectroscope.

Department of Physics, Imperial College/Science Photo Library/ Photo Researchers, Inc.

solve Eq. 36-25 for the angle θ for the red wavelength when $m = 4$, we find that $\sin\theta$ is greater than unity, which is not possible. The fourth order is then said to be *incomplete* for this grating; it might not be incomplete for a grating with greater spacing d, which will spread the lines less than in Fig. 36-24. Figure 36-25 is a photograph of the visible emission lines produced by cadmium.

Checkpoint 5

The figure shows lines of different orders produced by a diffraction grating in monochromatic red light. (a) Is the center of the pattern to the left or right? (b) In monochromatic green light, are the half-widths of the lines produced in the same orders greater than, less than, or the same as the half-widths of the lines shown?

36-6 GRATINGS: DISPERSION AND RESOLVING POWER

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

36.32 Identify dispersion as the spreading apart of the diffraction lines associated with different wavelengths.

36.33 Apply the relationships between dispersion D, wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda$, angular separation $\Delta\theta$, slit separation d, order number m, and the angle θ corresponding to the order number.

36.34 Identify the effect on the dispersion of a diffraction grating if the slit separation is varied.

36.35 Identify that for us to resolve lines, a diffraction grating must make them distinguishable.

36.36 Apply the relationship between resolving power R, wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda$, average wavelength λ_{avg}, number of rulings N, and order number m.

36.37 Identify the effect on the resolving power R if the number of slits N is increased.

Key Ideas

- The dispersion D of a diffraction grating is a measure of the angular separation $\Delta\theta$ of the lines it produces for two wavelengths differing by $\Delta\lambda$. For order number m, at angle θ, the dispersion is given by

$$D = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta\lambda} = \frac{m}{d\cos\theta} \quad \text{(dispersion).}$$

- The resolving power R of a diffraction grating is a measure of its ability to make the emission lines of two close wavelengths distinguishable. For two wavelengths differing by $\Delta\lambda$ and with an average value of λ_{avg}, the resolving power is given by

$$R = \frac{\lambda_{avg}}{\Delta\lambda} = Nm \quad \text{(resolving power).}$$

Gratings: Dispersion and Resolving Power

Dispersion

To be useful in distinguishing wavelengths that are close to each other (as in a grating spectroscope), a grating must spread apart the diffraction lines associated with the various wavelengths. This spreading, called **dispersion,** is defined as

$$D = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta\lambda} \quad \text{(dispersion defined).} \tag{36-29}$$

Kristen Brochmann/Fundamental Photographs

The fine rulings, each 0.5 μm wide, on a compact disc function as a diffraction grating. When a small source of white light illuminates a disc, the diffracted light forms colored "lanes" that are the composite of the diffraction patterns from the rulings.

Here $\Delta\theta$ is the angular separation of two lines whose wavelengths differ by $\Delta\lambda$. The greater D is, the greater is the distance between two emission lines whose wavelengths differ by $\Delta\lambda$. We show below that the dispersion of a grating at angle θ is given by

$$D = \frac{m}{d\cos\theta} \quad \text{(dispersion of a grating).} \tag{36-30}$$

Thus, to achieve higher dispersion we must use a grating of smaller grating spacing d and work in a higher-order m. Note that the dispersion does not depend on the number of rulings N in the grating. The SI unit for D is the degree per meter or the radian per meter.

Resolving Power

To *resolve* lines whose wavelengths are close together (that is, to make the lines distinguishable), the line should also be as narrow as possible. Expressed otherwise, the grating should have a high **resolving power** R, defined as

$$R = \frac{\lambda_{\text{avg}}}{\Delta\lambda} \quad \text{(resolving power defined).} \tag{36-31}$$

Here λ_{avg} is the mean wavelength of two emission lines that can barely be recognized as separate, and $\Delta\lambda$ is the wavelength difference between them. The greater R is, the closer two emission lines can be and still be resolved. We shall show below that the resolving power of a grating is given by the simple expression

$$R = Nm \quad \text{(resolving power of a grating).} \tag{36-32}$$

To achieve high resolving power, we must use many rulings (large N).

Proof of Eq. 36-30

Let us start with Eq. 36-25, the expression for the locations of the lines in the diffraction pattern of a grating:

$$d\sin\theta = m\lambda.$$

Let us regard θ and λ as variables and take differentials of this equation. We find

$$d(\cos\theta)\,d\theta = m\,d\lambda.$$

For small enough angles, we can write these differentials as small differences, obtaining

$$d(\cos\theta)\,\Delta\theta = m\,\Delta\lambda \tag{36-33}$$

or

$$\frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta\lambda} = \frac{m}{d\cos\theta}.$$

The ratio on the left is simply D (see Eq. 36-29), and so we have indeed derived Eq. 36-30.

Proof of Eq. 36-32

We start with Eq. 36-33, which was derived from Eq. 36-25, the expression for the locations of the lines in the diffraction pattern formed by a grating. Here $\Delta\lambda$ is the small wavelength difference between two waves that are diffracted by the grating, and $\Delta\theta$ is the angular separation between them in the diffraction pattern. If $\Delta\theta$ is to be the smallest angle that will permit the two lines to be resolved, it must (by Rayleigh's criterion) be equal to the half-width of each line, which is given by Eq. 36-28:

$$\Delta\theta_{\text{hw}} = \frac{\lambda}{Nd\cos\theta}.$$

Table 36-1 Three Gratings[a]

Grating	N	d (nm)	θ	D (°/μm)	R
A	10 000	2540	13.4°	23.2	10 000
B	20 000	2540	13.4°	23.2	20 000
C	10 000	1360	25.5°	46.3	10 000

[a] Data are for $\lambda = 589$ nm and $m = 1$.

If we substitute $\Delta\theta_{hw}$ as given here for $\Delta\theta$ in Eq. 36-33, we find that

$$\frac{\lambda}{N} = m\,\Delta\lambda,$$

from which it readily follows that

$$R = \frac{\lambda}{\Delta\lambda} = Nm.$$

This is Eq. 36-32, which we set out to derive.

Dispersion and Resolving Power Compared

The resolving power of a grating must not be confused with its dispersion. Table 36-1 shows the characteristics of three gratings, all illuminated with light of wavelength $\lambda = 589$ nm, whose diffracted light is viewed in the first order ($m = 1$ in Eq. 36-25). You should verify that the values of D and R as given in the table can be calculated with Eqs. 36-30 and 36-32, respectively. (In the calculations for D, you will need to convert radians per meter to degrees per micrometer.)

For the conditions noted in Table 36-1, gratings A and B have the same *dispersion* D and A and C have the same *resolving power* R.

Figure 36-26 shows the intensity patterns (also called *line shapes*) that would be produced by these gratings for two lines of wavelengths λ_1 and λ_2, in the vicinity of $\lambda = 589$ nm. Grating B, with the higher resolving power, produces narrower lines and thus is capable of distinguishing lines that are much closer together in wavelength than those in the figure. Grating C, with the higher dispersion, produces the greater angular separation between the lines.

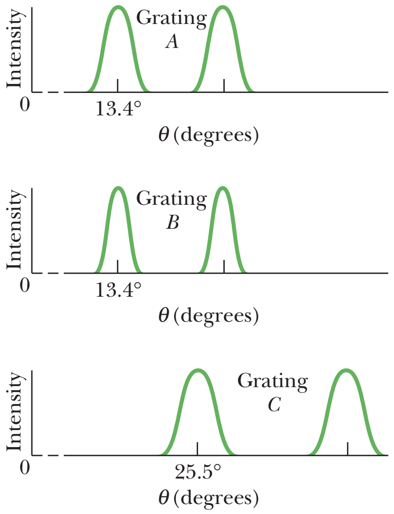


Figure 36-26 The intensity patterns for light of two wavelengths sent through the gratings of Table 36-1. Grating B has the highest resolving power, and grating C the highest dispersion.

Sample Problem 36.06 Dispersion and resolving power of a diffraction grating

A diffraction grating has 1.26×10^4 rulings uniformly spaced over width $w = 25.4$ mm. It is illuminated at normal incidence by yellow light from a sodium vapor lamp. This light contains two closely spaced emission lines (known as the sodium doublet) of wavelengths 589.00 nm and 589.59 nm.

(a) At what angle does the first-order maximum occur (on either side of the center of the diffraction pattern) for the wavelength of 589.00 nm?

KEY IDEA

The maxima produced by the diffraction grating can be determined with Eq. 36-25 ($d \sin\theta = m\lambda$).

Calculations: The grating spacing d is

$$d = \frac{w}{N} = \frac{25.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}}{1.26 \times 10^4}$$
$$= 2.016 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m} = 2016\ \text{nm}.$$

The first-order maximum corresponds to $m = 1$. Substituting these values for d and m into Eq. 36-25 leads to

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{m\lambda}{d} = \sin^{-1}\frac{(1)(589.00\ \text{nm})}{2016\ \text{nm}}$$
$$= 16.99° \approx 17.0°. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) Using the dispersion of the grating, calculate the angular separation between the two lines in the first order.

KEY IDEAS

(1) The angular separation $\Delta\theta$ between the two lines in the first order depends on their wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda$ and the dispersion D of the grating, according to Eq. 36-29 ($D = \Delta\theta/\Delta\lambda$). (2) The dispersion D depends on the angle θ at which it is to be evaluated.

Calculations: We can assume that, in the first order, the two sodium lines occur close enough to each other for us to evaluate D at the angle $\theta = 16.99°$ we found in part (a) for one of those lines. Then Eq. 36-30 gives the dispersion as

$$D = \frac{m}{d\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{(2016\text{ nm})(\cos 16.99°)}$$
$$= 5.187 \times 10^{-4}\text{ rad/nm}.$$

From Eq. 36-29 and with $\Delta\lambda$ in nanometers, we then have

$$\Delta\theta = D\,\Delta\lambda = (5.187 \times 10^{-4}\text{ rad/nm})(589.59 - 589.00)$$
$$= 3.06 \times 10^{-4}\text{ rad} = 0.0175°. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

You can show that this result depends on the grating spacing d but not on the number of rulings there are in the grating.

(c) What is the least number of rulings a grating can have and still be able to resolve the sodium doublet in the first order?

KEY IDEAS

(1) The resolving power of a grating in any order m is physically set by the number of rulings N in the grating according to Eq. 36-32 ($R = Nm$). (2) The smallest wavelength difference $\Delta\lambda$ that can be resolved depends on the average wavelength involved and on the resolving power R of the grating, according to Eq. 36-31 ($R = \lambda_{avg}/\Delta\lambda$).

Calculation: For the sodium doublet to be barely resolved, $\Delta\lambda$ must be their wavelength separation of 0.59 nm, and λ_{avg} must be their average wavelength of 589.30 nm. Thus, we find that the smallest number of rulings for a grating to resolve the sodium doublet is

$$N = \frac{R}{m} = \frac{\lambda_{avg}}{m\,\Delta\lambda}$$
$$= \frac{589.30\text{ nm}}{(1)(0.59\text{ nm})} = 999\text{ rulings}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

36-7 X-RAY DIFFRACTION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

36.38 Identify approximately where x rays are located in the electromagnetic spectrum.
36.39 Define a unit cell.
36.40 Define reflecting planes (or crystal planes) and interplanar spacing.
36.41 Sketch two rays that scatter from adjacent planes, showing the angle that is used in calculations.
36.42 For the intensity maxima in x-ray scattering by a crystal, apply the relationship between the interplanar spacing d, the angle θ of scattering, the order number m, and the wavelength λ of the x rays.
36.43 Given a drawing of a unit cell, demonstrate how an interplanar spacing can be determined.

Key Ideas

- If x rays are directed toward a crystal structure, they undergo Bragg scattering, which is easiest to visualize if the crystal atoms are considered to be in parallel planes.
- For x rays of wavelength λ scattering from crystal planes with separation d, the angles θ at which the scattered intensity is maximum are given by

$$2d\sin\theta = m\lambda, \qquad \text{for } m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \text{(Bragg's law).}$$

X-Ray Diffraction

X rays are electromagnetic radiation whose wavelengths are of the order of 1 Å ($= 10^{-10}$ m). Compare this with a wavelength of 550 nm ($= 5.5 \times 10^{-7}$ m) at the center of the visible spectrum. Figure 36-27 shows that x rays are produced when electrons escaping from a heated filament F are accelerated by a potential difference V and strike a metal target T.

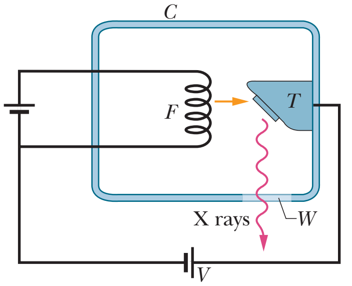


Figure 36-27 X rays are generated when electrons leaving heated filament F are accelerated through a potential difference V and strike a metal target T. The "window" W in the evacuated chamber C is transparent to x rays.

A standard optical diffraction grating cannot be used to discriminate between different wavelengths in the x-ray wavelength range. For $\lambda = 1$ Å ($= 0.1$ nm) and $d = 3000$ nm, for example, Eq. 36-25 shows that the first-order maximum occurs at

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\frac{m\lambda}{d} = \sin^{-1}\frac{(1)(0.1\text{ nm})}{3000\text{ nm}} = 0.0019°.$$

This is too close to the central maximum to be practical. A grating with $d \approx \lambda$ is desirable, but, because x-ray wavelengths are about equal to atomic diameters, such gratings cannot be constructed mechanically.

In 1912, it occurred to German physicist Max von Laue that a crystalline solid, which consists of a regular array of atoms, might form a natural three-dimensional "diffraction grating" for x rays. The idea is that, in a crystal such as sodium chloride (NaCl), a basic unit of atoms (called the *unit cell*) repeats itself throughout the array. Figure 36-28*a* represents a section through a crystal of NaCl and identifies this basic unit. The unit cell is a cube measuring a_0 on each side.

When an x-ray beam enters a crystal such as NaCl, x rays are *scattered*—that is, redirected—in all directions by the crystal structure. In some directions the scattered waves undergo destructive interference, resulting in intensity minima; in other directions the interference is constructive, resulting in intensity maxima. This process of scattering and interference is a form of diffraction.

Fictional Planes. Although the process of diffraction of x rays by a crystal is complicated, the maxima turn out to be in directions *as if* the x rays were

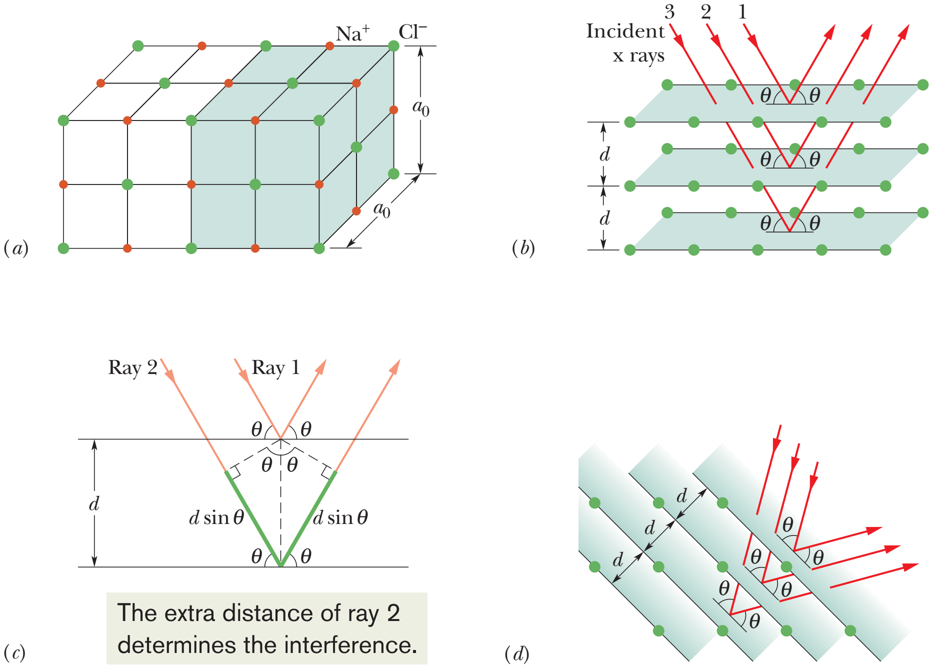


Figure 36-28 (*a*) The cubic structure of NaCl, showing the sodium and chlorine ions and a unit cell (shaded). (*b*) Incident x rays undergo diffraction by the structure of (*a*). The x rays are diffracted as if they were reflected by a family of parallel planes, with angles measured relative to the planes (not relative to a normal as in optics). (*c*) The path length difference between waves effectively reflected by two adjacent planes is $2d \sin\theta$. (*d*) A different orientation of the incident x rays relative to the structure. A different family of parallel planes now effectively reflects the x rays.

reflected by a family of parallel *reflecting planes* (or *crystal planes*) that extend through the atoms within the crystal and that contain regular arrays of the atoms. (The x rays are not actually reflected; we use these fictional planes only to simplify the analysis of the actual diffraction process.)

Figure 36-28*b* shows three reflecting planes (part of a family containing many parallel planes) with *interplanar spacing d,* from which the incident rays shown are said to reflect. Rays 1, 2, and 3 reflect from the first, second, and third planes, respectively. At each reflection the angle of incidence and the angle of reflection are represented with θ. Contrary to the custom in optics, these angles are defined relative to the *surface* of the reflecting plane rather than a normal to that surface. For the situation of Fig. 36-28*b*, the interplanar spacing happens to be equal to the unit cell dimension a_0.

Figure 36-28*c* shows an edge-on view of reflection from an adjacent pair of planes. The waves of rays 1 and 2 arrive at the crystal in phase. After they are reflected, they must again be in phase because the reflections and the reflecting planes have been defined solely to explain the intensity maxima in the diffraction of x rays by a crystal. Unlike light rays, the x rays do not refract upon entering the crystal; moreover, we do not define an index of refraction for this situation. Thus, the relative phase between the waves of rays 1 and 2 as they leave the crystal is set solely by their path length difference. For these rays to be in phase, the path length difference must be equal to an integer multiple of the wavelength λ of the x rays.

Diffraction Equation. By drawing the dashed perpendiculars in Fig. 36-28*c*, we find that the path length difference is $2d \sin \theta$. In fact, this is true for any pair of adjacent planes in the family of planes represented in Fig. 36-28*b*. Thus, we have, as the criterion for intensity maxima for x-ray diffraction,

$$2d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \qquad \text{for } m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \text{(Bragg's law)}, \qquad (36\text{-}34)$$

where m is the order number of an intensity maximum. Equation 36-34 is called **Bragg's law** after British physicist W. L. Bragg, who first derived it. (He and his father shared the 1915 Nobel Prize in physics for their use of x rays to study the structures of crystals.) The angle of incidence and reflection in Eq. 36-34 is called a *Bragg angle.*

Regardless of the angle at which x rays enter a crystal, there is always a family of planes from which they can be said to reflect so that we can apply Bragg's law. In Fig. 36-28*d*, notice that the crystal structure has the same orientation as it does in Fig. 36-28*a*, but the angle at which the beam enters the structure differs from that shown in Fig. 36-28*b*. This new angle requires a new family of reflecting planes, with a different interplanar spacing d and different Bragg angle θ, in order to explain the x-ray diffraction via Bragg's law.

Determining a Unit Cell. Figure 36-29 shows how the interplanar spacing d can be related to the unit cell dimension a_0. For the particular family of planes shown there, the Pythagorean theorem gives

$$5d = \sqrt{\tfrac{5}{4}a_0^2},$$

or

$$d = \frac{a_0}{\sqrt{20}} = 0.2236a_0. \qquad (36\text{-}35)$$

Figure 36-29 suggests how the dimensions of the unit cell can be found once the interplanar spacing has been measured by means of x-ray diffraction.

X-ray diffraction is a powerful tool for studying both x-ray spectra and the arrangement of atoms in crystals. To study spectra, a particular set of crystal planes, having a known spacing d, is chosen. These planes effectively reflect different wavelengths at different angles. A detector that can discriminate one angle from another can then be used to determine the wavelength of radiation reaching it. The crystal itself can be studied with a monochromatic x-ray beam, to determine not only the spacing of various crystal planes but also the structure of the unit cell.

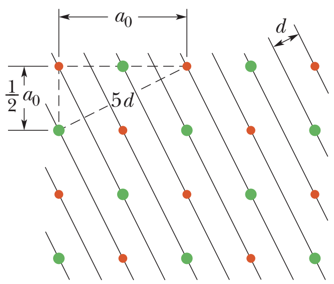


Figure 36-29 A family of planes through the structure of Fig. 36-28*a*, and a way to relate the edge length a_0 of a unit cell to the interplanar spacing d.

Review & Summary

Diffraction When waves encounter an edge, an obstacle, or an aperture the size of which is comparable to the wavelength of the waves, those waves spread out as they travel and, as a result, undergo interference. This is called **diffraction.**

Single-Slit Diffraction Waves passing through a long narrow slit of width a produce, on a viewing screen, a **single-slit diffraction pattern** that includes a central maximum and other maxima, separated by minima located at angles θ to the central axis that satisfy

$$a \sin \theta = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \text{(minima)}. \tag{36-3}$$

The intensity of the diffraction pattern at any given angle θ is

$$I(\theta) = I_m \left(\frac{\sin \alpha}{\alpha} \right)^2, \quad \text{where } \alpha = \frac{\pi a}{\lambda} \sin \theta \tag{36-5, 36-6}$$

and I_m is the intensity at the center of the pattern.

Circular-Aperture Diffraction Diffraction by a circular aperture or a lens with diameter d produces a central maximum and concentric maxima and minima, with the first minimum at an angle θ given by

$$\sin \theta = 1.22 \frac{\lambda}{d} \quad \text{(first minimum—circular aperture)}. \tag{36-12}$$

Rayleigh's Criterion *Rayleigh's criterion* suggests that two objects are on the verge of resolvability if the central diffraction maximum of one is at the first minimum of the other. Their angular separation can then be no less than

$$\theta_R = 1.22 \frac{\lambda}{d} \quad \text{(Rayleigh's criterion)}, \tag{36-14}$$

in which d is the diameter of the aperture through which the light passes.

Double-Slit Diffraction Waves passing through two slits, each of width a, whose centers are a distance d apart, display diffraction patterns whose intensity I at angle θ is

$$I(\theta) = I_m(\cos^2 \beta) \left(\frac{\sin \alpha}{\alpha} \right)^2 \quad \text{(double slit)}, \tag{36-19}$$

with $\beta = (\pi d/\lambda) \sin \theta$ and α as for single-slit diffraction.

Diffraction Gratings A *diffraction grating* is a series of "slits" used to separate an incident wave into its component wavelengths by separating and displaying their diffraction maxima. Diffraction by N (multiple) slits results in maxima (lines) at angles θ such that

$$d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \text{(maxima)}, \tag{36-25}$$

with the **half-widths** of the lines given by

$$\Delta\theta_{hw} = \frac{\lambda}{Nd \cos \theta} \quad \text{(half-widths)}. \tag{36-28}$$

The dispersion D and resolving power R are given by

$$D = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta\lambda} = \frac{m}{d \cos \theta} \tag{36-29, 36-30}$$

and

$$R = \frac{\lambda_{avg}}{\Delta\lambda} = Nm. \tag{36-31, 36-32}$$

X-Ray Diffraction The regular array of atoms in a crystal is a three-dimensional diffraction grating for short-wavelength waves such as x rays. For analysis purposes, the atoms can be visualized as being arranged in planes with characteristic interplanar spacing d. Diffraction maxima (due to constructive interference) occur if the incident direction of the wave, measured from the surfaces of these planes, and the wavelength λ of the radiation satisfy **Bragg's law:**

$$2d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \text{(Bragg's law)}. \tag{36-34}$$

Questions

1 You are conducting a single-slit diffraction experiment with light of wavelength λ. What appears, on a distant viewing screen, at a point at which the top and bottom rays through the slit have a path length difference equal to (a) 5λ and (b) 4.5λ?

2 In a single-slit diffraction experiment, the top and bottom rays through the slit arrive at a certain point on the viewing screen with a path length difference of 4.0 wavelengths. In a phasor representation like those in Fig 36-7, how many overlapping circles does the chain of phasors make?

3 For three experiments, Fig. 36-30 gives the parameter β of Eq. 36-20 versus angle θ for two-slit interference using light of wavelength 500 nm. The slit separations in the three experiments differ. Rank the experiments according to (a) the slit separations and (b) the total number of two-slit interference maxima in the pattern, greatest first.

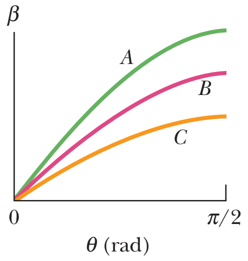


Figure 36-30 Question 3.

4 For three experiments, Fig. 36-31 gives α versus angle θ in one-slit diffraction using light of wavelength 500 nm. Rank the experiments according to (a) the slit widths and (b) the total number of diffraction minima in the pattern, greatest first.

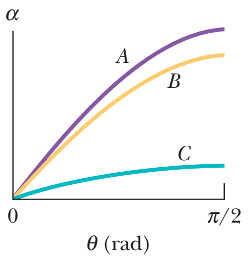


Figure 36-31 Question 4.

5 Figure 36-32 shows four choices for the rectangular opening of a source of either sound waves or light waves. The sides have lengths of either L or $2L$, with L being 3.0 times the wavelength of the waves. Rank the openings according to the extent of (a) left–right spreading and (b) up–down spreading of the waves due to diffraction, greatest first.

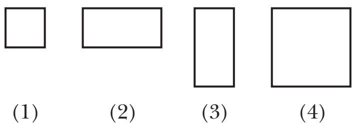


Figure 36-32 Question 5.

6 Light of frequency f illuminating a long narrow slit produces a diffraction pattern. (a) If we switch to light of frequency $1.3f$, does the pattern expand away from the center or contract toward the center? (b) Does the pattern expand or contract if, instead, we submerge the equipment in clear corn syrup?

7 At night many people see rings (called *entoptic halos*) surrounding bright outdoor lamps in otherwise dark surroundings. The rings are the first of the side maxima in diffraction patterns produced by structures that are thought to be within the cornea (or possibly the lens) of the observer's eye. (The central maxima of such patterns overlap the lamp.) (a) Would a particular ring become smaller or larger if the lamp were switched from blue to red light? (b) If a lamp emits white light, is blue or red on the outside edge of the ring?

8 (a) For a given diffraction grating, does the smallest difference $\Delta\lambda$ in two wavelengths that can be resolved increase, decrease, or remain the same as the wavelength increases? (b) For a given wavelength region (say, around 500 nm), is $\Delta\lambda$ greater in the first order or in the third order?

9 Figure 36-33 shows a red line and a green line of the same order in the pattern produced by a diffraction grating. If we increased the number of rulings in the grating—say, by removing tape that had covered the outer half of the rulings—would (a) the half-widths of the lines and (b) the separation of the lines increase, decrease, or remain the same? (c) Would the lines shift to the right, shift to the left, or remain in place?

Figure 36-33 Questions 9 and 10.

10 For the situation of Question 9 and Fig. 36-33, if instead we increased the grating spacing, would (a) the half-widths of the lines and (b) the separation of the lines increase, decrease, or remain the same? (c) Would the lines shift to the right, shift to the left, or remain in place?

11 (a) Figure 36-34*a* shows the lines produced by diffraction gratings A and B using light of the same wavelength; the lines are of the same order and appear at the same angles θ. Which grating has the greater number of rulings? (b) Figure 36-34*b* shows lines of two orders produced by a single diffraction grating using light of two wavelengths, both in the red region of the spectrum. Which lines, the left pair or right pair, are in the order with greater m? Is the center of the diffraction pattern located to the left or to the right in (c) Fig. 36-34*a* and (d) Fig. 36-34*b*?

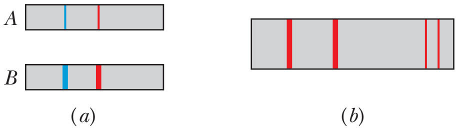


Figure 36-34 Question 11.

12 Figure 36-35 shows the bright fringes that lie within the central diffraction envelope in two double-slit diffraction experiments using the same wavelength of light. Are (a) the slit width a, (b) the slit separation d, and (c) the ratio d/a in experiment B greater than, less than, or the same as those quantities in experiment A?

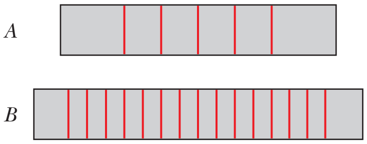


Figure 36-35 Question 12.

13 In three arrangements you view two closely spaced small objects that are the same large distance from you. The angles that the objects occupy in your field of view and their distances from you are the following: (1) 2ϕ and R; (2) 2ϕ and $2R$; (3) $\phi/2$ and $R/2$. (a) Rank the arrangements according to the separation between the objects, greatest first. If you can just barely resolve the two objects in arrangement 2, can you resolve them in (b) arrangement 1 and (c) arrangement 3?

14 For a certain diffraction grating, the ratio λ/a of wavelength to ruling spacing is 1/3.5. Without written calculation or use of a calculator, determine which of the orders beyond the zeroth order appear in the diffraction pattern.

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of difficulty
Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com
WWW Worked-out solution is at
ILW Interactive solution is at
http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 36-1 Single-Slit Diffraction

•1 GO The distance between the first and fifth minima of a single-slit diffraction pattern is 0.35 mm with the screen 40 cm away from the slit, when light of wavelength 550 nm is used. (a) Find the slit width. (b) Calculate the angle θ of the first diffraction minimum.

•2 What must be the ratio of the slit width to the wavelength for a single slit to have the first diffraction minimum at $\theta = 45.0°$?

•3 A plane wave of wavelength 590 nm is incident on a slit with a width of $a = 0.40$ mm. A thin converging lens of focal length +70 cm is placed between the slit and a viewing screen and focuses the light on the screen. (a) How far is the screen from the lens? (b) What is the distance on the screen from the center of the diffraction pattern to the first minimum?

•4 In conventional television, signals are broadcast from towers to home receivers. Even when a receiver is not in direct view of a tower because of a hill or building, it can still intercept a signal if the signal diffracts enough around the obstacle, into the obstacle's "shadow region." Previously, television signals had a wavelength of about 50 cm, but digital television signals that are transmitted from towers have a wavelength of about 10 mm. (a) Did this change in wavelength increase or decrease the diffraction of the signals into the shadow regions of obstacles? Assume that a signal passes through an opening of 5.0 m width between two adjacent buildings. What is the angular spread of the central diffraction maximum (out to the first minima) for wavelengths of (b) 50 cm and (c) 10 mm?

•5 A single slit is illuminated by light of wavelengths λ_a and λ_b, chosen so that the first diffraction minimum of the λ_a component coincides with the second minimum of the λ_b component. (a) If $\lambda_b = 350$ nm, what is λ_a? For what order number m_b (if any) does a minimum of the λ_b component coincide with the minimum of the λ_a component in the order number (b) $m_a = 2$ and (c) $m_a = 3$?

•6 Monochromatic light of wavelength 441 nm is incident on a narrow slit. On a screen 2.00 m away, the distance between the second diffraction minimum and the central maximum is 1.50 cm. (a) Calculate the angle of diffraction θ of the second minimum. (b) Find the width of the slit.

•7 Light of wavelength 633 nm is incident on a narrow slit. The angle between the first diffraction minimum on one side of the central maximum and the first minimum on the other side is 1.20°. What is the width of the slit?

••8 Sound waves with frequency 3000 Hz and speed 343 m/s diffract through the rectangular opening of a speaker cabinet and into a large auditorium of length $d = 100$ m. The opening, which has a horizontal width of 30.0 cm, faces a wall 100 m away (Fig. 36-36). Along that wall, how far from the central axis will a listener be at the first diffraction minimum and thus have difficulty hearing the sound? (Neglect reflections.)

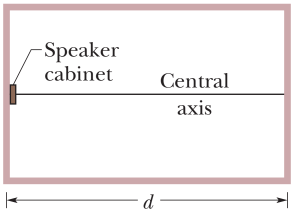


Figure 36-36 Problem 8.

••9 **SSM** **ILW** A slit 1.00 mm wide is illuminated by light of wavelength 589 nm. We see a diffraction pattern on a screen 3.00 m away. What is the distance between the first two diffraction minima on the same side of the central diffraction maximum?

••10 **GO** Manufacturers of wire (and other objects of small dimension) sometimes use a laser to continually monitor the thickness of the product. The wire intercepts the laser beam, producing a diffraction pattern like that of a single slit of the same width as the wire diameter (Fig. 36-37). Suppose a helium–neon laser, of wavelength 632.8 nm, illuminates a wire, and the diffraction pattern appears on a screen at distance $L = 2.60$ m. If the desired wire diameter is 1.37 mm, what is the observed distance between the two tenth-order minima (one on each side of the central maximum)?

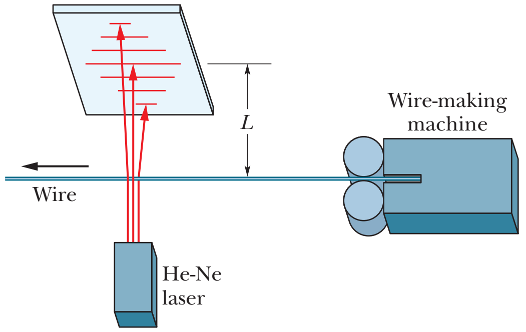


Figure 36-37 Problem 10.

Module 36-2 Intensity in Single-Slit Diffraction

•11 A 0.10-mm-wide slit is illuminated by light of wavelength 589 nm. Consider a point P on a viewing screen on which the diffraction pattern of the slit is viewed; the point is at 30° from the central axis of the slit. What is the phase difference between the Huygens wavelets arriving at point P from the top and midpoint of the slit? (*Hint:* See Eq. 36-4.)

•12 Figure 36-38 gives α versus the sine of the angle θ in a single-slit diffraction experiment using light of wavelength 610 nm. The vertical axis scale is set by $\alpha_s = 12$ rad. What are (a) the slit width, (b) the total number of diffraction minima in the pattern (count them on both sides of the center of the diffraction pattern), (c) the least angle for a minimum, and (d) the greatest angle for a minimum?

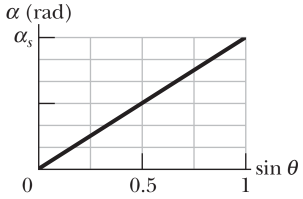


Figure 36-38 Problem 12.

•13 Monochromatic light with wavelength 538 nm is incident on a slit with width 0.025 mm. The distance from the slit to a screen is 3.5 m. Consider a point on the screen 1.1 cm from the central maximum. Calculate (a) θ for that point, (b) α, and (c) the ratio of the intensity at that point to the intensity at the central maximum.

•14 In the single-slit diffraction experiment of Fig. 36-4, let the wavelength of the light be 500 nm, the slit width be 6.00 μm, and the viewing screen be at distance $D = 3.00$ m. Let a y axis extend upward along the viewing screen, with its origin at the center of the diffraction pattern. Also let I_P represent the intensity of the diffracted light at point P at $y = 15.0$ cm. (a) What is the ratio of I_P to the intensity I_m at the center of the pattern? (b) Determine where point P is in the diffraction pattern by giving the maximum and minimum between which it lies, or the two minima between which it lies.

••15 **SSM** **WWW** The full width at half-maximum (FWHM) of a central diffraction maximum is defined as the angle between the two points in the pattern where the intensity is one-half that at the center of the pattern. (See Fig. 36-8*b*.) (a) Show that the intensity drops to one-half the maximum value when $\sin^2 \alpha = \alpha^2/2$. (b) Verify that $\alpha = 1.39$ rad (about 80°) is a solution to the transcendental equation of (a). (c) Show that the FWHM is $\Delta\theta = 2 \sin^{-1}(0.443\lambda/a)$, where a is the slit width. Calculate the FWHM of the central maximum for slit width (d) 1.00λ, (e) 5.00λ, and (f) 10.0λ.

••16 *Babinet's principle.* A monochromatic beam of parallel light is incident on a "collimating" hole of diameter $x \gg \lambda$. Point P lies in the geometrical shadow region on a *distant* screen (Fig. 36-39*a*). Two diffracting objects, shown in Fig. 36-39*b*, are placed in turn over the collimating hole. Object A is an opaque circle with a hole in it, and B is the "photographic negative" of A. Using superposition concepts, show that the intensity at P is identical for the two diffracting objects A and B.

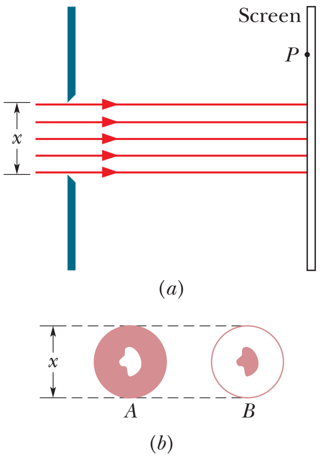


Figure 36-39 Problem 16.

••17 (a) Show that the values of α at which intensity maxima for single-slit diffraction occur can be found exactly by differentiating Eq. 36-5 with respect to α and equating the result to zero, obtaining the condition $\tan \alpha = \alpha$. To find values of α satisfying this relation, plot the curve $y = \tan \alpha$ and the straight line $y = \alpha$ and then find their intersections, or use a calculator to find an appropriate value of α by trial and error. Next, from $\alpha = (m + \frac{1}{2})\pi$, determine the values of m associated with the maxima in the single-slit pattern. (These m values are *not* integers because secondary maxima do not lie exactly halfway between minima.) What are the (b) smallest α and (c) associated m, the (d) second smallest α and (e) associated m, and the (f) third smallest α and (g) associated m?

Module 36-3 Diffraction by a Circular Aperture

•18 The wall of a large room is covered with acoustic tile in which small holes are drilled 5.0 mm from center to center. How far can a person be from such a tile and still distinguish the individual holes, assuming ideal conditions, the pupil diameter of the observer's eye to be 4.0 mm, and the wavelength of the room light to be 550 nm?

•19 (a) How far from grains of red sand must you be to position yourself just at the limit of resolving the grains if your pupil diameter is 1.5 mm, the grains are spherical with radius 50 μm, and the light from the grains has wavelength 650 nm? (b) If the grains were blue and the light from them had wavelength 400 nm, would the answer to (a) be larger or smaller?

•20 The radar system of a navy cruiser transmits at a wavelength of 1.6 cm, from a circular antenna with a diameter of 2.3 m. At a range of 6.2 km, what is the smallest distance that two speedboats can be from each other and still be resolved as two separate objects by the radar system?

•21 **SSM** **WWW** Estimate the linear separation of two objects on Mars that can just be resolved under ideal conditions by an observer on Earth (a) using the naked eye and (b) using the 200 in. (= 5.1 m) Mount Palomar telescope. Use the following data: distance to Mars = 8.0×10^7 km, diameter of pupil = 5.0 mm, wavelength of light = 550 nm.

•22 Assume that Rayleigh's criterion gives the limit of resolution of an astronaut's eye looking down on Earth's surface from a typical space shuttle altitude of 400 km. (a) Under that idealized assumption, estimate the smallest linear width on Earth's surface that the astronaut can resolve. Take the astronaut's pupil diameter to be 5 mm and the wavelength of visible light to be 550 nm. (b) Can the astronaut resolve the Great Wall of China (Fig. 36-40), which is more than 3000 km long, 5 to 10 m thick at its base, 4 m thick at its top, and 8 m in height? (c) Would the astronaut be able to resolve any unmistakable sign of intelligent life on Earth's surface?

©AP/Wide World Photos

Figure 36-40 Problem 22. The Great Wall of China.

•23 **SSM** The two headlights of an approaching automobile are 1.4 m apart. At what (a) angular separation and (b) maximum distance will the eye resolve them? Assume that the pupil diameter is 5.0 mm, and use a wavelength of 550 nm for the light. Also assume that diffraction effects alone limit the resolution so that Rayleigh's criterion can be applied.

•24 *Entoptic halos.* If someone looks at a bright outdoor lamp in otherwise dark surroundings, the lamp appears to be surrounded by bright and dark rings (hence *halos*) that are actually a circular diffraction pattern as in Fig. 36-10, with the central maximum overlapping the direct light from the lamp. The diffraction is produced by structures within the cornea or lens of the eye (hence *entoptic*). If the lamp is monochromatic at wavelength 550 nm and the first dark ring subtends angular diameter 2.5° in the observer's view, what is the (linear) diameter of the structure producing the diffraction?

•25 **ILW** Find the separation of two points on the Moon's surface that can just be resolved by the 200 in. (= 5.1 m) telescope at Mount Palomar, assuming that this separation is determined by diffraction effects. The distance from Earth to the Moon is 3.8×10^5 km. Assume a wavelength of 550 nm for the light.

•26 The telescopes on some commercial surveillance satellites can resolve objects on the ground as small as 85 cm across (see Google Earth), and the telescopes on military surveillance satellites reportedly can resolve objects as small as 10 cm across. Assume first that object resolution is determined entirely by Rayleigh's criterion and is not degraded by turbulence in the atmosphere. Also assume that the satellites are at a typical altitude of 400 km and that the wavelength of visible light is 550 nm. What would be the required diameter of the telescope aperture for (a) 85 cm resolution and (b) 10 cm resolution? (c) Now, considering that turbulence is certain to degrade resolution and that the aperture diameter of the Hubble Space Telescope is 2.4 m, what can you say about the answer to (b) and about how the military surveillance resolutions are accomplished?

•27 If Superman really had x-ray vision at 0.10 nm wavelength and a 4.0 mm pupil diameter, at what maximum altitude could he distinguish villains from heroes, assuming that he needs to resolve points separated by 5.0 cm to do this?

••28 GO The wings of tiger beetles (Fig. 36-41) are colored by interference due to thin cuticle-like layers. In addition, these layers are arranged in patches that are 60 μm across and produce different colors. The color you see is a pointillistic mixture of thin-film interference colors that varies with perspective. Approximately

Kjell B. Sandved/Bruce Coleman, Inc./Photoshot Holdings Ltd.

Figure 36-41 Problem 28. Tiger beetles are colored by pointillistic mixtures of thin-film interference colors.

what viewing distance from a wing puts you at the limit of resolving the different colored patches according to Rayleigh's criterion? Use 550 nm as the wavelength of light and 3.00 mm as the diameter of your pupil.

••29 (a) What is the angular separation of two stars if their images are barely resolved by the Thaw refracting telescope at the Allegheny Observatory in Pittsburgh? The lens diameter is 76 cm and its focal length is 14 m. Assume $\lambda = 550$ nm. (b) Find the distance between these barely resolved stars if each of them is 10 light-years distant from Earth. (c) For the image of a single star in this telescope, find the diameter of the first dark ring in the diffraction pattern, as measured on a photographic plate placed at the focal plane of the telescope lens. Assume that the structure of the image is associated entirely with diffraction at the lens aperture and not with lens "errors."

••30 GO *Floaters.* The floaters you see when viewing a bright, featureless background are diffraction patterns of defects in the vitreous humor that fills most of your eye. Sighting through a pinhole sharpens the diffraction pattern. If you also view a small circular dot, you can approximate the defect's size. Assume that the defect diffracts light as a circular aperture does. Adjust the dot's distance L from your eye (or eye lens) until the dot and the circle of the first minimum in the diffraction pattern appear to have the same size in your view. That is, until they have the same diameter D' on the retina at distance $L' = 2.0$ cm from the front of the eye, as suggested in Fig. 36-42*a*, where the angles on the two sides of the eye lens are equal. Assume that the wavelength of visible light is $\lambda = 550$ nm. If the dot has diameter $D = 2.0$ mm and is distance $L = 45.0$ cm from the eye and the defect is $x = 6.0$ mm in front of the retina (Fig. 36-42*b*), what is the diameter of the defect?

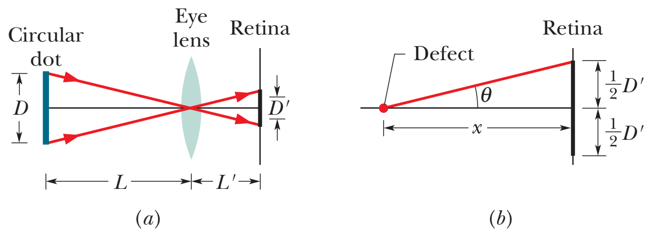


Figure 36-42 Problem 30.

••31 SSM Millimeter-wave radar generates a narrower beam than conventional microwave radar, making it less vulnerable to antiradar missiles than conventional radar. (a) Calculate the angular width 2θ of the central maximum, from first minimum to first minimum, produced by a 220 GHz radar beam emitted by a 55.0-cm-diameter circular antenna. (The frequency is chosen to coincide with a low-absorption atmospheric "window.") (b) What is 2θ for a more conventional circular antenna that has a diameter of 2.3 m and emits at wavelength 1.6 cm?

••32 (a) A circular diaphragm 60 cm in diameter oscillates at a frequency of 25 kHz as an underwater source of sound used for submarine detection. Far from the source, the sound intensity is distributed as the diffraction pattern of a circular hole whose diameter equals that of the diaphragm. Take the speed of sound in water to be 1450 m/s and find the angle between the normal to the diaphragm and a line from the diaphragm to the first minimum. (b) Is there such a minimum for a source having an (audible) frequency of 1.0 kHz?

••33 GO Nuclear-pumped x-ray lasers are seen as a possible weapon to destroy ICBM booster rockets at ranges up to 2000 km. One limitation on such a device is the spreading of the beam due to diffraction, with resulting dilution of beam intensity. Consider such a laser operating at a wavelength of 1.40 nm. The element that emits light is the end of a wire with diameter 0.200 mm. (a) Calculate the diameter of the central beam at a target 2000 km away from the beam source. (b) What is the ratio of the beam intensity at the target to that at the end of the wire? (The laser is fired from space, so neglect any atmospheric absorption.)

•••34 GO A circular obstacle produces the same diffraction pattern as a circular hole of the same diameter (except very near $\theta = 0$). Airborne water drops are examples of such obstacles. When you see the Moon through suspended water drops, such as in a fog, you intercept the diffraction pattern from many drops. The composite of the central diffraction maxima of those drops forms a white region that surrounds the Moon and may obscure it. Figure 36-43 is a photograph in which the Moon is obscured. There are two faint, colored rings around the Moon (the larger one may be too faint to be seen in your copy of the photograph). The smaller ring is on the outer edge of the central maxima from the drops; the somewhat larger ring is on the outer edge of the smallest of the secondary maxima from the drops (see Fig. 36-10). The color is visible because the rings are adjacent to the diffraction minima (dark rings) in the patterns. (Colors in other parts of the pattern overlap too much to be visible.)

(a) What is the color of these rings on the outer edges of the diffraction maxima? (b) The colored ring around the central maxima in Fig. 36-43 has an angular diameter that is 1.35 times the angular diameter of the Moon, which is 0.50°. Assume that the drops all have about the same diameter. Approximately what is that diameter?

Pekka Parvianen/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 36-43 Problem 34. The corona around the Moon is a composite of the diffraction patterns of airborne water drops.

Module 36-4 Diffraction by a Double Slit

•35 Suppose that the central diffraction envelope of a double-slit diffraction pattern contains 11 bright fringes and the first diffraction minima eliminate (are coincident with) bright fringes. How many bright fringes lie between the first and second minima of the diffraction envelope?

•36 A beam of light of a single wavelength is incident perpendicularly on a double-slit arrangement, as in Fig. 35-10. The slit widths are each 46 μm and the slit separation is 0.30 mm. How many complete bright fringes appear between the two first-order minima of the diffraction pattern?

•37 In a double-slit experiment, the slit separation d is 2.00 times the slit width w. How many bright interference fringes are in the central diffraction envelope?

•38 In a certain two-slit interference pattern, 10 bright fringes lie within the second side peak of the diffraction envelope and diffraction minima coincide with two-slit interference maxima. What is the ratio of the slit separation to the slit width?

••39 Light of wavelength 440 nm passes through a double slit, yielding a diffraction pattern whose graph of intensity I versus angular position θ is shown in Fig. 36-44. Calculate (a) the slit width and (b) the slit separation. (c) Verify the displayed intensities of the $m = 1$ and $m = 2$ interference fringes.

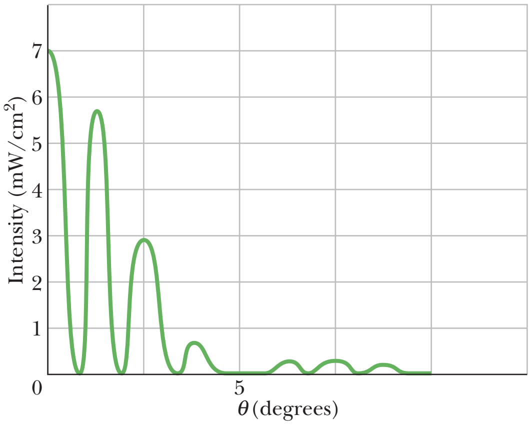


Figure 36-44 Problem 39.

••40 GO Figure 36-45 gives the parameter β of Eq. 36-20 versus the sine of the angle θ in a two-slit interference experiment using light of wavelength 435 nm. The vertical axis scale is set by $\beta_s = 80.0$ rad. What are (a) the slit separation, (b) the total number of interference maxima (count them on both sides of the pattern's center), (c) the smallest angle for a maxima, and (d) the greatest angle for a minimum? Assume that none of the interference maxima are completely eliminated by a diffraction minimum.

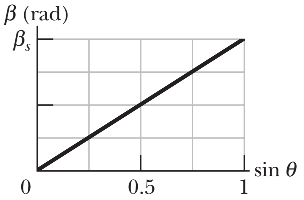


Figure 36-45 Problem 40.

••41 GO In the two-slit interference experiment of Fig. 35-10, the slit widths are each 12.0 μm, their separation is 24.0 μm, the wavelength is 600 nm, and the viewing screen is at a distance of 4.00 m. Let I_P represent the intensity at point P on the screen, at height $y = 70.0$ cm. (a) What is the ratio of I_P to the intensity I_m at the center of the pattern? (b) Determine where P is in the two-slit interference pattern by giving the maximum or minimum on which it lies or the maximum and minimum between which it lies. (c) In the same way, for the diffraction that occurs, determine where point P is in the diffraction pattern.

••42 GO (a) In a double-slit experiment, what largest ratio of d to a causes diffraction to eliminate the fourth bright side fringe? (b) What other bright fringes are also eliminated? (c) How many other ratios of d to a cause the diffraction to (exactly) eliminate that bright fringe?

••43 SSM WWW (a) How many bright fringes appear between the first diffraction-envelope minima to either side of the central maximum in a double-slit pattern if $\lambda = 550$ nm, $d = 0.150$ mm, and $a = 30.0$ μm? (b) What is the ratio of the intensity of the third bright fringe to the intensity of the central fringe?

Module 36-5 Diffraction Gratings

•44 Perhaps to confuse a predator, some tropical gyrinid beetles (whirligig beetles) are colored by optical interference that is due to scales whose alignment forms a diffraction grating (which scatters light instead of transmitting it). When the incident light rays are perpendicular to the grating, the angle between the first-order maxima (on opposite sides of the zeroth-order maximum) is about 26° in light with a wavelength of 550 nm. What is the grating spacing of the beetle?

•45 A diffraction grating 20.0 mm wide has 6000 rulings. Light of wavelength 589 nm is incident perpendicularly on the grating. What are the (a) largest, (b) second largest, and (c) third largest values of θ at which maxima appear on a distant viewing screen?

•46 Visible light is incident perpendicularly on a grating with 315 rulings/mm. What is the longest wavelength that can be seen in the fifth-order diffraction?

•47 SSM ILW A grating has 400 lines/mm. How many orders of the entire visible spectrum (400–700 nm) can it produce in a diffraction experiment, in addition to the $m = 0$ order?

••48 A diffraction grating is made up of slits of width 300 nm with separation 900 nm. The grating is illuminated by monochromatic plane waves of wavelength $\lambda = 600$ nm at normal incidence. (a) How many maxima are there in the full diffraction pattern? (b) What is the angular width of a spectral line observed in the first order if the grating has 1000 slits?

••49 SSM WWW Light of wavelength 600 nm is incident normally on a diffraction grating. Two adjacent maxima occur at angles given by $\sin\theta = 0.2$ and $\sin\theta = 0.3$. The fourth-order maxima are missing. (a) What is the separation between adjacent slits? (b) What is the smallest slit width this grating can have? For that slit width, what are the (c) largest, (d) second largest, and (e) third largest values of the order number m of the maxima produced by the grating?

••50 With light from a gaseous discharge tube incident normally on a grating with slit separation 1.73 μm, sharp maxima of green light are experimentally found at angles $\theta = \pm 17.6°, 37.3°, -37.1°, 65.2°$, and $-65.0°$. Compute the wavelength of the green light that best fits these data.

••51 GO A diffraction grating having 180 lines/mm is illuminated with a light signal containing only two wavelengths, $\lambda_1 = 400$ nm and $\lambda_2 = 500$ nm. The signal is incident perpendicularly on the grating. (a) What is the angular separation between the second-order maxima of these two wavelengths? (b) What is the smallest angle at which two of the resulting maxima are superimposed? (c) What is the highest order for which maxima for both wavelengths are present in the diffraction pattern?

••52 GO A beam of light consisting of wavelengths from 460.0 nm to 640.0 nm is directed perpendicularly onto a diffraction grating with 160 lines/mm. (a) What is the lowest order that is overlapped by another order? (b) What is the highest order for which the complete wavelength range of the beam is present? In that highest order, at what angle does the light at wavelength (c) 460.0 nm and (d) 640.0 nm appear? (e) What is the greatest angle at which the light at wavelength 460.0 nm appears?

••53 GO A grating has 350 rulings/mm and is illuminated at normal incidence by white light. A spectrum is formed on a screen 30.0 cm from the grating. If a hole 10.0 mm square is cut in the screen, its inner edge being 50.0 mm from the central maximum and parallel to it, what are the (a) shortest and (b) longest wavelengths of the light that passes through the hole?

••54 Derive this expression for the intensity pattern for a three-slit "grating":

$$I = \tfrac{1}{9}I_m(1 + 4\cos\phi + 4\cos^2\phi),$$

where $\phi = (2\pi d \sin\theta)/\lambda$ and $a \ll \lambda$.

Module 36-6 Gratings: Dispersion and Resolving Power

•55 SSM ILW A source containing a mixture of hydrogen and deuterium atoms emits red light at two wavelengths whose mean is 656.3 nm and whose separation is 0.180 nm. Find the minimum number of lines needed in a diffraction grating that can resolve these lines in the first order.

•56 (a) How many rulings must a 4.00-cm-wide diffraction grating have to resolve the wavelengths 415.496 and 415.487 nm in the second order? (b) At what angle are the second-order maxima found?

•57 Light at wavelength 589 nm from a sodium lamp is incident perpendicularly on a grating with 40 000 rulings over width 76 nm. What are the first-order (a) dispersion D and (b) resolving power R, the second-order (c) D and (d) R, and the third-order (e) D and (f) R?

•58 A grating has 600 rulings/mm and is 5.0 mm wide. (a) What is the smallest wavelength interval it can resolve in the third order at $\lambda = 500$ nm? (b) How many higher orders of maxima can be seen?

•59 A diffraction grating with a width of 2.0 cm contains 1000 lines/cm across that width. For an incident wavelength of 600 nm, what is the smallest wavelength difference this grating can resolve in the second order?

•60 The D line in the spectrum of sodium is a doublet with wavelengths 589.0 and 589.6 nm. Calculate the minimum number of lines needed in a grating that will resolve this doublet in the second-order spectrum.

•61 With a particular grating the sodium doublet (589.00 nm and 589.59 nm) is viewed in the third order at 10° to the normal and is barely resolved. Find (a) the grating spacing and (b) the total width of the rulings.

••62 A diffraction grating illuminated by monochromatic light normal to the grating produces a certain line at angle θ. (a) What is the product of that line's half-width and the grating's resolving power? (b) Evaluate that product for the first order of a grating of slit separation 900 nm in light of wavelength 600 nm.

••63 Assume that the limits of the visible spectrum are arbitrarily chosen as 430 and 680 nm. Calculate the number of rulings per millimeter of a grating that will spread the first-order spectrum through an angle of 20.0°.

Module 36-7 X-Ray Diffraction

•64 What is the smallest Bragg angle for x rays of wavelength 30 pm to reflect from reflecting planes spaced 0.30 nm apart in a calcite crystal?

•65 An x-ray beam of wavelength A undergoes first-order reflection (Bragg law diffraction) from a crystal when its angle of incidence to a crystal face is 23°, and an x-ray beam of wavelength 97 pm undergoes third-order reflection when its angle of incidence to that face is 60°. Assuming that the two beams reflect from the same family of reflecting planes, find (a) the interplanar spacing and (b) the wavelength A.

•66 An x-ray beam of a certain wavelength is incident on an NaCl crystal, at 30.0° to a certain family of reflecting planes of spacing 39.8 pm. If the reflection from those planes is of the first order, what is the wavelength of the x rays?

•67 Figure 36-46 is a graph of intensity versus angular position θ for the diffraction of an x-ray beam by a crystal. The horizontal scale is set by $\theta_s = 2.00°$. The beam consists of two wavelengths, and the spacing between the reflecting planes is 0.94 nm. What are the (a) shorter and (b) longer wavelengths in the beam?

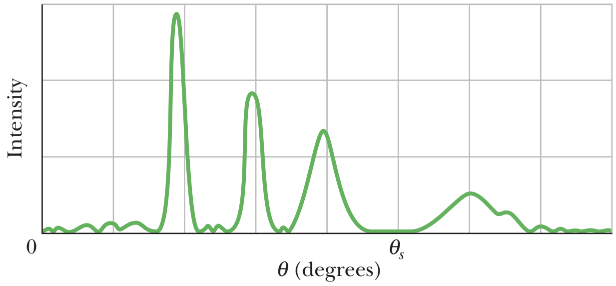


Figure 36-46 Problem 67.

•68 If first-order reflection occurs in a crystal at Bragg angle 3.4°, at what Bragg angle does second-order reflection occur from the same family of reflecting planes?

•69 X rays of wavelength 0.12 nm are found to undergo second-order reflection at a Bragg angle of 28° from a lithium fluoride crystal. What is the interplanar spacing of the reflecting planes in the crystal?

••70 GO In Fig. 36-47, first-order reflection from the reflection planes shown occurs when an x-ray beam of wavelength 0.260 nm makes an angle $\theta = 63.8°$ with the top face of the crystal. What is the unit cell size a_0?

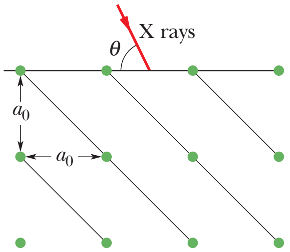


Figure 36-47 Problem 70.

••71 WWW In Fig. 36-48, let a beam of x rays of wavelength 0.125 nm be incident on an NaCl crystal at angle $\theta = 45.0°$ to the top face of the crystal and a family of reflecting planes. Let the reflecting planes have separation $d = 0.252$ nm. The crystal is turned through angle ϕ around an axis perpendicular to the plane of the page until these reflecting planes give diffraction maxima. What are the (a) smaller and (b) larger value of ϕ if the crystal is turned clockwise and the (c) smaller and (d) larger value of ϕ if it is turned counterclockwise?

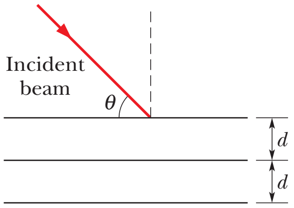


Figure 36-48 Problems 71 and 72.

••72 In Fig. 36-48, an x-ray beam of wavelengths from 95.0 to 140 pm is incident at $\theta = 45.0°$ to a family of reflecting planes with spacing $d = 275$ pm. What are the (a) longest wavelength λ and (b) associated order number m and the (c) shortest λ and (d) associated m of the intensity maxima in the diffraction of the beam?

••73 Consider a two-dimensional square crystal structure, such as one side of the structure shown in Fig. 36-28a. The largest interplanar spacing of reflecting planes is the unit cell size a_0. Calculate and sketch the (a) second largest, (b) third largest, (c) fourth largest, (d) fifth largest, and (e) sixth largest interplanar spacing. (f) Show that your results in (a) through (e) are consistent with the general formula

$$d = \frac{a_0}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2}},$$

where h and k are relatively prime integers (they have no common factor other than unity).

Additional Problems

74 An astronaut in a space shuttle claims she can just barely resolve two point sources on Earth's surface, 160 km below. Calculate their (a) angular and (b) linear separation, assuming ideal conditions. Take $\lambda = 540$ nm and the pupil diameter of the astronaut's eye to be 5.0 mm.

75 **SSM** Visible light is incident perpendicularly on a diffraction grating of 200 rulings/mm. What are the (a) longest, (b) second longest, and (c) third longest wavelengths that can be associated with an intensity maximum at $\theta = 30.0°$?

76 A beam of light consists of two wavelengths, 590.159 nm and 590.220 nm, that are to be resolved with a diffraction grating. If the grating has lines across a width of 3.80 cm, what is the minimum number of lines required for the two wavelengths to be resolved in the second order?

77 **SSM** In a single-slit diffraction experiment, there is a minimum of intensity for orange light ($\lambda = 600$ nm) and a minimum of intensity for blue-green light ($\lambda = 500$ nm) at the same angle of 1.00 mrad. For what minimum slit width is this possible?

78 **GO** A double-slit system with individual slit widths of 0.030 mm and a slit separation of 0.18 mm is illuminated with 500 nm light directed perpendicular to the plane of the slits. What is the total number of complete bright fringes appearing between the two first-order minima of the diffraction pattern? (Do not count the fringes that coincide with the minima of the diffraction pattern.)

79 **SSM** A diffraction grating has resolving power $R = \lambda_{\text{avg}}/\Delta\lambda = Nm$. (a) Show that the corresponding frequency range Δf that can just be resolved is given by $\Delta f = c/Nm\lambda$. (b) From Fig. 36-22, show that the times required for light to travel along the ray at the bottom of the figure and the ray at the top differ by $\Delta t = (Nd/c)\sin\theta$. (c) Show that $(\Delta f)(\Delta t) = 1$, this relation being independent of the various grating parameters. Assume $N \gg 1$.

80 The pupil of a person's eye has a diameter of 5.00 mm. According to Rayleigh's criterion, what distance apart must two small objects be if their images are just barely resolved when they are 250 mm from the eye? Assume they are illuminated with light of wavelength 500 nm.

81 Light is incident on a grating at an angle ψ as shown in Fig. 36-49. Show that bright fringes occur at angles θ that satisfy the equation

$$d(\sin\psi + \sin\theta) = m\lambda, \quad \text{for } m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots .$$

(Compare this equation with Eq. 36-25.) Only the special case $\psi = 0$ has been treated in this chapter.

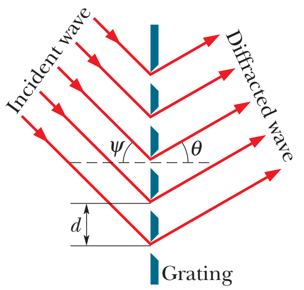


Figure 36-49 Problem 81.

82 A grating with $d = 1.50\ \mu$m is illuminated at various angles of incidence by light of wavelength 600 nm. Plot, as a function of the angle of incidence (0 to 90°), the angular deviation of the first-order maximum from the incident direction. (See Problem 81.)

83 **SSM** In two-slit interference, if the slit separation is 14 μm and the slit widths are each 2.0 μm, (a) how many two-slit maxima are in the central peak of the diffraction envelope and (b) how many are in either of the first side peak of the diffraction envelope?

84 **GO** In a two-slit interference pattern, what is the ratio of slit separation to slit width if there are 17 bright fringes within the central diffraction envelope and the diffraction minima coincide with two-slit interference maxima?

85 A beam of light with a narrow wavelength range centered on 450 nm is incident perpendicularly on a diffraction grating with a width of 1.80 cm and a line density of 1400 lines/cm across that width. For this light, what is the smallest wavelength difference this grating can resolve in the third order?

86 If you look at something 40 m from you, what is the smallest length (perpendicular to your line of sight) that you can resolve, according to Rayleigh's criterion? Assume the pupil of your eye has a diameter of 4.00 mm, and use 500 nm as the wavelength of the light reaching you.

87 Two yellow flowers are separated by 60 cm along a line perpendicular to your line of sight to the flowers. How far are you from the flowers when they are at the limit of resolution according to the Rayleigh criterion? Assume the light from the flowers has a single wavelength of 550 nm and that your pupil has a diameter of 5.5 mm.

88 In a single-slit diffraction experiment, what must be the ratio of the slit width to the wavelength if the second diffraction minima are to occur at an angle of 37.0° from the center of the diffraction pattern on a viewing screen?

89 A diffraction grating 3.00 cm wide produces the second order at 33.0° with light of wavelength 600 nm. What is the total number of lines on the grating?

90 A single-slit diffraction experiment is set up with light of wavelength 420 nm, incident perpendicularly on a slit of width 5.10 μm. The viewing screen is 3.20 m distant. On the screen, what is the distance between the center of the diffraction pattern and the second diffraction minimum?

91 A diffraction grating has 8900 slits across 1.20 cm. If light with a wavelength of 500 nm is sent through it, how many orders (maxima) lie to one side of the central maximum?

92 In an experiment to monitor the Moon's surface with a light beam, pulsed radiation from a ruby laser ($\lambda = 0.69\ \mu$m) was directed to the Moon through a reflecting telescope with a mirror radius of 1.3 m. A reflector on the Moon behaved like a circular flat mirror with radius 10 cm, reflecting the light directly back toward the telescope on Earth. The reflected light was then detected after being brought to a focus by this telescope. Approximately what fraction of the original light energy was picked up by the detector? Assume that for each direction of travel all the energy is in the central diffraction peak.

93 In June 1985, a laser beam was sent out from the Air Force Optical Station on Maui, Hawaii, and reflected back from the shuttle *Discovery* as it sped by 354 km overhead. The diameter of the central maximum of the beam at the shuttle position was said to be 9.1 m, and the beam wavelength was 500 nm. What is the effective diameter of the laser aperture at the Maui ground station? (*Hint:* A laser beam spreads only because of diffraction; assume a circular exit aperture.)

94 A diffraction grating 1.00 cm wide has 10 000 parallel slits. Monochromatic light that is incident normally is diffracted through 30° in the first order. What is the wavelength of the light?

95 **SSM** If you double the width of a single slit, the intensity of the central maximum of the diffraction pattern increases by a factor of 4, even though the energy passing through the slit only doubles. Explain this quantitatively.

96 When monochromatic light is incident on a slit 22.0 μm wide, the first diffraction minimum lies at 1.80° from the direction of the incident light. What is the wavelength?

97 A spy satellite orbiting at 160 km above Earth's surface has a lens with a focal length of 3.6 m and can resolve objects on the ground as small as 30 cm. For example, it can easily measure the size of an aircraft's air intake port. What is the effective diameter of the lens as determined by diffraction consideration alone? Assume $\lambda = 550$ nm.

98 Suppose that two points are separated by 2.0 cm. If they are viewed by an eye with a pupil opening of 5.0 mm, what distance from the viewer puts them at the Rayleigh limit of resolution? Assume a light wavelength of 500 nm.

99 A diffraction grating has 200 lines/mm. Light consisting of a continuous range of wavelengths between 550 nm and 700 nm is incident perpendicularly on the grating. (a) What is the lowest order that is overlapped by another order? (b) What is the highest order for which the complete spectrum is present?

100 A diffraction grating has 200 rulings/mm, and it produces an intensity maximum at $\theta = 30.0°$. (a) What are the possible wavelengths of the incident visible light? (b) To what colors do they correspond?

101 **SSM** Show that the dispersion of a grating is $D = (\tan\theta)/\lambda$.

102 Monochromatic light (wavelength = 450 nm) is incident perpendicularly on a single slit (width = 0.40 mm). A screen is placed parallel to the slit plane, and on it the distance between the two minima on either side of the central maximum is 1.8 mm. (a) What is the distance from the slit to the screen? (*Hint:* The angle to either minimum is small enough that $\sin\theta \approx \tan\theta$.) (b) What is the distance on the screen between the first minimum and the third minimum on the same side of the central maximum?

103 Light containing a mixture of two wavelengths, 500 and 600 nm, is incident normally on a diffraction grating. It is desired (1) that the first and second maxima for each wavelength appear at $\theta \leq 30°$, (2) that the dispersion be as high as possible, and (3) that the third order for the 600 nm light be a missing order. (a) What should be the slit separation? (b) What is the smallest individual slit width that can be used? (c) For the values calculated in (a) and (b) and the light of wavelength 600 nm, what is the largest order of maxima produced by the grating?

104 A beam of x rays with wavelengths ranging from 0.120 nm to 0.0700 nm scatters from a family of reflecting planes in a crystal. The plane separation is 0.250 nm. It is observed that scattered beams are produced for 0.100 nm and 0.0750 nm. What is the angle between the incident and scattered beams?

105 Show that a grating made up of alternately transparent and opaque strips of equal width eliminates all the even orders of maxima (except $m = 0$).

106 Light of wavelength 500 nm diffracts through a slit of width 2.00 μm and onto a screen that is 2.00 m away. On the screen, what is the distance between the center of the diffraction pattern and the third diffraction minimum?

107 If, in a two-slit interference pattern, there are 8 bright fringes within the first side peak of the diffraction envelope and diffraction minima coincide with two-slit interference maxima, then what is the ratio of slit separation to slit width?

108 White light (consisting of wavelengths from 400 nm to 700 nm) is normally incident on a grating. Show that, no matter what the value of the grating spacing d, the second order and third order overlap.

109 If we make $d = a$ in Fig. 36-50, the two slits coalesce into a single slit of width $2a$. Show that Eq. 36-19 reduces to give the diffraction pattern for such a slit.

110 Derive Eq. 36-28, the expression for the half-width of the lines in a grating's diffraction pattern.

111 Prove that it is not possible to determine both wavelength of incident radiation and spacing of reflecting planes in a crystal by measuring the Bragg angles for several orders.

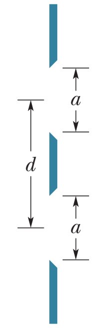


Figure 36-50 Problem 109.

112 How many orders of the entire visible spectrum (400–700 nm) can be produced by a grating of 500 lines/mm?

113 An acoustic double-slit system (of slit separation d and slit width a) is driven by two loudspeakers as shown in Fig. 36-51. By use of a variable delay line, the phase of one of the speakers may be varied relative to the other speaker. Describe in detail what changes occur in the double-slit diffraction pattern at large distances as the phase difference between the speakers is varied from zero to 2π. Take both interference and diffraction effects into account.

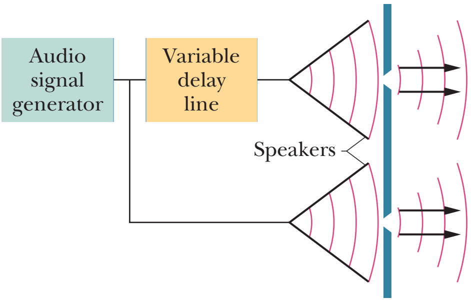


Figure 36-51 Problem 113.

114 Two emission lines have wavelengths λ and $\lambda + \Delta\lambda$, respectively, where $\Delta\lambda \ll \lambda$. Show that their angular separation $\Delta\theta$ in a grating spectrometer is given approximately by

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta\lambda}{\sqrt{(d/m)^2 - \lambda^2}},$$

where d is the slit separation and m is the order at which the lines are observed. Note that the angular separation is greater in the higher orders than the lower orders.

CHAPTER 37

Relativity

37-1 SIMULTANEITY AND TIME DILATION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.01 Identify the two postulates of (special) relativity and the type of frames to which they apply.

37.02 Identify the speed of light as the ultimate speed and give its approximate value.

37.03 Explain how the space and time coordinates of an event can be measured with a three-dimensional array of clocks and measuring rods and how that eliminates the need of a signal's travel time to an observer.

37.04 Identify that the relativity of space and time has to do with transferring measurements *between* two inertial frames with relative motion but we still use classical kinematics and Newtonian mechanics within a frame.

37.05 Identify that for reference frames with relative motion, simultaneous events in one of the frames will generally not be simultaneous in the other frame.

37.06 Explain what is meant by the entanglement of the spatial and temporal separations between two events.

37.07 Identify the conditions in which a temporal separation of two events is a proper time.

37.08 Identify that if the temporal separation of two events is a proper time as measured in one frame, that separation is greater (dilated) as measured in another frame.

37.09 Apply the relationship between proper time Δt_0, dilated time Δt, and the relative speed v between two frames.

37.10 Apply the relationships between the relative speed v, the speed parameter β, and the Lorentz factor γ.

Key Ideas

- Einstein's special theory of relativity is based on two postulates: (1) The laws of physics are the same for observers in all inertial reference frames. (2) The speed of light in vacuum has the same value c in all directions and in all inertial reference frames.

- Three space coordinates and one time coordinate specify an event. One task of special relativity is to relate these coordinates as assigned by two observers who are in uniform motion with respect to each other.

- If two observers are in relative motion, they generally will not agree as to whether two events are simultaneous.

- If two successive events occur at the same place in an inertial reference frame, the time interval Δt_0 between them, measured on a single clock where they occur, is the proper time between them. Observers in frames moving relative to that frame will always measure a *larger* value Δt for the time interval, an effect known as time dilation.

- If the relative speed between the two frames is v, then

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}} = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-\beta^2}} = \gamma\,\Delta t_0,$$

where $\beta = v/c$ is the speed parameter and $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1-\beta^2}$ is the Lorentz factor.

What Is Physics?

One principal subject of physics is **relativity,** the field of study that measures events (things that happen): where and when they happen, and by how much any two events are separated in space and in time. In addition, relativity has to do with transforming such measurements (and also measurements of energy and momentum) between reference frames that move relative to each other. (Hence the name *relativity.*)

Transformations and moving reference frames, such as those we discussed in Modules 4-6 and 4-7, were well understood and quite routine to physicists in 1905.

Then Albert Einstein (Fig. 37-1) published his **special theory of relativity.** The adjective *special* means that the theory deals only with **inertial reference frames,** which are frames in which Newton's laws are valid. (Einstein's *general theory of relativity* treats the more challenging situation in which reference frames can undergo gravitational acceleration; in this chapter the term *relativity* implies only inertial reference frames.)

Starting with two deceivingly simple postulates, Einstein stunned the scientific world by showing that the old ideas about relativity were wrong, even though everyone was so accustomed to them that they seemed to be unquestionable common sense. This supposed common sense, however, was derived only from experience with things that move rather slowly. Einstein's relativity, which turns out to be correct for all physically possible speeds, predicted many effects that were, at first study, bizarre because no one had ever experienced them.

Entangled. In particular, Einstein demonstrated that space and time are entangled; that is, the time between two events depends on how far apart they occur, and vice versa. Also, the entanglement is different for observers who move relative to each other. One result is that time does not pass at a fixed rate, as if it were ticked off with mechanical regularity on some master grandfather clock that controls the universe. Rather, that rate is adjustable: Relative motion can change the rate at which time passes. Prior to 1905, no one but a few daydreamers would have thought that. Now, engineers and scientists take it for granted because their experience with special relativity has reshaped their common sense. For example, any engineer involved with the Global Positioning System of the NAVSTAR satellites must routinely use relativity (both special relativity and general relativity) to determine the rate at which time passes on the satellites because that rate differs from the rate on Earth's surface. If the engineers failed to take relativity into account, GPS would become almost useless in less than one day.

Special relativity has the reputation of being difficult. It is not difficult mathematically, at least not here. However, it is difficult in that we must be very careful about *who* measures *what* about an event and just *how* that measurement is made—and it can be difficult because it can contradict routine experience.

© Corbis-Bettmann

Figure 37-1 Einstein posing for a photograph as fame began to accumulate.

The Postulates

We now examine the two postulates of relativity, on which Einstein's theory is based:

1. **The Relativity Postulate:** The laws of physics are the same for observers in all inertial reference frames. No one frame is preferred over any other.

Galileo assumed that the laws of *mechanics* were the same in all inertial reference frames. Einstein extended that idea to include *all* the laws of physics, especially those of electromagnetism and optics. This postulate does *not* say that the measured values of all physical quantities are the same for all inertial observers; most are not the same. It is the *laws of physics,* which relate these measurements to one another, that are the same.

2. **The Speed of Light Postulate:** The speed of light in vacuum has the same value c in all directions and in all inertial reference frames.

We can also phrase this postulate to say that there is in nature an *ultimate speed* c, the same in all directions and in all inertial reference frames. Light happens to travel at this ultimate speed. However, no entity that carries energy or information can exceed this limit. Moreover, no particle that has mass can actually reach speed c, no matter how much or for how long that particle is accelerated. (Alas,

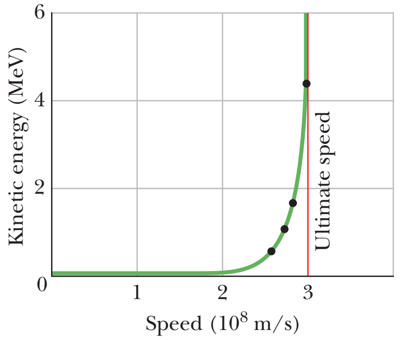


Figure 37-2 The dots show measured values of the kinetic energy of an electron plotted against its measured speed. No matter how much energy is given to an electron (or to any other particle having mass), its speed can never equal or exceed the ultimate limiting speed c. (The plotted curve through the dots shows the predictions of Einstein's special theory of relativity.)

the faster-than-light warp drive used in many science fiction stories appears to be impossible.)

Both postulates have been exhaustively tested, and no exceptions have ever been found.

The Ultimate Speed

The existence of a limit to the speed of accelerated electrons was shown in a 1964 experiment by W. Bertozzi, who accelerated electrons to various measured speeds and—by an independent method—measured their kinetic energies. He found that as the force on a very fast electron is increased, the electron's measured kinetic energy increases toward very large values but its speed does not increase appreciably (Fig. 37-2). Electrons have been accelerated in laboratories to at least 0.999 999 999 95 times the speed of light but—close though it may be—that speed is still less than the ultimate speed c.

This ultimate speed has been defined to be exactly

$$c = 299\,792\,458 \text{ m/s}. \tag{37-1}$$

Caution: So far in this book we have (appropriately) approximated c as 3.0×10^8 m/s, but in this chapter we shall often use the exact value. You might want to store the exact value in your calculator's memory (if it is not there already), to be called up when needed.

Testing the Speed of Light Postulate

If the speed of light is the same in all inertial reference frames, then the speed of light emitted by a source moving relative to, say, a laboratory should be the same as the speed of light that is emitted by a source at rest in the laboratory. This claim has been tested directly, in an experiment of high precision. The "light source" was the *neutral pion* (symbol π^0), an unstable, short-lived particle that can be produced by collisions in a particle accelerator. It decays (transforms) into two gamma rays by the process

$$\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma. \tag{37-2}$$

Gamma rays are part of the electromagnetic spectrum (at very high frequencies) and so obey the speed of light postulate, just as visible light does. (In this chapter we shall use the term light for any type of electromagnetic wave, visible or not.)

In 1964, physicists at CERN, the European particle-physics laboratory near Geneva, generated a beam of pions moving at a speed of 0.999 75c with respect to the laboratory. The experimenters then measured the speed of the gamma rays emitted from these very rapidly moving sources. They found that the speed of the light emitted by the pions was the same as it would be if the pions were at rest in the laboratory, namely c.

Measuring an Event

An **event** is something that happens, and every event can be assigned three space coordinates and one time coordinate. Among many possible events are (1) the turning on or off of a tiny lightbulb, (2) the collision of two particles, (3) the passage of a pulse of light through a specified point, (4) an explosion, and (5) the sweeping of the hand of a clock past a marker on the rim of the clock. A certain observer, fixed in a certain inertial reference frame, might, for example, assign to an event A the coordinates given in Table 37-1. Because space and time are entangled with each other in relativity, we can describe these coordinates collectively as *spacetime* coordinates. The coordinate system itself is part of the reference frame of the observer.

A given event may be recorded by any number of observers, each in a different inertial reference frame. In general, different observers will assign differ-

Table 37-1 **Record of Event *A***

Coordinate	Value
x	3.58 m
y	1.29 m
z	0 m
t	34.5 s

ent spacetime coordinates to the same event. Note that an event does not "belong" to any particular inertial reference frame. An event is just something that happens, and anyone in any reference frame may detect it and assign spacetime coordinates to it.

Travel Times. Making such an assignment can be complicated by a practical problem. For example, suppose a balloon bursts 1 km to your right while a firecracker pops 2 km to your left, both at 9:00 A.M. However, you do not detect either event precisely at 9:00 A.M. because at that instant light from the events has not yet reached you. Because light from the firecracker pop has farther to go, it arrives at your eyes later than does light from the balloon burst, and thus the pop will seem to have occurred later than the burst. To sort out the actual times and to assign 9:00 A.M. as the happening time for both events, you must calculate the travel times of the light and then subtract these times from the arrival times.

This procedure can be very messy in more challenging situations, and we need an easier procedure that automatically eliminates any concern about the travel time from an event to an observer. To set up such a procedure, we shall construct an imaginary array of measuring rods and clocks throughout the observer's inertial frame (the array moves rigidly with the observer). This construction may seem contrived, but it spares us much confusion and calculation and allows us to find the coordinates, as follows.

1. **The Space Coordinates.** We imagine the observer's coordinate system fitted with a close-packed, three-dimensional array of measuring rods, one set of rods parallel to each of the three coordinate axes. These rods provide a way to determine coordinates along the axes. Thus, if the event is, say, the turning on of a small lightbulb, the observer, in order to locate the position of the event, need only read the three space coordinates at the bulb's location.

2. **The Time Coordinate.** For the time coordinate, we imagine that every point of intersection in the array of measuring rods includes a tiny clock, which the observer can read because the clock is illuminated by the light generated by the event. Figure 37-3 suggests one plane in the "jungle gym" of clocks and measuring rods we have described.

   The array of clocks must be synchronized properly. It is not enough to assemble a set of identical clocks, set them all to the same time, and then move them to their assigned positions. We do not know, for example, whether moving the clocks will change their rates. (Actually, it will.) We must put the clocks in place and *then* synchronize them.

   If we had a method of transmitting signals at infinite speed, synchronization would be a simple matter. However, no known signal has this property. We therefore choose light (any part of the electromagnetic spectrum) to send out our synchronizing signals because, in vacuum, light travels at the greatest possible speed, the limiting speed c.

   Here is one of many ways in which an observer might synchronize an array of clocks using light signals: The observer enlists the help of a great number of temporary helpers, one for each clock. The observer then stands at a point selected as the origin and sends out a pulse of light when the origin clock reads $t = 0$. When the light pulse reaches the location of a helper, that helper sets the clock there to read $t = r/c$, where r is the distance between the helper and the origin. The clocks are then synchronized.

3. **The Spacetime Coordinates.** The observer can now assign spacetime coordinates to an event by simply recording the time on the clock nearest the event and the position as measured on the nearest measuring rods. If there are two events, the observer computes their separation in time as the difference in the times on clocks near each and their separation in space from the differences in coordinates on rods near each. We thus avoid the practical problem of calculating the travel times of the signals to the observer from the events.

We use this array to assign spacetime coordinates.

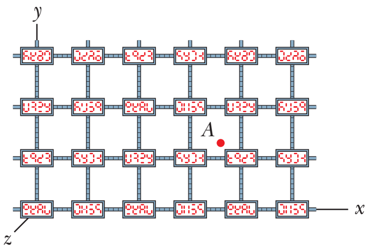


Figure 37-3 One section of a three-dimensional array of clocks and measuring rods by which an observer can assign spacetime coordinates to an event, such as a flash of light at point A. The event's space coordinates are approximately $x = 3.6$ rod lengths, $y = 1.3$ rod lengths, and $z = 0$. The time coordinate is whatever time appears on the clock closest to A at the instant of the flash.

The Relativity of Simultaneity

Suppose that one observer (Sam) notes that two independent events (event Red and event Blue) occur at the same time. Suppose also that another observer (Sally), who is moving at a constant velocity $\vec{v}$ with respect to Sam, also records these same two events. Will Sally also find that they occur at the same time?

The answer is that in general she will not:

> If two observers are in relative motion, they will not, in general, agree as to whether two events are simultaneous. If one observer finds them to be simultaneous, the other generally will not.

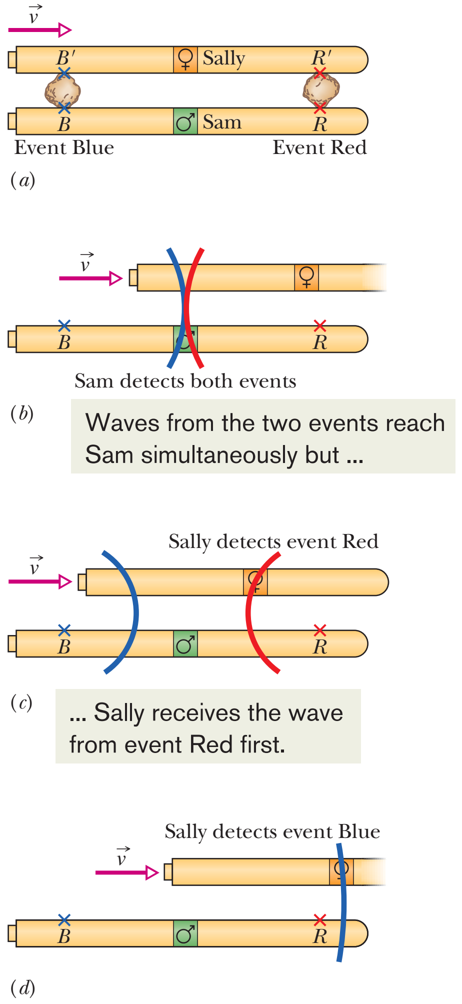
We cannot say that one observer is right and the other wrong. Their observations are equally valid, and there is no reason to favor one over the other.

The realization that two contradictory statements about the same natural events can be correct is a seemingly strange outcome of Einstein's theory. However, in Chapter 17 we saw another way in which motion can affect measurement without balking at the contradictory results: In the Doppler effect, the frequency an observer measures for a sound wave depends on the relative motion of observer and source. Thus, two observers moving relative to each other can measure different frequencies for the same wave, and both measurements are correct.

We conclude the following:

> Simultaneity is not an absolute concept but rather a relative one, depending on the motion of the observer.

If the relative speed of the observers is very much less than the speed of light, then measured departures from simultaneity are so small that they are not noticeable. Such is the case for all our experiences of daily living; that is why the relativity of simultaneity is unfamiliar.



Waves from the two events reach Sam simultaneously but ...

... Sally receives the wave from event Red first.

Figure 37-4 The spaceships of Sally and Sam and the occurrences of events from Sam's view. Sally's ship moves rightward with velocity $\vec{v}$. (*a*) Event Red occurs at positions RR' and event Blue occurs at positions BB'; each event sends out a wave of light. (*b*) Sam simultaneously detects the waves from event Red and event Blue. (*c*) Sally detects the wave from event Red. (*d*) Sally detects the wave from event Blue.

A Closer Look at Simultaneity

Let us clarify the relativity of simultaneity with an example based on the postulates of relativity, no clocks or measuring rods being directly involved. Figure 37-4 shows two long spaceships (the SS *Sally* and the SS *Sam*), which can serve as inertial reference frames for observers Sally and Sam. The two observers are stationed at the midpoints of their ships. The ships are separating along a common x axis, the relative velocity of *Sally* with respect to *Sam* being $\vec{v}$. Figure 37-4*a* shows the ships with the two observer stations momentarily aligned opposite each other.

Two large meteorites strike the ships, one setting off a red flare (event Red) and the other a blue flare (event Blue), not necessarily simultaneously. Each event leaves a permanent mark on each ship, at positions RR' and BB'.

Let us suppose that the expanding wavefronts from the two events happen to reach Sam at the same time, as Fig. 37-4*b* shows. Let us further suppose that, after the episode, Sam finds, by measuring the marks on his spaceship, that he was indeed stationed exactly halfway between the markers B and R on his ship when the two events occurred. He will say:

Sam Light from event Red and light from event Blue reached me at the same time. From the marks on my spaceship, I find that I was standing halfway between the two sources. Therefore, event Red and event Blue were simultaneous events.

As study of Fig. 37-4 shows, Sally and the expanding wavefront from event Red are moving *toward* each other, while she and the expanding wavefront from event Blue are moving in the *same direction*. Thus, the wavefront from event Red will reach Sally *before* the wavefront from event Blue does. She will say:

Sally Light from event Red reached me before light from event Blue did. From the marks on my spaceship, I found that I too was standing halfway between the two sources. Therefore, the events were not simultaneous; event Red occurred first, followed by event Blue.

These reports do not agree. Nevertheless, *both* observers are correct.

Note carefully that there is only one wavefront expanding from the site of each event and that *this wavefront travels with the same speed c in both reference frames,* exactly as the speed of light postulate requires.

It *might* have happened that the meteorites struck the ships in such a way that the two hits appeared to Sally to be simultaneous. If that had been the case, then Sam would have declared them not to be simultaneous.

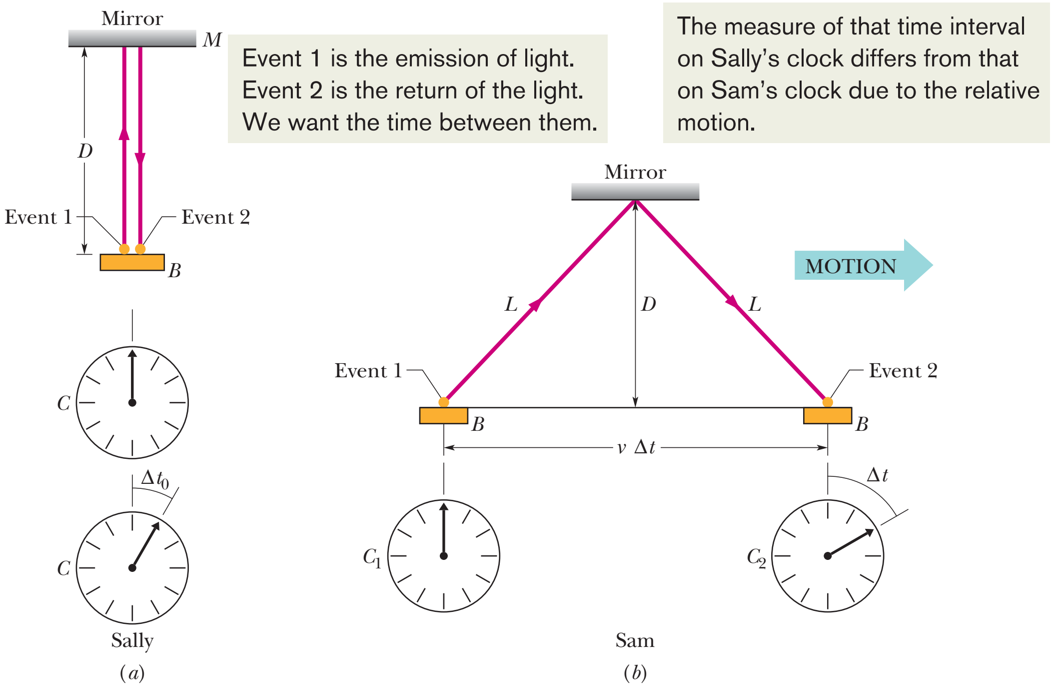
The Relativity of Time

If observers who move relative to each other measure the time interval (or *temporal separation*) between two events, they generally will find different results. Why? Because the spatial separation of the events can affect the time intervals measured by the observers.

> The time interval between two events depends on how far apart they occur in both space and time; that is, their spatial and temporal separations are entangled.

In this module we discuss this entanglement by means of an example; however, the example is restricted in a crucial way: *To one of two observers, the two events occur at the same location.* We shall not get to more general examples until Module 37-3.

Figure 37-5*a* shows the basics of an experiment Sally conducts while she and her equipment—a light source, a mirror, and a clock—ride in a train moving with constant velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to a station. A pulse of light leaves the light source B (event 1), travels vertically upward, is reflected vertically downward by the mirror, and then is detected back at the source (event 2). Sally measures a certain time interval Δt_0 between the two events, related to the distance D from



Event 1 is the emission of light. Event 2 is the return of the light. We want the time between them.

The measure of that time interval on Sally's clock differs from that on Sam's clock due to the relative motion.

Figure 37-5 (*a*) Sally, on the train, measures the time interval Δt_0 between events 1 and 2 using a single clock C on the train. That clock is shown twice: first for event 1 and then for event 2. (*b*) Sam, watching from the station as the events occur, requires two synchronized clocks, C_1 at event 1 and C_2 at event 2, to measure the time interval between the two events; his measured time interval is Δt.

source to mirror by

$$\Delta t_0 = \frac{2D}{c} \quad \text{(Sally)}. \tag{37-3}$$

The two events occur at the same location in Sally's reference frame, and she needs only one clock C at that location to measure the time interval. Clock C is shown twice in Fig. 37-5*a*, at the beginning and end of the interval.

Consider now how these same two events are measured by Sam, who is standing on the station platform as the train passes. Because the equipment moves with the train during the travel time of the light, Sam sees the path of the light as shown in Fig. 37-5*b*. For him, the two events occur at different places in his reference frame, and so to measure the time interval between events, Sam must use *two* synchronized clocks, C_1 and C_2, one at each event. According to Einstein's speed of light postulate, the light travels at the same speed c for Sam as for Sally. Now, however, the light travels distance $2L$ between events 1 and 2. The time interval measured by Sam between the two events is

$$\Delta t = \frac{2L}{c} \quad \text{(Sam)}, \tag{37-4}$$

in which

$$L = \sqrt{(\tfrac{1}{2}v\,\Delta t)^2 + D^2}. \tag{37-5}$$

From Eq. 37-3, we can write this as

$$L = \sqrt{(\tfrac{1}{2}v\,\Delta t)^2 + (\tfrac{1}{2}c\,\Delta t_0)^2}. \tag{37-6}$$

If we eliminate L between Eqs. 37-4 and 37-6 and solve for Δt, we find

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}}. \tag{37-7}$$

Equation 37-7 tells us how Sam's measured interval Δt between the events compares with Sally's interval Δt_0. Because v must be less than c, the denominator in Eq. 37-7 must be less than unity. Thus, Δt must be greater than Δt_0: Sam measures a *greater* time interval between the two events than does Sally. Sam and Sally have measured the time interval between the *same* two events, but the relative motion between Sam and Sally made their measurements *different*. We conclude that relative motion can change the *rate* at which time passes between two events; the key to this effect is the fact that the speed of light is the same for both observers.

We distinguish between the measurements of Sam and Sally in this way:

When two events occur at the same location in an inertial reference frame, the time interval between them, measured in that frame, is called the **proper time interval** or the **proper time.** Measurements of the same time interval from any other inertial reference frame are always greater.

Thus, Sally measures a proper time interval, and Sam measures a greater time interval. (The term *proper* is unfortunate in that it implies that any other measurement is improper or nonreal. That is just not so.) The amount by which a measured time interval is greater than the corresponding proper time interval is called **time dilation.** (To dilate is to expand or stretch; here the time interval is expanded or stretched.)

Often the dimensionless ratio v/c in Eq. 37-7 is replaced with β, called the **speed parameter,** and the dimensionless inverse square root in Eq. 37-7 is often replaced with γ, called the **Lorentz factor:**

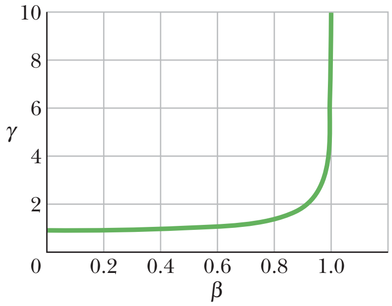
$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \beta^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}}. \tag{37-8}$$

With these replacements, we can rewrite Eq. 37-7 as

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0 \quad \text{(time dilation).} \tag{37-9}$$

The speed parameter β is always less than unity, and, provided v is not zero, γ is always greater than unity. However, the difference between γ and 1 is not significant unless $v > 0.1c$. Thus, in general, "old relativity" works well enough for $v < 0.1c$, but we must use special relativity for greater values of v. As shown in Fig. 37-6, γ increases rapidly in magnitude as β approaches 1 (as v approaches c). Therefore, the greater the relative speed between Sally and Sam is, the greater will be the time interval measured by Sam, until at a great enough speed, the interval takes "forever."

You might wonder what Sally says about Sam's having measured a greater time interval than she did. His measurement comes as no surprise to her, because to her, he failed to synchronize his clocks C_1 and C_2 in spite of his insistence that he did. Recall that observers in relative motion generally do not agree about simultaneity. Here, Sam insists that his two clocks simultaneously read the same time when event 1 occurred. To Sally, however, Sam's clock C_2 was erroneously set ahead during the synchronization process. Thus, when Sam read the time of event 2 on it, to Sally he was reading off a time that was too large, and that is why the time interval he measured between the two events was greater than the interval she measured.



As the speed parameter goes to 1.0 (as the speed approaches c), the Lorentz factor approaches infinity.

Figure 37-6 A plot of the Lorentz factor γ as a function of the speed parameter $\beta\ (= v/c)$.

Two Tests of Time Dilation

1. **Microscopic Clocks.** Subatomic particles called *muons* are unstable; that is, when a muon is produced, it lasts for only a short time before it *decays* (transforms into particles of other types). The *lifetime* of a muon is the time interval between its production (event 1) and its decay (event 2). When muons are stationary and their lifetimes are measured with stationary clocks (say, in a laboratory), their average lifetime is 2.200 μs. This is a proper time interval because, for each muon, events 1 and 2 occur at the same location in the reference frame of the muon—namely, at the muon itself. We can represent this proper time interval with Δt_0; moreover, we can call the reference frame in which it is measured the *rest frame* of the muon.

   If, instead, the muons are moving, say, through a laboratory, then measurements of their lifetimes made with the laboratory clocks should yield a greater average lifetime (a dilated average lifetime). To check this conclusion, measurements were made of the average lifetime of muons moving with a speed of 0.9994c relative to laboratory clocks. From Eq. 37-8, with $\beta = 0.9994$, the Lorentz factor for this speed is

   $$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\beta^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(0.9994)^2}} = 28.87.$$

   Equation 37-9 then yields, for the average dilated lifetime,

   $$\Delta t = \gamma\Delta t_0 = (28.87)(2.200\ \mu\text{s}) = 63.51\ \mu\text{s}.$$

   The actual measured value matched this result within experimental error.

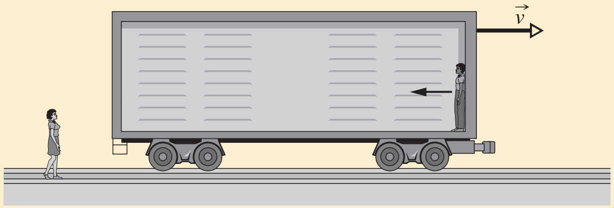
2. **Macroscopic Clocks.** In October 1971, Joseph Hafele and Richard Keating carried out what must have been a grueling experiment. They flew four portable atomic clocks twice around the world on commercial airlines, once in each direction. Their purpose was "to test Einstein's theory of relativity with macroscopic clocks." As we have just seen, the time dilation predictions of Einstein's theory have been confirmed on a microscopic scale, but there is great comfort in seeing a confirmation made with an actual clock. Such macroscopic measurements became possible only because of the very high precision of modern atomic clocks. Hafele and Keating verified the predictions of the theory to within 10%. (Einstein's *general* theory of relativity, which predicts

that the rate at which time passes on a clock is influenced by the gravitational force on the clock, also plays a role in this experiment.)

A few years later, physicists at the University of Maryland flew an atomic clock round and round over Chesapeake Bay for flights lasting 15 h and succeeded in checking the time dilation prediction to better than 1%. Today, when atomic clocks are transported from one place to another for calibration or other purposes, the time dilation caused by their motion is always taken into account.

Checkpoint 1

Standing beside railroad tracks, we are suddenly startled by a relativistic boxcar traveling past us as shown in the figure. Inside, a well-equipped hobo fires a laser pulse from the front of the boxcar to its rear. (a) Is our measurement of the speed of the pulse greater than, less than, or the same as that measured by the hobo? (b) Is his measurement of the flight time of the pulse a proper time? (c) Are his measurement and our measurement of the flight time related by Eq. 37-9?



Sample Problem 37.01 Time dilation for a space traveler who returns to Earth

Your starship passes Earth with a relative speed of 0.9990c. After traveling 10.0 y (your time), you stop at lookout post LP13, turn, and then travel back to Earth with the same relative speed. The trip back takes another 10.0 y (your time). How long does the round trip take according to measurements made on Earth? (Neglect any effects due to the accelerations involved with stopping, turning, and getting back up to speed.)

KEY IDEAS

We begin by analyzing the outward trip:

1. This problem involves measurements made from two (inertial) reference frames, one attached to Earth and the other (your reference frame) attached to your ship.
2. The outward trip involves two events: the start of the trip at Earth and the end of the trip at LP13.
3. Your measurement of 10.0 y for the outward trip is the proper time Δt_0 between those two events, because the events occur at the same location in your reference frame—namely, on your ship.
4. The Earth-frame measurement of the time interval Δt for the outward trip must be greater than Δt_0, according to Eq. 37-9 ($\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0$) for time dilation.

Calculations: Using Eq. 37-8 to substitute for γ in Eq. 37-9, we find

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}}$$

$$= \frac{10.0\text{ y}}{\sqrt{1-(0.9990c/c)^2}} = (22.37)(10.0\text{ y}) = 224\text{ y}.$$

On the return trip, we have the same situation and the same data. Thus, the round trip requires 20 y of your time but

$$\Delta t_{\text{total}} = (2)(224\text{ y}) = 448\text{ y} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

of Earth time. In other words, you have aged 20 y while the Earth has aged 448 y. Although you cannot travel into the past (as far as we know), you can travel into the future of, say, Earth, by using high-speed relative motion to adjust the rate at which time passes.

Sample Problem 37.02 Time dilation and travel distance for a relativistic particle

The elementary particle known as the *positive kaon* (K^+) is unstable in that it can *decay* (transform) into other particles. Although the decay occurs randomly, we find that, on average, a positive kaon has a lifetime of 0.1237 μs when stationary—that is, when the lifetime is measured in the rest frame of the kaon. If a positive kaon has a speed of 0.990c relative to a laboratory reference frame when the kaon is produced, how far can it travel in that frame during its lifetime according to *classical physics* (which is a reasonable approximation for speeds much less than c) and according to special relativity (which is correct for all physically possible speeds)?

KEY IDEAS

1. We have two (inertial) reference frames, one attached to the kaon and the other attached to the laboratory.
2. This problem also involves two events: the start of the kaon's travel (when the kaon is produced) and the end of that travel (at the end of the kaon's lifetime).

3. The distance traveled by the kaon between those two events is related to its speed v and the time interval for the travel by

$$v = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time interval}}. \tag{37-10}$$

With these ideas in mind, let us solve for the distance first with classical physics and then with special relativity.

Classical physics: In classical physics we would find the same distance and time interval (in Eq. 37-10) whether we measured them from the kaon frame or from the laboratory frame. Thus, we need not be careful about the frame in which the measurements are made. To find the kaon's travel distance d_{cp} according to classical physics, we first rewrite Eq. 37-10 as

$$d_{cp} = v\,\Delta t, \tag{37-11}$$

where Δt is the time interval between the two events in either frame. Then, substituting $0.990c$ for v and $0.1237\ \mu\text{s}$ for Δt in Eq. 37-11, we find

$$\begin{aligned} d_{cp} &= (0.990c)\,\Delta t \\ &= (0.990)(299\,792\,458\ \text{m/s})(0.1237 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}) \\ &= 36.7\ \text{m}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This is how far the kaon would travel if classical physics were correct at speeds close to c.

Special relativity: In special relativity we must be very careful that both the distance and the time interval in Eq. 37-10 are measured in the *same* reference frame—especially when the speed is close to c, as here. Thus, to find the actual travel distance d_{sr} of the kaon *as measured from the laboratory frame* and according to special relativity, we rewrite Eq. 37-10 as

$$d_{sr} = v\,\Delta t, \tag{37-12}$$

where Δt is the time interval between the two events *as measured from the laboratory frame.*

Before we can evaluate d_{sr} in Eq. 37-12, we must find Δt. The $0.1237\ \mu\text{s}$ time interval is a proper time because the two events occur at the same location in the kaon frame—namely, at the kaon itself. Therefore, let Δt_0 represent this proper time interval. Then we can use Eq. 37-9 ($\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0$) for time dilation to find the time interval Δt as measured from the laboratory frame. Using Eq. 37-8 to substitute for γ in Eq. 37-9 leads to

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}} = \frac{0.1237 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}}{\sqrt{1 - (0.990c/c)^2}} = 8.769 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{s}.$$

This is about seven times longer than the kaon's proper lifetime. That is, the kaon's lifetime is about seven times longer in the laboratory frame than in its own frame—the kaon's lifetime is dilated. We can now evaluate Eq. 37-12 for the travel distance d_{sr} in the laboratory frame as

$$\begin{aligned} d_{sr} &= v\,\Delta t = (0.990c)\,\Delta t \\ &= (0.990)(299\,792\,458\ \text{m/s})(8.769 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{s}) \\ &= 260\ \text{m}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This is about seven times d_{cp}. Experiments like the one outlined here, which verify special relativity, became routine in physics laboratories decades ago. The engineering design and the construction of any scientific or medical facility that employs high-speed particles must take relativity into account.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

37-2 THE RELATIVITY OF LENGTH

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.11 Identify that because spatial and temporal separations are entangled, measurements of the lengths of objects may be different in two frames with relative motion.

37.12 Identify the condition in which a measured length is a proper length.

37.13 Identify that if a length is a proper length as measured in one frame, the length is less (contracted) as measured in another frame that is in relative motion *parallel* to the length.

37.14 Apply the relationship between contracted length L, proper length L_0, and the relative speed v between two frames.

Key Ideas

- The length L_0 of an object measured by an observer in an inertial reference frame in which the object is at rest is called its proper length. Observers in frames moving relative to that frame and parallel to that length will always measure a shorter length, an effect known as length contraction.
- If the relative speed between frames is v, the contracted length L and the proper length L_0 are related by

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1 - \beta^2} = \frac{L_0}{\gamma},$$

where $\beta = v/c$ is the speed parameter and $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - \beta^2}$ is the Lorentz factor.

The Relativity of Length

If you want to measure the length of a rod that is at rest with respect to you, you can—at your leisure—note the positions of its end points on a long stationary scale and subtract one reading from the other. If the rod is moving, however, you must note the positions of the end points *simultaneously* (in your reference frame) or your measurement cannot be called a length. Figure 37-7 suggests the difficulty of trying to measure the length of a moving penguin by locating its front and back at different times. Because simultaneity is relative and it enters into length measurements, length should also be a relative quantity. It is.

Let L_0 be the length of a rod that you measure when the rod is stationary (meaning you and it are in the same reference frame, the rod's rest frame). If, instead, there is relative motion at speed v between you and the rod *along the length of the rod,* then with simultaneous measurements you obtain a length L given by

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1-\beta^2} = \frac{L_0}{\gamma} \quad \text{(length contraction).} \qquad (37\text{-}13)$$

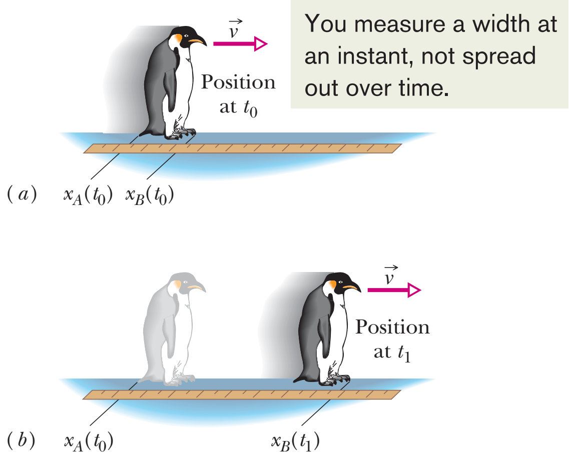
Because the Lorentz factor γ is always greater than unity if there is relative motion, L is less than L_0. The relative motion causes a *length contraction,* and L is called a *contracted length.* A greater speed v results in a greater contraction.

The length L_0 of an object measured in the rest frame of the object is its **proper length** or **rest length.** Measurements of the length from any reference frame that is in relative motion *parallel* to that length are always less than the proper length.

Be careful: Length contraction occurs only along the direction of relative motion. Also, the length that is measured does not have to be that of an object like a rod or a circle. Instead, it can be the length (or distance) between two objects in the same rest frame—for example, the Sun and a nearby star (which are, at least approximately, at rest relative to each other).

Does a moving object *really* shrink? Reality is based on observations and measurements; if the results are always consistent and if no error can be determined, then what is observed and measured is real. In that sense, the object really does shrink. However, a more precise statement is that the object *is really measured* to shrink—motion affects that measurement and thus reality.

When you measure a contracted length for, say, a rod, what does an observer moving with the rod say of your measurement? To that observer, you did not locate the two ends of the rod simultaneously. (Recall that observers in motion relative to each other do not agree about simultaneity.) To the observer, you first located the rod's front end and then, slightly later, its rear end, and that is why you measured a length that is less than the proper length.



You measure a width at an instant, not spread out over time.

Figure 37-7 If you want to measure the front-to-back length of a penguin while it is moving, you must mark the positions of its front and back simultaneously (in your reference frame), as in (*a*), rather than at different times, as in (*b*).

Proof of Eq. 37-13

Length contraction is a direct consequence of time dilation. Consider once more our two observers. This time, both Sally, seated on a train moving through a station, and Sam, again on the station platform, want to measure the length of the platform. Sam, using a tape measure, finds the length to be L_0, a proper length because the platform is at rest with respect to him. Sam also notes that Sally, on the train, moves through this length in a time $\Delta t = L_0/v$, where v is the speed of the train; that is,

$$L_0 = v\,\Delta t \quad \text{(Sam).} \qquad (37\text{-}14)$$

This time interval Δt is not a proper time interval because the two events that define it (Sally passes the back of the platform and Sally passes the front of the platform) occur at two different places, and therefore Sam must use two synchronized clocks to measure the time interval Δt.

For Sally, however, the platform is moving past her. She finds that the two events measured by Sam occur *at the same place* in her reference frame. She can time them with a single stationary clock, and so the interval Δt_0 that she measures is a proper time interval. To her, the length L of the platform is given by

$$L = v\,\Delta t_0 \qquad \text{(Sally)}. \tag{37-15}$$

If we divide Eq. 37-15 by Eq. 37-14 and apply Eq. 37-9, the time dilation equation, we have

$$\frac{L}{L_0} = \frac{v\,\Delta t_0}{v\,\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\gamma},$$

or

$$L = \frac{L_0}{\gamma}, \tag{37-16}$$

which is Eq. 37-13, the length contraction equation.

Sample Problem 37.03 Time dilation and length contraction as seen from each frame

In Fig. 37-8, Sally (at point A) and Sam's spaceship (of proper length $L_0 = 230$ m) pass each other with constant relative speed v. Sally measures a time interval of 3.57 μs for the ship to pass her (from the passage of point B in Fig. 37-8*a* to the passage of point C in Fig. 37-8*b*). In terms of c, what is the relative speed v between Sally and the ship?

KEY IDEAS

Let's assume that speed v is near c. Then:

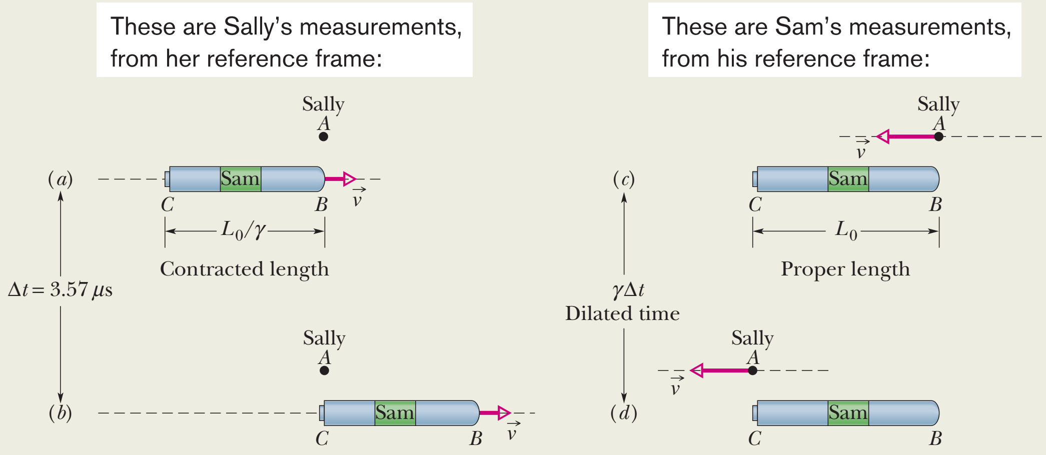
1. This problem involves measurements made from two (inertial) reference frames, one attached to Sally and the other attached to Sam and his spaceship.
2. This problem also involves two events: the first is the passage of point B past Sally (Fig. 37-8*a*) and the second is the passage of point C past her (Fig. 37-8*b*).
3. From either reference frame, the other reference frame passes at speed v and moves a certain distance in the time interval between the two events:

$$v = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time interval}}. \tag{37-17}$$

Because speed v is assumed to be near the speed of light, we must be careful that the distance and the time interval in Eq. 37-17 are measured in the *same* reference frame.

Calculations: We are free to use either frame for the measurements. Because we know that the time interval Δt between the two events measured from Sally's frame is 3.57 μs, let us also use the distance L between the two events measured from her frame. Equation 37-17 then becomes

$$v = \frac{L}{\Delta t}. \tag{37-18}$$



These are Sally's measurements, from her reference frame:

These are Sam's measurements, from his reference frame:

Figure 37-8 (*a*)–(*b*) Event 1 occurs when point B passes Sally (at point A) and event 2 occurs when point C passes her. (*c*)–(*d*) Event 1 occurs when Sally passes point B and event 2 occurs when she passes point C.

We do not know L, but we can relate it to the given L_0: The distance between the two events as measured from Sam's frame is the ship's proper length L_0. Thus, the distance L measured from Sally's frame must be less than L_0, as given by Eq. 37-13 ($L = L_0/\gamma$) for length contraction. Substituting L_0/γ for L in Eq. 37-18 and then substituting Eq. 37-8 for γ, we find

$$v = \frac{L_0/\gamma}{\Delta t} = \frac{L_0\sqrt{(1 - (v/c)^2}}{\Delta t}.$$

Solving this equation for v (notice that it is on the left and also buried in the Lorentz factor) leads us to

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \frac{L_0 c}{\sqrt{(c\,\Delta t)^2 + L_0^2}} \\ &= \frac{(230\text{ m})c}{\sqrt{(299\,792\,458\text{ m/s})^2(3.57 \times 10^{-6}\text{ s})^2 + (230\text{ m})^2}} \\ &= 0.210c. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Note that only the relative motion of Sally and Sam matters here; whether either is stationary relative to, say, a space station is irrelevant. In Figs. 37-8*a* and *b* we took Sally to be stationary, but we could instead have taken the ship to be stationary, with Sally moving to the left past it. Event 1 is again when Sally and point B are aligned (Fig. 37-8*c*), and event 2 is again when Sally and point C are aligned (Fig. 37-8*d*). However, we are now using Sam's measurements. So the length between the two events in *his* frame is the proper length L_0 of the ship and the time interval between them is not Sally's measurement Δt but a dilated time interval $\gamma\,\Delta t$.

Substituting Sam's measurements into Eq. 37-17, we have

$$v = \frac{L_0}{\gamma \Delta t},$$

which is exactly what we found using Sally's measurements. Thus, we get the same result of $v = 0.210c$ with either set of measurements, *but we must be careful not to mix the measurements from the two frames.*

Sample Problem 37.04 Time dilation and length contraction in outrunning a supernova

Caught by surprise near a supernova, you race away from the explosion in your spaceship, hoping to outrun the high-speed material ejected toward you. Your Lorentz factor γ relative to the inertial reference frame of the local stars is 22.4.

(a) To reach a safe distance, you figure you need to cover 9.00×10^{16} m as measured in the reference frame of the local stars. How long will the flight take, as measured in that frame?

KEY IDEAS

From Chapter 2, for constant speed, we know that

$$\text{speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time interval}}. \qquad (37\text{-}19)$$

From Fig. 37-6, we see that because your Lorentz factor γ relative to the stars is 22.4 (large), your relative speed v is almost c—so close that we can approximate it as c. Then for speed $v \approx c$, we must be careful that the distance and the time interval in Eq. 37-19 are measured in the *same* reference frame.

Calculations: The given distance (9.00×10^{16} m) for the length of your travel path is measured in the reference frame of the stars, and the requested time interval Δt is to be measured in that same frame. Thus, we can write

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{time interval}\\ \text{relative to stars}\end{pmatrix} = \frac{\text{distance relative to stars}}{c}.$$

Then substituting the given distance, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix}\text{time interval}\\ \text{relative to stars}\end{pmatrix} &= \frac{9.00 \times 10^{16}\text{ m}}{299\,792\,458\text{ m/s}} \\ &= 3.00 \times 10^8\text{ s} = 9.51\text{ y}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

(b) How long does that trip take according to you (in your reference frame)?

KEY IDEAS

1. We now want the time interval measured in a different reference frame—namely, yours. Thus, we need to transform the data given in the reference frame of the stars to your frame.
2. The given path length of 9.00×10^{16} m, measured in the reference frame of the stars, is a proper length L_0, because the two ends of the path are at rest in that frame. As observed from your reference frame, the stars' reference frame and those two ends of the path race past you at a relative speed of $v \approx c$.
3. You measure a contracted length L_0/γ for the path, not the proper length L_0.

Calculations: We can now rewrite Eq. 37-19 as

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{time interval}\\ \text{relative to you}\end{pmatrix} = \frac{\text{distance relative to you}}{c} = \frac{L_0/\gamma}{c}.$$

Substituting known data, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix}\text{time interval}\\ \text{relative to you}\end{pmatrix} &= \frac{(9.00 \times 10^{16}\text{ m})/22.4}{299\,792\,458\text{ m/s}} \\ &= 1.340 \times 10^7\text{ s} = 0.425\text{ y}. \quad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

In part (a) we found that the flight takes 9.51 y in the reference frame of the stars. However, here we find that it takes only 0.425 y in your frame, due to the relative motion and the resulting contracted length of the path.

WileyPLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

37-3 THE LORENTZ TRANSFORMATION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.15 For frames with relative motion, apply the Galilean transformation to transform an event's position from one frame to the other.

37.16 Identify that a Galilean transformation is approximately correct for slow relative speeds but the Lorentz transformations are the correct transformations for any physically possible speed.

37.17 Apply the Lorentz transformations for the spatial and temporal separations of two events as measured in two frames with a relative speed v.

37.18 From the Lorentz transformations, derive the equations for time dilation and length contraction.

37.19 From the Lorentz transformations show that if two events are simultaneous but spatially separated in one frame, they cannot be simultaneous in another frame with relative motion.

Key Idea

- The Lorentz transformation equations relate the spacetime coordinates of a single event as seen by observers in two inertial frames, S and S', where S' is moving relative to S with velocity v in the positive x and x' direction. The four coordinates are related by

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= \gamma(x - vt), \\ y' &= y, \\ z' &= z, \\ t' &= \gamma(t - vx/c^2). \end{aligned}$$

The Lorentz Transformation

Figure 37-9 shows inertial reference frame S' moving with speed v relative to frame S, in the common positive direction of their horizontal axes (marked x and x'). An observer in S reports spacetime coordinates x, y, z, t for an event, and an observer in S' reports x', y', z', t' for the same event. How are these sets of numbers related? We claim at once (although it requires proof) that the y and z coordinates, which are perpendicular to the motion, are not affected by the motion; that is, $y = y'$ and $z = z'$. Our interest then reduces to the relation between x and x' and that between t and t'.

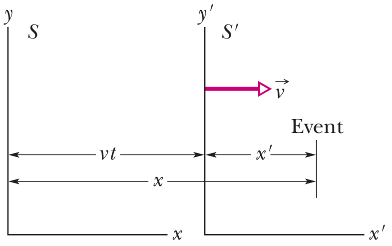


Figure 37-9 Two inertial reference frames: frame S' has velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to frame S.

The Galilean Transformation Equations

Prior to Einstein's publication of his special theory of relativity, the four coordinates of interest were assumed to be related by the *Galilean transformation equations:*

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x - vt \\ t' &= t \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(Galilean transformation equations; approximately valid at low speeds).} \qquad (37\text{-}20)$$

(These equations are written with the assumption that $t = t' = 0$ when the origins of S and S' coincide.) You can verify the first equation with Fig. 37-9. The second equation effectively claims that time passes at the same rate for observers in both reference frames. That would have been so obviously true to a scientist prior to Einstein that it would not even have been mentioned. When speed v is small compared to c, Eqs. 37-20 generally work well.

The Lorentz Transformation Equations

Equations 37-20 work well when speed v is small compared to c, but they are actually incorrect for any speed and are very wrong when v is greater than about $0.10c$. The equations that are correct for any physically possible speed are called the **Lorentz transformation equations*** (or simply the Lorentz transformations).

---

*You may wonder why we do not call these the *Einstein transformation equations* (and why not the *Einstein factor* for γ). H. A. Lorentz actually derived these equations before Einstein did, but as the great Dutch physicist graciously conceded, he did not take the further bold step of interpreting these equations as describing the true nature of space and time. It is this interpretation, first made by Einstein, that is at the heart of relativity.

We can derive them from the postulates of relativity, but here we shall instead first examine them and then justify them by showing them to be consistent with our results for simultaneity, time dilation, and length contraction. Assuming that $t = t' = 0$ when the origins of S and S' coincide in Fig. 37-9 (event 1), then the spatial and temporal coordinates of any other event are given by

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= \gamma(x - vt), \\ y' &= y, \\ z' &= z, \\ t' &= \gamma(t - vx/c^2) \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{array}{l}\text{(Lorentz transformation equations;}\\ \text{valid at all physically possible speeds).}\end{array} \qquad (37\text{-}21)$$

Note that the spatial values x and the temporal values t are bound together in the first and last equations. This entanglement of space and time was a prime message of Einstein's theory, a message that was long rejected by many of his contemporaries.

It is a formal requirement of relativistic equations that they should reduce to familiar classical equations if we let c approach infinity. That is, if the speed of light were infinitely great, *all* finite speeds would be "low" and classical equations would never fail. If we let $c \rightarrow \infty$ in Eqs. 37-21, $\gamma \rightarrow 1$ and these equations reduce—as we expect—to the Galilean equations (Eqs. 37-20). You should check this.

Equations 37-21 are written in a form that is useful if we are given x and t and wish to find x' and t'. We may wish to go the other way, however. In that case we simply solve Eqs. 37-21 for x and t, obtaining

$$x = \gamma(x' + vt') \quad \text{and} \quad t = \gamma(t' + vx'/c^2). \qquad (37\text{-}22)$$

Comparison shows that, starting from either Eqs. 37-21 or Eqs. 37-22, you can find the other set by interchanging primed and unprimed quantities and reversing the sign of the relative velocity v. (For example, if the S' frame has a positive velocity relative to an observer in the S frame as in Fig. 37-9, then the S frame has a *negative* velocity relative to an observer in the S' frame.)

Equations 37-21 relate the coordinates of a second event when the first event is the passing of the origins of S and S' at $t = t' = 0$. However, in general we do not want to restrict the first event to being such a passage. So, let's rewrite the Lorentz transformations in terms of any pair of events 1 and 2, with spatial and temporal separations

$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta t = t_2 - t_1,$$

as measured by an observer in S, and

$$\Delta x' = x'_2 - x'_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta t' = t'_2 - t'_1,$$

as measured by an observer in S'. Table 37-2 displays the Lorentz equations in difference form, suitable for analyzing pairs of events. The equations in the table were derived by simply substituting differences (such as Δx and $\Delta x'$) for the four variables in Eqs. 37-21 and 37-22.

Be careful: When substituting values for these differences, you must be consistent and not mix the values for the first event with those for the second event. Also, if, say, Δx is a negative quantity, you must be certain to include the minus sign in a substitution.

Table 37-2 The Lorentz Transformation Equations for Pairs of Events

1. $\Delta x = \gamma(\Delta x' + v\,\Delta t')$
2. $\Delta t = \gamma(\Delta t' + v\,\Delta x'/c^2)$

1′. $\Delta x' = \gamma(\Delta x - v\,\Delta t)$
2′. $\Delta t' = \gamma(\Delta t - v\,\Delta x/c^2)$

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \beta^2}}$$

Frame S' moves at velocity v relative to frame S.

Checkpoint 2

In Fig. 37-9, frame S' has velocity $0.90c$ relative to frame S. An observer in frame S' measures two events as occurring at the following spacetime coordinates: event Yellow at (5.0 m, 20 ns) and event Green at (−2.0 m, 45 ns). An observer in frame S wants to find the temporal separation $\Delta t_{GY} = t_G - t_Y$ between the events. (a) Which equation in Table 37-2 should be used? (b) Should $+0.90c$ or $-0.90c$ be substituted for v in the parentheses on the equation's right side and in the Lorentz factor γ? What value should be substituted into the (c) first and (d) second term in the parentheses?

Some Consequences of the Lorentz Equations

Here we use the equations of Table 37-2 to affirm some of the conclusions that we reached earlier by arguments based directly on the postulates.

Simultaneity

Consider Eq. 2 of Table 37-2,

$$\Delta t = \gamma\left(\Delta t' + \frac{v\,\Delta x'}{c^2}\right). \tag{37-23}$$

If two events occur at different places in reference frame S' of Fig. 37-9, then $\Delta x'$ in this equation is not zero. It follows that even if the events are simultaneous in S' (thus $\Delta t' = 0$), they will not be simultaneous in frame S. (This is in accord with our conclusion in Module 37-1.) The time interval between the events in S will be

$$\Delta t = \gamma\frac{v\,\Delta x'}{c^2} \quad \text{(simultaneous events in } S'\text{)}.$$

Thus, the spatial separation $\Delta x'$ guarantees a temporal separation Δt.

Time Dilation

Suppose now that two events occur at the same place in S' (thus $\Delta x' = 0$) but at different times (thus $\Delta t' \neq 0$). Equation 37-23 then reduces to

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t' \quad \text{(events in same place in } S'\text{)}. \tag{37-24}$$

This confirms time dilation between frames S and S'. Moreover, because the two events occur at the same place in S', the time interval $\Delta t'$ between them can be measured with a single clock, located at that place. Under these conditions, the measured interval is a proper time interval, and we can label it Δt_0 as we have previously labeled proper times. Thus, with that label Eq. 37-24 becomes

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0 \quad \text{(time dilation)},$$

which is exactly Eq. 37-9, the time dilation equation. Thus, time dilation is a special case of the more general Lorentz equations.

Length Contraction

Consider Eq. 1′ of Table 37-2,

$$\Delta x' = \gamma(\Delta x - v\,\Delta t). \tag{37-25}$$

If a rod lies parallel to the x and x' axes of Fig. 37-9 and is at rest in reference frame S', an observer in S' can measure its length at leisure. One way to do so is by subtracting the coordinates of the end points of the rod. The value of $\Delta x'$ that is obtained will be the proper length L_0 of the rod because the measurements are made in a frame where the rod is at rest.

Suppose the rod is moving in frame S. This means that Δx can be identified as the length L of the rod in frame S only if the coordinates of the rod's end points are measured *simultaneously*—that is, if $\Delta t = 0$. If we put $\Delta x' = L_0$, $\Delta x = L$, and $\Delta t = 0$ in Eq. 37-25, we find

$$L = \frac{L_0}{\gamma} \quad \text{(length contraction)}, \tag{37-26}$$

which is exactly Eq. 37-13, the length contraction equation. Thus, length contraction is a special case of the more general Lorentz equations.

Sample Problem 37.05 Lorentz transformations and reversing the sequence of events

An Earth starship has been sent to check an Earth outpost on the planet P1407, whose moon houses a battle group of the often hostile Reptulians. As the ship follows a straight-line course first past the planet and then past the moon, it detects a high-energy microwave burst at the Reptulian moon base and then, 1.10 s later, an explosion at the Earth outpost, which is 4.00×10^8 m from the Reptulian base as measured from the ship's reference frame. The Reptulians have obviously attacked the Earth outpost, and so the starship begins to prepare for a confrontation with them.

(a) The speed of the ship relative to the planet and its moon is $0.980c$. What are the distance and time interval between the burst and the explosion as measured in the planet–moon frame (and thus according to the occupants of the stations)?

KEY IDEAS

1. This problem involves measurements made from two reference frames, the planet–moon frame and the starship frame.
2. We have two events: the burst and the explosion.
3. We need to transform the given data as measured in the starship frame to the corresponding data as measured in the planet–moon frame.

Starship frame: Before we get to the transformation, we need to carefully choose our notation. We begin with a sketch of the situation as shown in Fig. 37-10. There, we have chosen the ship's frame S to be stationary and the planet–moon frame S' to be moving with positive velocity (rightward). (This is an arbitrary choice; we could, instead, have chosen the planet–moon frame to be stationary. Then we would redraw $\vec{v}$ in Fig. 37-10 as being attached to the S frame and indicating leftward motion; v would then be a negative quantity. The results would be the same.) Let subscripts e and b represent the explosion and burst, respectively. Then the given data, all in the unprimed (starship) reference frame, are

$$\Delta x = x_e - x_b = +4.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m}$$

and

$$\Delta t = t_e - t_b = +1.10 \text{ s}.$$

Here, Δx is a positive quantity because in Fig. 37-10, the coordinate x_e for the explosion is greater than the coordinate x_b for the burst; Δt is also a positive quantity because the time t_e of the explosion is greater (later) than the time t_b of the burst.

The relative motion alters the time intervals between events and maybe even their sequence.

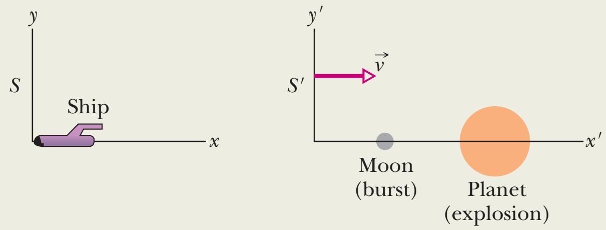


Figure 37-10 A planet and its moon in reference frame S' move rightward with speed v relative to a starship in reference frame S.

Planet–moon frame: We seek $\Delta x'$ and $\Delta t'$, which we shall get by transforming the given S-frame data to the planet–moon frame S'. Because we are considering a pair of events, we choose transformation equations from Table 37-2—namely, Eqs. 1′ and 2′:

$$\Delta x' = \gamma(\Delta x - v\,\Delta t) \tag{37-27}$$

and

$$\Delta t' = \gamma\left(\Delta t - \frac{v\,\Delta x}{c^2}\right). \tag{37-28}$$

Here, $v = +0.980c$ and the Lorentz factor is

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(+0.980c/c)^2}} = 5.0252.$$

Equation 37-27 then becomes

$$\Delta x' = (5.0252)[4.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m} - (+0.980\,c)(1.10 \text{ s})]$$
$$= 3.86 \times 10^8 \text{ m}, \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

and Eq. 37-28 becomes

$$\Delta t' = (5.0252)\left[(1.10 \text{ s}) - \frac{(+0.980c)(4.00 \times 10^8 \text{m})}{c^2}\right]$$
$$= -1.04 \text{ s}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) What is the meaning of the minus sign in the value for $\Delta t'$?

Reasoning: We must be consistent with the notation we set up in part (a). Recall how we originally defined the time interval between burst and explosion: $\Delta t = t_e - t_b = +1.10$ s. To be consistent with that choice of notation, our definition of $\Delta t'$ must be $t'_e - t'_b$; thus, we have found that

$$\Delta t' = t'_e - t'_b = -1.04 \text{ s}.$$

The minus sign here tells us that $t'_b > t'_e$; that is, in the planet–moon reference frame, the burst occurred 1.04 s *after* the explosion, not 1.10 s *before* the explosion as detected in the ship frame.

(c) Did the burst cause the explosion, or vice versa?

KEY IDEA

The sequence of events measured in the planet–moon reference frame is the reverse of that measured in the ship frame. In either situation, if there is a causal relationship between the two events, information must travel from the location of one event to the location of the other to cause it.

Checking the speed: Let us check the required speed of the information. In the ship frame, this speed is

$$v_{\text{info}} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{4.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m}}{1.10 \text{ s}} = 3.64 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s},$$

but that speed is impossible because it exceeds c. In the planet–moon frame, the speed comes out to be 3.70×10^8 m/s, also impossible. Therefore, neither event could possibly have caused the other event; that is, they are *unrelated* events. Thus, the starship should stand down and not confront the Reptulians.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

37-4 THE RELATIVITY OF VELOCITIES

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.20 With a sketch, explain the arrangement in which a particle's velocity is to be measured relative to two frames that have relative motion.

37.21 Apply the relationship for a relativistic velocity transformation between two frames with relative motion.

Key Idea

- When a particle is moving with speed u' in the positive x' direction in an inertial reference frame S' that itself is moving with speed v parallel to the x direction of a second inertial frame S, the speed u of the particle as measured in S is

$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2} \quad \text{(relativistic velocity).}$$

The Relativity of Velocities

Here we wish to use the Lorentz transformation equations to compare the velocities that two observers in different inertial reference frames S and S' would measure for the same moving particle. Let S' move with velocity v relative to S.

Suppose that the particle, moving with constant velocity parallel to the x and x' axes in Fig. 37-11, sends out two signals as it moves. Each observer measures the space interval and the time interval between these two events. These four measurements are related by Eqs. 1 and 2 of Table 37-2,

$$\Delta x = \gamma(\Delta x' + v\,\Delta t')$$

and

$$\Delta t = \gamma\left(\Delta t' + \frac{v\,\Delta x'}{c^2}\right).$$

If we divide the first of these equations by the second, we find

$$\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta x' + v\,\Delta t'}{\Delta t' + v\,\Delta x'/c^2}.$$

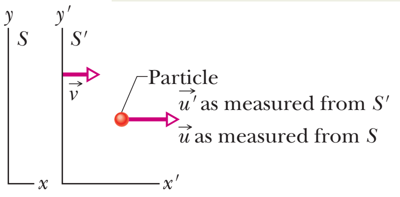

The speed of the moving particle depends on the frame.

Figure 37-11 Reference frame S' moves with velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to frame S. A particle has velocity $\vec{u}'$ relative to reference frame S' and velocity $\vec{u}$ relative to reference frame S.

Dividing the numerator and denominator of the right side by $\Delta t'$, we find

$$\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta x'/\Delta t' + v}{1 + v(\Delta x'/\Delta t')/c^2}.$$

However, in the differential limit, $\Delta x/\Delta t$ is u, the velocity of the particle as measured in S, and $\Delta x'/\Delta t'$ is u', the velocity of the particle as measured in S'. Then we have, finally,

$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2} \quad \text{(relativistic velocity transformation)} \tag{37-29}$$

as the relativistic velocity transformation equation. (*Caution:* Be careful to substitute the correct signs for the velocities.) Equation 37-29 reduces to the classical, or Galilean, velocity transformation equation,

$$u = u' + v \quad \text{(classical velocity transformation),} \tag{37-30}$$

when we apply the formal test of letting $c \to \infty$. In other words, Eq. 37-29 is correct for all physically possible speeds, but Eq. 37-30 is approximately correct for speeds much less than c.

37-5 DOPPLER EFFECT FOR LIGHT

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.22 Identify that the frequency of light as measured in a frame attached to the light source (the rest frame) is the proper frequency.

37.23 For source–detector separations increasing and decreasing, identify whether the detected frequency is shifted up or down from the proper frequency, identify that the shift increases with an increase in relative speed, and apply the terms blue shift and red shift.

37.24 Identify radial speed.

37.25 For source–detector separations increasing and decreasing, apply the relationships between proper frequency f_0, detected frequency f, and radial speed v.

37.26 Convert between equations for frequency shift and wavelength shift.

37.27 When a radial speed is much less than light speed, apply the approximation relating wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$, proper wavelength λ_0, and radial speed v.

37.28 Identify that for light (not sound) there is a shift in the frequency even when the velocity of the source is perpendicular to the line between the source and the detector, an effect due to time dilation.

37.29 Apply the relationship for the transverse Doppler effect by relating detected frequency f, proper frequency f_0, and relative speed v.

Key Ideas

- When a light source and a light detector move relative to each other, the wavelength of the light as measured in the rest frame of the source is the proper wavelength λ_0. The detected wavelength λ is either longer (a red shift) or shorter (a blue shift) depending on whether the source–detector separation is increasing or decreasing.
- When the separation is increasing, the wavelengths are related by

$$\lambda = \lambda_0\sqrt{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}} \quad \text{(source and detector separating),}$$

where $\beta = v/c$ and v is the relative radial speed (along a line through the source and detector). If the separation is decreasing, the signs in front of the β symbols are reversed.

- For speeds much less than c, the magnitude of the Doppler wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0$ is approximately related to v by

$$v = \frac{|\Delta\lambda|}{\lambda_0}c \quad (v \ll c).$$

- If the relative motion of the light source is perpendicular to a line through the source and detector, the detected frequency f is related to the proper frequency f_0 by

$$f = f_0\sqrt{1-\beta^2}.$$

This transverse Doppler effect is due to time dilation.

Doppler Effect for Light

In Module 17-7 we discussed the Doppler effect (a shift in detected frequency) for sound waves, finding that the effect depends on the source and detector velocities relative to the air. That is not the situation with light waves, which require no medium (they can even travel through vacuum). The Doppler effect for light waves depends on only the relative velocity $\vec{v}$ between source and detector, as measured from the reference frame of either. Let f_0 represent the **proper frequency** of the source—that is, the frequency that is measured by an observer in the rest frame of the source. Let f represent the frequency detected by an observer moving with velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to that rest frame. Then, when the direction of $\vec{v}$ is directly away from the source,

$$f = f_0\sqrt{\frac{1-\beta}{1+\beta}} \quad \text{(source and detector separating)}, \tag{37-31}$$

where $\beta = v/c$.

Because measurements involving light are usually done in wavelengths rather than frequencies, let's rewrite Eq. 37-31 by replacing f with c/λ and f_0 with c/λ_0, where λ is the measured wavelength and λ_0 is the **proper wavelength** (the wavelength associated with f_0). After canceling c from both sides, we then have

$$\lambda = \lambda_0\sqrt{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}} \quad \text{(source and detector separating)}. \tag{37-32}$$

When the direction of $\vec{v}$ is directly toward the source, we must change the signs in front of the β symbols in Eqs. 37-31 and 37-32.

For an increasing separation, we can see from Eq. 37-32 (with an addition in the numerator and a subtraction in the denominator) that the measured wavelength is greater than the proper wavelength. Such a Doppler shift is described as being a *red shift*, where *red* does not mean the measured wavelength is red or even visible. The term merely serves as a memory device because red is at the *long*-wavelength end of the visible spectrum. Thus λ is longer than λ_0. Similarly, for a decreasing separation, λ is shorter than λ_0, and the Doppler shift is described as being a *blue shift*.

Low-Speed Doppler Effect

For low speeds ($\beta \ll 1$), Eq. 37-31 can be expanded in a power series in β and approximated as

$$f = f_0(1 - \beta + \tfrac{1}{2}\beta^2) \quad \text{(source and detector separating, } \beta \ll 1\text{)}. \tag{37-33}$$

The corresponding low-speed equation for the Doppler effect with sound waves (or any waves except light waves) has the same first two terms but a different coefficient in the third term. Thus, the relativistic effect for low-speed light sources and detectors shows up only with the β^2 term.

A police radar unit employs the Doppler effect with microwaves to measure the speed v of a car. A source in the radar unit emits a microwave beam at a certain (proper) frequency f_0 along the road. A car that is moving toward the unit intercepts that beam but at a frequency that is shifted upward by the Doppler effect due to the car's motion toward the radar unit. The car reflects the beam back toward the radar unit. Because the car is moving toward the radar unit, the detector in the unit intercepts a reflected beam that is further shifted up in frequency. The unit compares that detected frequency with f_0 and computes the speed v of the car.

Astronomical Doppler Effect

In astronomical observations of stars, galaxies, and other sources of light, we can determine how fast the sources are moving, either directly away from us or directly toward us, by measuring the *Doppler shift* of the light that reaches us. If a certain star were at rest relative to us, we would detect light from it with a certain proper frequency f_0. However, if the star is moving either directly away from us or directly toward us, the light we detect has a frequency f that is shifted from f_0 by the Doppler effect. This Doppler shift is due only to the *radial* motion of the star (its motion directly toward us or away from us), and the speed we can determine by measuring this Doppler shift is only the *radial speed* v of the star—that is, only the radial component of the star's velocity relative to us.

Suppose a star (or any other light source) moves away from us with a radial speed v that is low enough (β is small enough) for us to neglect the β^2 term in Eq. 37-33. Then we have

$$f = f_0(1 - \beta). \tag{37-34}$$

Because astronomical measurements involving light are usually done in wavelengths rather than frequencies, let's rewrite Eq. 37-34 as

$$\frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{c}{\lambda_0}(1 - \beta),$$

or

$$\lambda = \lambda_0(1 - \beta)^{-1}.$$

Because we assume β is small, we can expand $(1 - \beta)^{-1}$ in a power series. Doing so and retaining only the first power of β, we have

$$\lambda = \lambda_0(1 + \beta),$$

or

$$\beta = \frac{\lambda - \lambda_0}{\lambda_0}. \tag{37-35}$$

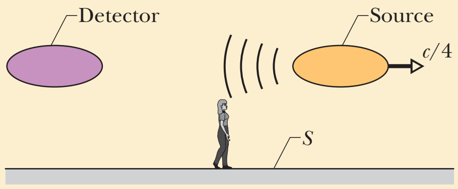
Replacing β with v/c and $\lambda - \lambda_0$ with $|\Delta\lambda|$ leads to

$$v = \frac{|\Delta\lambda|}{\lambda_0}c \quad \text{(radial speed of light source, } v \ll c\text{)}. \tag{37-36}$$

The difference $\Delta\lambda$ is the *wavelength Doppler shift* of the light source. We enclose it with an absolute sign so that we always have a magnitude of the shift. Equation 37-36 is an approximation that can be applied whether the light source is moving toward or away from us but only when $v \ll c$.

Checkpoint 3

The figure shows a source that emits light of proper frequency f_0 while moving directly toward the right with speed $c/4$ as measured from reference frame S. The figure also shows a light detector, which measures a frequency $f > f_0$ for the emitted light. (a) Is the detector moving toward the left or the right? (b) Is the speed of the detector as measured from reference frame S more than $c/4$, less than $c/4$, or equal to $c/4$?



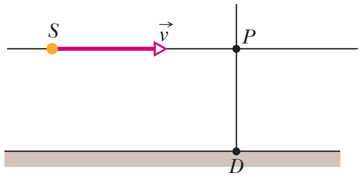


Figure 37-12 A light source S travels with velocity $\vec{v}$ past a detector at D. The special theory of relativity predicts a transverse Doppler effect as the source passes through point P, where the direction of travel is perpendicular to the line extending through D. Classical theory predicts no such effect.

Transverse Doppler Effect

So far, we have discussed the Doppler effect, here and in Chapter 17, only for situations in which the source and the detector move either directly toward or directly away from each other. Figure 37-12 shows a different arrangement, in which a source S moves past a detector D. When S reaches point P, the velocity of S is perpendicular to the line joining P and D, and at that instant S is moving neither toward nor away from D. If the source is emitting sound waves of frequency f_0, D detects that frequency (with no Doppler effect) when it intercepts the waves that were emitted at point P. However, if the source is emitting light waves, there is still a Doppler effect, called the **transverse Doppler effect.** In this situation, the detected frequency of the light emitted when the source is at point P is

$$f = f_0\sqrt{1-\beta^2} \quad \text{(transverse Doppler effect).} \tag{37-37}$$

For low speeds ($\beta \ll 1$), Eq. 37-37 can be expanded in a power series in β and approximated as

$$f = f_0(1 - \tfrac{1}{2}\beta^2) \quad \text{(low speeds).} \tag{37-38}$$

Here the first term is what we would expect for sound waves, and again the relativistic effect for low-speed light sources and detectors appears with the β^2 term.

In principle, a police radar unit can determine the speed of a car even when the path of the radar beam is perpendicular (transverse) to the path of the car. However, Eq. 37-38 tells us that because β is small even for a fast car, the relativistic term $\beta^2/2$ in the transverse Doppler effect is extremely small. Thus, $f \approx f_0$ and the radar unit computes a speed of zero.

The transverse Doppler effect is really another test of time dilation. If we rewrite Eq. 37-37 in terms of the period T of oscillation of the emitted light wave instead of the frequency, we have, because $T = 1/f$,

$$T = \frac{T_0}{\sqrt{1-\beta^2}} = \gamma T_0, \tag{37-39}$$

in which T_0 $(= 1/f_0)$ is the **proper period** of the source. As comparison with Eq. 37-9 shows, Eq. 37-39 is simply the time dilation formula.

37-6 MOMENTUM AND ENERGY

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

37.30 Identify that the classical expressions for momentum and kinetic energy are approximately correct for slow speeds whereas the relativistic expressions are correct for any physically possible speed.

37.31 Apply the relationship between momentum, mass, and relative speed.

37.32 Identify that an object has a mass energy (or rest energy) associated with its mass.

37.33 Apply the relationships between total energy, rest energy, kinetic energy, momentum, mass, speed, the speed parameter, and the Lorentz factor.

37.34 Sketch a graph of kinetic energy versus the ratio v/c (of speed to light speed) for both classical and relativistic expressions of kinetic energy.

37.35 Apply the work–kinetic energy theorem to relate work by an applied force and the resulting change in kinetic energy.

37.36 For a reaction, apply the relationship between the Q value and the change in the mass energy.

37.37 For a reaction, identify the correlation between the algebraic sign of Q and whether energy is released or absorbed by the reaction.

Key Ideas

- The following definitions of linear momentum $\vec{p}$, kinetic energy K, and total energy E for a particle of mass m are valid at any physically possible speed:

$$\vec{p} = \gamma m\vec{v} \quad \text{(momentum),}$$

$$E = mc^2 + K = \gamma mc^2 \quad \text{(total energy),}$$

$$K = mc^2(\gamma - 1) \quad \text{(kinetic energy).}$$

Here γ is the Lorentz factor for the particle's motion, and mc^2 is the *mass energy*, or *rest energy*, associated with the mass of the particle.

- These equations lead to the relationships

$$(pc)^2 = K^2 + 2Kmc^2$$

and

$$E^2 = (pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2.$$

- When a system of particles undergoes a chemical or nuclear reaction, the Q of the reaction is the negative of the change in the system's total mass energy:

$$Q = M_ic^2 - M_fc^2 = -\Delta M\, c^2,$$

where M_i is the system's total mass before the reaction and M_f is its total mass after the reaction.

A New Look at Momentum

Suppose that a number of observers, each in a different inertial reference frame, watch an isolated collision between two particles. In classical mechanics, we have seen that—even though the observers measure different velocities for the colliding particles—they all find that the law of conservation of momentum holds. That is, they find that the total momentum of the system of particles after the collision is the same as it was before the collision.

How is this situation affected by relativity? We find that if we continue to define the momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle as $m\vec{v}$, the product of its mass and its velocity, total momentum is *not* conserved for the observers in different inertial frames. So, we need to redefine momentum in order to save that conservation law.

Consider a particle moving with constant speed v in the positive direction of an x axis. Classically, its momentum has magnitude

$$p = mv = m\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} \quad \text{(classical momentum)}, \tag{37-40}$$

in which Δx is the distance it travels in time Δt. To find a relativistic expression for momentum, we start with the new definition

$$p = m\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t_0}.$$

Here, as before, Δx is the distance traveled by a moving particle as viewed by an observer watching that particle. However, Δt_0 is the time required to travel that distance, measured not by the observer watching the moving particle but by an observer moving with the particle. The particle is at rest with respect to this second observer; thus that measured time is a proper time.

Using the time dilation formula, $\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0$ (Eq. 37-9), we can then write

$$p = m\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t_0} = m\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta t_0} = m\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}\gamma.$$

However, since $\Delta x/\Delta t$ is just the particle velocity v, we have

$$p = \gamma mv \quad \text{(momentum)}. \tag{37-41}$$

Note that this differs from the classical definition of Eq. 37-40 only by the Lorentz factor γ. However, that difference is important: Unlike classical momentum, relativistic momentum approaches an infinite value as v approaches c.

We can generalize the definition of Eq. 37-41 to vector form as

$$\vec{p} = \gamma m\vec{v} \quad \text{(momentum)}. \tag{37-42}$$

This equation gives the correct definition of momentum for all physically possible speeds. For a speed much less than c, it reduces to the classical definition of momentum ($\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$).

A New Look at Energy

Mass Energy

The science of chemistry was initially developed with the assumption that in chemical reactions, energy and mass are conserved separately. In 1905, Einstein showed that as a consequence of his theory of special relativity, mass can be considered to be another form of energy. Thus, the law of conservation of energy is really the law of conservation of mass–energy.

In a *chemical reaction* (a process in which atoms or molecules interact), the amount of mass that is transferred into other forms of energy (or vice versa) is such a tiny fraction of the total mass involved that there is no hope of measuring the mass change with even the best laboratory balances. Mass and energy truly *seem* to be separately conserved. However, in a *nuclear reaction* (in which nuclei or fundamental particles interact), the energy released is often about a million times greater than in a chemical reaction, and the change in mass can easily be measured.

An object's mass m and the equivalent energy E_0 are related by

$$E_0 = mc^2, \tag{37-43}$$

which, without the subscript 0, is the best-known science equation of all time. This energy that is associated with the mass of an object is called **mass energy** or **rest energy.** The second name suggests that E_0 is an energy that the object has even when it is at rest, simply because it has mass. (If you continue your study of physics beyond this book, you will see more refined discussions of the relation between mass and energy. You might even encounter disagreements about just what that relation is and means.)

Table 37-3 shows the (approximate) mass energy, or rest energy, of a few objects. The mass energy of, say, a U.S. penny is enormous; the equivalent amount of electrical energy would cost well over a million dollars. On the other hand, the entire annual U.S. electrical energy production corresponds to a mass of only a few hundred kilograms of matter (stones, burritos, or anything else).

In practice, SI units are rarely used with Eq. 37-43 because they are too large to be convenient. Masses are usually measured in atomic mass units, where

$$1\ \text{u} = 1.660\,538\,86 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg}, \tag{37-44}$$

and energies are usually measured in electron-volts or multiples of it, where

$$1\ \text{eV} = 1.602\,176\,462 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}. \tag{37-45}$$

In the units of Eqs. 37-44 and 37-45, the multiplying constant c^2 has the values

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= 9.314\,940\,13 \times 10^8\ \text{eV/u} = 9.314\,940\,13 \times 10^5\ \text{keV/u} \\ &= 931.494\,013\ \text{MeV/u}. \end{aligned} \tag{37-46}$$

Total Energy

Equation 37-43 gives, for any object, the mass energy E_0 that is associated with the object's mass m, regardless of whether the object is at rest or moving. If the object is moving, it has additional energy in the form of kinetic energy K. If we assume that the object's potential energy is zero, then its total energy E is the sum of its mass energy and its kinetic energy:

$$E = E_0 + K = mc^2 + K. \tag{37-47}$$

Although we shall not prove it, the total energy E can also be written as

$$E = \gamma mc^2, \tag{37-48}$$

where γ is the Lorentz factor for the object's motion.

Table 37-3 The Energy Equivalents of a Few Objects

Object	Mass (kg)	Energy Equivalent	
Electron	$\approx 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$	$\approx 8.19 \times 10^{-14}$ J	($\approx$ 511 keV)
Proton	$\approx 1.67 \times 10^{-27}$	$\approx 1.50 \times 10^{-10}$ J	($\approx$ 938 MeV)
Uranium atom	$\approx 3.95 \times 10^{-25}$	$\approx 3.55 \times 10^{-8}$ J	($\approx$ 225 GeV)
Dust particle	$\approx 1 \times 10^{-13}$	$\approx 1 \times 10^{4}$ J	($\approx$ 2 kcal)
U.S. penny	$\approx 3.1 \times 10^{-3}$	$\approx 2.8 \times 10^{14}$ J	($\approx$ 78 GW·h)

Since Chapter 7, we have discussed many examples involving changes in the total energy of a particle or a system of particles. However, we did not include mass energy in the discussions because the changes in mass energy were either zero or small enough to be neglected. The law of conservation of total energy still applies when changes in mass energy are significant. Thus, regardless of what happens to the mass energy, the following statement from Module 8-5 is still true:

The total energy E of an *isolated system* cannot change.

For example, if the total mass energy of two interacting particles in an isolated system decreases, some other type of energy in the system must increase because the total energy cannot change.

***Q* Value.** In a system undergoing a chemical or nuclear reaction, a change in the total mass energy of the system due to the reaction is often given as a Q value. The Q value for a reaction is obtained from the relation

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{system's initial}\\ \text{total mass energy}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{system's final}\\ \text{total mass energy}\end{pmatrix} + Q$$

or

$$E_{0i} = E_{0f} + Q. \tag{37-49}$$

Using Eq. 37-43 ($E_0 = mc^2$), we can rewrite this in terms of the initial *total* mass M_i and the final *total* mass M_f as

$$M_i c^2 = M_f c^2 + Q$$

or

$$Q = M_i c^2 - M_f c^2 = -\Delta M\, c^2, \tag{37-50}$$

where the change in mass due to the reaction is $\Delta M = M_f - M_i$.

If a reaction results in the transfer of energy from mass energy to, say, kinetic energy of the reaction products, the system's total mass energy E_0 (and total mass M) decreases and Q is positive. If, instead, a reaction requires that energy be transferred to mass energy, the system's total mass energy E_0 (and its total mass M) increases and Q is negative.

For example, suppose two hydrogen nuclei undergo a *fusion reaction* in which they join together to form a single nucleus and release two particles:

$$^1\text{H} + {}^1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^2\text{H} + \text{e}^+ + \nu,$$

where ^{2}H is another type of hydrogen nucleus (with a neutron in addition to the proton), e^+ is a positron, and ν is a neutrino. The total mass energy (and total mass) of the resultant single nucleus and two released particles is less than the total mass energy (and total mass) of the initial hydrogen nuclei. Thus, the Q of the fusion reaction is positive, and energy is said to be *released* (transferred from mass energy) by the reaction. This release is important to you because the fusion of hydrogen nuclei in the Sun is one part of the process that results in sunshine on Earth and makes life here possible.

Kinetic Energy

In Chapter 7 we defined the kinetic energy K of an object of mass m moving at speed v well below c to be

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2. \tag{37-51}$$

However, this classical equation is only an approximation that is good enough when the speed is well below the speed of light.

Let us now find an expression for kinetic energy that is correct for *all* physically possible speeds, including speeds close to c. Solving Eq. 37-47 for K and then substituting for E from Eq. 37-48 lead to

$$K = E - mc^2 = \gamma mc^2 - mc^2$$
$$= mc^2(\gamma - 1) \quad \text{(kinetic energy)}, \qquad (37\text{-}52)$$

where $\gamma\,(= 1/\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2})$ is the Lorentz factor for the object's motion.

Figure 37-13 shows plots of the kinetic energy of an electron as calculated with the correct definition (Eq. 37-52) and the classical approximation (Eq. 37-51), both as functions of v/c. Note that on the left side of the graph the two plots coincide; this is the part of the graph—at lower speeds—where we have calculated kinetic energies so far in this book. This part of the graph tells us that we have been justified in calculating kinetic energy with the classical expression of Eq. 37-51. However, on the right side of the graph—at speeds near c—the two plots differ significantly. As v/c approaches 1.0, the plot for the classical definition of kinetic energy increases only moderately while the plot for the correct definition of kinetic energy increases dramatically, approaching an infinite value as v/c approaches 1.0. Thus, when an object's speed v is near c, we *must* use Eq. 37-52 to calculate its kinetic energy.

Work. Figure 37-13 also tells us something about the work we must do on an object to increase its speed by, say, 1%. The required work W is equal to the resulting change ΔK in the object's kinetic energy. If the change is to occur on the low-speed, left side of Fig. 37-13, the required work might be modest. However, if the change is to occur on the high-speed, right side of Fig. 37-13, the required work could be enormous because the kinetic energy K increases so rapidly there with an increase in speed v. To increase an object's speed to c would require, in principle, an infinite amount of energy; thus, doing so is impossible.

The kinetic energies of electrons, protons, and other particles are often stated with the unit electron-volt or one of its multiples used as an adjective. For example, an electron with a kinetic energy of 20 MeV may be described as a 20 MeV electron.

As v/c approaches 1.0, the actual kinetic energy approaches infinity.

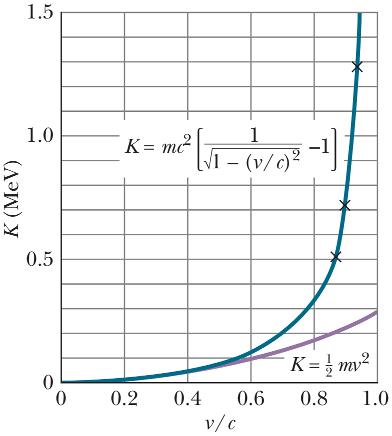


Figure 37-13 The relativistic (Eq. 37-52) and classical (Eq. 37-51) equations for the kinetic energy of an electron, plotted as a function of v/c, where v is the speed of the electron and c is the speed of light. Note that the two curves blend together at low speeds and diverge widely at high speeds. Experimental data (at the × marks) show that at high speeds the relativistic curve agrees with experiment but the classical curve does not.

Momentum and Kinetic Energy

In classical mechanics, the momentum p of a particle is mv and its kinetic energy K is $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. If we eliminate v between these two expressions, we find a direct relation between momentum and kinetic energy:

$$p^2 = 2Km \quad \text{(classical)}. \qquad (37\text{-}53)$$

We can find a similar connection in relativity by eliminating v between the relativistic definition of momentum (Eq. 37-41) and the relativistic definition of kinetic energy (Eq. 37-52). Doing so leads, after some algebra, to

$$(pc)^2 = K^2 + 2Kmc^2. \qquad (37\text{-}54)$$

With the aid of Eq. 37-47, we can transform Eq. 37-54 into a relation between the momentum p and the total energy E of a particle:

$$E^2 = (pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2. \qquad (37\text{-}55)$$

The right triangle of Fig. 37-14 can help you keep these useful relations in mind. You can also show that, in that triangle,

$$\sin\theta = \beta \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\theta = 1/\gamma. \qquad (37\text{-}56)$$

With Eq. 37-55 we can see that the product pc must have the same unit as energy E; thus, we can express the unit of momentum p as an energy unit divided by c, usually as MeV/c or GeV/c in fundamental particle physics.

This might help you to remember the relations.

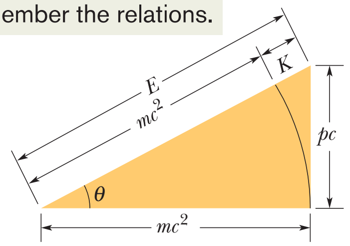


Figure 37-14 A useful memory diagram for the relativistic relations among the total energy E, the rest energy or mass energy mc^2, the kinetic energy K, and the momentum magnitude p.

Checkpoint 4

Are (a) the kinetic energy and (b) the total energy of a 1 GeV electron more than, less than, or equal to those of a 1 GeV proton?

Sample Problem 37.06 Energy and momentum of a relativistic electron

(a) What is the total energy E of a 2.53 MeV electron?

KEY IDEA

From Eq. 37-47, the total energy E is the sum of the electron's mass energy (or rest energy) mc^2 and its kinetic energy:

$$E = mc^2 + K. \qquad (37\text{-}57)$$

Calculations: The adjective "2.53 MeV" in the problem statement means that the electron's kinetic energy is 2.53 MeV. To evaluate the electron's mass energy mc^2, we substitute the electron's mass m from Appendix B, obtaining

$$\begin{aligned} mc^2 &= (9.109 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(299\ 792\ 458\ \text{m/s})^2 \\ &= 8.187 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{J}. \end{aligned}$$

Then dividing this result by 1.602×10^{-13} J/MeV gives us 0.511 MeV as the electron's mass energy (confirming the value in Table 37-3). Equation 37-57 then yields

$$E = 0.511\ \text{MeV} + 2.53\ \text{MeV} = 3.04\ \text{MeV}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) What is the magnitude p of the electron's momentum, in the unit MeV/c? (Note that c is the symbol for the speed of light and not itself a unit.)

KEY IDEA

We can find p from the total energy E and the mass energy mc^2 via Eq. 37-55,

$$E^2 = (pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2.$$

Calculations: Solving for pc gives us

$$\begin{aligned} pc &= \sqrt{E^2 - (mc^2)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{(3.04\ \text{MeV})^2 - (0.511\ \text{MeV})^2} = 3.00\ \text{MeV}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, dividing both sides by c we find

$$p = 3.00\ \text{MeV}/c. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

Sample Problem 37.07 Energy and an astounding discrepancy in travel time

The most energetic proton ever detected in the cosmic rays coming to Earth from space had an astounding kinetic energy of 3.0×10^{20} eV (enough energy to warm a teaspoon of water by a few degrees).

(a) What were the proton's Lorentz factor γ and speed v (both relative to the ground-based detector)?

KEY IDEAS

(1) The proton's Lorentz factor γ relates its total energy E to its mass energy mc^2 via Eq. 37-48 ($E = \gamma mc^2$). (2) The proton's total energy is the sum of its mass energy mc^2 and its (given) kinetic energy K.

Calculations: Putting these ideas together we have

$$\gamma = \frac{E}{mc^2} = \frac{mc^2 + K}{mc^2} = 1 + \frac{K}{mc^2}. \qquad (37\text{-}58)$$

From Table 37-3, the proton's mass energy mc^2 is 938 MeV. Substituting this and the given kinetic energy into Eq. 37-58, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma &= 1 + \frac{3.0 \times 10^{20}\ \text{eV}}{938 \times 10^{6}\ \text{eV}} \\ &= 3.198 \times 10^{11} \approx 3.2 \times 10^{11}. \quad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This computed value for γ is so large that we cannot use the definition of γ (Eq. 37-8) to find v. Try it; your calculator will tell you that β is effectively equal to 1 and thus that v is effectively equal to c. Actually, v is almost c, but we want a more accurate answer, which we can obtain by first solving Eq. 37-8 for $1 - \beta$. To begin we write

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \beta^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(1 - \beta)(1 + \beta)}} \approx \frac{1}{\sqrt{2(1 - \beta)}},$$

where we have used the fact that β is so close to unity that $1 + \beta$ is very close to 2. (We can round off the sum of two very close numbers but not their difference.) The velocity we seek is contained in the $1 - \beta$ term. Solving for $1 - \beta$ then yields

$$\begin{aligned} 1 - \beta &= \frac{1}{2\gamma^2} = \frac{1}{(2)(3.198 \times 10^{11})^2} \\ &= 4.9 \times 10^{-24} \approx 5 \times 10^{-24}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\beta = 1 - 5 \times 10^{-24}$$

and, since $v = \beta c$,

$$v \approx 0.999\ 999\ 999\ 999\ 999\ 999\ 999\ 995c. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) Suppose that the proton travels along a diameter of the Milky Way galaxy (9.8×10^4 ly). Approximately how long does the proton take to travel that diameter as measured from the common reference frame of Earth and the Galaxy?

Reasoning: We just saw that this *ultrarelativistic* proton is traveling at a speed barely less than c. By the definition of light-year, light takes 1 y to travel a distance of 1 ly, and so light should take 9.8×10^4 y to travel 9.8×10^4 ly, and this proton should take almost the same time. Thus, from our Earth–Milky Way reference frame, the proton's trip takes

$$\Delta t = 9.8 \times 10^4\ \text{y}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

(c) How long does the trip take as measured in the reference frame of the proton?

KEY IDEAS

1. This problem involves measurements made from two (inertial) reference frames: one is the Earth–Milky Way frame and the other is attached to the proton.
2. This problem also involves two events: the first is when the proton passes one end of the diameter along the Galaxy, and the second is when it passes the opposite end.
3. The time interval between those two events as measured in the proton's reference frame is the proper time interval Δt_0 because the events occur at the same location in that frame—namely, at the proton itself.
4. We can find the proper time interval Δt_0 from the time interval Δt measured in the Earth–Milky Way frame by using Eq. 37-9 ($\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_0$) for time dilation. (Note that we can use that equation because one of the time measures *is* a proper time. However, we get the same relation if we use a Lorentz transformation.)

Calculation: Solving Eq. 37-9 for Δt_0 and substituting γ from (a) and Δt from (b), we find

$$\Delta t_0 = \frac{\Delta t}{\gamma} = \frac{9.8\times 10^4\text{ y}}{3.198\times 10^{11}}$$
$$= 3.06\times 10^{-7}\text{ y} = 9.7\text{ s.} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

In our frame, the trip takes 98 000 y. In the proton's frame, it takes 9.7 s! As promised at the start of this chapter, relative motion can alter the rate at which time passes, and we have here an extreme example.

Review & Summary

The Postulates Einstein's **special theory of relativity** is based on two postulates:

1. The laws of physics are the same for observers in all inertial reference frames. No one frame is preferred over any other.
2. The speed of light in vacuum has the same value c in all directions and in all inertial reference frames.

The speed of light c in vacuum is an ultimate speed that cannot be exceeded by any entity carrying energy or information.

Coordinates of an Event Three space coordinates and one time coordinate specify an **event.** One task of special relativity is to relate these coordinates as assigned by two observers who are in uniform motion with respect to each other.

Simultaneous Events If two observers are in relative motion, they will not, in general, agree as to whether two events are simultaneous.

Time Dilation If two successive events occur at the same place in an inertial reference frame, the time interval Δt_0 between them, measured on a single clock where they occur, is the **proper time** between the events. *Observers in frames moving relative to that frame will measure a larger value for this interval.* For an observer moving with relative speed v, the measured time interval is

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-(v/c)^2}} = \frac{\Delta t_0}{\sqrt{1-\beta^2}}$$
$$= \gamma\,\Delta t_0 \quad \text{(time dilation).} \qquad \text{(37-7 to 37-9)}$$

Here $\beta = v/c$ is the **speed parameter** and $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1-\beta^2}$ is the **Lorentz factor.** An important result of time dilation is that moving clocks run slow as measured by an observer at rest.

Length Contraction The length L_0 of an object measured by an observer in an inertial reference frame in which the object is at rest is called its **proper length.** *Observers in frames moving relative to that frame and parallel to that length will measure a shorter length.* For an observer moving with relative speed v, the measured length is

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1-\beta^2} = \frac{L_0}{\gamma} \quad \text{(length contraction).} \qquad \text{(37-13)}$$

The Lorentz Transformation The *Lorentz transformation* equations relate the spacetime coordinates of a single event as seen by observers in two inertial frames, S and S', where S' is moving relative to S with velocity v in the positive x and x' direction. The four coordinates are related by

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= \gamma(x - vt),\\ y' &= y,\\ z' &= z,\\ t' &= \gamma(t - vx/c^2). \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(37-21)}$$

Relativity of Velocities When a particle is moving with speed u' in the positive x' direction in an inertial reference frame S' that itself is moving with speed v parallel to the x direction of a second inertial frame S, the speed u of the particle as measured in S is

$$u = \frac{u' + v}{1 + u'v/c^2} \quad \text{(relativistic velocity).} \qquad \text{(37-29)}$$

Relativistic Doppler Effect When a light source and a light detector move directly relative to each other, the wavelength of the light as measured in the rest frame of the source is the *proper wavelength* λ_0. The detected wavelength λ is either longer (a *red shift*) or shorter (a *blue shift*) depending on whether the source–detector separation is increasing or decreasing. When the separation is increasing, the wavelengths are related by

$$\lambda = \lambda_0\sqrt{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}} \quad \text{(source and detector separating)}, \qquad (37\text{-}32)$$

where $\beta = v/c$ and v is the relative radial speed (along a line connecting the source and detector). If the separation is decreasing, the signs in front of the β symbols are reversed. For speeds much less than c, the magnitude of the Doppler wavelength shift ($\Delta\lambda = \lambda - \lambda_0$) is approximately related to v by

$$v = \frac{|\Delta\lambda|}{\lambda_0}c \quad (v \ll c). \qquad (37\text{-}36)$$

Transverse Doppler Effect If the relative motion of the light source is perpendicular to a line joining the source and detector, the detected frequency f is related to the proper frequency f_0 by

$$f = f_0\sqrt{1-\beta^2}. \qquad (37\text{-}37)$$

Momentum and Energy The following definitions of linear momentum $\vec{p}$, kinetic energy K, and total energy E for a particle of mass m are valid at any physically possible speed:

$$\vec{p} = \gamma m\vec{v} \quad \text{(momentum)}, \qquad (37\text{-}42)$$

$$E = mc^2 + K = \gamma mc^2 \quad \text{(total energy)}, \qquad (37\text{-}47, 37\text{-}48)$$

$$K = mc^2(\gamma - 1) \quad \text{(kinetic energy)}. \qquad (37\text{-}52)$$

Here γ is the Lorentz factor for the particle's motion, and mc^2 is the *mass energy,* or *rest energy,* associated with the mass of the particle. These equations lead to the relationships

$$(pc)^2 = K^2 + 2Kmc^2 \qquad (37\text{-}54)$$

and

$$E^2 = (pc)^2 + (mc^2)^2. \qquad (37\text{-}55)$$

When a system of particles undergoes a chemical or nuclear reaction, the Q of the reaction is the negative of the change in the system's total mass energy:

$$Q = M_ic^2 - M_fc^2 = -\Delta M\, c^2, \qquad (37\text{-}50)$$

where M_i is the system's total mass before the reaction and M_f is its total mass after the reaction.

Questions

1 A rod is to move at constant speed v along the x axis of reference frame S, with the rod's length parallel to that axis. An observer in frame S is to measure the length L of the rod. Which of the curves in Fig. 37-15 best gives length L (vertical axis of the graph) versus speed parameter β?

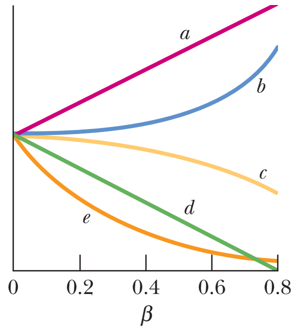


Figure 37-15 Questions 1 and 3.

2 Figure 37-16 shows a ship (attached to reference frame S') passing us (standing in reference frame S). A proton is fired at nearly the speed of light along the length of the ship, from the front to the rear. (a) Is the spatial separation $\Delta x'$ between the point at which the proton is fired and the point at which it hits the ship's rear wall a positive or negative quantity? (b) Is the temporal separation $\Delta t'$ between those events a positive or negative quantity?

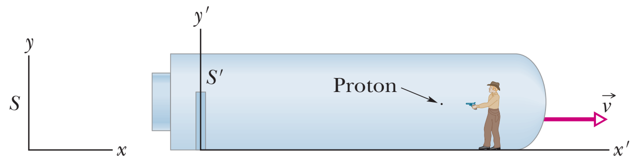


Figure 37-16 Question 2 and Problem 68.

3 Reference frame S' is to pass reference frame S at speed v along the common direction of the x' and x axes, as in Fig. 37-9. An observer who rides along with frame S' is to count off 25 s on his wristwatch. The corresponding time interval Δt is to be measured by an observer in frame S. Which of the curves in Fig. 37-15 best gives Δt (vertical axis of the graph) versus speed parameter β?

4 Figure 37-17 shows two clocks in stationary frame S' (they are synchronized in that frame) and one clock in moving frame S. Clocks C_1 and C'_1 read zero when they pass each other. When clocks C_1 and C'_2 pass each other, (a) which clock has the smaller reading and (b) which clock measures a proper time?

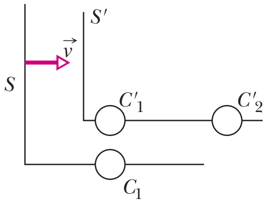


Figure 37-17 Question 4.

5 Figure 37-18 shows two clocks in stationary frame S (they are synchronized in that frame) and one clock in moving frame S'. Clocks C_1 and C'_1 read zero when they pass each other. When clocks C'_1 and C_2 pass each other, (a) which clock has the smaller reading and (b) which clock measures a proper time?

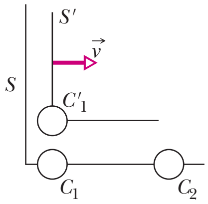


Figure 37-18 Question 5.

6 Sam leaves Venus in a spaceship headed to Mars and passes Sally, who is on Earth, with a relative speed of 0.5c. (a) Each measures the Venus–Mars voyage time. Who measures a proper time: Sam, Sally, or neither? (b) On the way, Sam sends a pulse of light to Mars. Each measures the travel time of the pulse. Who measures a proper time: Sam, Sally, or neither?

7 The plane of clocks and measuring rods in Fig. 37-19 is like that in Fig. 37-3. The clocks along the x axis are separated (center to center) by 1

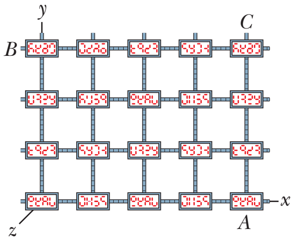


Figure 37-19 Question 7.

light-second, as are the clocks along the y axis, and all the clocks are synchronized via the procedure described in Module 37-1. When the initial synchronizing signal of $t = 0$ from the origin reaches (a) clock A, (b) clock B, and (c) clock C, what initial time is then set on those clocks? An event occurs at clock A when it reads 10 s. (d) How long does the signal of that event take to travel to an observer stationed at the origin? (e) What time does that observer assign to the event?

8 The rest energy and total energy, respectively, of three particles, expressed in terms of a basic amount A are (1) $A, 2A$; (2) $A, 3A$; (3) $3A$, $4A$. Without written calculation, rank the particles according to their (a) mass, (b) kinetic energy, (c) Lorentz factor, and (d) speed, greatest first.

9 Figure 37-20 shows the triangle of Fig 37-14 for six particles; the slanted lines 2 and 4 have the same length. Rank the particles according to (a) mass, (b) momentum magnitude, and (c) Lorentz factor, greatest first. (d) Identify which two particles have the same total energy. (e) Rank the three lowest-mass particles according to kinetic energy, greatest first.

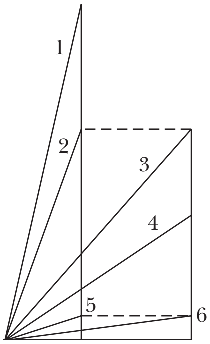


Figure 37-20 Question 9.

10 While on board a starship, you intercept signals from four shuttle craft that are moving either directly toward or directly away from you. The signals have the same proper frequency f_0. The speed and direction (both relative to you) of the shuttle craft are (a) $0.3c$ toward, (b) $0.6c$ toward, (c) $0.3c$ away, and (d) $0.6c$ away. Rank the shuttle craft according to the frequency you receive, greatest first.

11 Figure 37-21 shows one of four star cruisers that are in a race. As each cruiser passes the starting line, a shuttle craft leaves the cruiser and races toward the finish line. You, judging the race, are stationary relative to the starting and finish lines. The speeds v_c of the cruisers relative to you and the speeds v_s of the shuttle craft relative to their respective starships are, in that order, (1) $0.70c, 0.40c$; (2) $0.40c, 0.70c$; (3) $0.20c, 0.90c$; (4) $0.50c, 0.60c$. (a) Rank the shuttle craft according to their speeds relative to you, greatest first. (b) Rank the shuttle craft according to the distances their pilots measure from the starting line to the finish line, greatest first. (c) Each starship sends a signal to its shuttle craft at a certain frequency f_0 as measured on board the starship. Rank the shuttle craft according to the frequencies they detect, greatest first.

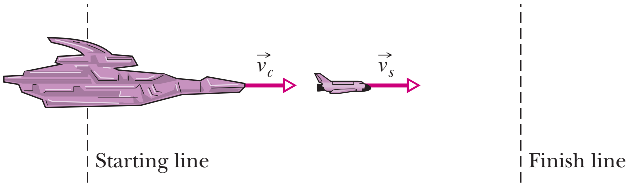


Figure 37-21 Question 11.

Problems

GO	Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM	Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
• – •••	Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
✈	Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com
WWW	Worked-out solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
ILW	Interactive solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 37-1 Simultaneity and Time Dilation

•1 The mean lifetime of stationary muons is measured to be 2.2000 μs. The mean lifetime of high-speed muons in a burst of cosmic rays observed from Earth is measured to be 16.000 μs. To five significant figures, what is the speed parameter β of these cosmic-ray muons relative to Earth?

•2 To eight significant figures, what is speed parameter β if the Lorentz factor γ is (a) 1.010 000 0, (b) 10.000 000, (c) 100.000 00, and (d) 1000.000 0?

••3 You wish to make a round trip from Earth in a spaceship, traveling at constant speed in a straight line for exactly 6 months (as you measure the time interval) and then returning at the same constant speed. You wish further, on your return, to find Earth as it will be exactly 1000 years in the future. (a) To eight significant figures, at what speed parameter β must you travel? (b) Does it matter whether you travel in a straight line on your journey?

••4 *(Come) back to the future.* Suppose that a father is 20.00 y older than his daughter. He wants to travel outward from Earth for 2.000 y and then back for another 2.000 y (both intervals as he measures them) such that he is then 20.00 y *younger* than his daughter. What constant speed parameter β (relative to Earth) is required?

••5 ILW An unstable high-energy particle enters a detector and leaves a track of length 1.05 mm before it decays. Its speed relative to the detector was $0.992c$. What is its proper lifetime? That is, how long would the particle have lasted before decay had it been at rest with respect to the detector?

••6 GO Reference frame S' is to pass reference frame S at speed v along the common direction of the x' and x axes, as in Fig. 37-9. An observer who rides along with frame S' is to count off a certain time interval on his wristwatch. The corresponding time interval Δt is to be measured by an observer in frame S. Figure 37-22 gives Δt versus speed parameter β for a range of values for β. The vertical axis scale is set by $\Delta t_a = 14.0$ s. What is interval Δt if $v = 0.98c$?

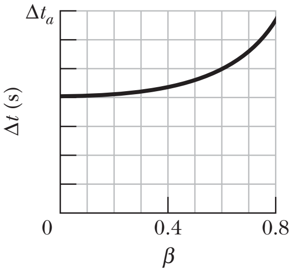


Figure 37-22 Problem 6.

••7 The premise of the *Planet of the Apes* movies and book is that hibernating astronauts travel far into Earth's future, to a time when human civilization has been replaced by an ape civilization. Considering only special relativity, determine how far into Earth's future the astronauts would travel if they slept for 120 y while traveling relative to Earth with a speed of 0.9990c, first outward from Earth and then back again.

Module 37-2 The Relativity of Length

•8 An electron of $\beta = 0.999\,987$ moves along the axis of an evacuated tube that has a length of 3.00 m as measured by a laboratory observer S at rest relative to the tube. An observer S' who is at rest relative to the electron, however, would see this tube moving with speed v ($= \beta c$). What length would observer S' measure for the tube?

•9 **SSM** A spaceship of rest length 130 m races past a timing station at a speed of $0.740c$. (a) What is the length of the spaceship as measured by the timing station? (b) What time interval will the station clock record between the passage of the front and back ends of the ship?

•10 A meter stick in frame S' makes an angle of 30° with the x' axis. If that frame moves parallel to the x axis of frame S with speed $0.90c$ relative to frame S, what is the length of the stick as measured from S?

•11 A rod lies parallel to the x axis of reference frame S, moving along this axis at a speed of $0.630c$. Its rest length is 1.70 m. What will be its measured length in frame S?

••12 The length of a spaceship is measured to be exactly half its rest length. (a) To three significant figures, what is the speed parameter β of the spaceship relative to the observer's frame? (b) By what factor do the spaceship's clocks run slow relative to clocks in the observer's frame?

••13 **GO** A space traveler takes off from Earth and moves at speed $0.9900c$ toward the star Vega, which is 26.00 ly distant. How much time will have elapsed by Earth clocks (a) when the traveler reaches Vega and (b) when Earth observers receive word from the traveler that she has arrived? (c) How much older will Earth observers calculate the traveler to be (measured from her frame) when she reaches Vega than she was when she started the trip?

••14 **GO** A rod is to move at constant speed v along the x axis of reference frame S, with the rod's length parallel to that axis. An observer in frame S is to measure the length L of the rod. Figure 37-23 gives length L versus speed parameter β for a range of values for β. The vertical axis scale is set by $L_a = 1.00$ m. What is L if $v = 0.95c$?

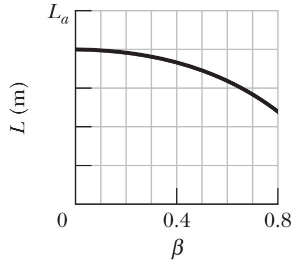


Figure 37-23 Problem 14.

••15 **GO** The center of our Milky Way galaxy is about 23 000 ly away. (a) To eight significant figures, at what constant speed parameter would you need to travel exactly 23 000 ly (measured in the Galaxy frame) in exactly 30 y (measured in your frame)? (b) Measured in your frame and in lightyears, what length of the Galaxy would pass by you during the trip?

Module 37-3 The Lorentz Transformation

•16 Observer S reports that an event occurred on the x axis of his reference frame at $x = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m at time $t = 2.50$ s. Observer S' and her frame are moving in the positive direction of the x axis at a speed of $0.400c$. Further, $x = x' = 0$ at $t = t' = 0$. What are the (a) spatial and (b) temporal coordinate of the event according to S'? If S' were, instead, moving in the *negative* direction of the x axis, what would be the (c) spatial and (d) temporal coordinate of the event according to S'?

•17 **SSM** **WWW** In Fig. 37-9, the origins of the two frames coincide at $t = t' = 0$ and the relative speed is $0.950c$. Two micrometeorites collide at coordinates $x = 100$ km and $t = 200\ \mu$s according to an observer in frame S. What are the (a) spatial and (b) temporal coordinate of the collision according to an observer in frame S'?

•18 Inertial frame S' moves at a speed of $0.60c$ with respect to frame S (Fig. 37-9). Further, $x = x' = 0$ at $t = t' = 0$. Two events are recorded. In frame S, event 1 occurs at the origin at $t = 0$ and event 2 occurs on the x axis at $x = 3.0$ km at $t = 4.0\ \mu$s. According to observer S', what is the time of (a) event 1 and (b) event 2? (c) Do the two observers see the same sequence or the reverse?

•19 An experimenter arranges to trigger two flashbulbs simultaneously, producing a big flash located at the origin of his reference frame and a small flash at $x = 30.0$ km. An observer moving at a speed of $0.250c$ in the positive direction of x also views the flashes. (a) What is the time interval between them according to her? (b) Which flash does she say occurs first?

••20 **GO** As in Fig. 37-9, reference frame S' passes reference frame S with a certain velocity. Events 1 and 2 are to have a certain temporal separation $\Delta t'$ according to the S' observer. However, their spatial separation $\Delta x'$ according to that observer has not been set yet. Figure 37-24 gives their temporal separation Δt according to the S observer as a function of $\Delta x'$ for a range of $\Delta x'$ values. The vertical axis scale is set by $\Delta t_a = 6.00\ \mu$s. What is $\Delta t'$?

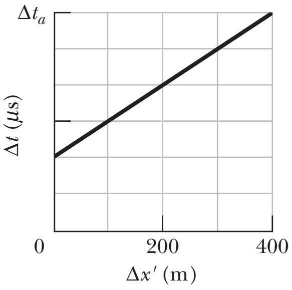


Figure 37-24 Problem 20.

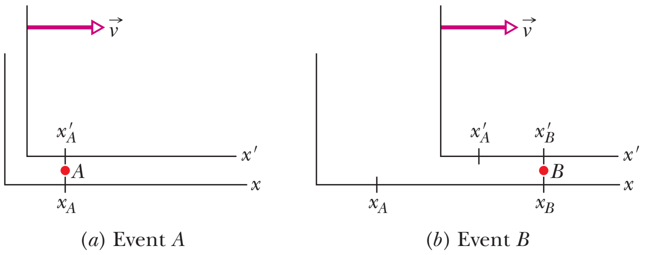
••21 *Relativistic reversal of events.* Figures 37-25*a* and *b* show the (usual) situation in which a primed reference frame passes an unprimed reference frame, in the common positive direction of the x and x' axes, at a constant relative velocity of magnitude v. We are at rest in the unprimed frame; Bullwinkle, an astute student of relativity in spite of his cartoon upbringing, is at rest in the primed frame. The figures also indicate events A and B that occur at the following spacetime coordinates as measured in our unprimed frame and in Bullwinkle's primed frame:

Event	Unprimed	Primed
A	(x_A, t_A)	(x'_A, t'_A)
B	(x_B, t_B)	(x'_B, t'_B)

In our frame, event A occurs before event B, with temporal separation $\Delta t = t_B - t_A = 1.00\ \mu$s and spatial separation $\Delta x = x_B - x_A = 400$ m. Let $\Delta t'$ be the temporal separation of the events according to Bullwinkle. (a) Find an expression for $\Delta t'$ in terms of the speed parameter β ($= v/c$) and the given data. Graph $\Delta t'$ versus β for the following two ranges of β:

(b) 0 to 0.01 (v is low, from 0 to $0.01c$)
(c) 0.1 to 1 (v is high, from $0.1c$ to the limit c)

(d) At what value of β is $\Delta t' = 0$? For what range of β is the



(*a*) Event *A*
(*b*) Event *B*

Figure 37-25 Problems 21, 22, 60, and 61.

sequence of events A and B according to Bullwinkle (e) the same as ours and (f) the reverse of ours? (g) Can event A cause event B, or vice versa? Explain.

••22 For the passing reference frames in Fig. 37-25, events A and B occur at the following spacetime coordinates: according to the unprimed frame, (x_A, t_A) and (x_B, t_B); according to the primed frame, (x'_A, t'_A) and (x'_B, t'_B). In the unprimed frame, $\Delta t = t_B - t_A = 1.00\ \mu\text{s}$ and $\Delta x = x_B - x_A = 400$ m. (a) Find an expression for $\Delta x'$ in terms of the speed parameter β and the given data. Graph $\Delta x'$ versus β for two ranges of β: (b) 0 to 0.01 and (c) 0.1 to 1. (d) At what value of β is $\Delta x'$ minimum, and (e) what is that minimum?

••23 ILW A clock moves along an x axis at a speed of $0.600c$ and reads zero as it passes the origin of the axis. (a) Calculate the clock's Lorentz factor. (b) What time does the clock read as it passes $x = 180$ m?

••24 Bullwinkle in reference frame S' passes you in reference frame S along the common direction of the x' and x axes, as in Fig. 37-9. He carries three meter sticks: meter stick 1 is parallel to the x' axis, meter stick 2 is parallel to the y' axis, and meter stick 3 is parallel to the z' axis. On his wristwatch he counts off 15.0 s, which takes 30.0 s according to you. Two events occur during his passage. According to you, event 1 occurs at $x_1 = 33.0$ m and $t_1 = 22.0$ ns, and event 2 occurs at $x_2 = 53.0$ m and $t_2 = 62.0$ ns. According to your measurements, what is the length of (a) meter stick 1, (b) meter stick 2, and (c) meter stick 3? According to Bullwinkle, what are (d) the spatial separation and (e) the temporal separation between events 1 and 2, and (f) which event occurs first?

••25 In Fig. 37-9, observer S detects two flashes of light. A big flash occurs at $x_1 = 1200$ m and, 5.00 μs later, a small flash occurs at $x_2 = 480$ m. As detected by observer S', the two flashes occur at a single coordinate x'. (a) What is the speed parameter of S', and (b) is S' moving in the positive or negative direction of the x axis? To S', (c) which flash occurs first and (d) what is the time interval between the flashes?

••26 In Fig. 37-9, observer S detects two flashes of light. A big flash occurs at $x_1 = 1200$ m and, slightly later, a small flash occurs at $x_2 = 480$ m. The time interval between the flashes is $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$. What is the smallest value of Δt for which observer S' will determine that the two flashes occur at the same x' coordinate?

Module 37-4 The Relativity of Velocities

•27 SSM A particle moves along the x' axis of frame S' with velocity $0.40c$. Frame S' moves with velocity $0.60c$ with respect to frame S. What is the velocity of the particle with respect to frame S?

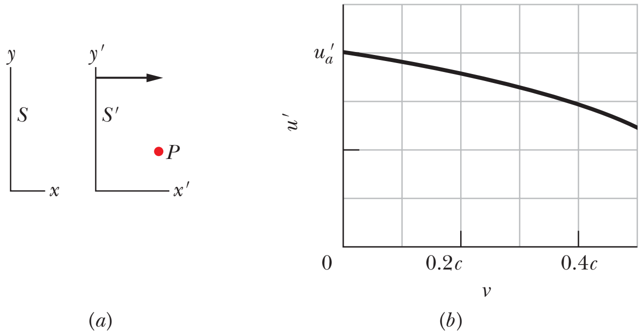
•28 In Fig. 37-11, frame S' moves relative to frame S with velocity $0.62c\hat{\text{i}}$ while a particle moves parallel to the common x and x' axes. An observer attached to frame S' measures the particle's velocity to be $0.47c\hat{\text{i}}$. In terms of c, what is the particle's velocity as measured by an observer attached to frame S according to the (a) relativistic and (b) classical velocity transformation? Suppose, instead, that the S' measure of the particle's velocity is $-0.47c\hat{\text{i}}$. What velocity does the observer in S now measure according to the (c) relativistic and (d) classical velocity transformation?

•29 Galaxy A is reported to be receding from us with a speed of $0.35c$. Galaxy B, located in precisely the opposite direction, is also found to be receding from us at this same speed. What multiple of c gives the recessional speed an observer on Galaxy A would find for (a) our galaxy and (b) Galaxy B?

•30 Stellar system Q_1 moves away from us at a speed of $0.800c$. Stellar system Q_2, which lies in the same direction in space but is closer to us, moves away from us at speed $0.400c$. What multiple of c gives the speed of Q_2 as measured by an observer in the reference frame of Q_1?

••31 SSM WWW ILW A spaceship whose rest length is 350 m has a speed of $0.82c$ with respect to a certain reference frame. A micrometeorite, also with a speed of $0.82c$ in this frame, passes the spaceship on an antiparallel track. How long does it take this object to pass the ship as measured on the ship?

••32 GO In Fig. 37-26a, particle P is to move parallel to the x and x' axes of reference frames S and S', at a certain velocity relative to frame S. Frame S' is to move parallel to the x axis of frame S at velocity v. Figure 37-26b gives the velocity u' of the particle relative to frame S' for a range of values for v. The vertical axis scale is set by $u'_a = 0.800c$. What value will u' have if (a) $v = 0.90c$ and (b) $v \rightarrow c$?



(a) (b)

Figure 37-26 Problem 32.

••33 GO An armada of spaceships that is 1.00 ly long (as measured in its rest frame) moves with speed $0.800c$ relative to a ground station in frame S. A messenger travels from the rear of the armada to the front with a speed of $0.950c$ relative to S. How long does the trip take as measured (a) in the rest frame of the messenger, (b) in the rest frame of the armada, and (c) by an observer in the ground frame S?

Module 37-5 Doppler Effect for Light

•34 A sodium light source moves in a horizontal circle at a constant speed of $0.100c$ while emitting light at the proper wavelength of $\lambda_0 = 589.00$ nm. Wavelength λ is measured for that light by a detector fixed at the center of the circle. What is the wavelength shift $\lambda - \lambda_0$?

•35 SSM A spaceship, moving away from Earth at a speed of $0.900c$, reports back by transmitting at a frequency (measured in the spaceship frame) of 100 MHz. To what frequency must Earth receivers be tuned to receive the report?

•36 Certain wavelengths in the light from a galaxy in the constellation Virgo are observed to be 0.4% longer than the corresponding light from Earth sources. (a) What is the radial speed of this galaxy with respect to Earth? (b) Is the galaxy approaching or receding from Earth?

•37 Assuming that Eq. 37-36 holds, find how fast you would have to go through a red light to have it appear green. Take 620 nm as the wavelength of red light and 540 nm as the wavelength of green light.

•38 Figure 37-27 is a graph of intensity versus wavelength for light reaching Earth from galaxy NGC 7319, which is about 3×10^8 light-years away. The most intense light is emitted by the oxygen in NGC 7319. In a laboratory that emission is at wavelength $\lambda = 513$ nm, but in the light from NGC 7319 it has been shifted to 525 nm due to the Doppler effect (all the emissions from NGC 7319 have been shifted). (a) What is the radial speed of NGC 7319 relative to Earth? (b) Is the relative motion toward or away from our planet?

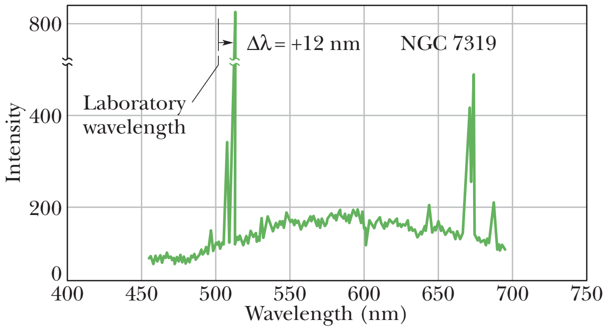


Figure 37-27 Problem 38.

••39 **SSM** A spaceship is moving away from Earth at speed $0.20c$. A source on the rear of the ship emits light at wavelength 450 nm according to someone on the ship. What (a) wavelength and (b) color (blue, green, yellow, or red) are detected by someone on Earth watching the ship?

Module 37-6 Momentum and Energy

•40 How much work must be done to increase the speed of an electron from rest to (a) $0.500c$, (b) $0.990c$, and (c) $0.9990c$?

•41 **SSM** **WWW** The mass of an electron is $9.109\,381\,88 \times 10^{-31}$ kg. To six significant figures, find (a) γ and (b) β for an electron with kinetic energy $K = 100.000$ MeV.

•42 What is the minimum energy that is required to break a nucleus of ^{12}C (of mass 11.996 71 u) into three nuclei of ^{4}He (of mass 4.001 51 u each)?

•43 How much work must be done to increase the speed of an electron (a) from $0.18c$ to $0.19c$ and (b) from $0.98c$ to $0.99c$? Note that the speed increase is $0.01c$ in both cases.

•44 In the reaction $p + {}^{19}\text{F} \rightarrow \alpha + {}^{16}\text{O}$, the masses are

$$m(\text{p}) = 1.007825 \text{ u}, \qquad m(\alpha) = 4.002603 \text{ u},$$
$$m(\text{F}) = 18.998405 \text{ u}, \qquad m(\text{O}) = 15.994915 \text{ u}.$$

Calculate the Q of the reaction from these data.

••45 In a high-energy collision between a cosmic-ray particle and a particle near the top of Earth's atmosphere, 120 km above sea level, a pion is created. The pion has a total energy E of 1.35×10^5 MeV and is traveling vertically downward. In the pion's rest frame, the pion decays 35.0 ns after its creation. At what altitude above sea level, as measured from Earth's reference frame, does the decay occur? The rest energy of a pion is 139.6 MeV.

••46 (a) If m is a particle's mass, p is its momentum magnitude, and K is its kinetic energy, show that

$$m = \frac{(pc)^2 - K^2}{2Kc^2}.$$

(b) For low particle speeds, show that the right side of the equation reduces to m. (c) If a particle has $K = 55.0$ MeV when $p = 121$ MeV/c, what is the ratio m/m_e of its mass to the electron mass?

••47 **SSM** A 5.00-grain aspirin tablet has a mass of 320 mg. For how many kilometers would the energy equivalent of this mass power an automobile? Assume 12.75 km/L and a heat of combustion of 3.65×10^7 J/L for the gasoline used in the automobile.

••48 GO The mass of a muon is 207 times the electron mass; the average lifetime of muons at rest is 2.20 μs. In a certain experiment, muons moving through a laboratory are measured to have an average lifetime of 6.90 μs. For the moving muons, what are (a) β, (b) K, and (c) p (in MeV/c)?

••49 GO As you read this page (on paper or monitor screen), a cosmic ray proton passes along the left–right width of the page with relative speed v and a total energy of 14.24 nJ. According to your measurements, that left–right width is 21.0 cm. (a) What is the width according to the proton's reference frame? How much time did the passage take according to (b) your frame and (c) the proton's frame?

••50 To four significant figures, find the following when the kinetic energy is 10.00 MeV: (a) γ and (b) β for an electron ($E_0 = 0.510\,998$ MeV), (c) γ and (d) β for a proton ($E_0 = 938.272$ MeV), and (e) γ and (f) β for an α particle ($E_0 = 3727.40$ MeV).

••51 **ILW** What must be the momentum of a particle with mass m so that the total energy of the particle is 3.00 times its rest energy?

••52 Apply the binomial theorem (Appendix E) to the last part of Eq. 37-52 for the kinetic energy of a particle. (a) Retain the first two terms of the expansion to show the kinetic energy in the form

$$K = (\text{first term}) + (\text{second term}).$$

The first term is the classical expression for kinetic energy. The second term is the first-order correction to the classical expression. Assume the particle is an electron. If its speed v is $c/20$, what is the value of (b) the classical expression and (c) the first-order correction? If the electron's speed is $0.80c$, what is the value of (d) the classical expression and (e) the first-order correction? (f) At what speed parameter β does the first-order correction become 10% or greater of the classical expression?

••53 In Module 28-4, we showed that a particle of charge q and mass m will move in a circle of radius $r = mv/|q|B$ when its velocity $\vec{v}$ is perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$. We also found that the period T of the motion is independent of speed v. These two results are approximately correct if $v \ll c$. For relativistic speeds, we must use the correct equation for the radius:

$$r = \frac{p}{|q|B} = \frac{\gamma m v}{|q|B}.$$

(a) Using this equation and the definition of period ($T = 2\pi r/v$), find the correct expression for the period. (b) Is T independent of v? If a 10.0 MeV electron moves in a circular path in a uniform magnetic field of magnitude 2.20 T, what are (c) the radius according to Chapter 28, (d) the correct radius, (e) the period according to Chapter 28, and (f) the correct period?

••54 GO What is β for a particle with (a) $K = 2.00E_0$ and (b) $E = 2.00E_0$?

••55 A certain particle of mass m has momentum of magnitude mc. What are (a) β, (b) γ, and (c) the ratio K/E_0?

••56 (a) The energy released in the explosion of 1.00 mol of TNT is 3.40 MJ. The molar mass of TNT is 0.227 kg/mol. What weight of TNT is needed for an explosive release of 1.80×10^{14} J? (b) Can you carry that weight in a backpack, or is a truck or train required? (c) Suppose that in an explosion of a fission bomb, 0.080% of the fissionable mass is converted to released energy. What weight of fissionable material is needed for an explosive release of 1.80×10^{14} J? (d) Can you carry that weight in a backpack, or is a truck or train required?

••57 Quasars are thought to be the nuclei of active galaxies in the early stages of their formation. A typical quasar radiates energy at the rate of 10^{41} W. At what rate is the mass of this quasar being reduced to supply this energy? Express your answer in solar mass units per year, where one solar mass unit ($1 \text{ smu} = 2.0 \times 10^{30}$ kg) is the mass of our Sun.

••58 The mass of an electron is $9.109\,381\,88 \times 10^{-31}$ kg. To eight significant figures, find the following for the given electron kinetic energy: (a) γ and (b) β for $K = 1.000\,000\,0$ keV, (c) γ and (d) β for $K = 1.000\,000\,0$ MeV, and then (e) γ and (f) β for $K = 1.000\,000\,0$ GeV.

•••59 GO An alpha particle with kinetic energy 7.70 MeV collides with an ^{14}N nucleus at rest, and the two transform into an ^{17}O nucleus and a proton. The proton is emitted at 90° to the direction of the incident alpha particle and has a kinetic energy of 4.44 MeV. The masses of the various particles are alpha particle, 4.00260 u; ^{14}N, 14.00307 u; proton, 1.007825 u; and ^{17}O, 16.99914 u. In MeV, what are (a) the kinetic energy of the oxygen nucleus and (b) the Q of the reaction? (*Hint:* The speeds of the particles are much less than c.)

Additional Problems

60 *Temporal separation between two events.* Events A and B occur with the following spacetime coordinates in the reference frames of Fig. 37-25: according to the unprimed frame, (x_A, t_A) and (x_B, t_B); according to the primed frame, (x'_A, t'_A) and (x'_B, t'_B). In the unprimed frame, $\Delta t = t_B - t_A = 1.00\ \mu$s and $\Delta x = x_B - x_A = 240$ m. (a) Find an expression for $\Delta t'$ in terms of the speed parameter β and the given data. Graph $\Delta t'$ versus β for the following two ranges of β: (b) 0 to 0.01 and (c) 0.1 to 1. (d) At what value of β is $\Delta t'$ minimum and (e) what is that minimum? (f) Can one of these events cause the other? Explain.

61 *Spatial separation between two events.* For the passing reference frames of Fig. 37-25, events A and B occur with the following spacetime coordinates: according to the unprimed frame, (x_A, t_A) and (x_B, t_B); according to the primed frame, (x'_A, t'_A) and (x'_B, t'_B). In the unprimed frame, $\Delta t = t_B - t_A = 1.00\ \mu$s and $\Delta x = x_B - x_A = 240$ m. (a) Find an expression for $\Delta x'$ in terms of the speed parameter β and the given data. Graph $\Delta x'$ versus β for two ranges of β: (b) 0 to 0.01 and (c) 0.1 to 1. (d) At what value of β is $\Delta x' = 0$?

62 GO In Fig. 37-28a, particle P is to move parallel to the x and x' axes of reference frames S and S', at a certain velocity relative to frame S. Frame S' is to move parallel to the x axis of frame S at velocity v. Figure 37-28b gives the velocity u' of the particle relative to frame S' for a range of values for v. The vertical axis scale is set by $u'_a = -0.800c$. What value will u' have if (a) $v = 0.80c$ and (b) $v \rightarrow c$?

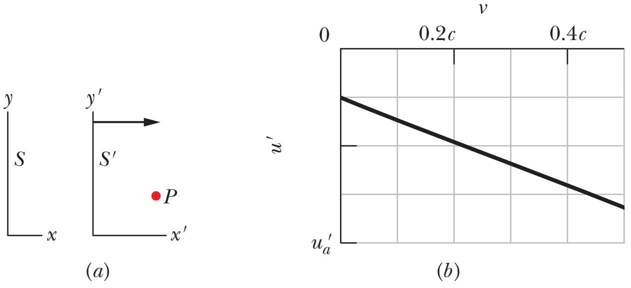


Figure 37-28 Problem 62.

63 GO *Superluminal jets.* Figure 37-29a shows the path taken by a knot in a jet of ionized gas that has been expelled from a galaxy. The knot travels at constant velocity $\vec{v}$ at angle θ from the direction of Earth. The knot occasionally emits a burst of light, which is eventually detected on Earth. Two bursts are indicated in Fig. 37-29a, separated by time t as measured in a stationary frame near the bursts. The bursts are shown in Fig. 37-29b as if they were photographed on the same piece of film, first when light from burst 1 arrived on Earth and then later when light from burst 2 arrived. The apparent distance D_{app} traveled by the knot between the two bursts is the distance across an Earth-observer's view of the knot's path. The apparent time T_{app} between the bursts is the difference in the arrival times of the light from them. The apparent speed of the knot is then $V_{\text{app}} = D_{\text{app}}/T_{\text{app}}$. In terms of v, t, and θ, what are (a) D_{app} and (b) T_{app}? (c) Evaluate V_{app} for $v = 0.980c$ and $\theta = 30.0°$. When superluminal (faster than light) jets were first observed, they seemed to defy special relativity—at least until the correct geometry (Fig. 37-29a) was understood.

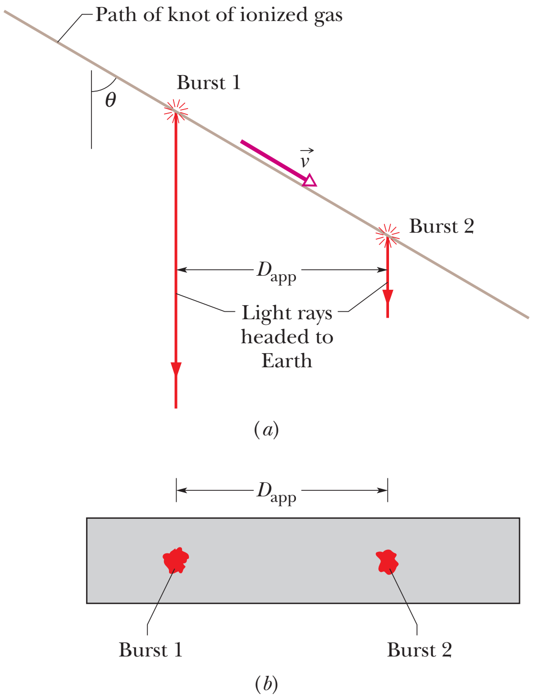


Figure 37-29 Problem 63.

64 GO Reference frame S' passes reference frame S with a certain velocity as in Fig. 37-9. Events 1 and 2 are to have a certain spatial separation $\Delta x'$ according to the S' observer. However, their temporal separation $\Delta t'$ according to that observer has not been set yet. Figure 37-30 gives their spatial separation Δx according to the S observer as a function of $\Delta t'$ for a range of $\Delta t'$ values. The vertical axis scale is set by $\Delta x_a = 10.0$ m. What is $\Delta x'$?

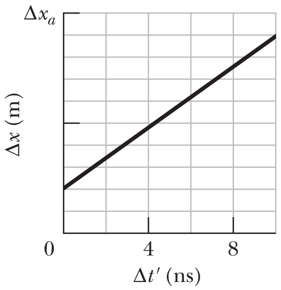


Figure 37-30 Problem 64.

65 *Another approach to velocity transformations.* In Fig. 37-31, reference frames B and C move past reference frame A in the common direction of their x axes. Represent the x components of the velocities of one frame relative to another with a two-letter subscript. For example, v_{AB} is the x component of the velocity of A relative to B. Similarly, represent the corresponding speed parameters with two-letter subscripts. For example, β_{AB} $(= v_{AB}/c)$ is the speed parameter corresponding to $v_{AB.}$ (a) Show that

$$\beta_{AC} = \frac{\beta_{AB} + \beta_{BC}}{1 + \beta_{AB}\beta_{BC}}.$$

Let M_{AB} represent the ratio $(1 - \beta_{AB})/(1 + \beta_{AB})$, and let M_{BC} and M_{AC} represent similar ratios. (b) Show that the relation

$$M_{AC} = M_{AB}M_{BC}$$

is true by deriving the equation of part (a) from it.

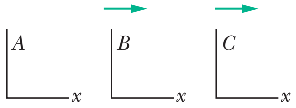


Figure 37-31 Problems 65, 66, and 67.

66 *Continuation of Problem 65.* Use the result of part (b) in Problem 65 for the motion along a single axis in the following situation. Frame A in Fig. 37-31 is attached to a particle that moves with velocity $+0.500c$ past frame B, which moves past frame C with a velocity of $+0.500c$. What are (a) M_{AC}, (b) β_{AC}, and (c) the velocity of the particle relative to frame C?

67 *Continuation of Problem 65.* Let reference frame C in Fig. 37-31 move past reference frame D (not shown). (a) Show that

$$M_{AD} = M_{AB}M_{BC}M_{CD}.$$

(b) Now put this general result to work: Three particles move parallel to a single axis on which an observer is stationed. Let plus and minus signs indicate the directions of motion along that axis. Particle A moves past particle B at $\beta_{AB} = +0.20$. Particle B moves past particle C at $\beta_{BC} = -0.40$. Particle C moves past observer D at $\beta_{CD} = +0.60$. What is the velocity of particle A relative to observer D? (The solution technique here is *much* faster than using Eq. 37-29.)

68 Figure 37-16 shows a ship (attached to reference frame S') passing us (standing in reference frame S) with velocity $\vec{v} = 0.950c\hat{i}$. A proton is fired at speed $0.980c$ relative to the ship from the front of the ship to the rear. The proper length of the ship is 760 m. What is the temporal separation between the time the proton is fired and the time it hits the rear wall of the ship according to (a) a passenger in the ship and (b) us? Suppose that, instead, the proton is fired from the rear to the front. What then is the temporal separation between the time it is fired and the time it hits the front wall according to (c) the passenger and (d) us?

69 *The car-in-the-garage problem.* Carman has just purchased the world's longest stretch limo, which has a proper length of $L_c = 30.5$ m. In Fig. 37-32*a*, it is shown parked in front of a garage with a proper length of $L_g = 6.00$ m. The garage has a front door (shown open) and a back door (shown closed). The limo is obviously longer than the garage. Still, Garageman, who owns the garage and knows something about relativistic length contraction, makes a bet with Carman that the limo can fit in the garage with both doors closed. Carman, who dropped his physics course before reaching special relativity, says such a thing, even in principle, is impossible.

To analyze Garageman's scheme, an x_c axis is attached to the limo, with $x_c = 0$ at the rear bumper, and an x_g axis is attached to the garage, with $x_g = 0$ at the (now open) front door. Then Carman is to drive the limo directly toward the front door at a velocity of $0.9980c$ (which is, of course, both technically and financially impossible). Carman is stationary in the x_c reference frame; Garageman is stationary in the x_g reference frame.

There are two events to consider. *Event 1:* When the rear bumper clears the front door, the front door is closed. Let the time of this event be zero to both Carman and Garageman: $t_{g1} = t_{c1} = 0$. The event occurs at $x_c = x_g = 0$. Figure 37-32*b* shows event 1 according to the x_g reference frame. *Event 2:* When the front bumper reaches the back door, that door opens. Figure 37-32*c* shows event 2 according to the x_g reference frame.

According to Garageman, (a) what is the length of the limo, and what are the spacetime coordinates (b) x_{g2} and (c) t_{g2} of event 2? (d) For how long is the limo temporarily "trapped" inside the garage with both doors shut? Now consider the situation from the x_c reference frame, in which the garage comes racing past the limo at a velocity of $-0.9980c$. According to Carman, (e) what is the length of the passing garage, what are the spacetime coordinates (f) x_{c2} and (g) t_{c2} of event 2, (h) is the limo ever in the garage with both doors shut, and (i) which event occurs first? (j) Sketch events 1 and 2 as seen by Carman. (k) Are the events causally related; that is, does one of them cause the other? (l) Finally, who wins the bet?

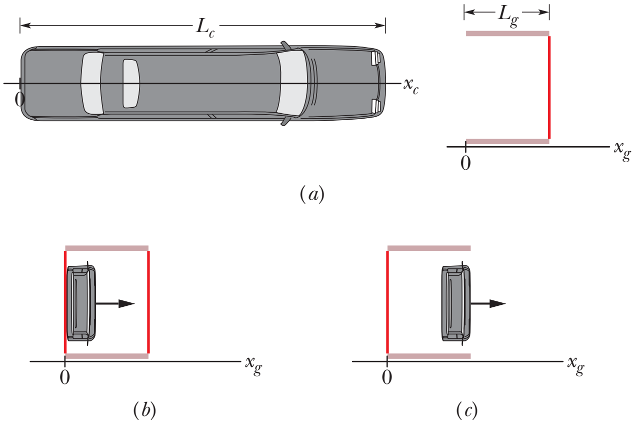


Figure 37-32 Problem 69.

70 An airplane has rest length 40.0 m and speed 630 m/s. To a ground observer, (a) by what fraction is its length contracted and (b) how long is needed for its clocks to be 1.00 μs slow.

71 **SSM** To circle Earth in low orbit, a satellite must have a speed of about 2.7×10^4 km/h. Suppose that two such satellites orbit Earth in opposite directions. (a) What is their relative speed as they pass, according to the classical Galilean velocity transformation equation? (b) What fractional error do you make in (a) by not using the (correct) relativistic transformation equation?

72 Find the speed parameter of a particle that takes 2.0 y longer than light to travel a distance of 6.0 ly.

73 **SSM** How much work is needed to accelerate a proton from a speed of $0.9850c$ to a speed of $0.9860c$?

74 A pion is created in the higher reaches of Earth's atmosphere when an incoming high-energy cosmic-ray particle collides with an atomic nucleus. A pion so formed descends toward Earth with a speed of $0.99c$. In a reference frame in which they are at rest, pions decay with an average life of 26 ns. As measured in a frame fixed with respect to Earth, how far (on the average) will such a pion move through the atmosphere before it decays?

75 **SSM** If we intercept an electron having total energy 1533 MeV that came from Vega, which is 26 ly from us, how far in light-years was the trip in the rest frame of the electron?

76 The total energy of a proton passing through a laboratory apparatus is 10.611 nJ. What is its speed parameter β? Use the proton mass given in Appendix B under "Best Value," not the commonly remembered rounded number.

77 A spaceship at rest in a certain reference frame S is given a speed increment of $0.50c$. Relative to its new rest frame, it is then given a further $0.50c$ increment. This process is continued until its speed with respect to its original frame S exceeds $0.999c$. How many increments does this process require?

78 In the red shift of radiation from a distant galaxy, a certain radiation, known to have a wavelength of 434 nm when observed in the laboratory, has a wavelength of 462 nm. (a) What is the radial speed of the galaxy relative to Earth? (b) Is the galaxy approaching or receding from Earth?

79 **SSM** What is the momentum in MeV/c of an electron with a kinetic energy of 2.00 MeV?

80 The radius of Earth is 6370 km, and its orbital speed about the Sun is 30 km/s. Suppose Earth moves past an observer at this speed. To the observer, by how much does Earth's diameter contract along the direction of motion?

81 A particle with mass m has speed $c/2$ relative to inertial frame S. The particle collides with an identical particle at rest relative to frame S. Relative to S, what is the speed of a frame S' in which the total momentum of these particles is zero? This frame is called the *center of momentum frame.*

82 An elementary particle produced in a laboratory experiment travels 0.230 mm through the lab at a relative speed of $0.960c$ before it decays (becomes another particle). (a) What is the proper lifetime of the particle? (b) What is the distance the particle travels as measured from its rest frame?

83 What are (a) K, (b) E, and (c) p (in GeV/c) for a proton moving at speed $0.990c$? What are (d) K, (e) E, and (f) p (in MeV/c) for an electron moving at speed $0.990c$?

84 A radar transmitter T is fixed to a reference frame S' that is moving to the right with speed v relative to reference frame S (Fig. 37-33). A mechanical timer (essentially a clock) in frame S', having a period τ_0 (measured in S'), causes transmitter T to emit timed radar pulses, which travel at the speed of light and are received by R, a receiver fixed in frame S. (a) What is the period τ of the timer as detected by observer A, who is fixed in frame S? (b) Show that at receiver R the time interval between pulses arriving from T is not τ or τ_0, but

$$\tau_R = \tau_0\sqrt{\frac{c+v}{c-v}}.$$

(c) Explain why receiver R and observer A, who are in the same reference frame, measure a different period for the transmitter. (*Hint:* A clock and a radar pulse are not the same thing.)

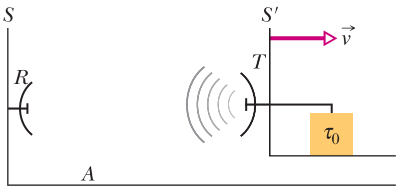


Figure 37-33 Problem 84.

85 One cosmic-ray particle approaches Earth along Earth's north–south axis with a speed of $0.80c$ toward the geographic north pole, and another approaches with a speed of $0.60c$ toward the geographic south pole (Fig. 37-34). What is the relative speed of approach of one particle with respect to the other?

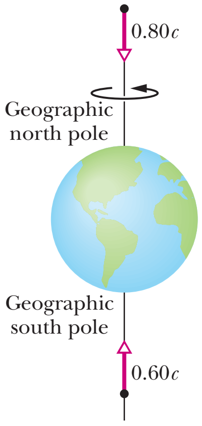


Figure 37-34 Problem 85.

86 (a) How much energy is released in the explosion of a fission bomb containing 3.0 kg of fissionable material? Assume that 0.10% of the mass is converted to released energy. (b) What mass of TNT would have to explode to provide the same energy release? Assume that each mole of TNT liberates 3.4 MJ of energy on exploding. The molecular mass of TNT is 0.227 kg/mol. (c) For the same mass of explosive, what is the ratio of the energy released in a nuclear explosion to that released in a TNT explosion?

87 (a) What potential difference would accelerate an electron to speed c according to classical physics? (b) With this potential difference, what speed would the electron actually attain?

88 A Foron cruiser moving directly toward a Reptulian scout ship fires a decoy toward the scout ship. Relative to the scout ship, the speed of the decoy is $0.980c$ and the speed of the Foron cruiser is $0.900c$. What is the speed of the decoy relative to the cruiser?

89 In Fig. 37-35, three spaceships are in a chase. Relative to an x axis in an inertial frame (say, Earth frame), their velocities are $v_A = 0.900c$, v_B, and $v_C = 0.800c$. (a) What value of v_B is required such that ships A and C approach ship B with the same speed relative to ship B, and (b) what is that relative speed?

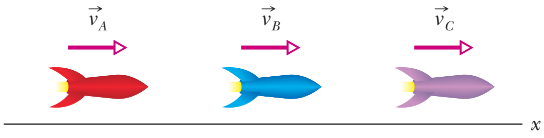


Figure 37-35 Problem 89.

90 Space cruisers A and B are moving parallel to the positive direction of an x axis. Cruiser A is faster, with a relative speed of $v = 0.900c$, and has a proper length of $L = 200$ m. According to the pilot of A, at the instant ($t = 0$) the tails of the cruisers are aligned, the noses are also. According to the pilot of B, how much later are the noses aligned?

91 In Fig. 37-36, two cruisers fly toward a space station. Relative to the station, cruiser A has speed $0.800c$. Relative to the station, what speed is required of cruiser B such that its pilot sees A and the station approach B at the same speed?

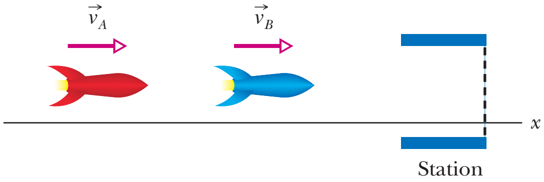


Figure 37-36 Problem 91.

92 A relativistic train of proper length 200 m approaches a tunnel of the same proper length, at a relative speed of $0.900c$. A paint bomb in the engine room is set to explode (and cover everyone with blue paint) when the *front* of the train passes the *far* end of the tunnel (event FF). However, when the *rear* car passes the *near* end of the tunnel (event RN), a device in that car is set to send a signal to the engine room to deactivate the bomb. *Train view:* (a) What is the tunnel length? (b) Which event occurs first, FF or RN? (c) What is the time between those events? (d) Does the paint bomb explode? *Tunnel view:* (e) What is the train length? (f) Which event occurs first? (g) What is the time between those events? (h) Does the paint bomb explode? If your answers to (d) and (h) differ, you need to explain the paradox, because either the engine room is covered with blue paint or not; you cannot have it both ways. If your answers are the same, you need to explain why.

93 Particle A (with rest energy 200 MeV) is at rest in a lab frame when it decays to particle B (rest energy 100 MeV) and particle C (rest energy 50 MeV). What are the (a) total energy and (b) momentum of B and the (c) total energy and (d) momentum of C?

94 Figure 37-37 shows three situations in which a starship passes Earth (the dot) and then makes a round trip that brings it back past Earth, each at the given Lorentz factor. As measured in the rest frame of Earth, the round-trip distances are as follows: trip 1, $2D$; trip 2, $4D$; trip 3, $6D$. Neglecting any time needed for accelerations and in terms of D and c, find the travel times of (a) trip 1, (b) trip 2, and (c) trip 3 as measured from the rest frame of Earth. Next, find the travel times of (d) trip 1, (e) trip 2, and (f) trip 3 as measured from the rest frame of the starship. (*Hint:* For a large Lorentz factor, the relative speed is almost c.)

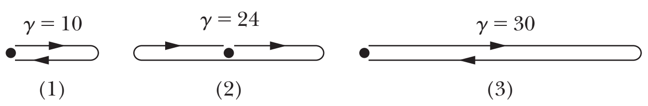


Figure 37-37 Problem 94.

95 Ionization measurements show that a particular lightweight nuclear particle carries a double charge ($= 2e$) and is moving with a speed of $0.710c$. Its measured radius of curvature in a magnetic field of 1.00 T is 6.28 m. Find the mass of the particle and identify it. (*Hints:* Lightweight nuclear particles are made up of neutrons (which have no charge) and protons (charge $= +e$), in roughly equal numbers. Take the mass of each such particle to be 1.00 u. (See Problem 53.)

96 A 2.50 MeV electron moves perpendicularly to a magnetic field in a path with a 3.0 cm radius of curvature. What is the magnetic field B? (See Problem 53.)

97 A proton synchrotron accelerates protons to a kinetic energy of 500 GeV. At this energy, calculate (a) the Lorentz factor, (b) the speed parameter, and (c) the magnetic field for which the proton orbit has a radius of curvature of 750 m.

98 An astronaut exercising on a treadmill maintains a pulse rate of 150 per minute. If he exercises for 1.00 h as measured by a clock on his spaceship, with a stride length of 1.00 m/s, while the ship travels with a speed of $0.900c$ relative to a ground station, what are (a) the pulse rate and (b) the distance walked as measured by someone at the ground station?

99 A spaceship approaches Earth at a speed of $0.42c$. A light on the front of the ship appears red (wavelength 650 nm) to passengers on the ship. What (a) wavelength and (b) color (blue, green, or yellow) would it appear to an observer on Earth?

100 Some of the familiar hydrogen lines appear in the spectrum of quasar 3C9, but they are shifted so far toward the red that their wavelengths are observed to be 3.0 times as long as those observed for hydrogen atoms at rest in the laboratory. (a) Show that the classical Doppler equation gives a relative velocity of recession greater than c for this situation. (b) Assuming that the relative motion of 3C9 and Earth is due entirely to the cosmological expansion of the universe, find the recession speed that is predicted by the relativistic Doppler equation.

101 In one year the United States consumption of electrical energy was about 2.2×10^{12} kW · h. (a) How much mass is equivalent to the consumed energy in that year? (b) Does it make any difference to your answer if this energy is generated in oil-burning, nuclear, or hydroelectric plants?

102 Quite apart from effects due to Earth's rotational and orbital motions, a laboratory reference frame is not strictly an inertial frame because a particle at rest there will not, in general, remain at rest; it will fall. Often, however, events happen so quickly that we can ignore the gravitational acceleration and treat the frame as inertial. Consider, for example, an electron of speed $v = 0.992c$, projected horizontally into a laboratory test chamber and moving through a distance of 20 cm. (a) How long would that take, and (b) how far would the electron fall during this interval? (c) What can you conclude about the suitability of the laboratory as an inertial frame in this case?

103 What is the speed parameter for the following speeds: (a) a typical rate of continental drift (1 in./y); (b) a typical drift speed for electrons in a current-carrying conductor (0.5 mm/s); (c) a highway speed limit of 55 mi/h; (d) the root-mean-square speed of a hydrogen molecule at room temperature; (e) a supersonic plane flying at Mach 2.5 (1200 km/h); (f) the escape speed of a projectile from the Earth's surface; (g) the speed of Earth in its orbit around the Sun; (h) a typical recession speed of a distant quasar due to the cosmological expansion (3.0×10^4 km/s)?

CHAPTER 38

Photons and Matter Waves

38-1 THE PHOTON, THE QUANTUM OF LIGHT

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.01 Explain the absorption and emission of light in terms of quantized energy and photons.

38.02 For photon absorption and emission, apply the relationships between energy, power, intensity, rate of photons, the Planck constant, the associated frequency, and the associated wavelength.

Key Ideas

- An electromagnetic wave (light) is quantized (allowed only in certain quantities), and the quanta are called photons.
- For light of frequency f and wavelength λ, the photon energy is
$$E = hf,$$
where h is the Planck constant.

What Is Physics?

One primary focus of physics is Einstein's theory of relativity, which took us into a world far beyond that of ordinary experience—the world of objects moving at speeds close to the speed of light. Among other surprises, Einstein's theory predicts that the rate at which a clock runs depends on how fast the clock is moving relative to the observer: the faster the motion, the slower the clock rate. This and other predictions of the theory have passed every experimental test devised thus far, and relativity theory has led us to a deeper and more satisfying view of the nature of space and time.

Now you are about to explore a second world that is outside ordinary experience—the subatomic world. You will encounter a new set of surprises that, though they may sometimes seem bizarre, have led physicists step by step to a deeper view of reality.

Quantum physics, as our new subject is called, answers such questions as: Why do the stars shine? Why do the elements exhibit the order that is so apparent in the periodic table? How do transistors and other microelectronic devices work? Why does copper conduct electricity but glass does not? In fact, scientists and engineers have applied quantum physics in almost every aspect of everyday life, from medical instrumentation to transportation systems to entertainment industries. Indeed, because quantum physics accounts for all of chemistry, including biochemistry, we need to understand it if we are to understand life itself.

Some of the predictions of quantum physics seem strange even to the physicists and philosophers who study its foundations. Still, experiment after experiment has proved the theory correct, and many have exposed even stranger aspects of the theory. The quantum world is an amusement park full of wonderful rides that are guaranteed to shake up the commonsense world view you have developed since childhood. We begin our exploration of that quantum park with the photon.

The Photon, the Quantum of Light

Quantum physics (which is also known as *quantum mechanics* and *quantum theory*) is largely the study of the microscopic world. In that world, many quantities are found only in certain minimum (*elementary*) amounts, or integer multiples of those elementary amounts; these quantities are then said to be *quantized*. The elementary amount that is associated with such a quantity is called the **quantum** of that quantity (*quanta* is the plural).

In a loose sense, U.S. currency is quantized because the coin of least value is the penny, or \$0.01 coin, and the values of all other coins and bills are restricted to integer multiples of that least amount. In other words, the currency quantum is \$0.01, and all greater amounts of currency are of the form n(\$0.01), where n is always a positive integer. For example, you cannot hand someone \$0.755 = 75.5(\$0.01).

In 1905, Einstein proposed that electromagnetic radiation (or simply *light*) is quantized and exists in elementary amounts (quanta) that we now call **photons**. This proposal should seem strange to you because we have just spent several chapters discussing the classical idea that light is a sinusoidal wave, with a wavelength λ, a frequency f, and a speed c such that

$$f = \frac{c}{\lambda}. \tag{38-1}$$

Furthermore, in Chapter 33 we discussed the classical light wave as being an interdependent combination of electric and magnetic fields, each oscillating at frequency f. How can this wave of oscillating fields consist of an elementary amount of something—the light quantum? What *is* a photon?

The concept of a light quantum, or a photon, turns out to be far more subtle and mysterious than Einstein imagined. Indeed, it is still very poorly understood. In this book, we shall discuss only some of the basic aspects of the photon concept, somewhat along the lines of Einstein's proposal. According to that proposal, the quantum of a light wave of frequency f has the energy

$$E = hf \quad \text{(photon energy)}. \tag{38-2}$$

Here h is the **Planck constant**, the constant we first met in Eq. 32-23, and which has the value

$$h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s} = 4.14 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{eV} \cdot \text{s}. \tag{38-3}$$

The smallest amount of energy a light wave of frequency f can have is hf, the energy of a single photon. If the wave has more energy, its total energy must be an integer multiple of hf. The light cannot have an energy of, say, $0.6hf$ or $75.5hf$.

Einstein further proposed that when light is absorbed or emitted by an object (matter), the absorption or emission event occurs in the atoms of the object. When light of frequency f is absorbed by an atom, the energy hf of one photon is transferred from the light to the atom. In this *absorption event,* the photon vanishes and the atom is said to absorb it. When light of frequency f is emitted by an atom, an amount of energy hf is transferred from the atom to the light. In this *emission event,* a photon suddenly appears and the atom is said to emit it. Thus, we can have *photon absorption* and *photon emission* by atoms in an object.

For an object consisting of many atoms, there can be many photon absorptions (such as with sunglasses) or photon emissions (such as with lamps). However, each absorption or emission event still involves the transfer of an amount of energy equal to that of a single photon of the light.

When we discussed the absorption or emission of light in previous chapters, our examples involved so much light that we had no need of quantum physics, and we got by with classical physics. However, in the late 20th century, technology became advanced enough that single-photon experiments could be conducted and put to practical use. Since then quantum physics has become part of standard engineering practice, especially in optical engineering.

Checkpoint 1

Rank the following radiations according to their associated photon energies, greatest first: (a) yellow light from a sodium vapor lamp, (b) a gamma ray emitted by a radioactive nucleus, (c) a radio wave emitted by the antenna of a commercial radio station, (d) a microwave beam emitted by airport traffic control radar.

Sample Problem 38.01 Emission and absorption of light as photons

A sodium vapor lamp is placed at the center of a large sphere that absorbs all the light reaching it. The rate at which the lamp emits energy is 100 W; assume that the emission is entirely at a wavelength of 590 nm. At what rate are photons absorbed by the sphere?

KEY IDEAS

The light is emitted and absorbed as photons. We assume that all the light emitted by the lamp reaches (and thus is absorbed by) the sphere. So, the rate R at which photons are absorbed by the sphere is equal to the rate R_{emit} at which photons are emitted by the lamp.

Calculations: That rate is

$$R_{\text{emit}} = \frac{\text{rate of energy emission}}{\text{energy per emitted photon}} = \frac{P_{\text{emit}}}{E}.$$

Next, into this we can substitute from Eq. 38-2 ($E = hf$), Einstein's proposal about the energy E of each quantum of light (which we here call a photon in modern language). We can then write the absorption rate as

$$R = R_{\text{emit}} = \frac{P_{\text{emit}}}{hf}.$$

Using Eq. 38-1 ($f = c/\lambda$) to substitute for f and then entering known data, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \frac{P_{\text{emit}}\lambda}{hc} \\ &= \frac{(100\ \text{W})(590 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})}{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})(2.998 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})} \\ &= 2.97 \times 10^{20}\ \text{photons/s}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

38-2 THE PHOTOELECTRIC EFFECT

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.03 Make a simple and basic sketch of a photoelectric experiment, showing the incident light, the metal plate, the emitted electrons (photoelectrons), and the collector cup.

38.04 Explain the problems physicists had with the photoelectric effect prior to Einstein and the historical importance of Einstein's explanation of the effect.

38.05 Identify a stopping potential V_{stop} and relate it to the maximum kinetic energy K_{max} of escaping photoelectrons.

38.06 For a photoelectric setup, apply the relationships between the frequency and wavelength of the incident light, the maximum kinetic energy K_{max} of the photoelectrons, the work function Φ, and the stopping potential V_{stop}.

38.07 For a photoelectric setup, sketch a graph of the stopping potential V_{stop} versus the frequency of the light, identifying the cutoff frequency f_0 and relating the slope to the Planck constant h and the elementary charge e.

Key Ideas

- When light of high enough frequency illuminates a metal surface, electrons can gain enough energy to escape the metal by absorbing photons in the illumination, in what is called the photoelectric effect.
- The conservation of energy in such an absorption and escape is written as

$$hf = K_{\text{max}} + \Phi,$$

where hf is the energy of the absorbed photon, K_{max} is the kinetic energy of the most energetic of the escaping electrons, and Φ (called the work function) is the least energy required by an electron to escape the electric forces holding electrons in the metal.

- If $hf = \Phi$, electrons barely escape but have no kinetic energy and the frequency is called the cutoff frequency f_0.
- If $hf < \Phi$, electrons cannot escape.

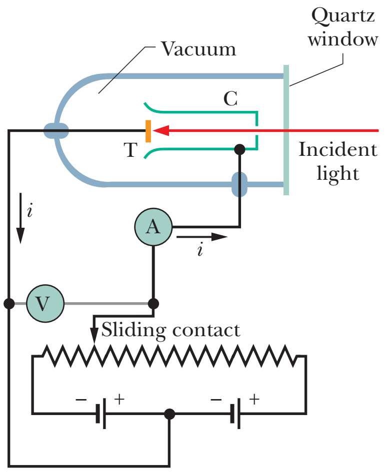


Figure 38-1 An apparatus used to study the photoelectric effect. The incident light shines on target T, ejecting electrons, which are collected by collector cup C. The electrons move in the circuit in a direction opposite the conventional current arrows. The batteries and the variable resistor are used to produce and adjust the electric potential difference between T and C.

The Photoelectric Effect

If you direct a beam of light of short enough wavelength onto a clean metal surface, the light will cause electrons to leave that surface (the light will *eject* the electrons from the surface). This **photoelectric effect** is used in many devices, including camcorders. Einstein's photon concept can explain it.

Let us analyze two basic photoelectric experiments, each using the apparatus of Fig. 38-1, in which light of frequency f is directed onto target T and ejects electrons from it. A potential difference V is maintained between target T and collector cup C to sweep up these electrons, said to be **photoelectrons.** This collection produces a **photoelectric current** i that is measured with meter A.

First Photoelectric Experiment

We adjust the potential difference V by moving the sliding contact in Fig. 38-1 so that collector C is slightly negative with respect to target T. This potential difference acts to slow down the ejected electrons. We then vary V until it reaches a certain value, called the **stopping potential** V_{stop}, at which point the reading of meter A has just dropped to zero. When $V = V_{\text{stop}}$, the most energetic ejected electrons are turned back just before reaching the collector. Then $K_{\max}$, the kinetic energy of these most energetic electrons, is

$$K_{\max} = eV_{\text{stop}}, \tag{38-4}$$

where e is the elementary charge.

Measurements show that for light of a given frequency, $K_{\max}$ *does not depend on the intensity of the light source.* Whether the source is dazzling bright or so feeble that you can scarcely detect it (or has some intermediate brightness), the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected electrons always has the same value.

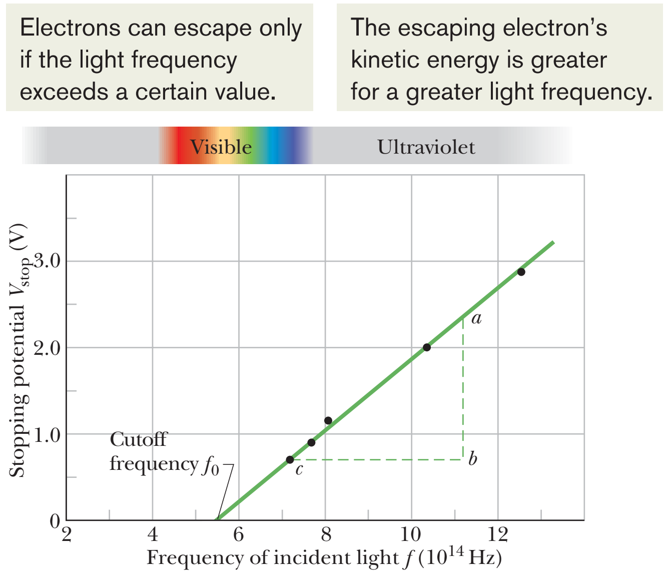
This experimental result is a puzzle for classical physics. Classically, the incident light is a sinusoidally oscillating electromagnetic wave. An electron in the target should oscillate sinusoidally due to the oscillating electric force on it from the wave's electric field. If the amplitude of the electron's oscillation is great enough, the electron should break free of the target's surface—that is, be ejected from the target. Thus, if we increase the amplitude of the wave and its oscillating electric field, the electron should get a more energetic "kick" as it is being ejected. *However, that is not what happens.* For a given frequency, intense light beams and feeble light beams give exactly the same maximum kick to ejected electrons.

The actual result follows naturally if we think in terms of photons. Now the energy that can be transferred from the incident light to an electron in the target is that of a single photon. Increasing the light intensity increases the *number* of photons in the light, but the photon energy, given by Eq. 38-2 ($E = hf$), is unchanged because the frequency is unchanged. Thus, the energy transferred to the kinetic energy of an electron is also unchanged.

Second Photoelectric Experiment

Now we vary the frequency f of the incident light and measure the associated stopping potential V_{stop}. Figure 38-2 is a plot of V_{stop} versus f. Note that the photoelectric effect does not occur if the frequency is below a certain **cutoff frequency** f_0 or, equivalently, if the wavelength is greater than the corresponding **cutoff wavelength** $\lambda_0 = c/f_0$. This is so *no matter how intense the incident light is.*

This is another puzzle for classical physics. If you view light as an electromagnetic wave, you must expect that no matter how low the frequency, electrons can always be ejected by light if you supply them with enough energy—that is, if you use a light source that is bright enough. *That is not what happens.* For light below the cutoff frequency f_0, the photoelectric effect does not occur, no matter how bright the light source.


Electrons can escape only if the light frequency exceeds a certain value.

The escaping electron's kinetic energy is greater for a greater light frequency.

Figure 38-2 The stopping potential V_{stop} as a function of the frequency f of the incident light for a sodium target T in the apparatus of Fig. 38-1. (Data reported by R. A. Millikan in 1916.)

The existence of a cutoff frequency is, however, just what we should expect if the energy is transferred via photons. The electrons within the target are held there by electric forces. (If they weren't, they would drip out of the target due to the gravitational force on them.) To just escape from the target, an electron must pick up a certain minimum energy Φ, where Φ is a property of the target material called its **work function.** If the energy hf transferred to an electron by a photon exceeds the work function of the material (if $hf > \Phi$), the electron can escape the target. If the energy transferred does not exceed the work function (that is, if $hf < \Phi$), the electron cannot escape. This is what Fig. 38-2 shows.

The Photoelectric Equation

Einstein summed up the results of such photoelectric experiments in the equation

$$hf = K_{\max} + \Phi \quad \text{(photoelectric equation).} \tag{38-5}$$

This is a statement of the conservation of energy for a single photon absorption by a target with work function Φ. Energy equal to the photon's energy hf is transferred to a single electron in the material of the target. If the electron is to escape from the target, it must pick up energy at least equal to Φ. Any additional energy $(hf - \Phi)$ that the electron acquires from the photon appears as kinetic energy K of the electron. In the most favorable circumstance, the electron can escape through the surface without losing any of this kinetic energy in the process; it then appears outside the target with the maximum possible kinetic energy $K_{\max}$.

Let us rewrite Eq. 38-5 by substituting for $K_{\max}$ from Eq. 38-4 ($K_{\max} = eV_{\text{stop}}$). After a little rearranging we get

$$V_{\text{stop}} = \left(\frac{h}{e}\right) f - \frac{\Phi}{e}. \tag{38-6}$$

The ratios h/e and Φ/e are constants, and so we would expect a plot of the measured stopping potential V_{stop} versus the frequency f of the light to be a straight line, as it is in Fig. 38-2. Further, the slope of that straight line should be h/e. As a check, we measure ab and bc in Fig. 38-2 and write

$$\frac{h}{e} = \frac{ab}{bc} = \frac{2.35\ \text{V} - 0.72\ \text{V}}{(11.2 \times 10^{14} - 7.2 \times 10^{14})\ \text{Hz}}$$
$$= 4.1 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{V} \cdot \text{s}.$$

Multiplying this result by the elementary charge e, we find

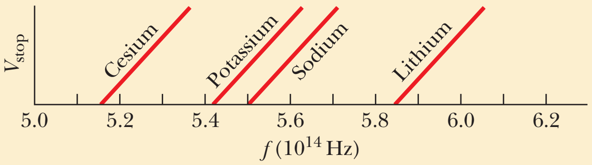
$$h = (4.1 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{V}\cdot\text{s})(1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C}) = 6.6 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s},$$

which agrees with values measured by many other methods.

An aside: An explanation of the photoelectric effect certainly requires quantum physics. For many years, Einstein's explanation was also a compelling argument for the existence of photons. However, in 1969 an alternative explanation for the effect was found that used quantum physics but did not need the concept of photons. As shown in countless other experiments, light *is* in fact quantized as photons, but Einstein's explanation of the photoelectric effect is not the best argument for that fact.

Checkpoint 2

The figure shows data like those of Fig. 38-2 for targets of cesium, potassium, sodium, and lithium. The plots are parallel. (a) Rank the targets according to their work functions, greatest first. (b) Rank the plots according to the value of h they yield, greatest first.



Sample Problem 38.02 Photoelectric effect and work function

Find the work function Φ of sodium from Fig. 38-2.

KEY IDEAS

We can find the work function Φ from the cutoff frequency f_0 (which we can measure on the plot). The reasoning is this: At the cutoff frequency, the kinetic energy $K_{\max}$ in Eq. 38-5 is zero. Thus, all the energy hf that is transferred from a photon to an electron goes into the electron's escape, which requires an energy of Φ.

Calculations: From that last idea, Eq. 38-5 then gives us, with $f = f_0$,

$$hf_0 = 0 + \Phi = \Phi.$$

In Fig. 38-2, the cutoff frequency f_0 is the frequency at which the plotted line intercepts the horizontal frequency axis, about 5.5×10^{14} Hz. We then have

$$\Phi = hf_0 = (6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})(5.5 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Hz})$$

$$= 3.6 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J} = 2.3\ \text{eV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

38-3 PHOTONS, MOMENTUM, COMPTON SCATTERING, LIGHT INTERFERENCE

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.08 For a photon, apply the relationships between momentum, energy, frequency, and wavelength.

38.09 With sketches, describe the basics of a Compton scattering experiment.

38.10 Identify the historic importance of Compton scattering.

38.11 For an increase in the Compton-scattering angle ϕ, identify whether these quantities of the scattered x ray increase or decrease: kinetic energy, momentum, wavelength.

38.12 For Compton scattering, describe how the conservations of momentum and kinetic energy lead to the equation giving the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$.

38.13 For Compton scattering, apply the relationships between the wavelengths of the incident and scattered x rays, the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$, the angle ϕ of photon scattering, and the electron's final energy and momentum (both magnitude and angle).

38.14 In terms of photons, explain the double-slit experiment in the standard version, the single-photon version, and the single-photon, wide-angle version.

Key Ideas

- Although it is massless, a photon has momentum, which is related to its energy E, frequency f, and wavelength by

$$p = \frac{hf}{c} = \frac{h}{\lambda}.$$

- In Compton scattering, x rays scatter as particles (as photons) from loosely bound electrons in a target.
- In the scattering, an x-ray photon loses energy and momentum to the target electron.
- The resulting increase (Compton shift) in the photon wavelength is

$$\Delta\lambda = \frac{h}{mc}(1 - \cos\phi),$$

where m is the mass of the target electron and ϕ is the angle at which the photon is scattered from its initial travel direction.
- Photons: When light interacts with matter, the interaction is particle-like, occurring at a point and transferring energy and momentum.
- Wave: When a single photon is emitted by a source, we interpret its travel as being that of a probability wave.
- Wave: When many photons are emitted or absorbed by matter, we interpret the combined light as a classical electromagnetic wave.

Photons Have Momentum

In 1916, Einstein extended his concept of light quanta (photons) by proposing that a quantum of light has linear momentum. For a photon with energy hf, the magnitude of that momentum is

$$p = \frac{hf}{c} = \frac{h}{\lambda} \quad \text{(photon momentum)}, \tag{38-7}$$

where we have substituted for f from Eq. 38-1 ($f = c/\lambda$). Thus, when a photon interacts with matter, energy *and* momentum are transferred, *as if* there were a collision between the photon and matter in the classical sense (as in Chapter 9).

In 1923, Arthur Compton at Washington University in St. Louis showed that both momentum and energy are transferred via photons. He directed a beam of x rays of wavelength λ onto a target made of carbon, as shown in Fig. 38-3. An x ray is a form of electromagnetic radiation, at high frequency and thus small wavelength. Compton measured the wavelengths and intensities of the x rays that were scattered in various directions from his carbon target.

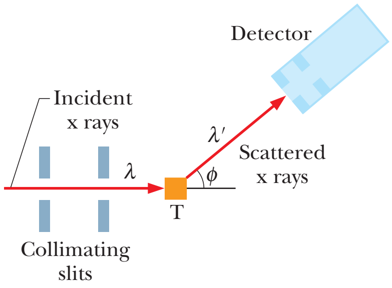


Figure 38-3 Compton's apparatus. A beam of x rays of wavelength $\lambda = 71.1$ pm is directed onto a carbon target T. The x rays scattered from the target are observed at various angles ϕ to the direction of the incident beam. The detector measures both the intensity of the scattered x rays and their wavelength.

Figure 38-4 shows his results. Although there is only a single wavelength ($\lambda = 71.1$ pm) in the incident x-ray beam, we see that the scattered x rays contain a range of wavelengths with two prominent intensity peaks. One peak is centered about the incident wavelength λ, the other about a wavelength λ' that is longer than λ by an amount $\Delta\lambda$, which is called the **Compton shift.** The value of the Compton shift varies with the angle at which the scattered x rays are detected and is greater for a greater angle.

Figure 38-4 is still another puzzle for classical physics. Classically, the incident x-ray beam is a sinusoidally oscillating electromagnetic wave. An electron in the

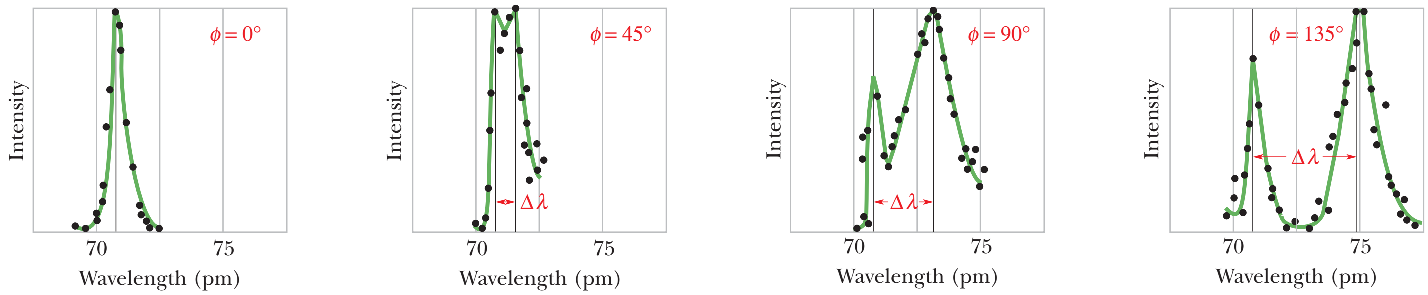


Figure 38-4 Compton's results for four values of the scattering angle ϕ. Note that the Compton shift $\Delta\lambda$ increases as the scattering angle increases.

carbon target should oscillate sinusoidally due to the oscillating electric force on it from the wave's electric field. Further, the electron should oscillate at the same frequency as the wave and should send out waves *at this same frequency,* as if it were a tiny transmitting antenna. Thus, the x rays scattered by the electron should have the same frequency, and the same wavelength, as the x rays in the incident beam—but they don't.

Compton interpreted the scattering of x rays from carbon in terms of energy and momentum transfers, via photons, between the incident x-ray beam and loosely bound electrons in the carbon target. Let's see how this quantum physics interpretation leads to an understanding of Compton's results.

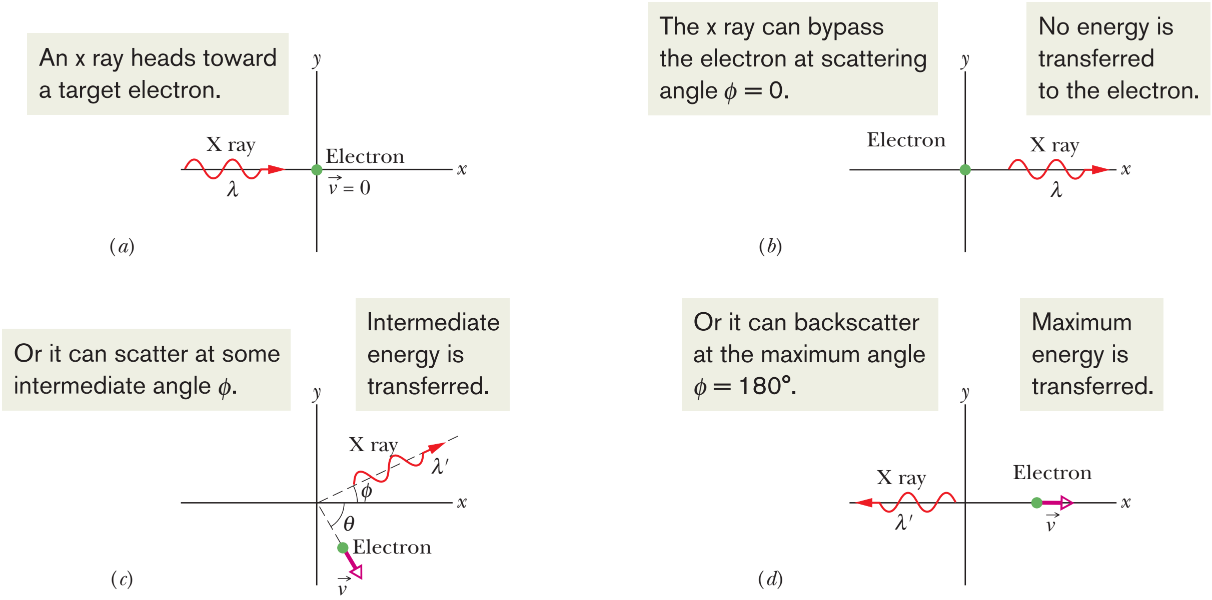
Suppose a single photon (of energy $E = hf$) is associated with the interaction between the incident x-ray beam and a stationary electron. In general, the direction of travel of the x ray will change (the x ray is scattered), and the electron will recoil, which means that the electron has obtained some kinetic energy. Energy is conserved in this isolated interaction. Thus, the energy of the scattered photon ($E' = hf'$) must be less than that of the incident photon. The scattered x rays must then have a lower frequency f' and thus a longer wavelength λ' than the incident x rays, just as Compton's experimental results in Fig. 38-4 show.

For the quantitative part, we first apply the law of conservation of energy. Figure 38-5 suggests a "collision" between an x ray and an initially stationary free electron in the target. As a result of the collision, an x ray of wavelength λ' moves off at an angle ϕ and the electron moves off at an angle θ, as shown. Conservation of energy then gives us

$$hf = hf' + K,$$

in which hf is the energy of the incident x-ray photon, hf' is the energy of the scattered x-ray photon, and K is the kinetic energy of the recoiling electron. Because the electron may recoil with a speed comparable to that of light, we must use the relativistic expression of Eq. 37-52,

$$K = mc^2(\gamma - 1),$$


An x ray heads toward a target electron.

The x ray can bypass the electron at scattering angle $\phi = 0$.

No energy is transferred to the electron.

Or it can scatter at some intermediate angle ϕ.

Intermediate energy is transferred.

Or it can backscatter at the maximum angle $\phi = 180°$.

Maximum energy is transferred.

Figure 38-5 (*a*) An x ray approaches a stationary electron. The x ray can (*b*) bypass the electron (forward scatter) with no energy or momentum transfer, (*c*) scatter at some intermediate angle with an intermediate energy and momentum transfer, or (*d*) backscatter with the maximum energy and momentum transfer.

for the electron's kinetic energy. Here m is the electron's mass and γ is the Lorentz factor

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}}.$$

Substituting for K in the conservation of energy equation yields

$$hf = hf' + mc^2(\gamma - 1).$$

Substituting c/λ for f and c/λ' for f' then leads to the new energy conservation equation

$$\frac{h}{\lambda} = \frac{h}{\lambda'} + mc(\gamma - 1). \qquad (38\text{-}8)$$

Next we apply the law of conservation of momentum to the x-ray–electron collision of Fig. 38-5. From Eq. 38-7 ($p = h/\lambda$), the magnitude of the momentum of the incident photon is h/λ, and that of the scattered photon is h/λ'. From Eq. 37-41, the magnitude for the recoiling electron's momentum is $p = \gamma mv$. Because we have a two-dimensional situation, we write separate equations for the conservation of momentum along the x and y axes, obtaining

$$\frac{h}{\lambda} = \frac{h}{\lambda'}\cos\phi + \gamma mv\cos\theta \quad (x\text{ axis}) \qquad (38\text{-}9)$$

and

$$0 = \frac{h}{\lambda'}\sin\phi - \gamma mv\sin\theta \quad (y\text{ axis}). \qquad (38\text{-}10)$$

We want to find $\Delta\lambda$ ($= \lambda' - \lambda$), the Compton shift of the scattered x rays. Of the five collision variables (λ, λ', v, ϕ, and θ) that appear in Eqs. 38-8, 38-9, and 38-10, we choose to eliminate v and θ, which deal only with the recoiling electron. Carrying out the algebra (it is somewhat complicated) leads to

$$\Delta\lambda = \frac{h}{mc}(1 - \cos\phi) \quad (\text{Compton shift}). \qquad (38\text{-}11)$$

Equation 38-11 agrees exactly with Compton's experimental results.

The quantity h/mc in Eq. 38-11 is a constant called the **Compton wavelength.** Its value depends on the mass m of the particle from which the x rays scatter. Here that particle is a loosely bound electron, and thus we would substitute the mass of an electron for m to evaluate the *Compton wavelength for Compton scattering from an electron.*

A Loose End

The peak at the incident wavelength λ (= 71.1 pm) in Fig. 38-4 still needs to be explained. This peak arises not from interactions between x rays and the very loosely bound electrons in the target but from interactions between x rays and the electrons that are *tightly* bound to the carbon atoms making up the target. Effectively, each of these latter collisions occurs between an incident x ray and an entire carbon atom. If we substitute for m in Eq. 38-11 the mass of a carbon atom (which is about 22 000 times that of an electron), we see that $\Delta\lambda$ becomes about 22 000 times smaller than the Compton shift for an electron—too small to detect. Thus, the x rays scattered in these collisions have the same wavelength as the incident x rays and give us the unshifted peaks in Fig. 38-4.

☑ Checkpoint 3

Compare Compton scattering for x rays ($\lambda \approx 20$ pm) and visible light ($\lambda \approx 500$ nm) at a particular angle of scattering. Which has the greater (a) Compton shift, (b) fractional wavelength shift, (c) fractional energy loss, and (d) energy imparted to the electron?

Sample Problem 38.03 Compton scattering of light by electrons

X rays of wavelength $\lambda = 22$ pm (photon energy $= 56$ keV) are scattered from a carbon target, and the scattered rays are detected at 85° to the incident beam.

(a) What is the Compton shift of the scattered rays?

KEY IDEA

The Compton shift is the wavelength change of the x rays due to scattering from loosely bound electrons in a target. Further, that shift depends on the angle at which the scattered x rays are detected, according to Eq. 38-11. The shift is zero for forward scattering at angle $\phi = 0°$, and it is maximum for backscattering at angle $\phi = 180°$. Here we have an intermediate situation at angle $\phi = 85°$.

Calculation: Substituting 85° for that angle and 9.11×10^{-31} kg for the electron mass (because the scattering is from electrons) in Eq. 38-11 gives us

$$\Delta\lambda = \frac{h}{mc}(1 - \cos\phi)$$
$$= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s})(1 - \cos 85°)}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\,\text{kg})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\,\text{m/s})}$$
$$= 2.21 \times 10^{-12}\,\text{m} \approx 2.2\,\text{pm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) What percentage of the initial x-ray photon energy is transferred to an electron in such scattering?

KEY IDEA

We need to find the *fractional energy loss* (let us call it *frac*) for photons that scatter from the electrons:

$$frac = \frac{\text{energy loss}}{\text{initial energy}} = \frac{E - E'}{E}.$$

Calculations: From Eq. 38-2 ($E = hf$), we can substitute for the initial energy E and the detected energy E' of the x rays in terms of frequencies. Then, from Eq. 38-1 ($f = c/\lambda$), we can substitute for those frequencies in terms of the wavelengths. We find

$$frac = \frac{hf - hf'}{hf} = \frac{c/\lambda - c/\lambda'}{c/\lambda} = \frac{\lambda' - \lambda}{\lambda'}$$
$$= \frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda + \Delta\lambda}.$$

Substitution of data yields

$$frac = \frac{2.21\,\text{pm}}{22\,\text{pm} + 2.21\,\text{pm}} = 0.091, \text{ or } 9.1\%. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Although the Compton shift $\Delta\lambda$ is independent of the wavelength λ of the incident x rays (see Eq. 38-11), our result here tells us that the *fractional* photon energy loss of the x rays does depend on λ, increasing as the wavelength of the incident radiation decreases.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Light as a Probability Wave

A fundamental mystery in physics is how light can be a wave (which spreads out over a region) in classical physics but be emitted and absorbed as photons (which originate and vanish at points) in quantum physics. The double-slit experiment of Module 35-2 lies at the heart of this mystery. Let us discuss three versions of it.

The Standard Version

Figure 38-6 is a sketch of the original experiment carried out by Thomas Young in 1801 (see also Fig. 35-8). Light shines on screen B, which contains two narrow parallel slits. The light waves emerging from the two slits spread out by diffraction and overlap on screen C where, by interference, they form a pattern of alternating intensity maxima and minima. In Module 35-2 we took the existence of these interference fringes as compelling evidence for the wave nature of light.

Let us place a tiny photon detector D at one point in the plane of screen C. Let the detector be a photoelectric device that clicks when it absorbs a photon. We would find that the detector produces a series of clicks, randomly spaced in time, each click signaling the transfer of energy from the light wave to the screen via a photon absorption. If we moved the detector very slowly up or down as indicated by the black arrow in Fig. 38-6, we would find that the click rate increases and decreases, passing through alternate maxima and minima that correspond exactly to the maxima and minima of the interference fringes.

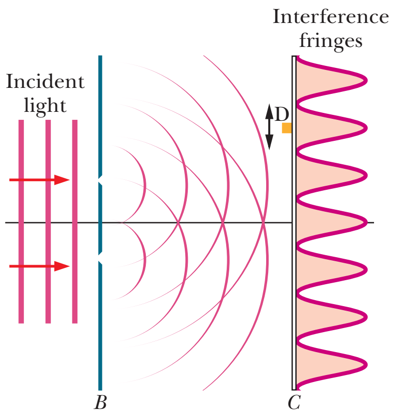


Figure 38-6 Light is directed onto screen B, which contains two parallel slits. Light emerging from these slits spreads out by diffraction. The two diffracted waves overlap at screen C and form a pattern of interference fringes. A small photon detector D in the plane of screen C generates a sharp click for each photon that it absorbs.

The point of this thought experiment is as follows. We cannot predict when a photon will be detected at any particular point on screen C; photons are detected at individual points at random times. We can, however, predict that the relative *probability* that a single photon will be detected at a particular point in a specified time interval is proportional to the light intensity at that point.

We know from Eq. 33-26 ($I = E^2_{\text{rms}}/c\mu_0$) in Module 33-2 that the intensity I of a light wave at any point is proportional to the square of E_m, the amplitude of the oscillating electric field vector of the wave at that point. Thus,

> The probability (per unit time interval) that a photon will be detected in any small volume centered on a given point in a light wave is proportional to the square of the amplitude of the wave's electric field vector at that point.

We now have a probabilistic description of a light wave, hence another way to view light. It is not only an electromagnetic wave but also a **probability wave.** That is, to every point in a light wave we can attach a numerical probability (per unit time interval) that a photon can be detected in any small volume centered on that point.

The Single-Photon Version

A single-photon version of the double-slit experiment was first carried out by G. I. Taylor in 1909 and has been repeated many times since. It differs from the standard version in that the light source in the Taylor experiment is so extremely feeble that it emits only one photon at a time, at random intervals. Astonishingly, interference fringes still build up on screen C if the experiment runs long enough (several months for Taylor's early experiment).

What explanation can we offer for the result of this single-photon double-slit experiment? Before we can even consider the result, we are compelled to ask questions like these: If the photons move through the apparatus one at a time, through which of the two slits in screen B does a given photon pass? How does a given photon even "know" that there is another slit present so that interference is a possibility? Can a single photon somehow pass through both slits and interfere with itself?

Bear in mind that the only thing we can know about photons is when light interacts with matter—we have no way of detecting them without an interaction with matter, such as with a detector or a screen. Thus, in the experiment of Fig. 38-6, all we can know is that photons originate at the light source and vanish at the screen. Between source and screen, we cannot know what the photon is or does. However, because an interference pattern eventually builds up on the screen, we can speculate that each photon travels from source to screen *as a wave* that fills up the space between source and screen and then vanishes in a photon absorption at some point on the screen, with a transfer of energy and momentum to the screen at that point.

We *cannot* predict where this transfer will occur (where a photon will be detected) for any given photon originating at the source. However, we *can* predict the probability that a transfer will occur at any given point on the screen. Transfers will tend to occur (and thus photons will tend to be absorbed) in the regions of the bright fringes in the interference pattern that builds up on the screen. Transfers will tend *not* to occur (and thus photons will tend *not* to be absorbed) in the regions of the dark fringes in the built-up pattern. Thus, we can say that the wave traveling from the source to the screen is a *probability wave,* which produces a pattern of "probability fringes" on the screen.

The Single-Photon, Wide-Angle Version

In the past, physicists tried to explain the single-photon double-slit experiment in terms of small packets of classical light waves that are individually sent toward the slits. They would define these small packets as photons. However, modern experiments invalidate this explanation and definition. One of these experiments, reported in 1992 by Ming Lai and Jean-Claude Diels of the University of New Mexico, A *single* photon can take widely different paths and still interfere with itself.

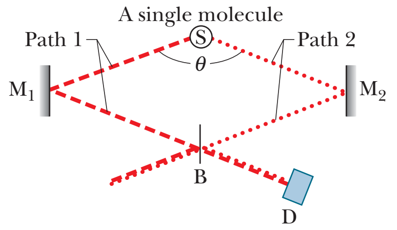


Figure 38-7 The light from a single photon emission in source S travels over two widely separated paths and interferes with itself at detector D after being recombined by beam splitter B. (Based on Ming Lai and Jean-Claude Diels, *Journal of the Optical Society of America B*, **9**, 2290–2294, December 1992.)

is depicted in Figure 38-7. Source S contains molecules that emit photons at well-separated times. Mirrors M_1 and M_2 are positioned to reflect light that the source emits along two distinct paths, 1 and 2, that are separated by an angle θ, which is close to 180°. This arrangement differs from the standard two-slit experiment, in which the angle between the paths of the light reaching two slits is very small.

After reflection from mirrors M_1 and M_2, the light waves traveling along paths 1 and 2 meet at beam splitter B, which transmits half the incident light and reflects the other half. On the right side of B in Fig. 38-7, the light wave traveling along path 2 and reflected by B combines with the light wave traveling along path 1 and transmitted by B. These two waves then interfere with each other at detector D (a *photomultiplier tube* that can detect individual photons).

The output of the detector is a randomly spaced series of electronic pulses, one for each detected photon. In the experiment, the beam splitter is moved slowly in a horizontal direction (in the reported experiment, a distance of only about 50 μm maximum), and the detector output is recorded on a chart recorder. Moving the beam splitter changes the lengths of paths 1 and 2, producing a phase shift between the light waves arriving at detector D. Interference maxima and minima appear in the detector's output signal.

This experiment is difficult to understand in traditional terms. For example, when a molecule in the source emits a single photon, does that photon travel along path 1 or path 2 in Fig. 38-7 (or along any other path)? Or can it move in both directions at once? To answer, we assume that when a molecule emits a photon, a probability wave radiates in all directions from it. The experiment samples this wave in two of those directions, chosen to be nearly opposite each other.

We see that we can interpret all three versions of the double-slit experiment if we assume that (1) light is generated in the source as photons, (2) light is absorbed in the detector as photons, and (3) light travels between source and detector as a probability wave.

38-4 THE BIRTH OF QUANTUM PHYSICS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.15 Identify an ideal blackbody radiator and its spectral radiancy $S(\lambda)$.

38.16 Identify the problem that physicists had with blackbody radiation prior to Planck's work, and explain how Planck and Einstein solved the problem.

38.17 Apply Planck's radiation law for a given wavelength and temperature.

38.18 For a narrow wavelength range and for a given wavelength and temperature, find the intensity in blackbody radiation.

38.19 Apply the relationship between intensity, power, and area.

38.20 Apply Wien's law to relate the surface temperature of an ideal blackbody radiator to the wavelength at which the spectral radiancy is maximum.

Key Ideas

- As a measure of the emission of thermal radiation by an ideal blackbody radiator, we define the spectral radiancy in terms of the emitted intensity per unit wavelength at a given wavelength λ:

$$S(\lambda) = \frac{\text{intensity}}{(\text{unit wavelength})}.$$

- The Planck radiation law, in which atomic oscillators produce the thermal radiation, is

$$S(\lambda) = \frac{2\pi c^2 h}{\lambda^5} \frac{1}{e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1},$$

where h is the Planck constant, k is the Boltzmann constant, and T is the temperature of the radiating surface (in kelvins).

- Planck's law was the first suggestion that the energies of the atomic oscillators producing the radiation are quantized.

- Wien's law relates the temperature T of a blackbody radiator and the wavelength $\lambda_{\max}$ at which the spectral radiancy is maximum:

$$\lambda_{\max} T = 2898\ \mu\text{m} \cdot \text{K}.$$

The Birth of Quantum Physics

Now that we have seen how the photoelectric effect and Compton scattering propelled physicists into quantum physics, let's back up to the very beginning, when the idea of quantized energies gradually emerged out of experimental data. The story begins with what might seem mundane these days but which was a fixation point for physicists of 1900. The subject was the thermal radiation emitted by an ideal blackbody radiator—that is, a radiator whose emitted radiation depends only on its temperature and not on the material from which it is made, the nature of its surface, or anything other than temperature. In a nutshell here was the trouble: the experimental results differed wildly from the theoretical predictions and no one had a clue as to why.

Experimental Setup. We can make an ideal radiator by forming a cavity within a body and keeping the cavity walls at a uniform temperature. The atoms on the inner wall of the body oscillate (they have thermal energy), which causes them to emit electromagnetic waves, the thermal radiation. To sample that internal radiation, we drill a small hole through the wall so that some of the radiation can escape to be measured (but not enough to alter the radiation inside the cavity). We are interested in how the intensity of the radiation depends on wavelength.

That intensity distribution is handled by defining a **spectral radiancy** $S(\lambda)$ of the radiation emitted at given wavelength λ:

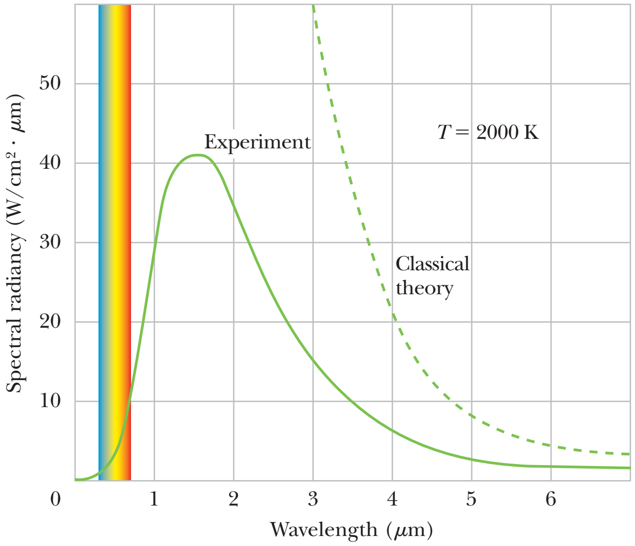


Figure 38-8 The solid curve shows the experimental spectral radiancy for a cavity at 2000 K. Note the failure of the classical theory, which is shown as a dashed curve. The range of visible wavelengths is indicated.

$$S(\lambda) = \frac{\text{intensity}}{\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{unit}\\ \text{wavelength}\end{array}\right)} = \frac{\text{power}}{\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{unit area}\\ \text{of emitter}\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{unit}\\ \text{wavelength}\end{array}\right)}. \tag{38-12}$$

If we multiply $S(\lambda)$ by a narrow wavelength range $d\lambda$, we have the intensity (that is, the power per unit area of the hole in the wall) that is being emitted in the wavelength range λ to $\lambda + d\lambda$.

The solid curve in Fig. 38-8 shows the experimental results for a cavity with a wall temperature of 2000 K, for a range of wavelengths. Although such a radiator would glow brightly in a dark room, we can tell from the figure that only a small part of its radiated energy actually lies in the visible range (which is colorfully indicated). At that temperature, most of the radiated energy lies in the infrared region, with longer wavelengths.

Theory. The prediction of classical physics for the spectral radiancy, for a given temperature T in kelvins, is

$$S(\lambda) = \frac{2\pi ckT}{\lambda^4} \quad \text{(classical radiation law)}, \tag{38-13}$$

where k is the Boltzmann constant (Eq. 19-7) with the value

$$k = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\,\text{J/K} = 8.62 \times 10^{-5}\,\text{eV/K}.$$

This classical result is plotted in Fig. 38-8 for $T = 2000$ K. Although the theoretical and experimental results agree well at long wavelengths (off the graph to the right), they are not even close in the short wavelength region. Indeed, the theoretical prediction does not even include a maximum as seen in the measured results and instead "blows up" up to infinity (which was quite disturbing, even embarrassing, to the physicists).

Planck's Solution. In 1900, Planck devised a formula for $S(\lambda)$ that neatly fitted the experimental results for all wavelengths and for all temperatures:

$$S(\lambda) = \frac{2\pi c^2 h}{\lambda^5}\,\frac{1}{e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1} \quad \text{(Planck's radiation law)}. \tag{38-14}$$

The key element in the equation lies in the argument of the exponential: hc/λ, which we can rewrite in a more suggestive form as hf. Equation 38-14 was the first use of the symbol h, and the appearance of hf suggests that the energies of the atomic oscillators in the cavity wall are quantized. However, Planck, with his training in classical physics, simply could not believe such a result in spite of the immediate success of his equation in fitting all experimental data.

Einstein's Solution. No one understood Eq. 38-14 for 17 years, but then Einstein explained it with a very simple model with two key ideas: (1) The energies of the cavity-wall atoms that are emitting the radiation are indeed quantized. (2) The energies of the radiation in the cavity are also quantized in the form of quanta (what we now call photons), each with energy $E = hf$. In his model he explained the processes by which atoms can emit and absorb photons and how the atoms can be in equilibrium with the emitted and absorbed light.

Maximum Value. The wavelength $\lambda_{\max}$ at which the $S(\lambda)$ is maximum (for a given temperature T) can be found by taking the first derivative of Eq. 38-14 with respect to λ, setting the derivative to zero, and then solving for the wavelength. The result is known as Wien's law:

$$\lambda_{\max} T = 2898\ \mu\text{m} \cdot \text{K} \qquad \text{(at maximum radiancy).} \tag{38-15}$$

For example, in Fig. 38-8 for which $T = 2000$ K, $\lambda_{\max} = 1.5\ \mu$m, which is greater than the long wavelength end of the visible spectrum and is in the infrared region, as shown. If we increase the temperature, $\lambda_{\max}$ decreases and the peak in Fig. 38-8 changes shape and shifts more into the visible range.

Radiated Power. If we integrate Eq. 38-14 over all wavelengths (for a given temperature), we find the power per unit area of a thermal radiator. If we then multiply by the total surface area A, we find the total radiated power P. We have already seen the result in Eq. 18-38 (with some changes in notation):

$$P = \sigma \varepsilon A T^4, \tag{38-16}$$

where σ ($= 5.6704 \times 10^{-8}$ W/m$^2 \cdot$ K^4) is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant and ε is the emissivity of the radiating surface ($\varepsilon = 1$ for an ideal blackbody radiator). Actually, integrating Eq. 38-14 over all wavelengths is difficult. However, for a given temperature T, wavelength λ, and wavelength range $\Delta\lambda$ that is small relative to λ, we can approximate the power in that range by simply evaluating $S(\lambda)A\,\Delta\lambda$.

38-5 ELECTRONS AND MATTER WAVES

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.21 Identify that electrons (and protons and all other elementary particles) are matter waves.

38.22 For both relativistic and nonrelativistic particles, apply the relationships between the de Broglie wavelength, momentum, speed, and kinetic energy.

38.23 Describe the double-slit interference pattern obtained with particles such as electrons.

38.24 Apply the optical two-slit equations (Module 35-2) and diffraction equations (Module 36-1) to matter waves.

Key Ideas

- A moving particle such as an electron can be described as a matter wave.
- The wavelength associated with the matter wave is the particle's de Broglie wavelength $\lambda = h/p$, where p is the particle's momentum.
- Particle: When an electron interacts with matter, the interaction is particle-like, occurring at a point and transferring energy and momentum.
- Wave: When an electron is in transit, we interpret it as being a probability wave.

Electrons and Matter Waves

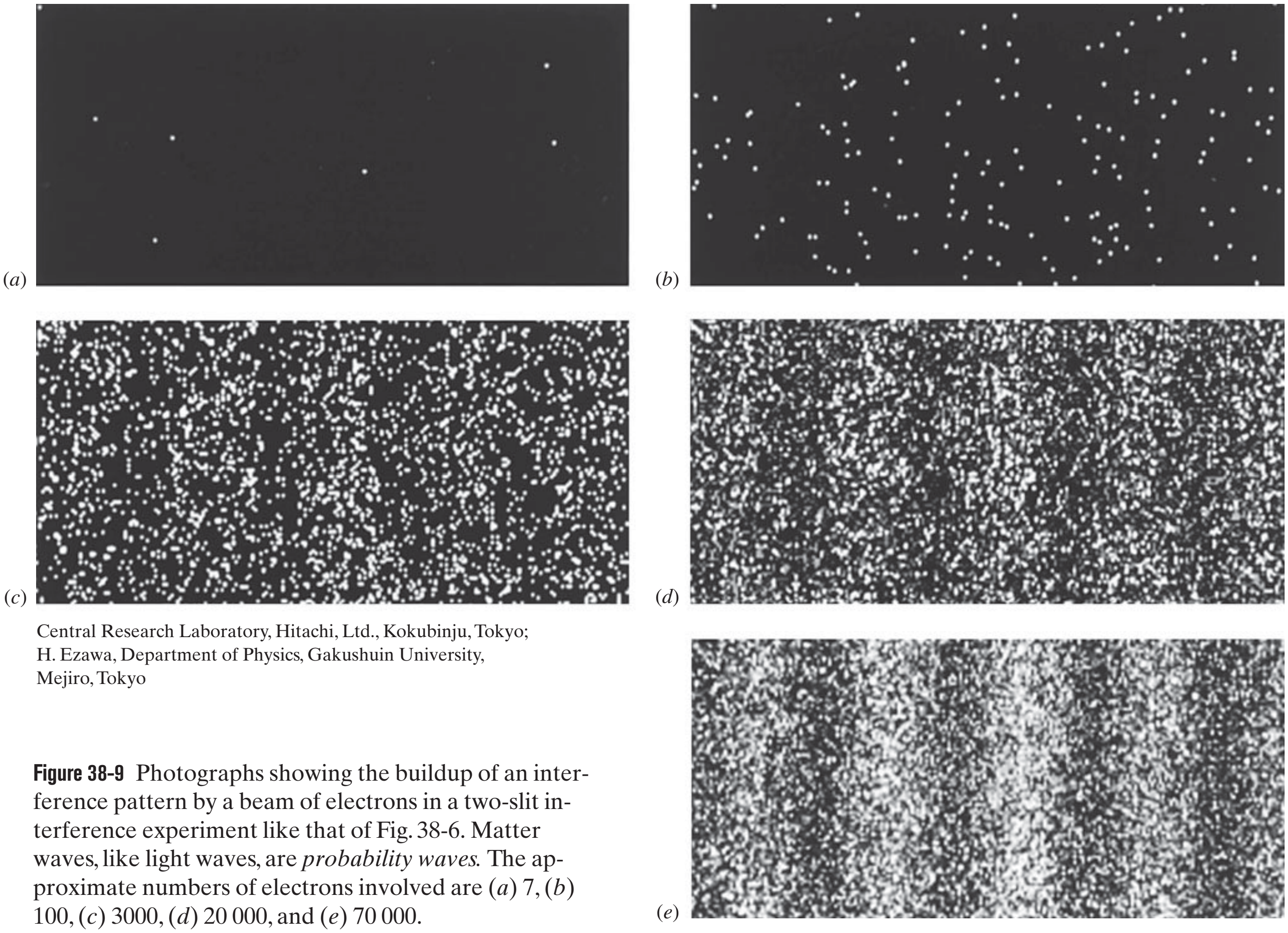
In 1924, French physicist Louis de Broglie made the following appeal to symmetry: A beam of light is a wave, but it transfers energy and momentum to matter only at points, via photons. Why can't a beam of particles have the same properties? That is, why can't we think of a moving electron—or any other particle—as a **matter wave** that transfers energy and momentum to other matter at points?

In particular, de Broglie suggested that Eq. 38-7 ($p = h/\lambda$) might apply not only to photons but also to electrons. We used that equation in Module 38-3 to assign a momentum p to a photon of light with wavelength λ. We now use it, in the form

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} \quad \text{(de Broglie wavelength)}, \tag{38-17}$$

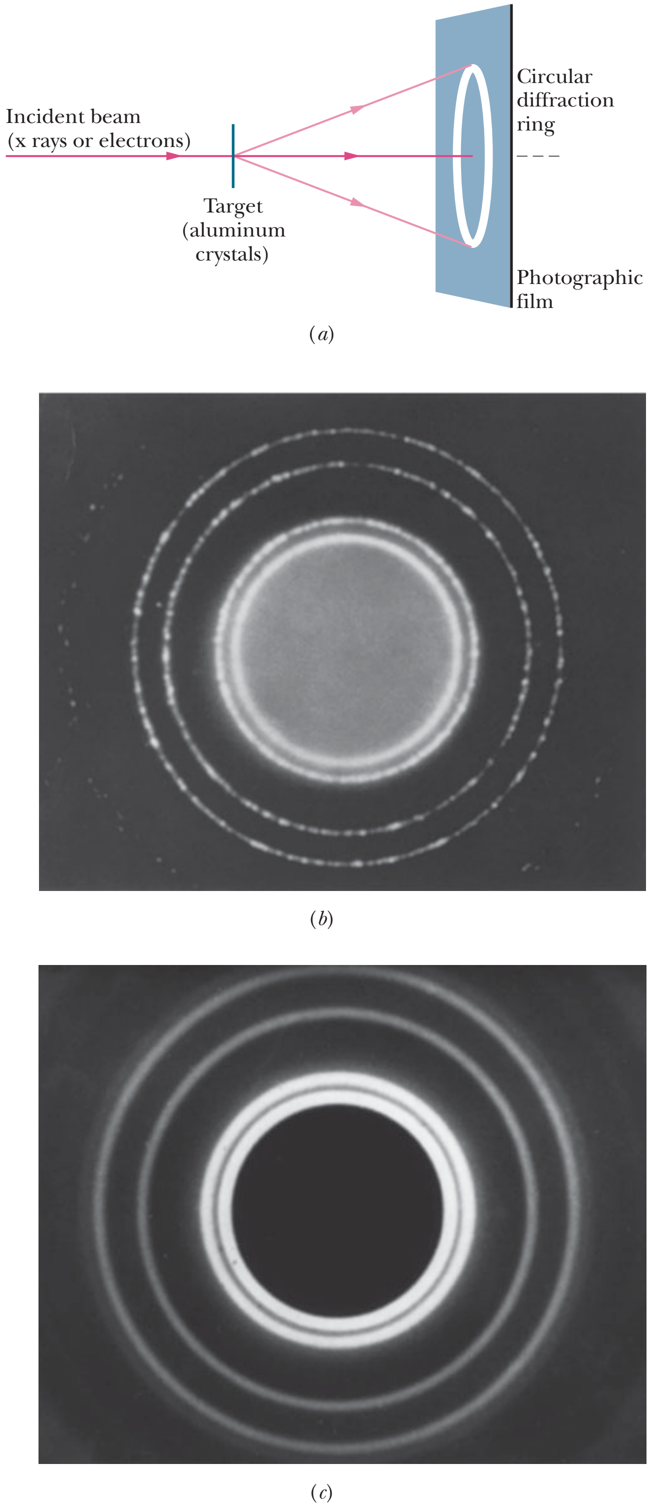
to assign a wavelength λ to a particle with momentum of magnitude p. The wavelength calculated from Eq. 38-17 is called the **de Broglie wavelength** of the moving particle. De Broglie's prediction of the existence of matter waves was first verified experimentally in 1927, by C. J. Davisson and L. H. Germer of the Bell Telephone Laboratories and by George P. Thomson of the University of Aberdeen in Scotland.

Figure 38-9 shows photographic proof of matter waves in a more recent experiment. In the experiment, an interference pattern was built up when



Central Research Laboratory, Hitachi, Ltd., Kokubinju, Tokyo;
H. Ezawa, Department of Physics, Gakushuin University,
Mejiro, Tokyo

Figure 38-9 Photographs showing the buildup of an interference pattern by a beam of electrons in a two-slit interference experiment like that of Fig. 38-6. Matter waves, like light waves, are *probability waves.* The approximate numbers of electrons involved are (*a*) 7, (*b*) 100, (*c*) 3000, (*d*) 20 000, and (*e*) 70 000.



Parts (b) and (c) from PSSC film "Matter Waves," courtesy Education Development Center, Newton, Massachusetts

Figure 38-10 (*a*) An experimental arrangement used to demonstrate, by diffraction techniques, the wave-like character of the incident beam. Photographs of the diffraction patterns when the incident beam is (*b*) an x-ray beam (light wave) and (*c*) an electron beam (matter wave). Note that the two patterns are geometrically identical to each other.

electrons were sent, *one by one,* through a double-slit apparatus. The apparatus was like the ones we have previously used to demonstrate optical interference, except that the viewing screen was similar to an old-fashioned television screen. When an electron hit the screen, it caused a flash of light whose position was recorded.

The first several electrons (top two photos) revealed nothing interesting and seemingly hit the screen at random points. However, after many thousands of electrons were sent through the apparatus, a pattern appeared on the screen, revealing fringes where many electrons had hit the screen and fringes where few had hit the screen. The pattern is exactly what we would expect for wave interference. Thus, *each* electron passed through the apparatus as a matter wave—the portion of the matter wave that traveled through one slit interfered with the portion that traveled through the other slit. That interference then determined the probability that the electron would materialize at a given point on the screen, hitting the screen there. Many electrons materialized in regions corresponding to bright fringes in optical interference, and few electrons materialized in regions corresponding to dark fringes.

Similar interference has been demonstrated with protons, neutrons, and various atoms. In 1994, it was demonstrated with iodine molecules I_2, which are not only 500 000 times more massive than electrons but far more complex. In 1999, it was demonstrated with the even more complex *fullerenes* (or *buckyballs*) C_{60} and C_{70}. (Fullerenes are molecules of carbon atoms that are arranged in a structure resembling a soccer ball, 60 carbon atoms in C_{60} and 70 carbon atoms in C_{70}.) Apparently, such small objects as electrons, protons, atoms, and molecules travel as matter waves. However, as we consider larger and more complex objects, there must come a point at which we are no longer justified in considering the wave nature of an object. At that point, we are back in our familiar nonquantum world, with the physics of earlier chapters of this book. In short, an electron is a matter wave and can undergo interference with itself, but a cat is not a matter wave and cannot undergo interference with itself (which must be a relief to cats).

The wave nature of particles and atoms is now taken for granted in many scientific and engineering fields. For example, electron diffraction and neutron diffraction are used to study the atomic structures of solids and liquids, and electron diffraction is used to study the atomic features of surfaces on solids.

Figure 38-10*a* shows an arrangement that can be used to demonstrate the scattering of either x rays or electrons by crystals. A beam of one or the other is directed onto a target consisting of a layer of tiny aluminum crystals. The x rays have a certain wavelength λ. The electrons are given enough energy so that their de Broglie wavelength is the same wavelength λ. The scatter of x rays or electrons by the crystals produces a circular interference pattern on a photographic film. Figure 38-10*b* shows the pattern for the scatter of x rays, and Fig. 38-10*c* shows the pattern for the scatter of electrons. The patterns are the same—both x rays and electrons are waves.

Waves and Particles

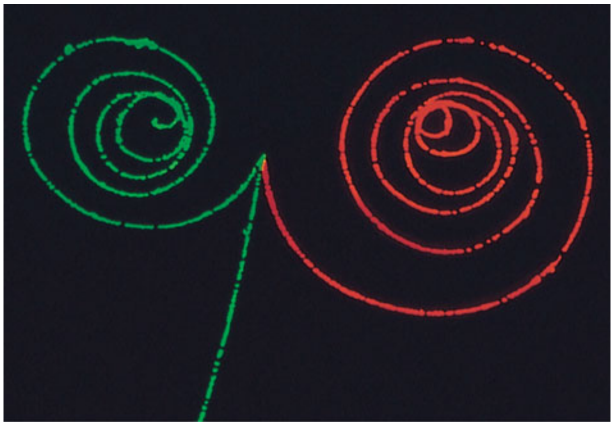
Figures 38-9 and 38-10 are convincing evidence of the *wave* nature of matter, but we have countless experiments that suggest its *parti-*

cle nature. Figure 38-11, for example, shows the tracks of particles (rather than waves) revealed in a bubble chamber. When a charged particle passes through the liquid hydrogen that fills such a chamber, the particle causes the liquid to vaporize along the particle's path. A series of bubbles thus marks the path, which is usually curved due to a magnetic field set up perpendicular to the plane of the chamber.

In Fig. 38-11, a gamma ray left no track when it entered at the top because the ray is electrically neutral and thus caused no vapor bubbles as it passed through the liquid hydrogen. However, it collided with one of the hydrogen atoms, kicking an electron out of that atom; the curved path taken by the electron to the bottom of the photograph has been color coded green. Simultaneous with the collision, the gamma ray transformed into an electron and a positron in a pair production event (see Eq. 21-15). Those two particles then moved in tight spirals (color coded green for the electron and red for the positron) as they gradually lost energy in repeated collisions with hydrogen atoms. Surely these tracks are evidence of the particle nature of the electron and positron, but is there any evidence of waves in Fig. 38-11?

To simplify the situation, let us turn off the magnetic field so that the strings of bubbles will be straight. We can view each bubble as a detection point for the electron. Matter waves traveling between detection points such as *I* and *F* in Fig. 38-12 will explore all possible paths, a few of which are shown.

In general, for every path connecting *I* and *F* (except the straight-line path), there will be a neighboring path such that matter waves following the two paths cancel each other by interference. For the straight-line path joining *I* and *F*, matter waves traversing all neighboring paths reinforce the wave following the direct path. You can think of the bubbles that form the track as a series of detection points at which the matter wave undergoes constructive interference.



Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory/Science Photo Library/
Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 38-11 A bubble-chamber image showing where two electrons (paths color coded green) and one positron (red) moved after a gamma ray entered the chamber.

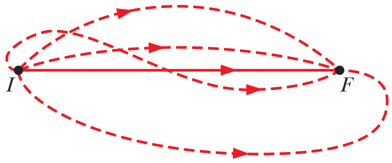


Figure 38-12 A few of the many paths that connect two particle detection points *I* and *F*. Only matter waves that follow paths close to the straight line between these points interfere constructively. For all other paths, the waves following any pair of neighboring paths interfere destructively.

☑ Checkpoint 4

For an electron and a proton that have the same (a) kinetic energy, (b) momentum, or (c) speed, which particle has the shorter de Broglie wavelength?

Sample Problem 38.04 de Broglie wavelength of an electron

What is the de Broglie wavelength of an electron with a kinetic energy of 120 eV?

KEY IDEAS

(1) We can find the electron's de Broglie wavelength λ from Eq. 38-17 ($\lambda = h/p$) if we first find the magnitude of its momentum p. (2) We find p from the given kinetic energy K of the electron. That kinetic energy is much less than the rest energy of an electron (0.511 MeV, from Table 37-3). Thus, we can get by with the classical approximations for momentum p $(= mv)$ and kinetic energy K $(= \frac{1}{2}mv^2)$.

Calculations: We are given the value of the kinetic energy. So, in order to use the de Broglie relation, we first solve the kinetic energy equation for v and then substitute into the momentum equation, finding

$$\begin{aligned} p &= \sqrt{2mK} \\ &= \sqrt{(2)(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg})(120\text{ eV})(1.60\times10^{-19}\text{ J/eV})} \\ &= 5.91\times10^{-24}\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

From Eq. 38-17 then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{h}{p} \\ &= \frac{6.63\times10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s}}{5.91\times10^{-24}\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}} \\ &= 1.12\times10^{-10}\text{ m} = 112\text{ pm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This wavelength associated with the electron is about the size of a typical atom. If we increase the electron's kinetic energy, the wavelength becomes even smaller.

38-6 SCHRÖDINGER'S EQUATION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.25 Identify that matter waves are described by Schrödinger's equation.

38.26 For a nonrelativistic particle moving along an x axis, write the Schrödinger equation and its general solution for the spatial part of the wave function.

38.27 For a nonrelativistic particle, apply the relationships between angular wave number, energy, potential energy, kinetic energy, momentum, and de Broglie wavelength.

38.28 Given the spatial solution to the Schrödinger equation, write the full solution by including the time dependence.

38.29 Given a complex number, find the complex conjugate.

38.30 Given a wave function, calculate the probability density.

Key Ideas

- A matter wave (such as for an electron) is described by a wave function $\Psi(x, y, z, t)$, which can be separated into a space-dependent part $\psi(x, y, z)$ and a time-dependent part $e^{-i\omega t}$, where ω is the angular frequency associated with the wave.
- For a nonrelativistic particle of mass m traveling along an x axis, with energy E and potential energy U, the space-dependent part can be found by solving Schrödinger's equation,

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + k^2\psi = 0,$$

where k is the angular wave number, which is related to the de Broglie wavelength λ, the momentum p, and the kinetic energy $E - U$ by

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} = \frac{2\pi p}{h} = \frac{2\pi\sqrt{2m(E-U)}}{h}.$$

- A particle does not have a specific location until its location is actually measured.
- The probability of detecting a particle in a small volume centered on a given point is proportional to the probability density $|\psi|^2$ of the matter wave at that point.

Schrödinger's Equation

A simple traveling wave of any kind, be it a wave on a string, a sound wave, or a light wave, is described in terms of some quantity that varies in a wave-like fashion. For light waves, for example, this quantity is $\vec{E}(x, y, z, t)$, the electric field component of the wave. Its observed value at any point depends on the location of that point and on the time at which the observation is made.

What varying quantity should we use to describe a matter wave? We should expect this quantity, which we call the **wave function** $\Psi(x, y, z, t)$, to be more complicated than the corresponding quantity for a light wave because a matter wave, in addition to energy and momentum, transports mass and (often) electric charge. It turns out that Ψ, the uppercase Greek letter psi, usually represents a function that is complex in the mathematical sense; that is, we can always write its values in the form $a + ib$, in which a and b are real numbers and $i^2 = -1$.

In all the situations you will meet here, the space and time variables can be grouped separately and Ψ can be written in the form

$$\Psi(x, y, z, t) = \psi(x, y, z)\, e^{-i\omega t}, \tag{38-18}$$

where $\omega\ (= 2\pi f)$ is the angular frequency of the matter wave. Note that ψ, the lowercase Greek letter psi, represents only the space-dependent part of the complete, time-dependent wave function Ψ. We shall focus on ψ. Two questions arise: What is meant by the wave function? How do we find it?

What does the wave function mean? It has to do with the fact that a matter wave, like a light wave, is a probability wave. Suppose that a matter wave reaches a particle detector that is small; then the probability that a particle will be detected in a specified time interval is proportional to $|\psi|^2$, where $|\psi|$ is the absolute value of the wave function at the location of the detector. Although ψ

is usually a complex quantity, $|\psi|^2$ is always both real and positive. It is, then, $|\psi|^2$, which we call the **probability density,** and not ψ, that has *physical* meaning. Speaking loosely, the meaning is this:

> The probability of detecting a particle in a small volume centered on a given point in a matter wave is proportional to the value of $|\psi|^2$ at that point.

Because ψ is usually a complex quantity, we find the square of its absolute value by multiplying ψ by ψ^*, the *complex conjugate* of ψ. (To find ψ^* we replace the imaginary number i in ψ with $-i$, wherever it occurs.)

How do we find the wave function? Sound waves and waves on strings are described by the equations of Newtonian mechanics. Light waves are described by Maxwell's equations. Matter waves for nonrelativistic particles are described by **Schrödinger's equation,** advanced in 1926 by Austrian physicist Erwin Schrödinger.

Many of the situations that we shall discuss involve a particle traveling in the x direction through a region in which forces acting on the particle cause it to have a potential energy $U(x)$. In this special case, Schrödinger's equation reduces to

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + \frac{8\pi^2 m}{h^2}[E - U(x)]\psi = 0 \quad \text{(Schrödinger's equation, one-dimensional motion),} \tag{38-19}$$

in which E is the total mechanical energy of the moving particle. (We do *not* consider mass energy in this nonrelativistic equation.) We cannot derive Schrödinger's equation from more basic principles; it *is* the basic principle.

We can simplify the expression of Schrödinger's equation by rewriting the second term. First, note that $E - U(x)$ is the kinetic energy of the particle. Let's assume that the potential energy is uniform and constant (it might even be zero). Because the particle is nonrelativistic, we can write the kinetic energy classically in terms of speed v and then momentum p, and then we can introduce quantum theory by using the de Broglie wavelength:

$$E - U = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{p^2}{2m} = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\frac{h}{\lambda}\right)^2. \tag{38-20}$$

By putting 2π in both the numerator and denominator of the squared term, we can rewrite the kinetic energy in terms of the angular wave number $k = 2\pi/\lambda$:

$$E - U = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\frac{kh}{2\pi}\right)^2. \tag{38-21}$$

Substituting this into Eq. 38-19 leads to

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + k^2\psi = 0 \quad \text{(Schrödinger's equation, uniform } U\text{),} \tag{38-22}$$

where, from Eq. 38-21, the angular wave number is

$$k = \frac{2\pi\sqrt{2m(E - U)}}{h} \quad \text{(angular wave number).} \tag{38-23}$$

The general solution of Eq. 38-22 is

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{ikx} + Be^{-ikx}, \tag{38-24}$$

in which A and B are constants. You can show that this equation is indeed a solution of Eq. 38-22 by substituting it and its second derivative into that equation and noting that an identity results.

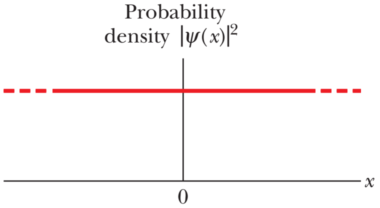


Figure 38-13 A plot of the probability density $|\psi|^2$ for a particle moving in the positive x direction with a uniform potential energy. Since $|\psi|^2$ has the same constant value for all values of x, the particle has the same probability of detection at all points along its path.

Equation 38-24 is the time-independent solution of Schrödinger's equation. We can assume it is the spatial part of the wave function at some initial time $t = 0$. Given values for E and U, we could determine the coefficients A and B to see how the wave function looks at $t = 0$. Then, if we wanted to see how the wave function evolves with time, we follow the guide of Eq. 38-18 and multiply Eq. 38-24 by the time dependence $e^{-i\omega t}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi(x,t) &= \psi(x)e^{-i\omega t} = (Ae^{ikx} + Be^{-ikx})e^{-i\omega t}\\ &= Ae^{i(kx-\omega t)} + Be^{-i(kx+\omega t)}.\end{aligned} \tag{38-25}$$

Here, however, we will not go that far.

Finding the Probability Density $|\psi|^2$

In Module 16-1 we saw that any function F of the form $F(kx \pm \omega t)$ represents a traveling wave. In Chapter 16, the functions were sinusoidal (sines and cosines); here they are exponentials. If we wanted, we could always switch between the two forms by using the Euler formula: For a general argument θ,

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta \quad \text{and} \quad e^{-i\theta} = \cos\theta - i\sin\theta. \tag{38-26}$$

The first term on the right in Eq. 38-25 represents a wave traveling in the positive direction of x, and the second term represents a wave traveling in the negative direction of x. Let's evaluate the probability density $|\psi^2|$ for a particle with only positive motion. We eliminate the negative motion by setting B to zero, and then the solution at $t = 0$ becomes

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{ikx}. \tag{38-27}$$

To calculate the probability density, we take the square of the absolute value:

$$|\psi|^2 = |Ae^{ikx}|^2 = A^2|e^{ikx}|^2.$$

Because

$$|e^{ikx}|^2 = (e^{ikx})(e^{ikx})^* = e^{ikx}e^{-ikx} = e^{ikx-ikx} = e^0 = 1,$$

we get

$$|\psi|^2 = A^2(1)^2 = A^2.$$

Now here is the point: For the condition we have set up (uniform potential energy U, including $U = 0$ for a *free particle*), the probability density is a constant (the same value A^2) for any point along the x axis, as shown in the plot of Fig. 38-13. That means that if we make a measurement to locate the particle, the location could turn out to be at any x value. Thus, we cannot say that the particle is moving along the axis in a classical way as a car moves along a street. *In fact, the particle does not have a location until we measure it.*

38-7 HEISENBERG'S UNCERTAINTY PRINCIPLE

Learning Objective

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.31 Apply the Heisenberg uncertainty principle for, say, an electron moving along the x axis and explain its meaning.

Key Idea

- The probabilistic nature of quantum physics places an important limitation on detecting a particle's position and momentum. That is, it is not possible to measure the position $\vec{r}$ and the momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle simultaneously with unlimited precision. The uncertainties in the components of these quantities are given by

$$\Delta x \cdot \Delta p_x \geq \hbar$$
$$\Delta y \cdot \Delta p_y \geq \hbar$$
$$\Delta z \cdot \Delta p_z \geq \hbar.$$

Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle

Our inability to predict the position of a particle with a uniform electric potential energy, as indicated by Fig. 38-13, is our first example of **Heisenberg's uncertainty principle,** proposed in 1927 by German physicist Werner Heisenberg. It states that measured values cannot be assigned to the position $\vec{r}$ and the momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle simultaneously with unlimited precision.

In terms of $\hbar = h/2\pi$ (called "h-bar"), the principle tells us

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta x \cdot \Delta p_x &\geq \hbar \\ \Delta y \cdot \Delta p_y &\geq \hbar \quad \text{(Heisenberg's uncertainty principle).} \\ \Delta z \cdot \Delta p_z &\geq \hbar \end{aligned} \tag{38-28}$$

Here Δx and Δp_x represent the intrinsic uncertainties in the measurements of the x components of $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{p}$, with parallel meanings for the y and z terms. Even with the best measuring instruments, each product of a position uncertainty and a momentum uncertainty in Eq. 38-28 will be greater than $\hbar$, *never* less.

Here we shall not derive the uncertainty relationships but only apply them. They are due to the fact that electrons and other particles are matter waves and that repeated measurements of their positions and momenta involve probabilities, not certainties. In the statistics of such measurements, we can view, say, Δx and Δp_x as the spread (actually, the standard deviations) in the measurements.

We can also justify them with a physical (though highly simplified) argument: In earlier chapters we took for granted our ability to detect and measure location and motion, such as a car moving down a street or a pool ball rolling across a table. We could locate a moving object by watching it—that is, by intercepting light scattered by the object. That scattering did not alter the object's motion. In quantum physics, however, the act of detection in itself alters the location and motion. The more precisely we wish to determine the location of, say, an electron moving along an x axis (by using light or by any other means), the more we alter the electron's momentum and thus become less certain of the momentum. That is, by decreasing Δx, we necessarily increase Δp_x. Vice versa, if we determine the momentum very precisely (less Δp_x), we become less certain of where the electron will be located (we increase Δx).

That latter situation is what we found in Fig 38-13. We had an electron with a certain value of k, which, by the de Broglie relationship, means a certain momentum p_x. Thus, $\Delta p_x = 0$. By Eq. 38-28, that means that $\Delta x = \infty$. If we then set up an experiment to detect the electron, it could show up anywhere between $x = -\infty$ and $x = +\infty$.

You might push back on the argument: Couldn't we very precisely measure p_x and then next very precisely measure x wherever the electron happens to show up? Doesn't that mean that we have measured both p_x and x simultaneously and very precisely? No, the flaw is that although the first measurement can give us a precise value for p_x, the second measurement necessarily alters that value. Indeed, if the second measurement really does give us a precise value for x, we then have no idea what the value of p_x is.

Sample Problem 38.05 Uncertainty principle: position and momentum

Assume that an electron is moving along an x axis and that you measure its speed to be 2.05×10^6 m/s, which can be known with a precision of 0.50%. What is the minimum uncertainty (as allowed by the uncertainty principle in quantum theory) with which you can simultaneously measure the position of the electron along the x axis?

KEY IDEA

The minimum uncertainty allowed by quantum theory is given by Heisenberg's uncertainty principle in Eq. 38-28. We need only consider components along the x axis because we have motion only along that axis and want the uncertainty Δx in location along that axis. Since we want the minimum allowed uncertainty, we use the equality instead of the inequality in the x-axis part of Eq. 38-28, writing $\Delta x \cdot \Delta p_x = \hbar$.

Calculations: To evaluate the uncertainty Δp_x in the momentum, we must first evaluate the momentum component p_x. Because the electron's speed v_x is much less than the speed of light c, we can evaluate p_x with the classical expression for momentum instead of using a relativistic expression. We find

$$\begin{aligned} p_x = mv_x &= (9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \mathrm{kg})(2.05 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m/s}) \\ &= 1.87 \times 10^{-24}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

The uncertainty in the speed is given as 0.50% of the measured speed. Because p_x depends directly on speed, the uncertainty Δp_x in the momentum must be 0.50% of the momentum:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta p_x &= (0.0050)p_x \\ &= (0.0050)(1.87 \times 10^{-24}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}) \\ &= 9.35 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the uncertainty principle gives us

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta x = \frac{\hbar}{\Delta p_x} &= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})/2\pi}{9.35 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}} \\ &= 1.13 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m} \approx 11\ \mathrm{nm}, \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

which is about 100 atomic diameters.

38-8 REFLECTION FROM A POTENTIAL STEP

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.32 Write the general wave function for Schrödinger's equation for an electron in a region of constant (including zero) potential energy.

38.33 With a sketch, identify a potential step for an electron, indicating the barrier height U_b.

38.34 For electron wave functions in two adjacent regions, determine the coefficients (probability amplitudes) by matching values and slopes at the boundary.

38.35 Determine the reflection and transmission coefficients for electrons incident on a potential step (or potential energy step), where the incident electrons each have zero potential energy $U = 0$ and a mechanical energy E greater than the step height U_b.

38.36 Identify that because electrons are matter waves, they might reflect from a potential step even when they have more than enough energy to pass through the step.

38.37 Interpret the reflection and transmission coefficients in terms of the probability of an electron reflecting or passing through the boundary and also in terms of the average number of electrons out of the total number shot at the barrier.

Key Ideas

- A particle can reflect from a boundary at which its potential energy changes even when classically it would not reflect.
- The reflection coefficient R gives the probability of reflection of an individual particle at the boundary.
- For a beam of a great many particles, R gives the average fraction that will undergo reflection.
- The transmission coefficient T that gives the probability of transmission through the boundary is

$$T = 1 - R.$$

Can the electron be reflected by the region of negative potential?

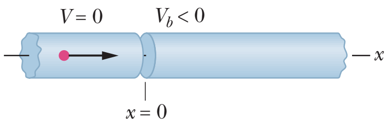


Figure 38-14 The elements of a tube in which an electron (the dot) approaches a region with a negative electric potential V_b.

Reflection from a Potential Step

Here is a quick taste of what you would see in more advanced quantum physics. In Fig. 38-14, we send a beam of a great many nonrelativistic electrons, each of total energy E, along an x axis through a narrow tube. Initially they are in region 1 where their potential energy is $U = 0$, but at $x = 0$ they encounter a region with a negative electric potential V_b. The transition is called a *potential step* or *potential energy step*. The step is said to have a *height* U_b, which is the potential energy an electron will have once it passes through the boundary at $x = 0$, as plotted in

Fig. 38-15 for potential energy as a function of position x. (Recall that $U = qV$. Here the potential V_b is negative, the electron's charge q is negative, and so the potential energy U_b is positive.)

Classically, the electron has too much energy to be reflected by the potential step.

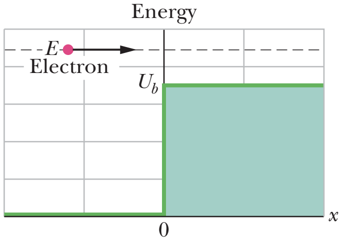


Figure 38-15 An energy diagram containing two plots for the situation of Fig. 38-14: (1) The electron's mechanical energy E is plotted. (2) The electron's electric potential energy U is plotted as a function of the electron's position x. The nonzero part of the plot (the potential step) has height U_b.

Let's consider the situation where $E > U_b$. Classically, the electrons should all pass through the boundary—they certainly have enough energy. Indeed, we discussed such motion extensively in Chapters 22 through 24, where electrons moved into electric potentials and had changes in potential energy and kinetic energy. We simply conserved mechanical energy and noted that if the potential energy increases, the kinetic energy decreases by the same amount, and the speed thus also decreases. What we took for granted is that, because the electron energy E is greater than the potential energy U_b, all the electrons pass through the boundary. However, if we apply Schrödinger's equation, we find a big surprise—because electrons are matter waves, not tiny solid (classical) particles, some of them actually *reflect from the boundary*. Let's determine what fraction R of the incoming electrons reflect.

In region 1, where U is zero, Eq. 38-23 tells us that the angular wave number is

$$k = \frac{2\pi\sqrt{2mE}}{h} \tag{38-29}$$

and Eq. 38-24 tells us that the general space-dependent solution to Schrodinger's equation is

$$\psi_1(x) = Ae^{ikx} + Be^{-ikx} \quad \text{(region 1)}. \tag{38-30}$$

In region 2, where the potential energy is U_b, the angular wave number is

$$k_b = \frac{2\pi\sqrt{2m(E - U_b)}}{h}, \tag{38-31}$$

and the general solution, with this angular wave number, is

$$\psi_2(x) = Ce^{ik_bx} + De^{-ik_bx} \quad \text{(region 2)}. \tag{38-32}$$

We use coefficients C and D because they are not the same as the coefficients in region 1.

The terms with positive arguments in an exponential represent particles moving in the $+x$ direction; those with negative arguments represent particles moving in the $-x$ direction. However, because there is no electron source off to the right in Figs. 38-14 and 38-15, there can be no electrons moving to the left in region 2. So, we set $D = 0$, and the solution in region 2 is then simply

$$\psi_2(x) = Ce^{ik_bx} \quad \text{(region 2)}. \tag{38-33}$$

Next, we must make sure that our solutions are "well behaved" at the boundary. That is, they must be consistent with each other at $x = 0$, both in value and in slope. These conditions are said to be **boundary conditions**. We first substitute $x = 0$ into Eqs. 38-30 and 38-33 for the wave functions and then set the results equal to each other. This gives us our first boundary condition:

$$A + B = C \quad \text{(matching of values)}. \tag{38-34}$$

The functions have the same value at $x = 0$ provided the coefficients have this relationship.

Next, we take a derivative of Eq. 38-30 with respect to x and then substitute in $x = 0$. Then we take a derivative of Eq. 38-33 with respect to x and then substitute in $x = 0$. And then we set the two results equal to each other (one slope equal to the other slope at $x = 0$). We find

$$Ak - Bk = Ck_b \quad \text{(matching of slopes)}. \tag{38-35}$$

The slopes at $x = 0$ are equal provided that this relationship of coefficients and angular wave numbers is satisfied.

We want to find the probability that electrons reflect from the barrier. Recall that probability density is proportional to $|\psi|^2$. Here let's relate the probability density in the reflection (which is proportional to $|B|^2$) to the probability density in the incident beam (which is proportional to $|A|^2$) by defining a **reflection coefficient** R:

$$R = \frac{|B|^2}{|A|^2}. \tag{38-36}$$

This R gives the probability of reflection and thus is also the fraction of the incoming electrons that reflect. The **transmission coefficient** (the probability of transmission) is

$$T = 1 - R. \tag{38-37}$$

For example, suppose $R = 0.010$. Then if we send 10,000 electrons toward the barrier, we find that about 100 are reflected. However, we could never guess which 100 would be reflected. We have only the probability. The best we can say about any one electron is that it has a 1.0% chance of being reflected and a 99% chance of being transmitted. The wave nature of the electron does not allow us to be any more precise than that.

To evaluate R for any given values of E and U_b, we first solve Eqs. 38-34 and 38-35 for B in terms of A by eliminating C and then substitute the result into Eq. 38-36. Finally, using Eqs. 38-29 and 38-31, we substitute values for k and k_b. The surprise is that R is not simply zero (and T is not simply 1) as we assumed classically in earlier chapters.

38-9 TUNNELING THROUGH A POTENTIAL BARRIER

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

38.38 With a sketch, identify a potential barrier for an electron, indicating the barrier height U_b and thickness L.

38.39 Identify the energy argument about what is classically required of a particle's energy if the particle is to pass through a potential barrier.

38.40 Identify the transmission coefficient for tunneling.

38.41 For tunneling, calculate the transmission coefficient T in terms of the particle's energy E and mass m and the barrier's height U_b and thickness L.

38.42 Interpret a transmission coefficient in terms of the probability of any one particle tunneling through a barrier and also in terms of the average fraction of many particles tunneling through the barrier.

38.43 In a tunneling setup, describe the probability density in front of the barrier, within the barrier, and then beyond the barrier.

38.44 Describe how a scanning tunneling microscope works.

Key Ideas

- A potential energy barrier is a region where a traveling particle will have an increased potential energy U_b.
- The particle can pass through the barrier if its total energy $E > U_b$.
- Classically, it cannot pass through it if $E < U_b$, but in quantum physics it can, an effect called tunneling.
- For a particle with mass m and a barrier of thickness L, the transmission coefficient is

$$T \approx e^{-2bL},$$

where

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{8\pi^2 m(U_b - E)}{h^2}}.$$

Tunneling Through a Potential Barrier

Let's replace the potential step of Fig. 38-14 with a **potential barrier** (or **potential energy barrier**), which is a region of thickness L (the *barrier thickness* or *length*) where the electric potential is V_b (< 0) and the barrier height is U_b ($= qV$), as shown in Fig. 38-16. To the right of the barrier is region 3 with $V = 0$. As before, we'll send a beam of nonrelativistic electrons toward the barrier, each with energy E. If we again consider $E > U_b$, we have a more complicated situation than our previous potential step because now electrons can possibly reflect from two boundaries, at $x = 0$ and $x = L$.

Instead of sorting that out, let's consider the situation where $E < U_b$—that is, where the mechanical energy is less than the potential energy that would be demanded of an electron in region 2. Such a demand would require that the electron's kinetic energy ($= E - U_b$) be negative in region 2, which is, of course, simply absurd because kinetic energies must always be positive (nothing in the expression $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ can be negative). Therefore, region 2 is *classically* forbidden to an electron with $E < U_b$.

Tunneling. However, because an electron is a matter wave, it actually has a finite probability of leaking (or, better, *tunneling*) through the barrier and materializing on the other side. Once past the barrier, it again has its full mechanical energy E as though nothing (strange or otherwise) has happened in the region $0 \leq x \leq L$. Figure 38-17 shows the potential barrier and an approaching electron, with an energy less than the barrier height. We are interested in the probability of the electron appearing on the other side of the barrier. Thus, we want the transmission coefficient T.

To find an expression for T we would in principle follow the procedure for finding R for a potential step. We would solve Schrödinger's equation for the general solutions in each of three regions in Fig. 38-16. We would discard the region-3 solution for a wave traveling in the $-x$ direction (there is no electron source off to the right). Then we would determine the coefficients in terms of the coefficient A of the incident electrons by applying the boundary conditions—that is, by matching the values and slopes of the wave functions at the two boundaries. Finally, we would determine the relative probability density in region 3 in terms of the incident probability density. However, because all this requires a lot of mathematical manipulation, here we shall just examine the general results.

Figure 38-18 shows a plot of the probability densities in the three regions. The oscillating curve to the left of the barrier (for $x < 0$) is a combination of the incident matter wave and the reflected matter wave (which has a smaller amplitude than the incident wave). The oscillations occur because these two waves, traveling in opposite directions, interfere with each other, setting up a standing wave pattern.

Within the barrier (for $0 < x < L$) the probability density decreases exponentially with x. However, if L is small, the probability density is not quite zero at $x = L$.

To the right of the barrier (for $x > L$), the probability density plot describes a transmitted (through the barrier) wave with low but constant amplitude. Thus, the electron can be detected in this region but with a relatively small probability. (Compare this part of the figure with Fig. 38-13.)

As we did with a step potential, we can assign a transmission coefficient T to the incident matter wave and the barrier. This coefficient gives the probability with which an approaching electron will be transmitted through the barrier—that is, that tunneling will occur. As an example, if $T = 0.020$, then of every 1000 electrons fired at the barrier, 20 (on average) will tunnel through it and 980 will be reflected. The transmission coefficient T is approximately

$$T \approx e^{-2bL}, \tag{38-38}$$

in which

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{8\pi^2 m(U_b - E)}{h^2}}, \tag{38-39}$$

and e is the exponential function. Because of the exponential form of Eq. 38-38, the value of T is very sensitive to the three variables on which it depends: particle mass m, barrier thickness L, and energy difference $U_b - E$. (Because we do not include relativistic effects here, E does not include mass energy.)

Can the electron pass through the region of negative potential?

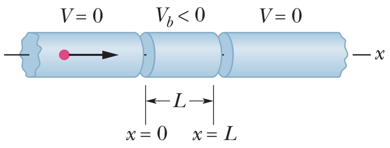


Figure 38-16 The elements of a narrow tube in which an electron (the dot) approaches a negative electric potential V_b in the region $x = 0$ to $x = L$.

Classically, the electron lacks the energy to pass through the barrier region.

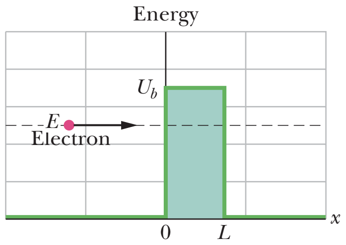


Figure 38-17 An energy diagram containing two plots for the situation of Fig. 38-16: (1) The electron's mechanical energy E is plotted when the electron is at any coordinate $x < 0$. (2) The electron's electric potential energy U is plotted as a function of the electron's position x, *assuming* that the electron can reach any value of x. The nonzero part of the plot (the potential barrier) has height U_b and thickness L.

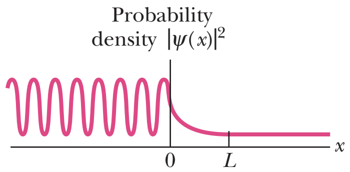


Figure 38-18 A plot of the probability density $|\psi|^2$ of the electron matter wave for the situation of Fig. 38-17. The value of $|\psi|^2$ is nonzero to the right of the potential barrier.

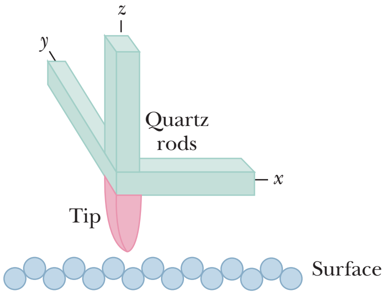


Figure 38-19 The essence of a scanning tunneling microscope (STM). Three quartz rods are used to scan a sharply pointed conducting tip across the surface of interest and to maintain a constant separation between tip and surface. The tip thus moves up and down to match the contours of the surface, and a record of its movement provides information for a computer to create an image of the surface.

Barrier tunneling finds many applications in technology, including the tunnel diode, in which a flow of electrons produced by tunneling can be rapidly turned on or off by electronically controlling the barrier height. The 1973 Nobel Prize in physics was shared by three "tunnelers," Leo Esaki (for tunneling in semiconductors), Ivar Giaever (for tunneling in superconductors), and Brian Josephson (for the Josephson junction, a rapid quantum switching device based on tunneling). The 1986 Nobel Prize was awarded to Gerd Binnig and Heinrich Rohrer for development of the scanning tunneling microscope.

☑ Checkpoint 5

Is the wavelength of the transmitted wave in Fig. 38-18 larger than, smaller than, or the same as that of the incident wave?

The Scanning Tunneling Microscope (STM)

The size of details that can be seen in an optical microscope is limited by the wavelength of the light the microscope uses (about 300 nm for ultraviolet light). The size of details that are required for images on the atomic scale is far smaller and thus requires much smaller wavelengths. The waves used are electron matter waves, but they do not scatter from the surface being examined the way waves do in an optical microscope. Instead, the images we see are created by electrons tunneling through potential barriers at the tip of a *scanning tunneling microscope* (STM).

Figure 38-19 shows the heart of the scanning tunneling microscope. A fine metallic tip, mounted at the intersection of three mutually perpendicular quartz rods, is placed close to the surface to be examined. A small potential difference, perhaps only 10 mV, is applied between tip and surface.

Crystalline quartz has an interesting property called *piezoelectricity:* When an electric potential difference is applied across a sample of crystalline quartz, the dimensions of the sample change slightly. This property is used to change the length of each of the three rods in Fig. 38-19, smoothly and by tiny amounts, so that the tip can be scanned back and forth over the surface (in the x and y directions) and also lowered or raised with respect to the surface (in the z direction).

The space between the surface and the tip forms a potential energy barrier, much like that plotted in Fig. 38-17. If the tip is close enough to the surface, electrons from the sample can tunnel through this barrier from the surface to the tip, forming a tunneling current.

In operation, an electronic feedback arrangement adjusts the vertical position of the tip to keep the tunneling current constant as the tip is scanned over the surface. This means that the tip–surface separation also remains constant during the scan. The output of the device is a video display of the varying vertical position of the tip, hence of the surface contour, as a function of the tip position in the xy plane.

An STM not only can provide an image of a static surface, it can also be used to manipulate atoms and molecules on a surface, such as was done in forming the *quantum corral* shown in Fig. 39-12 in the next chapter. In a process known as lateral manipulation, the STM probe is initially brought down near a molecule, close enough that the molecule is attracted to the probe without actually touching it. The probe is then moved across the background surface (such as copper), dragging the molecule with it until the molecule is in the desired location. Then the probe is backed up away from the molecule, weakening and then eliminating the attractive force on the molecule. Although the work requires very fine control, a design can eventually be formed. In Fig. 39-12, an STM probe has been used to move 48 iron atoms across a copper surface and into a circular corral 14 nm in diameter, in which electrons can be trapped.

Sample Problem 38.06 Barrier tunneling by matter wave

Suppose that the electron in Fig. 38-17, having a total energy E of 5.1 eV, approaches a barrier of height $U_b = 6.8$ eV and thickness $L = 750$ pm.

(a) What is the approximate probability that the electron will be transmitted through the barrier, to appear (and be detectable) on the other side of the barrier?

KEY IDEA

The probability we seek is the transmission coefficient T as given by Eq. 38-38 ($T \approx e^{-2bL}$), where

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{8\pi^2 m(U_b - E)}{h^2}}.$$

Calculations: The numerator of the fraction under the square-root sign is

$$(8\pi^2)(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(6.8\ \text{eV} - 5.1\ \text{eV}) \times (1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J/eV}) = 1.956 \times 10^{-47}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{kg}.$$

Thus,
$$b = \sqrt{\frac{1.956 \times 10^{-47}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{kg}}{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})^2}} = 6.67 \times 10^{9}\ \text{m}^{-1}.$$

The (dimensionless) quantity $2bL$ is then

$$2bL = (2)(6.67 \times 10^{9}\ \text{m}^{-1})(750 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{m}) = 10.0$$

and, from Eq. 38-38, the transmission coefficient is

$$T \approx e^{-2bL} = e^{-10.0} = 45 \times 10^{-6}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Thus, of every million electrons that strike the barrier, about 45 will tunnel through it, each appearing on the other side with its original total energy of 5.1 eV. (The transmission through the barrier does not alter an electron's energy or any other property.)

(b) What is the approximate probability that a proton with the same total energy of 5.1 eV will be transmitted through the barrier, to appear (and be detectable) on the other side of the barrier?

Reasoning: The transmission coefficient T (and thus the probability of transmission) depends on the mass of the particle. Indeed, because mass m is one of the factors in the exponent of e in the equation for T, the probability of transmission is very sensitive to the mass of the particle. This time, the mass is that of a proton (1.67×10^{-27} kg), which is significantly greater than that of the electron in (a). By substituting the proton's mass for the mass in (a) and then continuing as we did there, we find that $T \approx 10^{-186}$. Thus, although the probability that the proton will be transmitted is not exactly zero, it is barely more than zero. For even more massive particles with the same total energy of 5.1 eV, the probability of transmission is exponentially lower.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Review & Summary

Light Quanta—Photons An electromagnetic wave (light) is quantized, and its quanta are called *photons*. For a light wave of frequency f and wavelength λ, the energy E and momentum magnitude p of a photon are

$$E = hf \quad \text{(photon energy)} \qquad (38\text{-}2)$$

and
$$p = \frac{hf}{c} = \frac{h}{\lambda} \quad \text{(photon momentum)}. \qquad (38\text{-}7)$$

Photoelectric Effect When light of high enough frequency falls on a clean metal surface, electrons are emitted from the surface by photon–electron interactions within the metal. The governing relation is

$$hf = K_{\max} + \Phi, \qquad (38\text{-}5)$$

in which hf is the photon energy, $K_{\max}$ is the kinetic energy of the most energetic emitted electrons, and Φ is the **work function** of the target material—that is, the minimum energy an electron must have if it is to emerge from the surface of the target. If hf is less than Φ, electrons are not emitted.

Compton Shift When x rays are scattered by loosely bound electrons in a target, some of the scattered x rays have a longer wavelength than do the incident x rays. This **Compton shift** (in wavelength) is given by

$$\Delta\lambda = \frac{h}{mc}(1 - \cos\phi), \qquad (38\text{-}11)$$

in which ϕ is the angle at which the x rays are scattered.

Light Waves and Photons When light interacts with matter, energy and momentum are transferred via photons. When light is in transit, however, we interpret the light wave as a **probability wave,** in which the probability (per unit time) that a photon can be detected is proportional to E_m^2, where E_m is the amplitude of the oscillating electric field of the light wave at the detector.

Ideal Blackbody Radiation As a measure of the emission of thermal radiation by an ideal blackbody radiator, we define the spectral radiancy $S(\lambda)$ in terms of the emitted intensity per unit wavelength at a given wavelength λ. For the Planck radiation law, in which atomic oscillators produce the thermal radiation, we have

$$S(\lambda)=\frac{2\pi c^2 h}{\lambda^5}\frac{1}{e^{hc/\lambda kT}-1}, \tag{38-14}$$

where h is the Planck constant, k is the Boltzmann constant, and T is the temperature of the radiating surface. Wien's law relates the temperature T of a blackbody radiator and the wavelength $\lambda_{\max}$ at which the spectral radiancy is maximum:

$$\lambda_{\max}T = 2898\ \mu\text{m}\cdot\text{K}. \tag{38-15}$$

Matter Waves A moving particle such as an electron or a proton can be described as a **matter wave;** its wavelength (called the **de Broglie wavelength**) is given by $\lambda = h/p$, where p is the magnitude of the particle's momentum.

The Wave Function A matter wave is described by its **wave function** $\Psi(x, y, z, t)$, which can be separated into a space-dependent part $\psi(x, y, z)$ and a time-dependent part $e^{-i\omega t}$. For a particle of mass m moving in the x direction with constant total energy E through a region in which its potential energy is $U(x)$, $\psi(x)$ can be found by solving the simplified **Schrödinger equation:**

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2}+\frac{8\pi^2 m}{h^2}[E-U(x)]\psi = 0. \tag{38-19}$$

A matter wave, like a light wave, is a probability wave in the sense that if a particle detector is inserted into the wave, the probability that the detector will register a particle during any specified time interval is proportional to $|\psi|^2$, a quantity called the **probability density.**

For a free particle—that is, a particle for which $U(x) = 0$—moving in the x direction, $|\psi|^2$ has a constant value for all positions along the x axis.

Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle The probabilistic nature of quantum physics places an important limitation on detecting a particle's position and momentum. That is, it is not possible to measure the position $\vec{r}$ and the momentum $\vec{p}$ of a particle simultaneously with unlimited precision. The uncertainties in the components of these quantities are given by

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta x\cdot\Delta p_x &\geq \hbar\\ \Delta y\cdot\Delta p_y &\geq \hbar\\ \Delta z\cdot\Delta p_z &\geq \hbar.\end{aligned} \tag{38-28}$$

Potential Step This term defines a region where a particle's potential energy increases at the expense of its kinetic energy. According to classical physics, if a particle's initial kinetic energy exceeds the potential energy, it should never be reflected by the region. However, according to quantum physics, there is a reflection coefficient R that gives a finite probability of reflection. The probability of transmission is $T = 1 - R$.

Barrier Tunneling According to classical physics, an incident particle will be reflected from a potential energy barrier whose height is greater than the particle's kinetic energy. According to quantum physics, however, the particle has a finite probability of tunneling through such a barrier, appearing on the other side unchanged. The probability that a given particle of mass m and energy E will tunnel through a barrier of height U_b and thickness L is given by the transmission coefficient T:

$$T \approx e^{-2bL}, \tag{38-38}$$

where

$$b=\sqrt{\frac{8\pi^2 m(U_b-E)}{h^2}}. \tag{38-39}$$

Questions

1 Photon A has twice the energy of photon B. (a) Is the momentum of A less than, equal to, or greater than that of B? (b) Is the wavelength of A less than, equal to, or greater than that of B?

2 In the photoelectric effect (for a given target and a given frequency of the incident light), which of these quantities, if any, depend on the intensity of the incident light beam: (a) the maximum kinetic energy of the electrons, (b) the maximum photoelectric current, (c) the stopping potential, (d) the cutoff frequency?

3 According to the figure for Checkpoint 2, is the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected electrons greater for a target made of sodium or of potassium for a given frequency of incident light?

4 Photoelectric effect: Figure 38-20 gives the stopping voltage V versus the wavelength λ of light for three different materials. Rank the materials according to their work function, greatest first.

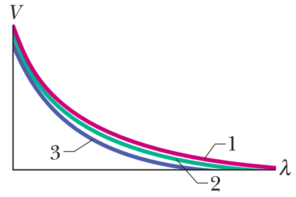


Figure 38-20 Question 4.

5 A metal plate is illuminated with light of a certain frequency. Which of the following determine whether or not electrons are ejected: (a) the intensity of the light, (b) how long the plate is exposed to the light, (c) the thermal conductivity of the plate, (d) the area of the plate, (e) the material of which the plate is made?

6 Let K be the kinetic energy that a stationary free electron gains when a photon scatters from it. We can plot K versus the angle ϕ at which the photon scatters; see curve 1 in Fig. 38-21. If we switch the target to be a stationary free proton, does the end point of the graph shift (a) upward as suggested by curve 2, (b) downward as suggested by curve 3, or (c) remain the same?

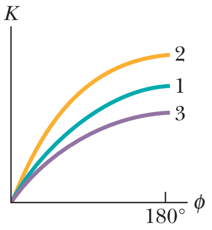


Figure 38-21 Question 6.

7 In a Compton-shift experiment, light (in the x-ray range) is scattered in the forward direction, at $\phi = 0$ in Fig. 38-3. What fraction of the light's energy does the electron acquire?

8 *Compton scattering.* Figure 38-22 gives the Compton shift $\Delta\lambda$ versus scattering angle ϕ for three different stationary target particles. Rank the particles according to their mass, greatest first.

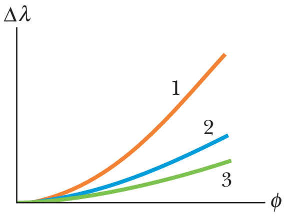


Figure 38-22 Question 8.

9 (a) If you double the kinetic energy of a nonrelativistic particle, how does its de Broglie wavelength change? (b) What if you double the speed of the particle?

10 Figure 38-23 shows an electron moving (a) opposite an electric field, (b) in the same direction as an electric field, (c) in the same direction as a magnetic field, and (d) perpendicular to a magnetic field. For each situation, is the de Broglie wavelength of the electron increasing, decreasing, or remaining the same?

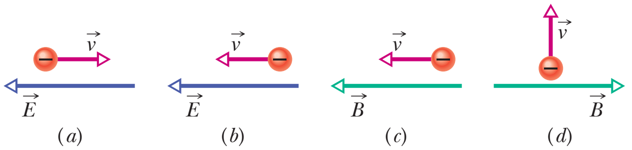


Figure 38-23 Question 10.

11 At the left in Fig. 38-18, why are the minima nonzero?

12 An electron and a proton have the same kinetic energy. Which has the greater de Broglie wavelength?

13 The following nonrelativistic particles all have the same kinetic energy. Rank them in order of their de Broglie wavelengths, greatest first: electron, alpha particle, neutron.

14 Figure 38-24 shows an electron moving through several regions where uniform electric potentials V have been set up. Rank the three regions according to the de Broglie wavelength of the electron there, greatest first.

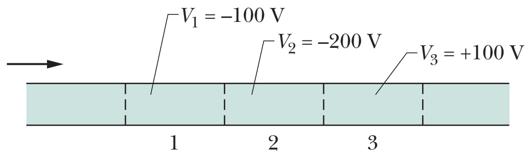


Figure 38-24 Question 14.

15 The table gives relative values for three situations for the barrier tunneling experiment of Figs. 38-16 and 38-17. Rank the situations according to the probability of the electron tunneling through the barrier, greatest first.

	Electron Energy	Barrier Height	Barrier Thickness
(a)	E	$5E$	L
(b)	E	$17E$	$L/2$
(c)	E	$2E$	$2L$

16 For three experiments, Fig. 38-25 gives the transmission coefficient T for electron tunneling through a potential barrier, plotted versus barrier thickness L. The de Broglie wavelengths of the electrons are identical in the three experiments. The only difference in the physical setups is the barrier heights U_b. Rank the three experiments according to U_b, greatest first.

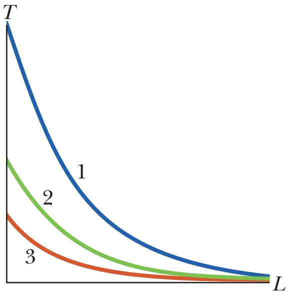


Figure 38-25 Question 16.

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
WWW Worked-out solution is at
ILW Interactive solution is at
http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com

Module 38-1 The Photon, the Quantum of Light

•1 Monochromatic light (that is, light of a single wavelength) is to be absorbed by a sheet of photographic film and thus recorded on the film. Photon absorption will occur if the photon energy equals or exceeds 0.6 eV, the smallest amount of energy needed to dissociate an AgBr molecule in the film. (a) What is the greatest wavelength of light that can be recorded by the film? (b) In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum is this wavelength located?

•2 How fast must an electron move to have a kinetic energy equal to the photon energy of sodium light at wavelength 590 nm?

•3 At what rate does the Sun emit photons? For simplicity, assume that the Sun's entire emission at the rate of 3.9×10^{26} W is at the single wavelength of 550 nm.

•4 A helium–neon laser emits red light at wavelength $\lambda = 633$ nm in a beam of diameter 3.5 mm and at an energy-emission rate of 5.0 mW. A detector in the beam's path totally absorbs the beam. At what rate per unit area does the detector absorb photons?

•5 The meter was once defined as 1 650 763.73 wavelengths of the orange light emitted by a source containing krypton-86 atoms. What is the photon energy of that light?

•6 What is the photon energy for yellow light from a highway sodium lamp at a wavelength of 589 nm?

••7 A light detector (your eye) has an area of 2.00×10^{-6} m^2 and absorbs 80% of the incident light, which is at wavelength 500 nm. The detector faces an isotropic source, 3.00 m from the source. If the detector absorbs photons at the rate of exactly 4.000 s^{-1}, at what power does the emitter emit light?

••8 The beam emerging from a 1.5 W argon laser ($\lambda = 515$ nm) has a diameter d of 3.0 mm. The beam is focused by a lens system with an effective focal length f_L of 2.5 mm. The focused beam strikes a totally absorbing screen, where it forms a circular diffraction pattern whose central disk has a radius R given by $1.22 f_L \lambda/d$. It can be shown that 84% of the incident energy ends up within this central disk. At what rate are photons absorbed by the screen in the central disk of the diffraction pattern?

••9 GO A 100 W sodium lamp ($\lambda = 589$ nm) radiates energy uniformly in all directions. (a) At what rate are photons emitted by the lamp? (b) At what distance from the lamp will a totally absorbing screen absorb photons at the rate of 1.00 photon/cm$^2 \cdot$s? (c) What is the photon flux (photons per unit area per unit time) on a small screen 2.00 m from the lamp?

••10 A satellite in Earth orbit maintains a panel of solar cells of area 2.60 m^2 perpendicular to the direction of the Sun's light rays. The intensity of the light at the panel is 1.39 kW/m^2. (a) At what rate does solar energy arrive at the panel? (b) At what rate are solar photons absorbed by the panel? Assume that the solar radiation is monochromatic, with a wavelength of 550 nm, and that all the solar radiation striking the panel is absorbed. (c) How long would it take for a "mole of photons" to be absorbed by the panel?

••11 **SSM** **WWW** An ultraviolet lamp emits light of wavelength 400 nm at the rate of 400 W. An infrared lamp emits light of wavelength 700 nm, also at the rate of 400 W. (a) Which lamp emits photons at the greater rate and (b) what is that greater rate?

••12 Under ideal conditions, a visual sensation can occur in the human visual system if light of wavelength 550 nm is absorbed by the eye's retina at a rate as low as 100 photons per second. What is the corresponding rate at which energy is absorbed by the retina?

••13 A special kind of lightbulb emits monochromatic light of wavelength 630 nm. Electrical energy is supplied to it at the rate of 60 W, and the bulb is 93% efficient at converting that energy to light energy. How many photons are emitted by the bulb during its lifetime of 730 h?

••14 **GO** A light detector has an absorbing area of 2.00×10^{-6} m^2 and absorbs 50% of the incident light, which is at wavelength 600 nm. The detector faces an isotropic source, 12.0 m from the source. The energy E emitted by the source versus time t is given in Fig. 38-26 (E_s = 7.2 nJ, t_s = 2.0 s). At what rate are photons absorbed by the detector?

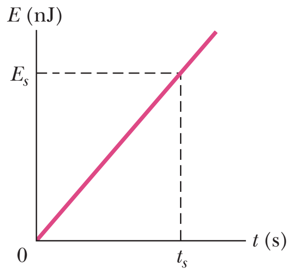


Figure 38-26 Problem 14.

Module 38-2 The Photoelectric Effect

•15 **SSM** Light strikes a sodium surface, causing photoelectric emission. The stopping potential for the ejected electrons is 5.0 V, and the work function of sodium is 2.2 eV. What is the wavelength of the incident light?

•16 Find the maximum kinetic energy of electrons ejected from a certain material if the material's work function is 2.3 eV and the frequency of the incident radiation is 3.0×10^{15} Hz.

•17 The work function of tungsten is 4.50 eV. Calculate the speed of the fastest electrons ejected from a tungsten surface when light whose photon energy is 5.80 eV shines on the surface.

•18 You wish to pick an element for a photocell that will operate via the photoelectric effect with visible light. Which of the following are suitable (work functions are in parentheses): tantalum (4.2 eV), tungsten (4.5 eV), aluminum (4.2 eV), barium (2.5 eV), lithium (2.3 eV)?

••19 (a) If the work function for a certain metal is 1.8 eV, what is the stopping potential for electrons ejected from the metal when light of wavelength 400 nm shines on the metal? (b) What is the maximum speed of the ejected electrons?

••20 Suppose the *fractional efficiency* of a cesium surface (with work function 1.80 eV) is 1.0×10^{-16}; that is, on average one electron is ejected for every 10^{16} photons that reach the surface. What would be the current of electrons ejected from such a surface if it were illuminated with 600 nm light from a 2.00 mW laser and all the ejected electrons took part in the charge flow?

••21 **GO** X rays with a wavelength of 71 pm are directed onto a gold foil and eject tightly bound electrons from the gold atoms. The ejected electrons then move in circular paths of radius r in a region of uniform magnetic field $\vec{B}$. For the fastest of the ejected electrons, the product Br is equal to 1.88×10^{-4} T·m. Find (a) the maximum kinetic energy of those electrons and (b) the work done in removing them from the gold atoms.

••22 The wavelength associated with the cutoff frequency for silver is 325 nm. Find the maximum kinetic energy of electrons ejected from a silver surface by ultraviolet light of wavelength 254 nm.

••23 **SSM** Light of wavelength 200 nm shines on an aluminum surface; 4.20 eV is required to eject an electron. What is the kinetic energy of (a) the fastest and (b) the slowest ejected electrons? (c) What is the stopping potential for this situation? (d) What is the cutoff wavelength for aluminum?

••24 In a photoelectric experiment using a sodium surface, you find a stopping potential of 1.85 V for a wavelength of 300 nm and a stopping potential of 0.820 V for a wavelength of 400 nm. From these data find (a) a value for the Planck constant, (b) the work function Φ for sodium, and (c) the cutoff wavelength λ_0 for sodium.

••25 **GO** The stopping potential for electrons emitted from a surface illuminated by light of wavelength 491 nm is 0.710 V. When the incident wavelength is changed to a new value, the stopping potential is 1.43 V. (a) What is this new wavelength? (b) What is the work function for the surface?

••26 An orbiting satellite can become charged by the photoelectric effect when sunlight ejects electrons from its outer surface. Satellites must be designed to minimize such charging because it can ruin the sensitive microelectronics. Suppose a satellite is coated with platinum, a metal with a very large work function (Φ = 5.32 eV). Find the longest wavelength of incident sunlight that can eject an electron from the platinum.

Module 38-3 Photons, Momentum, Compton Scattering, Light Interference

•27 **SSM** Light of wavelength 2.40 pm is directed onto a target containing free electrons. (a) Find the wavelength of light scattered at 30.0° from the incident direction. (b) Do the same for a scattering angle of 120°.

•28 (a) In MeV/c, what is the magnitude of the momentum associated with a photon having an energy equal to the electron rest energy? What are the (b) wavelength and (c) frequency of the corresponding radiation?

•29 What (a) frequency, (b) photon energy, and (c) photon momentum magnitude (in keV/c) are associated with x rays having wavelength 35.0 pm?

••30 What is the maximum wavelength shift for a Compton collision between a photon and a free *proton*?

••31 What percentage increase in wavelength leads to a 75% loss of photon energy in a photon–free electron collision?

••32 X rays of wavelength 0.0100 nm are directed in the positive direction of an x axis onto a target containing loosely bound electrons. For Compton scattering from one of those electrons, at an angle of 180°, what are (a) the Compton shift, (b) the corresponding change in photon energy, (c) the kinetic energy of the recoiling electron, and (d) the angle between the positive direction of the x axis and the electron's direction of motion?

••33 Calculate the percentage change in photon energy during a collision like that in Fig. 38-5 for $\phi = 90°$ and for radiation in

(a) the microwave range, with $\lambda = 3.0$ cm; (b) the visible range, with $\lambda = 500$ nm; (c) the x-ray range, with $\lambda = 25$ pm; and (d) the gamma-ray range, with a gamma photon energy of 1.0 MeV. (e) What are your conclusions about the feasibility of detecting the Compton shift in these various regions of the electromagnetic spectrum, judging solely by the criterion of energy loss in a single photon–electron encounter?

••34 GO A photon undergoes Compton scattering off a stationary free electron. The photon scatters at 90.0° from its initial direction; its initial wavelength is 3.00×10^{-12} m. What is the electron's kinetic energy?

••35 Calculate the Compton wavelength for (a) an electron and (b) a proton. What is the photon energy for an electromagnetic wave with a wavelength equal to the Compton wavelength of (c) the electron and (d) the proton?

••36 Gamma rays of photon energy 0.511 MeV are directed onto an aluminum target and are scattered in various directions by loosely bound electrons there. (a) What is the wavelength of the incident gamma rays? (b) What is the wavelength of gamma rays scattered at 90.0° to the incident beam? (c) What is the photon energy of the rays scattered in this direction?

••37 Consider a collision between an x-ray photon of initial energy 50.0 keV and an electron at rest, in which the photon is scattered backward and the electron is knocked forward. (a) What is the energy of the backscattered photon? (b) What is the kinetic energy of the electron?

••38 Show that when a photon of energy E is scattered from a free electron at rest, the maximum kinetic energy of the recoiling electron is given by

$$K_{\max} = \frac{E^2}{E + mc^2/2}.$$

••39 Through what angle must a 200 keV photon be scattered by a free electron so that the photon loses 10% of its energy?

••40 GO What is the maximum kinetic energy of electrons knocked out of a thin copper foil by Compton scattering of an incident beam of 17.5 keV x rays? Assume the work function is negligible.

••41 What are (a) the Compton shift $\Delta\lambda$, (b) the fractional Compton shift $\Delta\lambda/\lambda$, and (c) the change ΔE in photon energy for light of wavelength $\lambda = 590$ nm scattering from a free, initially stationary electron if the scattering is at 90° to the direction of the incident beam? What are (d) $\Delta\lambda$, (e) $\Delta\lambda/\lambda$, and (f) ΔE for 90° scattering for photon energy 50.0 keV (x-ray range)?

Module 38-4 The Birth of Quantum Physics

•42 The Sun is approximately an ideal blackbody radiator with a surface temperature of 5800 K. (a) Find the wavelength at which its spectral radiancy is maximum and (b) identify the type of electromagnetic wave corresponding to that wavelength. (See Fig. 33-1.) (c) As we shall discuss in Chapter 44, the universe is approximately an ideal blackbody radiator with radiation emitted when atoms first formed. Today the spectral radiancy of that radiation peaks at a wavelength of 1.06 mm (in the microwave region). What is the corresponding temperature of the universe?

•43 Just after detonation, the fireball in a nuclear blast is approximately an ideal blackbody radiator with a surface temperature of about 1.0×10^7 K. (a) Find the wavelength at which the thermal radiation is maximum and (b) identify the type of electromagnetic wave corresponding to that wavelength. (See Fig. 33-1.) This radiation is almost immediately absorbed by the surrounding air molecules, which produces another ideal blackbody radiator with a surface temperature of about 1.0×10^5 K. (c) Find the wavelength at which the thermal radiation is maximum and (d) identify the type of electromagnetic wave corresponding to that wavelength.

••44 GO For the thermal radiation from an ideal blackbody radiator with a surface temperature of 2000 K, let I_c represent the intensity per unit wavelength according to the classical expression for the spectral radiancy and I_P represent the corresponding intensity per unit wavelength according to the Planck expression. What is the ratio I_c/I_P for a wavelength of (a) 400 nm (at the blue end of the visible spectrum) and (b) 200 μm (in the far infrared)? (c) Does the classical expression agree with the Planck expression in the shorter wavelength range or the longer wavelength range?

••45 Assuming that your surface temperature is 98.6°F and that you are an ideal blackbody radiator (you are close), find (a) the wavelength at which your spectral radiancy is maximum, (b) the power at which you emit thermal radiation in a wavelength range of 1.00 nm at that wavelength, from a surface area of 4.00 cm^2, and (c) the corresponding rate at which you emit photons from that area. Using a wavelength of 500 nm (in the visible range), (d) recalculate the power and (e) the rate of photon emission. (As you have noticed, you do not visibly glow in the dark.)

Module 38-5 Electrons and Matter Waves

•46 Calculate the de Broglie wavelength of (a) a 1.00 keV electron, (b) a 1.00 keV photon, and (c) a 1.00 keV neutron.

•47 SSM In an old-fashioned television set, electrons are accelerated through a potential difference of 25.0 kV. What is the de Broglie wavelength of such electrons? (Relativity is not needed.)

••48 The smallest dimension (*resolving power*) that can be resolved by an electron microscope is equal to the de Broglie wavelength of its electrons. What accelerating voltage would be required for the electrons to have the same resolving power as could be obtained using 100 keV gamma rays?

••49 SSM WWW Singly charged sodium ions are accelerated through a potential difference of 300 V. (a) What is the momentum acquired by such an ion? (b) What is its de Broglie wavelength?

••50 Electrons accelerated to an energy of 50 GeV have a de Broglie wavelength λ small enough for them to probe the structure within a target nucleus by scattering from the structure. Assume that the energy is so large that the extreme relativistic relation $p = E/c$ between momentum magnitude p and energy E applies. (In this extreme situation, the kinetic energy of an electron is much greater than its rest energy.) (a) What is λ? (b) If the target nucleus has radius $R = 5.0$ fm, what is the ratio R/λ?

••51 SSM The wavelength of the yellow spectral emission line of sodium is 590 nm. At what kinetic energy would an electron have that wavelength as its de Broglie wavelength?

••52 A stream of protons, each with a speed of $0.9900c$, are directed into a two-slit experiment where the slit separation is 4.00×10^{-9} m. A two-slit interference pattern is built up on the viewing screen. What is the angle between the center of the pattern and the second minimum (to either side of the center)?

••53 What is the wavelength of (a) a photon with energy 1.00 eV, (b) an electron with energy 1.00 eV, (c) a photon of energy 1.00 GeV, and (d) an electron with energy 1.00 GeV?

••54 An electron and a photon each have a wavelength of 0.20 nm.

What is the momentum (in kg·m/s) of the (a) electron and (b) photon? What is the energy (in eV) of the (c) electron and (d) photon?

••55 The highest achievable resolving power of a microscope is limited only by the wavelength used; that is, the smallest item that can be distinguished has dimensions about equal to the wavelength. Suppose one wishes to "see" inside an atom. Assuming the atom to have a diameter of 100 pm, this means that one must be able to resolve a width of, say, 10 pm. (a) If an electron microscope is used, what minimum electron energy is required? (b) If a light microscope is used, what minimum photon energy is required? (c) Which microscope seems more practical? Why?

••56 The existence of the atomic nucleus was discovered in 1911 by Ernest Rutherford, who properly interpreted some experiments in which a beam of alpha particles was scattered from a metal foil of atoms such as gold. (a) If the alpha particles had a kinetic energy of 7.5 MeV, what was their de Broglie wavelength? (b) Explain whether the wave nature of the incident alpha particles should have been taken into account in interpreting these experiments. The mass of an alpha particle is 4.00 u (atomic mass units), and its distance of closest approach to the nuclear center in these experiments was about 30 fm. (The wave nature of matter was not postulated until more than a decade after these crucial experiments were first performed.)

••57 A nonrelativistic particle is moving three times as fast as an electron. The ratio of the de Broglie wavelength of the particle to that of the electron is 1.813×10^{-4}. By calculating its mass, identify the particle.

••58 What are (a) the energy of a photon corresponding to wavelength 1.00 nm, (b) the kinetic energy of an electron with de Broglie wavelength 1.00 nm, (c) the energy of a photon corresponding to wavelength 1.00 fm, and (d) the kinetic energy of an electron with de Broglie wavelength 1.00 fm?

•••59 GO If the de Broglie wavelength of a proton is 100 fm, (a) what is the speed of the proton and (b) through what electric potential would the proton have to be accelerated to acquire this speed?

Module 38-6 Schrödinger's Equation

•60 Suppose we put $A = 0$ in Eq. 38-24 and relabeled B as ψ_0. (a) What would the resulting wave function then describe? (b) How, if at all, would Fig. 38-13 be altered?

•61 **SSM** The function $\psi(x)$ displayed in Eq. 38-27 can describe a free particle, for which the potential energy is $U(x) = 0$ in Schrödinger's equation (Eq. 38-19). Assume now that $U(x) = U_0 =$ a constant in that equation. Show that Eq. 38-27 is a solution of Schrödinger's equation, with

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{h}\sqrt{2m(E - U_0)}$$

giving the angular wave number k of the particle.

•62 Show that Eq. 38-24 is indeed a solution of Eq. 38-22 by substituting $\psi(x)$ and its second derivative into Eq. 38-22 and noting that an identity results.

•63 (a) Write the wave function $\psi(x)$ displayed in Eq. 38-27 in the form $\psi(x) = a + ib$, where a and b are real quantities. (Assume that ψ_0 is real.) (b) Write the time-dependent wave function $\Psi(x, t)$ that corresponds to $\psi(x)$ written in this form.

•64 **SSM** Show that the angular wave number k for a nonrelativistic free particle of mass m can be written as

$$k = \frac{2\pi\sqrt{2mK}}{h},$$

in which K is the particle's kinetic energy.

•65 (a) Let $n = a + ib$ be a complex number, where a and b are real (positive or negative) numbers. Show that the product nn^* is always a positive real number. (b) Let $m = c + id$ be another complex number. Show that $|nm| = |n|\,|m|$.

••66 In Eq. 38-25 keep both terms, putting $A = B = \psi_0$. The equation then describes the superposition of two matter waves of equal amplitude, traveling in opposite directions. (Recall that this is the condition for a standing wave.) (a) Show that $|\Psi(x, t)|^2$ is then given by

$$|\Psi(x, t)|^2 = 2\psi_0^2[1 + \cos 2kx].$$

(b) Plot this function, and demonstrate that it describes the square of the amplitude of a standing matter wave. (c) Show that the nodes of this standing wave are located at

$$x = (2n + 1)\left(\frac{1}{4}\lambda\right), \qquad \text{where } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

and λ is the de Broglie wavelength of the particle. (d) Write a similar expression for the most probable locations of the particle.

Module 38-7 Heisenberg's Uncertainty Principle

•67 The uncertainty in the position of an electron along an x axis is given as 50 pm, which is about equal to the radius of a hydrogen atom. What is the least uncertainty in any simultaneous measurement of the momentum component p_x of this electron?

••68 You will find in Chapter 39 that electrons cannot move in definite orbits within atoms, like the planets in our solar system. To see why, let us try to "observe" such an orbiting electron by using a light microscope to measure the electron's presumed orbital position with a precision of, say, 10 pm (a typical atom has a radius of about 100 pm). The wavelength of the light used in the microscope must then be about 10 pm. (a) What would be the photon energy of this light? (b) How much energy would such a photon impart to an electron in a head-on collision? (c) What do these results tell you about the possibility of "viewing" an atomic electron at two or more points along its presumed orbital path? (*Hint:* The outer electrons of atoms are bound to the atom by energies of only a few electron-volts.)

••69 Figure 38-13 shows a case in which the momentum component p_x of a particle is fixed so that $\Delta p_x = 0$; then, from Heisenberg's uncertainty principle (Eq. 38-28), the position x of the particle is completely unknown. From the same principle it follows that the opposite is also true; that is, if the position of a particle is exactly known ($\Delta x = 0$), the uncertainty in its momentum is infinite.

Consider an intermediate case, in which the position of a particle is measured, not to infinite precision, but to within a distance of $\lambda/2\pi$, where λ is the particle's de Broglie wavelength. Show that the uncertainty in the (simultaneously measured) momentum component is then equal to the component itself; that is, $\Delta p_x = p$. Under these circumstances, would a measured momentum of zero surprise you? What about a measured momentum of $0.5p$? Of $2p$? Of $12p$?

Module 38-8 Reflection from a Potential Step

••70 An electron moves through a region of uniform electric potential of −200 V with a (total) energy of 500 eV. What are its (a) kinetic energy (in electron-volts), (b) momentum, (c) speed, (d) de Broglie wavelength, and (e) angular wave number?

••71 GO For the arrangement of Figs. 38-14 and 38-15, electrons in the incident beam in region 1 have energy $E = 800$ eV and the potential step has a height of $U_1 = 600$ eV. What is the angular wave number in (a) region 1 and (b) region 2? (c) What is the reflection coefficient? (d) If the incident beam sends 5.00×10^5 electrons against the potential step, approximately how many will be reflected?

••72 GO For the arrangement of Figs. 38-14 and 38-15, electrons in the incident beam in region 1 have a speed of 1.60×10^7 m/s and region 2 has an electric potential of $V_2 = -500$ V. What is the angular wave number in (a) region 1 and (b) region 2? (c) What is the reflection coefficient? (d) If the incident beam sends 3.00×10^9 electrons against the potential step, approximately how many will be reflected?

•••73 GO The current of a beam of electrons, each with a speed of 900 m/s, is 5.00 mA. At one point along its path, the beam encounters a potential step of height -1.25 μV. What is the current on the other side of the step boundary?

Module 38-9 Tunneling Through a Potential Barrier

••74 Consider a potential energy barrier like that of Fig. 38-17 but whose height U_b is 6.0 eV and whose thickness L is 0.70 nm. What is the energy of an incident electron whose transmission coefficient is 0.0010?

••75 A 3.0 MeV proton is incident on a potential energy barrier of thickness 10 fm and height 10 MeV. What are (a) the transmission coefficient T, (b) the kinetic energy K_t the proton will have on the other side of the barrier if it tunnels through the barrier, and (c) the kinetic energy K_r it will have if it reflects from the barrier? A 3.0 MeV deuteron (the same charge but twice the mass as a proton) is incident on the same barrier. What are (d) T, (e) K_t, and (f) K_r?

••76 GO (a) Suppose a beam of 5.0 eV protons strikes a potential energy barrier of height 6.0 eV and thickness 0.70 nm, at a rate equivalent to a current of 1000 A. How long would you have to wait—on average—for one proton to be transmitted? (b) How long would you have to wait if the beam consisted of electrons rather than protons?

••77 SSM WWW An electron with total energy $E = 5.1$ eV approaches a barrier of height $U_b = 6.8$ eV and thickness $L = 750$ pm. What percentage change in the transmission coefficient T occurs for a 1.0% change in (a) the barrier height, (b) the barrier thickness, and (c) the kinetic energy of the incident electron?

•••78 GO The current of a beam of electrons, each with a speed of 1.200×10^3 m/s, is 9.000 mA. At one point along its path, the beam encounters a potential barrier of height -4.719 μV and thickness 200.0 nm. What is the transmitted current?

Additional Problems

79 Figure 38-13 shows that because of Heisenberg's uncertainty principle, it is not possible to assign an x coordinate to the position of a free electron moving along an x axis. (a) Can you assign a y or a z coordinate? (*Hint:* The momentum of the electron has no y or z component.) (b) Describe the extent of the matter wave in three dimensions.

80 A spectral emission line is electromagnetic radiation that is emitted in a wavelength range narrow enough to be taken as a single wavelength. One such emission line that is important in astronomy has a wavelength of 21 cm. What is the photon energy in the electromagnetic wave at that wavelength?

81 Using the classical equations for momentum and kinetic energy, show that an electron's de Broglie wavelength in nanometers can be written as $\lambda = 1.226/\sqrt{K}$, in which K is the electron's kinetic energy in electron-volts.

82 Derive Eq. 38-11, the equation for the Compton shift, from Eqs. 38-8, 38-9, and 38-10 by eliminating v and θ.

83 Neutrons in thermal equilibrium with matter have an average kinetic energy of $(3/2)kT$, where k is the Boltzmann constant and T, which may be taken to be 300 K, is the temperature of the environment of the neutrons. (a) What is the average kinetic energy of such a neutron? (b) What is the corresponding de Broglie wavelength?

84 Consider a balloon filled with helium gas at room temperature and atmospheric pressure. Calculate (a) the average de Broglie wavelength of the helium atoms and (b) the average distance between atoms under these conditions. The average kinetic energy of an atom is equal to $(3/2)kT$, where k is the Boltzmann constant. (c) Can the atoms be treated as particles under these conditions? Explain.

85 In about 1916, R. A. Millikan found the following stopping-potential data for lithium in his photoelectric experiments:

Wavelength (nm)	433.9	404.7	365.0	312.5	253.5
Stopping potential (V)	0.55	0.73	1.09	1.67	2.57

Use these data to make a plot like Fig. 38-2 (which is for sodium) and then use the plot to find (a) the Planck constant and (b) the work function for lithium.

86 Show that $|\psi|^2 = |\Psi|^2$, with ψ and Ψ related as in Eq. 38-14. That is, show that the probability density does not depend on the time variable.

87 Show that $\Delta E/E$, the fractional loss of energy of a photon during a collision with a particle of mass m, is given by

$$\frac{\Delta E}{E} = \frac{hf'}{mc^2}(1 - \cos\phi),$$

where E is the energy of the incident photon, f' is the frequency of the scattered photon, and ϕ is defined as in Fig. 38-5.

88 A bullet of mass 40 g travels at 1000 m/s. Although the bullet is clearly too large to be treated as a matter wave, determine what Eq. 38-17 predicts for the de Broglie wavelength of the bullet at that speed.

89 (a) The smallest amount of energy needed to eject an electron from metallic sodium is 2.28 eV. Does sodium show a photoelectric effect for red light, with $\lambda = 680$ nm? (That is, does the light cause electron emission?) (b) What is the cutoff wavelength for photoelectric emission from sodium? (c) To what color does that wavelength correspond?

90 SSM Imagine playing baseball in a universe (not ours!) where the Planck constant is 0.60 J·s and thus quantum physics affects macroscopic objects. What would be the uncertainty in the position of a 0.50 kg baseball that is moving at 20 m/s along an axis if the uncertainty in the speed is 1.0 m/s?

CHAPTER 39

More About Matter Waves

39-1 ENERGIES OF A TRAPPED ELECTRON

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

39.01 Identify the confinement principle: Confinement of a wave (including a matter wave) leads to the quantization of wavelengths and energy values.

39.02 Sketch a one-dimensional infinite potential well, indicating the length (or width) and the potential energy of the walls.

39.03 For an electron, apply the relationship between the de Broglie wavelength λ and the kinetic energy.

39.04 For an electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well, apply the relationship between the de Broglie wavelength λ, the well's length, and the quantum number n.

39.05 For an electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well, apply the relationship between the allowed energies E_n, the well length L, and the quantum number n.

39.06 Sketch an energy-level diagram for an electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well, indicating the ground state and several excited states.

39.07 Identify that a trapped electron tends to be in its ground state, can be excited to a higher-energy state, and cannot exist between the allowed states.

39.08 Calculate the energy change required for an electron to move between states: a quantum jump up or down an energy-level diagram.

39.09 If a quantum jump involves light, identify that an upward jump requires the absorption of a photon (to increase the electron's energy) and a downward jump requires the emission of a photon (to reduce the electron's energy).

39.10 If a quantum jump involves light, apply the relationships between the energy change and the frequency and wavelength associated with the photon.

39.11 Identify the emission and absorption spectra of an electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well.

Key Ideas

- Confinement of waves (string waves, matter waves—any type of wave) leads to quantization—that is, discrete states with certain energies. States with intermediate energies are not allowed.
- Because it is a matter wave, an electron confined to an infinite potential well can exist in only certain discrete states. If the well is one-dimensional with length L, the energies associated with these quantum states are

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots,$$

where m is the electron mass and n is a quantum number.

- The lowest energy is not zero but is given by $n = 1$.
- The electron can change (jump) from one quantum state to another only if its energy change is

$$\Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}},$$

where E_{high} is the higher energy and E_{low} is the lower energy.

- If the change is done by photon absorption or emission, the energy of the photon must be equal to the change in the electron's energy:

$$hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}},$$

where frequency f and wavelength λ are associated with the photon.

What Is Physics?

One of the long-standing goals of physics has been to understand the nature of atoms. Early in the 20th century nobody knew how the electrons in an atom are arranged, what their motions are, how atoms emit or absorb light, or even why atoms are stable. Without this knowledge it was not possible to understand how atoms combine to form molecules or stack up to form solids. As a consequence, the foundations of chemistry—including biochemistry, which underlies the nature of life itself—were more or less a mystery.

In 1926, all these questions and many others were answered with the development of quantum physics. Its basic premise is that moving electrons, protons, and particles of any kind are best viewed as matter waves, whose motions are governed by Schrödinger's equation. Although quantum theory also applies to larger objects, such as baseballs and planets, it yields the same results as Newtonian physics, which is easier to use and more intuitive.

Before we can apply quantum physics to the problem of atomic structure, we need to develop some insights by applying quantum ideas in a few simpler situations. Some of these situations may seem simplistic and unreal, but they allow us to discuss the basic principles of the quantum physics of atoms without having to deal with the often overwhelming complexity of atoms. Besides, with advances in nanotechnology, situations that were previously found only in textbooks are now being produced in laboratories and put to use in modern electronics and materials science applications. We are on the threshold of being able to use nanometer-scale constructions called *quantum corrals* and *quantum dots* to create "designer atoms" whose properties can be manipulated in the laboratory. For both natural atoms and these artificial ones, the starting point in our discussion is the wave nature of an electron.

String Waves and Matter Waves

In Chapter 16 we saw that waves of two kinds can be set up on a stretched string. If the string is so long that we can take it to be infinitely long, we can set up a *traveling wave* of essentially any frequency. However, if the stretched string has only a finite length, perhaps because it is rigidly clamped at both ends, we can set up only *standing waves* on it; further, these standing waves can have only discrete frequencies. In other words, confining the wave to a finite region of space leads to *quantization* of the motion—to the existence of discrete *states* for the wave, each state with a sharply defined frequency.

This observation applies to waves of all kinds, including matter waves. For matter waves, however, it is more convenient to deal with the energy E of the associated particle than with the frequency f of the wave. In all that follows we shall focus on the matter wave associated with an electron, but the results apply to any confined matter wave.

Consider the matter wave associated with an electron moving in the positive x direction and subject to no net force—a so-called *free particle.* The energy of such an electron can have any reasonable value, just as a wave traveling along a stretched string of infinite length can have any reasonable frequency.

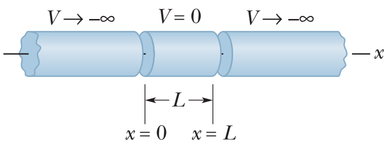
Consider next the matter wave associated with an atomic electron, perhaps the *valence* (least tightly bound) electron. The electron—held within the atom by the attractive Coulomb force between it and the positively charged nucleus—is not a free particle. It can exist only in a set of discrete states, each having a discrete energy E. This sounds much like the discrete states and quantized frequencies that are available to a stretched string of finite length. For matter waves, then, as for all other kinds of waves, we may state a **confinement principle:**

> Confinement of a wave leads to quantization—that is, to the existence of discrete states with discrete energies.

Energies of a Trapped Electron

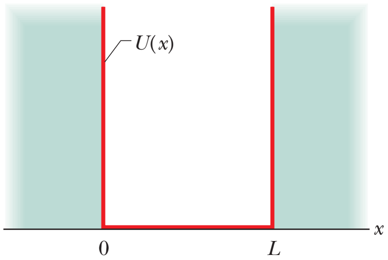
One-Dimensional Traps

Here we examine the matter wave associated with a nonrelativistic electron confined to a limited region of space. We do so by analogy with standing waves on a string of finite length, stretched along an x axis and confined between rigid supports. Because the supports are rigid, the two ends of the string are nodes, or



An electron can be trapped in the $V = 0$ region.

Figure 39-1 The elements of an idealized "trap" designed to confine an electron to the central cylinder. We take the semi-infinitely long end cylinders to be at an infinitely great negative potential and the central cylinder to be at zero potential.



An electron can be trapped in the $U = 0$ region.

Figure 39-2 The electric potential energy $U(x)$ of an electron confined to the central cylinder of the idealized trap of Fig. 39-1. We see that $U = 0$ for $0 < x < L$, and $U \to \infty$ for $x < 0$ and $x > L$.

points at which the string is always at rest. There may be other nodes along the string, but these two must always be present, as Fig. 16-21 shows.

The states, or discrete standing wave patterns in which the string can oscillate, are those for which the length L of the string is equal to an integer number of half-wavelengths. That is, the string can occupy only states for which

$$L = \frac{n\lambda}{2}, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{39-1}$$

Each value of n identifies a state of the oscillating string; using the language of quantum physics, we can call the integer n a **quantum number.**

For each state of the string permitted by Eq. 39-1, the transverse displacement of the string at any position x along the string is given by

$$y_n(x) = A \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right), \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots , \tag{39-2}$$

in which the quantum number n identifies the oscillation pattern and A depends on the time at which you inspect the string. (Equation 39-2 is a short version of Eq. 16-60.) We see that for all values of n and for all times, there is a point of zero displacement (a node) at $x = 0$ and at $x = L$, as there must be. Figure 16-20 shows time exposures of such a stretched string for $n = 2, 3,$ and 4.

Now let us turn our attention to matter waves. Our first problem is to physically confine an electron that is moving along the x axis so that it remains within a finite segment of that axis. Figure 39-1 shows a conceivable one-dimensional *electron trap.* It consists of two semi-infinitely long cylinders, each of which has an electric potential approaching $-\infty$; between them is a hollow cylinder of length L, which has an electric potential of zero. We put a single electron into this central cylinder to trap it.

The trap of Fig. 39-1 is easy to analyze but is not very practical. Single electrons *can,* however, be trapped in the laboratory with traps that are more complex in design but similar in concept. At the University of Washington, for example, a single electron has been held in a trap for months on end, permitting scientists to make extremely precise measurements of its properties.

Finding the Quantized Energies

Figure 39-2 shows the potential energy of the electron as a function of its position along the x axis of the idealized trap of Fig. 39-1. When the electron is in the central cylinder, its potential energy $U\ (= -eV)$ is zero because there the potential V is zero. If the electron could get outside this region, its potential energy would be positive and of infinite magnitude because there $V \to -\infty$. We call the potential energy pattern of Fig. 39-2 an **infinitely deep potential energy well** or, for short, an *infinite potential well.* It is a "well" because an electron placed in the central cylinder of Fig. 39-1 cannot escape from it. As the electron approaches either end of the cylinder, a force of essentially infinite magnitude reverses the electron's motion, thus trapping it. Because the electron can move along only a single axis, this trap can be called a *one-dimensional infinite potential well.*

Just like the standing wave in a length of stretched string, the matter wave describing the confined electron must have nodes at $x = 0$ and $x = L$. Moreover, Eq. 39-1 applies to such a matter wave if we interpret λ in that equation as the de Broglie wavelength associated with the moving electron.

The de Broglie wavelength λ is defined in Eq. 38-17 as $\lambda = h/p$, where p is the magnitude of the electron's momentum. Because the electron is nonrelativistic, this momentum magnitude p is related to the kinetic energy K by $p = \sqrt{2mK}$, where m is the mass of the electron. For an electron moving within the central cylinder of Fig. 39-1, where $U = 0$, the total (mechanical) energy E is equal to the kinetic energy. Hence, we can write the de Broglie wavelength of this electron as

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{h}{\sqrt{2mE}}. \tag{39-3}$$

If we substitute Eq. 39-3 into Eq. 39-1 and solve for the energy E, we find that E depends on n according to

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{39-4}$$

The positive integer n here is the quantum number of the electron's quantum state in the trap.

Equation 39-4 tells us something important: Because the electron is confined to the trap, it can have only the energies given by the equation. It *cannot* have an energy that is, say, halfway between the values for $n = 1$ and $n = 2$. Why this restriction? Because an electron is a matter wave. Were it, instead, a particle as assumed in classical physics, it could have *any* value of energy while it is confined to the trap.

Figure 39-3 is a graph showing the lowest five allowed energy values for an electron in an infinite well with $L = 100$ pm (about the size of a typical atom). The values are called *energy levels,* and they are drawn in Fig. 39-3 as levels, or steps, on a ladder, in an *energy-level diagram.* Energy is plotted vertically; nothing is plotted horizontally.

The quantum state with the lowest possible energy level E_1 allowed by Eq. 39-4, with quantum number $n = 1$, is called the *ground state* of the electron. The electron tends to be in this lowest energy state. All the quantum states with greater energies (corresponding to quantum numbers $n = 2$ or greater) are called *excited states* of the electron. The state with energy level E_2, for quantum number $n = 2$, is called the *first excited state* because it is the first of the excited states as we move up the energy-level diagram. The other states have similar names.

Energy Changes

A trapped electron tends to have the lowest allowed energy and thus to be in its ground state. It can be changed to an excited state (in which it has greater energy) only if an external source provides the additional energy that is required for the change. Let E_{low} be the initial energy of the electron and E_{high} be the greater energy in a state that is higher on its energy-level diagram. Then the amount of energy that is required for the electron's change of state is

$$\Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}. \tag{39-5}$$

An electron that receives such energy is said to make a *quantum jump* (or *transition*), or to be *excited* from the lower-energy state to the higher-energy state. Figure 39-4*a* represents a quantum jump from the ground state (with energy level E_1) to the third excited state (with energy level E_4). As shown, the jump *must* be from one energy level to another, but it can bypass one or more intermediate energy levels.

Photons. One way an electron can gain energy to make a quantum jump up to a greater energy level is to absorb a photon. However, this absorption and quantum jump can occur only if the following condition is met:

> If a confined electron is to absorb a photon, the energy hf of the photon must equal the energy difference ΔE between the initial energy level of the electron and a higher level.

Thus, excitation by the absorption of light requires that

$$hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}. \tag{39-6}$$

These are the lowest five energy levels allowed the electron. (No intermediate levels are allowed.)

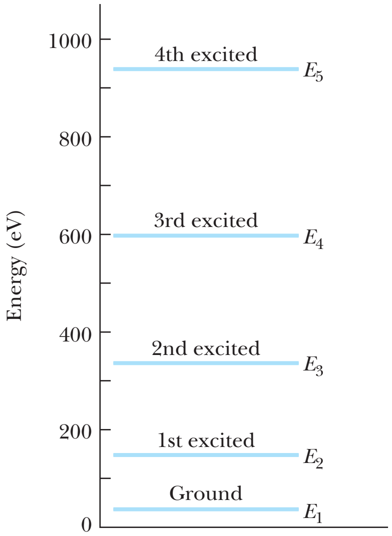
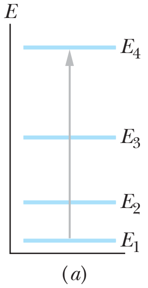


Figure 39-3 Several of the allowed energies for an electron confined to the infinite well of Fig. 39-2, with width $L = 100$ pm.

The electron is excited to a higher energy level.



It can de-excite to a lower level in several ways (set by chance).

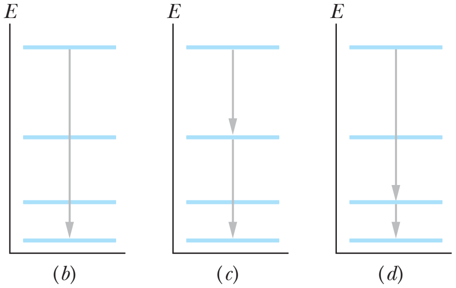


Figure 39-4 (*a*) Excitation of a trapped electron from the energy level of its ground state to the level of its third excited state. (*b*)–(*d*) Three of four possible ways the electron can de-excite to return to the energy level of its ground state. (Which way is not shown?)

When an electron reaches an excited state, it does not stay there but quickly *de-excites* by decreasing its energy. Figures 39-4*b* to *d* represent some of the possible quantum jumps down from the energy level of the third excited state. The electron can reach its ground-state level either with one direct quantum jump (Fig. 39-4*b*) or with shorter jumps via intermediate levels (Figs. 39-4*c* and *d*).

An electron can decrease its energy by emitting a photon but only this way:

> If a confined electron emits a photon, the energy hf of that photon must equal the energy difference ΔE between the initial energy level of the electron and a lower level.

Thus, Eq. 39-6 applies to both the absorption and the emission of light by a confined electron. That is, the absorbed or emitted light can have only certain values of hf and thus only certain values of frequency f and wavelength λ.

Aside: Although Eq. 39-6 and what we have discussed about photon absorption and emission can be applied to physical (real) electron traps, they actually cannot be applied to one-dimensional (unreal) electron traps. The reason involves the need to conserve angular momentum in a photon absorption or emission process. In this book, we shall neglect that need and use Eq. 39-6 even for one-dimensional traps.

Checkpoint 1

Rank the following pairs of quantum states for an electron confined to an infinite well according to the energy differences between the states, greatest first: (a) $n = 3$ and $n = 1$, (b) $n = 5$ and $n = 4$, (c) $n = 4$ and $n = 3$.

Sample Problem 39.01 Energy levels in a 1D infinite potential well

An electron is confined to a one-dimensional, infinitely deep potential energy well of width $L = 100$ pm. (a) What is the smallest amount of energy the electron can have? (A trapped electron cannot have zero energy.)

KEY IDEA

Confinement of the electron (a matter wave) to the well leads to quantization of its energy. Because the well is infinitely deep, the allowed energies are given by Eq. 39-4 ($E_n = (h^2/8mL^2)n^2$), with the quantum number n a positive integer.

Lowest energy level: Here, the collection of constants in front of n^2 in Eq. 39-4 is evaluated as

$$\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} = \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})^2}{(8)(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(100 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{m})^2}$$
$$= 6.031 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J}. \qquad (39\text{-}7)$$

The smallest amount of energy the electron can have corresponds to the lowest quantum number, which is $n = 1$ for the ground state of the electron. Thus, Eqs. 39-4 and 39-7 give us

$$E_1 = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2 = (6.031 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J})(1^2)$$
$$\approx 6.03 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J} = 37.7\ \text{eV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) How much energy must be transferred to the electron if it is to make a quantum jump from its ground state to its second excited state?

KEY IDEA

First a caution: Note that, from Fig. 39-3, the *second* excited state corresponds to the *third* energy level, with quantum number $n = 3$. Then if the electron is to jump from the $n = 1$ level to the $n = 3$ level, the required change in its energy is, from Eq. 39-5,

$$\Delta E_{31} = E_3 - E_1. \qquad (39\text{-}8)$$

Upward jump: The energies E_3 and E_1 depend on the quantum number n, according to Eq. 39-4. Therefore, substituting that equation into Eq. 39-8 for energies E_3 and E_1 and using Eq. 39-7 lead to

$$\Delta E_{31} = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)(3)^2 - \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)(1)^2$$
$$= \frac{h^2}{8mL^2}(3^2 - 1^2)$$
$$= (6.031 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J})(8)$$
$$= 4.83 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{J} = 301\ \text{eV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(c) If the electron gains the energy for the jump from energy level E_1 to energy level E_3 by absorbing light, what light wavelength is required?

KEY IDEAS

(1) If light is to transfer energy to the electron, the transfer must be by photon absorption. (2) The photon's energy must equal the energy difference ΔE between the initial energy

level of the electron and a higher level, according to Eq. 39-6 ($hf = \Delta E$). Otherwise, a photon *cannot* be absorbed.

Wavelength: Substituting c/λ for f, we can rewrite Eq. 39-6 as

$$\lambda = \frac{hc}{\Delta E}. \tag{39-9}$$

For the energy difference ΔE_{31} we found in (b), this equation gives us

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= \frac{hc}{\Delta E_{31}}\\ &= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})(2.998 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})}{4.83 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{J}}\\ &= 4.12 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

(d) Once the electron has been excited to the second excited state, what wavelengths of light can it emit by de-excitation?

KEY IDEAS

1. The electron tends to de-excite, rather than remain in an excited state, until it reaches the ground state ($n = 1$).
2. If the electron is to de-excite, it must lose just enough energy to jump to a lower energy level.
3. If it is to lose energy by emitting light, then the loss of energy must be by emission of a photon.

Downward jumps: Starting in the second excited state (at the $n = 3$ level), the electron can reach the ground state ($n = 1$) by *either* making a quantum jump directly to the ground-state energy level (Fig. 39-5*a*) or by making two *separate* jumps by way of the $n = 2$ level (Figs. 39-5*b* and *c*).

The direct jump involves the same energy difference ΔE_{31} we found in (c). Then the wavelength is the same as we calculated in (c)—except now the wavelength is for light that is emitted, not absorbed. Thus, the electron can jump directly to the ground state by emitting light of wavelength

$$\lambda = 4.12 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Following the procedure of part (b), you can show that the energy differences for the jumps of Figs. 39-5*b* and *c* are

$$\Delta E_{32} = 3.016 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{J} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta E_{21} = 1.809 \times 10^{-17}\ \text{J}.$$

From Eq. 39-9, we then find that the wavelength of the light emitted in the first of these jumps (from $n = 3$ to $n = 2$) is

$$\lambda = 6.60 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}, \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

and the wavelength of the light emitted in the second of these jumps (from $n = 2$ to $n = 1$) is

$$\lambda = 1.10 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

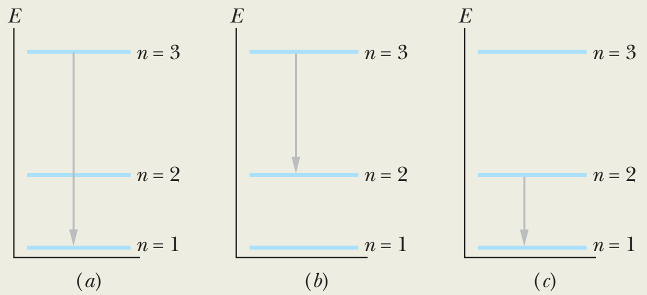


Figure 39-5 De-excitation from the second excited state to the ground state either directly (*a*) or via the first excited state (*b*, *c*).

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

39-2 WAVE FUNCTIONS OF A TRAPPED ELECTRON

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

39.12 For an electron trapped in a one-dimensional, infinite potential well, write its wave function in terms of coordinates inside the well and in terms of the quantum number n.

39.13 Identify probability density.

39.14 For an electron trapped in a one-dimensional, infinite potential well in a given state, write the probability density as a function of position inside the well, identify that the probability density is zero outside the well, and calculate the probability of detection between two given coordinates inside the well.

39.15 Identify the correspondence principle.

39.16 Normalize a given wave function and identify what that has to do with the probability of detection.

39.17 Identify that the lowest allowed energy (the zero-point energy) of a trapped electron is not zero.

Key Ideas

- The wave functions for an electron in an infinite, one-dimensional potential well with length L along an x axis are given by

$$\psi_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right), \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots,$$

where n is the quantum number.

- The product $\psi_n^2(x)\,dx$ is the probability that the electron will be detected in the interval between coordinates x and $x + dx$.
- If the probability density of an electron is integrated over the entire x axis, the total probability must be 1:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_n^2(x)\,dx = 1.$$

Wave Functions of a Trapped Electron

If we solve Schrödinger's equation for an electron trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well of width L and impose the boundary condition that the solutions be zero at the infinite walls, we find that the wave functions for the electron are given by

$$\psi_n(x) = A \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right), \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-10}$$

for $0 \leq x \leq L$ (the wave function is zero outside that range). We shall soon evaluate the amplitude constant A in this equation.

Note that the wave functions $\psi_n(x)$ have the same form as the displacement functions $y_n(x)$ for a standing wave on a string stretched between rigid supports (see Eq. 39-2). We can picture an electron trapped in a one-dimensional well between infinite-potential walls as being a standing matter wave.

The probability density must be zero at the infinite walls.

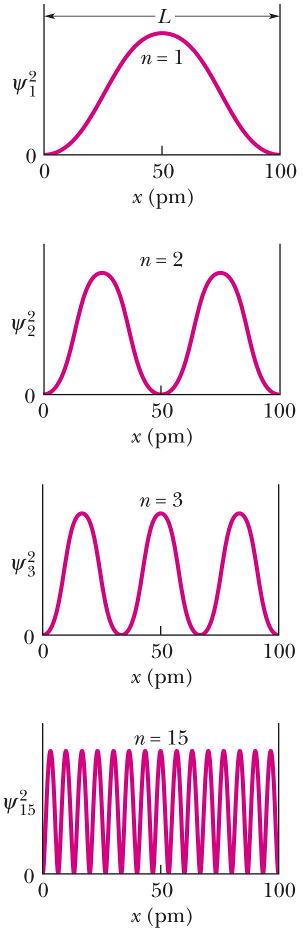


Figure 39-6 The probability density $\psi_n^2(x)$ for four states of an electron trapped in a one-dimensional infinite well; their quantum numbers are $n = 1, 2, 3$, and 15. The electron is most likely to be found where $\psi_n^2(x)$ is greatest and least likely to be found where $\psi_n^2(x)$ is least.

Probability of Detection

The wave function $\psi_n(x)$ cannot be detected or directly measured in any way—we cannot simply look inside the well to see the wave the way we can see, say, a wave in a bathtub of water. All we can do is insert a probe of some kind to try to detect the electron. At the instant of detection, the electron would materialize at the point of detection, at some position along the x axis within the well.

If we repeated this detection procedure at many positions throughout the well, we would find that the probability of detecting the electron is related to the probe's position x in the well. In fact, they are related by the *probability density* $\psi_n^2(x)$. Recall from Module 38-6 that in general the probability that a particle can be detected in a specified infinitesimal volume centered on a specified point is proportional to $|\psi_n^2|$. Here, with the electron trapped in a one-dimensional well, we are concerned only with detection of the electron along the x axis. Thus, the probability density $\psi_n^2(x)$ here is a probability per unit length along the x axis. (We can omit the absolute value sign here because $\psi_n(x)$ in Eq. 39-10 is a real quantity, not a complex one.) The probability $p(x)$ that an electron can be detected at position x within the well is

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability } p(x)\\ \text{of detection in width } dx\\ \text{centered on position } x\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{probability density } \psi_n^2(x)\\ \text{at position } x\end{pmatrix} (\text{width } dx),$$

or

$$p(x) = \psi_n^2(x)\, dx. \tag{39-11}$$

From Eq. 39-10, we see that the probability density $\psi_n^2(x)$ is

$$\psi_n^2(x) = A^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right), \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-12}$$

for the range $0 \leq x \leq L$ (the probability density is zero outside that range). Figure 39-6 shows $\psi_n^2(x)$ for $n = 1, 2, 3$, and 15 for an electron in an infinite well whose width L is 100 pm.

To find the probability that the electron can be detected in any finite section of the well—say, between point x_1 and point x_2—we must integrate $p(x)$ between those points. Thus, from Eqs. 39-11 and 39-12,

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{between } x_1 \text{ and } x_2\end{pmatrix} &= \int_{x_1}^{x_2} p(x)\\ &= \int_{x_1}^{x_2} A^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right) dx. \end{aligned}\tag{39-13}$$

If the range Δx in which we search for the electron is much smaller than the well length L, then we can usually approximate the integral in Eq. 39-13 as being equal to the product $p(x)\,\Delta x$, with $p(x)$ evaluated in the center of Δx.

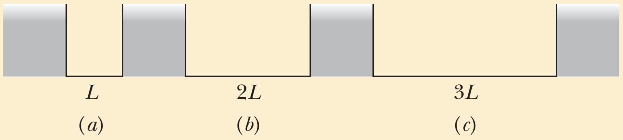
If classical physics prevailed, we would expect the trapped electron to be detectable with equal probabilities in all parts of the well. From Fig. 39-6 we see that it is not. For example, inspection of that figure or of Eq. 39-12 shows that for the state with $n = 2$, the electron is most likely to be detected near $x = 25$ pm and $x = 75$ pm. It can be detected with near-zero probability near $x = 0$, $x = 50$ pm, and $x = 100$ pm.

The case of $n = 15$ in Fig. 39-6 suggests that as n increases, the probability of detection becomes more and more uniform across the well. This result is an instance of a general principle called the **correspondence principle:**

> At large enough quantum numbers, the predictions of quantum physics merge smoothly with those of classical physics.

This principle, first advanced by Danish physicist Niels Bohr, holds for all quantum predictions.

Checkpoint 2



The figure shows three infinite potential wells of widths L, $2L$, and $3L$; each contains an electron in the state for which $n = 10$. Rank the wells according to (a) the number of maxima for the probability density of the electron and (b) the energy of the electron, greatest first.

Normalization

The product $\psi_n^2(x)\,dx$ gives the probability that an electron in an infinite well can be detected in the interval of the x axis that lies between x and $x + dx$. We know that the electron must be *somewhere* in the infinite well; so it must be true that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \psi_n^2(x)\,dx = 1 \quad \text{(normalization equation)}, \tag{39-14}$$

because the probability 1 corresponds to certainty. Although the integral is taken over the entire x axis, only the region from $x = 0$ to $x = L$ makes any contribution to the probability. Graphically, the integral in Eq. 39-14 represents the area under each of the plots of Fig. 39-6. If we substitute $\psi_n^2(x)$ from Eq. 39-12 into Eq. 39-14, we find that $A = \sqrt{2/L}$. This process of using Eq. 39-14 to evaluate the amplitude of a wave function is called **normalizing** the wave function. The process applies to *all* one-dimensional wave functions.

Zero-Point Energy

Substituting $n = 1$ in Eq. 39-4 defines the state of lowest energy for an electron in an infinite potential well, the ground state. That is the state the confined electron will occupy unless energy is supplied to it to raise it to an excited state.

The question arises: Why can't we include $n = 0$ among the possibilities listed for n in Eq. 39-4? Putting $n = 0$ in this equation would indeed yield a ground-state energy of zero. However, putting $n = 0$ in Eq. 39-12 would also yield $\psi_n^2(x) = 0$ for all x, which we can interpret only to mean that there is no electron in the well. We know that there is; so $n = 0$ is not a possible quantum number.

It is an important conclusion of quantum physics that confined systems cannot exist in states with zero energy. They must always have a certain minimum energy called the **zero-point energy.**

We can make the zero-point energy as small as we like by making the infinite well wider—that is, by increasing L in Eq. 39-4 for $n = 1$. In the limit as $L \rightarrow \infty$, the zero-point energy $E_1 \rightarrow 0$. However, the electron is then a free particle, no longer confined in the x direction. Also, because the energy of a free particle is not quantized, that energy can have any value, including zero. Only a confined particle must have a finite zero-point energy and can never be at rest.

Checkpoint 3

Each of the following particles is confined to an infinite well, and all four wells have the same width: (a) an electron, (b) a proton, (c) a deuteron, and (d) an alpha particle. Rank their zero-point energies, greatest first. The particles are listed in order of increasing mass.

Sample Problem 39.02 Detection probability in a 1D infinite potential well

A ground-state electron is trapped in the one-dimensional infinite potential well of Fig. 39-2, with width $L = 100$ pm.

(a) What is the probability that the electron can be detected in the left one-third of the well ($x_1 = 0$ to $x_2 = L/3$)?

KEY IDEAS

(1) If we probe the left one-third of the well, there is no guarantee that we will detect the electron. However, we can calculate the probability of detecting it with the integral of Eq. 39-13. (2) The probability very much depends on which state the electron is in—that is, the value of quantum number n.

Calculations: Because here the electron is in the ground state, we set $n = 1$ in Eq. 39-13. We also set the limits of integration as the positions $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = L/3$ and set the amplitude constant A as $\sqrt{2/L}$ (so that the wave function is normalized). We then see that

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{in left one-third}\end{pmatrix} = \int_0^{L/3} \frac{2}{L}\sin^2\left(\frac{1\pi}{L}x\right) dx.$$

We could find this probability by substituting 100×10^{-12} m for L and then using a graphing calculator or a computer math package to evaluate the integral. Here, however, we shall evaluate the integral "by hand." First we switch to a new integration variable y:

$$y = \frac{\pi}{L}x \quad \text{and} \quad dx = \frac{L}{\pi}dy.$$

From the first of these equations, we find the new limits of integration to be $y_1 = 0$ for $x_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = \pi/3$ for $x_2 = L/3$. We then must evaluate

$$\text{probability} = \left(\frac{2}{L}\right)\left(\frac{L}{\pi}\right)\int_0^{\pi/3} (\sin^2 y)\, dy.$$

Using integral 11 in Appendix E, we then find

$$\text{probability} = \frac{2}{\pi}\left(\frac{y}{2} - \frac{\sin 2y}{4}\right)_0^{\pi/3} = 0.20.$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{in left one-third}\end{pmatrix} = 0.20. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

That is, if we repeatedly probe the left one-third of the well, then on average we can detect the electron with 20% of the probes.

(b) What is the probability that the electron can be detected in the middle one-third of the well?

Reasoning: We now know that the probability of detection in the left one-third of the well is 0.20. By symmetry, the probability of detection in the right one-third of the well is also 0.20. Because the electron is certainly in the well, the probability of detection in the entire well is 1. Thus, the probability of detection in the middle one-third of the well is

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{in middle one-third}\end{pmatrix} &= 1 - 0.20 - 0.20\\ &= 0.60. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

Sample Problem 39.03 Normalizing wave functions in a 1D infinite potential well

Evaluate the amplitude constant A in Eq. 39-10 for an infinite potential well extending from $x = 0$ to $x = L$.

KEY IDEA

The wave functions of Eq. 39-10 must satisfy the normalization requirement of Eq. 39-14, which states that the probability that the electron can be detected somewhere along the x axis is 1.

Calculations: Substituting Eq. 39-10 into Eq. 39-14 and taking the constant A outside the integral yield

$$A^2 \int_0^L \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right) dx = 1. \qquad (39\text{-}15)$$

We have changed the limits of the integral from $-\infty$ and $+\infty$ to 0 and L because the "outside" wave function is zero.

We can simplify the indicated integration by changing the variable from x to the dimensionless variable y, where

$$y = \frac{n\pi}{L}x, \tag{39-16}$$

hence $$dx = \frac{L}{n\pi}dy.$$

When we change the variable, we must also change the integration limits (again). Equation 39-16 tells us that $y = 0$ when $x = 0$ and that $y = n\pi$ when $x = L$; thus 0 and $n\pi$ are our new limits. With all these substitutions, Eq. 39-15 becomes

$$A^2\frac{L}{n\pi}\int_0^{n\pi}(\sin^2 y)\,dy = 1.$$

We can use integral 11 in Appendix E to evaluate the integral, obtaining the equation

$$\frac{A^2L}{n\pi}\left[\frac{y}{2} - \frac{\sin 2y}{4}\right]_0^{n\pi} = 1.$$

Evaluating at the limits yields

$$\frac{A^2L}{n\pi}\frac{n\pi}{2} = 1;$$

thus $$A = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \tag{39-17}$$

This result tells us that the dimension for A^2, and thus for $\psi_n^2(x)$, is an inverse length. This is appropriate because the probability density of Eq. 39-12 is a probability *per unit length.*

39-3 AN ELECTRON IN A FINITE WELL

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

39.18 Sketch a one-dimensional finite potential well, indicating the length and height.

39.19 For an electron trapped in a finite well with given energy levels, sketch the energy-level diagram, indicate the nonquantized region, and compare the energies and de Broglie wavelengths with those of an infinite well of the same length.

39.20 For an electron trapped in a finite well, explain (in principle) how the wave functions for the allowed states are determined.

39.21 For an electron trapped in a finite well with a given quantum number, sketch the probability density as a function of position across the well and into the walls.

39.22 Identify that a trapped electron can exist in only the allowed states and relate that energy of the state to the kinetic energy of the electron.

39.23 Calculate the energy that an electron must absorb or emit to move between the allowed states or between an allowed state and any value in the nonquantized region.

39.24 If a quantum jump involves light, apply the relationship between the energy change and the frequency and wavelength associated with the photon.

39.25 From a given allowed state in a finite well, calculate the minimum energy required for the electron to escape and the kinetic energy of the escaped electron if provided more than that minimal energy.

39.26 Identify the emission and absorption spectra of an electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well, including escaping the trap and falling into the trap.

Key Ideas

- The wave function for an electron in a finite, one-dimensional potential well extends into the walls, where the wave function decreases exponentially with depth.
- Compared to the states in an infinite well of the same size, the states in a finite well have a limited number, longer de Broglie wavelengths, and lower energies.

An Electron in a Finite Well

A potential energy well of infinite depth is an idealization. Figure 39-7 shows a realizable potential energy well—one in which the potential energy of an electron outside the well is not infinitely great but has a finite positive value U_0,

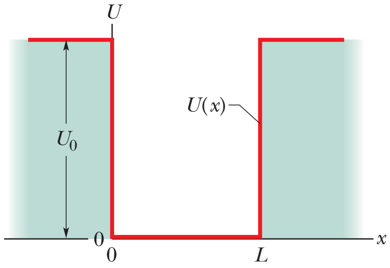


Figure 39-7 A *finite* potential energy well. The depth of the well is U_0 and its width is L. As in the infinite potential well of Fig. 39-2, the motion of the trapped electron is restricted to the x direction.

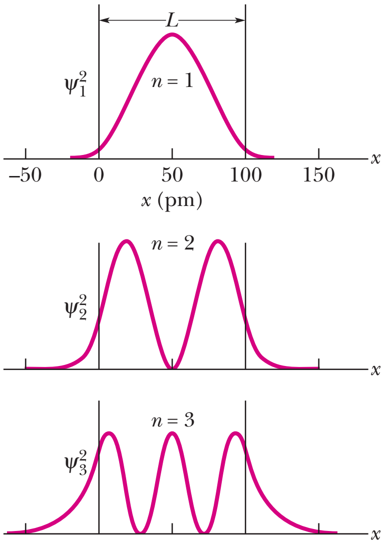


Figure 39-8 The first three probability densities $\psi_n^2(x)$ for an electron confined to a finite potential well of depth $U_0 = 450$ eV and width $L = 100$ pm. Only states $n = 1$, 2, 3, and 4 are allowed.

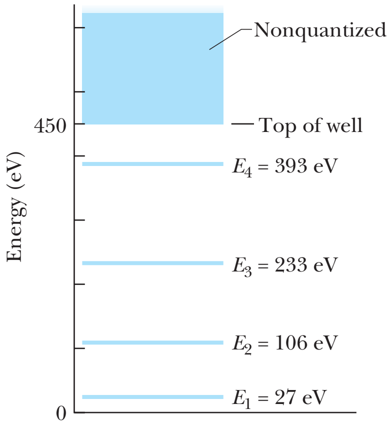


Figure 39-9 The energy-level diagram corresponding to the probability densities of Fig. 39-8. If an electron is trapped in the finite potential well, it can have only the energies corresponding to $n = 1, 2, 3$, and 4. If it has an energy of 450 eV or greater, it is not trapped and its energy is not quantized.

called the **well depth.** The analogy between waves on a stretched string and matter waves fails us for wells of finite depth because we can no longer be sure that matter wave nodes exist at $x = 0$ and at $x = L$. (As we shall see, they don't.)

To find the wave functions describing the quantum states of an electron in the finite well of Fig. 39-7, we *must* resort to Schrödinger's equation, the basic equation of quantum physics. From Module 38-6 recall that, for motion in one dimension, we use Schrödinger's equation in the form of Eq. 38-19:

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + \frac{8\pi^2 m}{h^2}[E - U(x)]\psi = 0. \tag{39-18}$$

Rather than attempting to solve this equation for the finite well, we simply state the results for particular numerical values of U_0 and L. Figure 39-8 shows three results as graphs of $\psi_n^2(x)$, the probability density, for a well with $U_0 = 450$ eV and $L = 100$ pm.

The probability density $\psi_n^2(x)$ for each graph in Fig. 39-8 satisfies Eq. 39-14, the normalization equation; so we know that the areas under all three probability density plots are numerically equal to 1.

If you compare Fig. 39-8 for a finite well with Fig. 39-6 for an infinite well, you will see one striking difference: For a finite well, the electron matter wave penetrates the walls of the well—into a region in which Newtonian mechanics says the electron cannot exist. This penetration should not be surprising because we saw in Module 38-9 that an electron can tunnel through a potential energy barrier. "Leaking" into the walls of a finite potential energy well is a similar phenomenon. From the plots of ψ^2 in Fig. 39-8, we see that the leakage is greater for greater values of quantum number n.

Because a matter wave *does* leak into the walls of a finite well, the wavelength λ for any given quantum state is greater when the electron is trapped in a finite well than when it is trapped in an infinite well of the same length L. Equation 39-3 ($\lambda = h/\sqrt{2mE}$) then tells us that the energy E for an electron in any given state is less in the finite well than in the infinite well.

That fact allows us to approximate the energy-level diagram for an electron trapped in a finite well. As an example, we can approximate the diagram for the finite well of Fig. 39-8, which has width $L = 100$ pm and depth $U_0 = 450$ eV. The energy-level diagram for an *infinite* well of that width is shown in Fig. 39-3. First we remove the portion of Fig. 39-3 above 450 eV. Then we shift the remaining four energy levels down, shifting the level for $n = 4$ the most because the wave leakage into the walls is greatest for $n = 4$. The result is approximately the energy-level diagram for the finite well. The actual diagram is Fig. 39-9.

In that figure, an electron with an energy greater than U_0 (= 450 eV) has too much energy to be trapped in the finite well. Thus, it is not confined, and its energy is not quantized; that is, its energy is not restricted to certain values. To reach this *nonquantized* portion of the energy-level diagram and thus to be free, a trapped electron must somehow obtain enough energy to have a mechanical energy of 450 eV or greater.

Sample Problem 39.04 Electron escaping from a finite potential well

Suppose a finite well with $U_0 = 450$ eV and $L = 100$ pm confines a single electron in its ground state.

(a) What wavelength of light is needed to barely free it with a single photon absorption?

KEY IDEA

For the electron to escape, it must receive enough energy to jump to the nonquantized energy region of Fig. 39-9 and end up with an energy of at least U_0 (= 450 eV).

Barely escaping: The electron is initially in its ground state, with an energy of $E_1 = 27$ eV. So, to barely become free, it must receive an energy of

$$U_0 - E_1 = 450\text{ eV} - 27\text{ eV} = 423\text{ eV}.$$

Thus the photon must have this much energy. From Eq. 39-6 ($hf = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}$), with c/λ substituted for f, we write

$$\frac{hc}{\lambda} = U_0 - E_1,$$

from which we find

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= \frac{hc}{U_0 - E_1}\\ &= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s})}{(423\ \mathrm{eV})(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{J/eV})}\\ &= 2.94 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m} = 2.94\ \mathrm{nm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

Thus, if $\lambda = 2.94$ nm, the electron just barely escapes.

(b) Can the ground-state electron absorb light with $\lambda = 2.00$ nm? If so, what then is the electron's energy?

KEY IDEAS

1. In (a) we found that light of 2.94 nm will just barely free the electron from the potential well.
2. We are now considering light with a shorter wavelength of 2.00 nm and thus a greater energy per photon ($hf = hc/\lambda$).
3. Hence, the electron *can* absorb a photon of this light. The energy transfer will not only free the electron but will also provide it with more kinetic energy. Further, because the electron is then no longer trapped, its energy is not quantized.

More than escaping: The energy transferred to the electron is the photon energy:

$$\begin{aligned}hf = h\frac{c}{\lambda} &= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s})}{2.00 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m}}\\ &= 9.95 \times 10^{-17}\ \mathrm{J} = 622\ \mathrm{eV}.\end{aligned}$$

From (a), the energy required to just barely free the electron from the potential well is $U_0 - E_1$ (= 423 eV). The remainder of the 622 eV goes to kinetic energy. Thus, the kinetic energy of the freed electron is

$$\begin{aligned}K &= hf - (U_0 - E_1)\\ &= 622\ \mathrm{eV} - 423\ \mathrm{eV} = 199\ \mathrm{eV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

39-4 TWO- AND THREE-DIMENSIONAL ELECTRON TRAPS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

39.27 Discuss nanocrystallites as being electron traps and explain how their threshold wavelength can determine their color.

39.28 Identify quantum dots and quantum corrals.

39.29 For a given state of an electron in an infinite potential well with two or three dimensions, write equations for the wave function and probability density and then calculate the probability of detection for a given range in the well.

39.30 For a given state of an electron in an infinite potential well with two or three dimensions, calculate the allowed energies and draw an energy-level diagram, complete with labels for the quantum numbers, the ground state, and several excited states.

39.31 Identify degenerate states.

39.32 Calculate the energy that an electron must absorb or emit to move between the allowed states in a 2D or 3D trap.

39.33 If a quantum jump involves light, apply the relationships between the energy change and the frequency and wavelength associated with the photon.

Key Ideas

- The quantized energies for an electron trapped in a two-dimensional infinite potential well that forms a rectangular corral are

$$E_{nx,ny} = \frac{h^2}{8m}\left(\frac{n_x^2}{L_x^2} + \frac{n_y^2}{L_y^2}\right),$$

where n_x is a quantum number for well width L_x and n_y is a quantum number for well width L_y.

- The wave functions for an electron in a two-dimensional well are given by

$$\psi_{nx,ny} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L_x}}\sin\left(\frac{n_x\pi}{L_x}x\right)\sqrt{\frac{2}{L_y}}\sin\left(\frac{n_y\pi}{L_y}y\right).$$

More Electron Traps

Here we discuss three types of artificial electron traps.

Nanocrystallites

Perhaps the most direct way to construct a potential energy well in the laboratory is to prepare a sample of a semiconducting material in the form of a powder whose granules are small—in the nanometer range—and of uniform size. Each such granule—each **nanocrystallite**—acts as a potential well for the electrons trapped within it.

Equation 39-4 ($E = (h^2/8mL^2)n^2$) shows that we can increase the energy-level values of an electron trapped in an infinite well by reducing the width L of the well. This would also shift the photon energies that the well can absorb to higher values and thus shift the corresponding wavelengths to shorter values.

These general results are also true for a well formed by a nanocrystallite. A given nanocrystallite can absorb photons with an energy above a certain threshold energy E_t ($= hf_t$) and thus wavelengths below a corresponding threshold wavelength

$$\lambda_t = \frac{c}{f_t} = \frac{ch}{E_t}.$$

Light with any wavelength longer than λ_t is scattered by the nanocrystallite instead of being absorbed. The color we attribute to the nanocrystallite is then determined by the wavelength composition of the scattered light we intercept.

If we reduce the size of the nanocrystallite, the value of E_t is increased, the value of λ_t is decreased, and the light that is scattered to us changes in its wavelength composition. Thus, the color we attribute to the nanocrystallite changes. As an example, Fig. 39-10 shows two samples of the semiconductor cadmium selenide, each consisting of a powder of nanocrystallites of uniform size. The lower sample scatters light at the red end of the spectrum. The upper sample differs from the lower sample *only* in that the upper sample is composed of smaller nanocrystallites. For this reason its threshold energy E_t is greater and, from above, its threshold wavelength λ_t is shorter, in the green range of visible light. Thus, the sample now scatters both red and yellow. Because the yellow component happens to be brighter, the sample's color is now dominated by the yellow. The striking contrast in color between the two samples is compelling evidence of the quantization of the energies of trapped electrons and the dependence of these energies on the size of the electron trap.

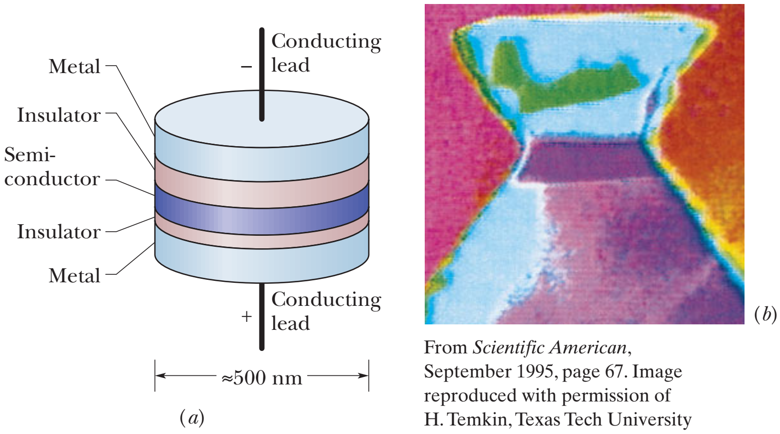
From *Scientific American*, January 1993, page 119. Reproduced with permission of Michael Steigerwald.

Figure 39-10 Two samples of powdered cadmium selenide, a semiconductor, differing only in the size of their granules. Each granule serves as an electron trap. The lower sample has the larger granules and consequently the smaller spacing between energy levels and the lower photon energy threshold for the absorption of light. Light not absorbed is scattered, causing the sample to scatter light of greater wavelength and appear red. The upper sample, because of its smaller granules, and consequently its larger level spacing and its larger energy threshold for absorption, appears yellow.

Quantum Dots

The highly developed techniques used to fabricate computer chips can be used to construct, atom by atom, individual potential energy wells that behave, in many respects, like artificial atoms. These **quantum dots,** as they are usually called, have promising applications in electron optics and computer technology.

In one such arrangement, a "sandwich" is fabricated in which a thin layer of a semiconducting material, shown in purple in Fig. 39-11*a*, is deposited between two insulating layers, one of which is much thinner than the other. Metal end caps with conducting leads are added at both ends. The materials are chosen to ensure that the potential energy of an electron in the central layer is less than it is



From *Scientific American*, September 1995, page 67. Image reproduced with permission of H. Temkin, Texas Tech University

Figure 39-11 A quantum dot, or "artificial atom." (*a*) A central semiconducting layer forms a potential energy well in which electrons are trapped. The lower insulating layer is thin enough to allow electrons to be added to or removed from the central layer by barrier tunneling if an appropriate voltage is applied between the leads. (*b*) A photograph of an actual quantum dot. The central purple band is the electron confinement region.

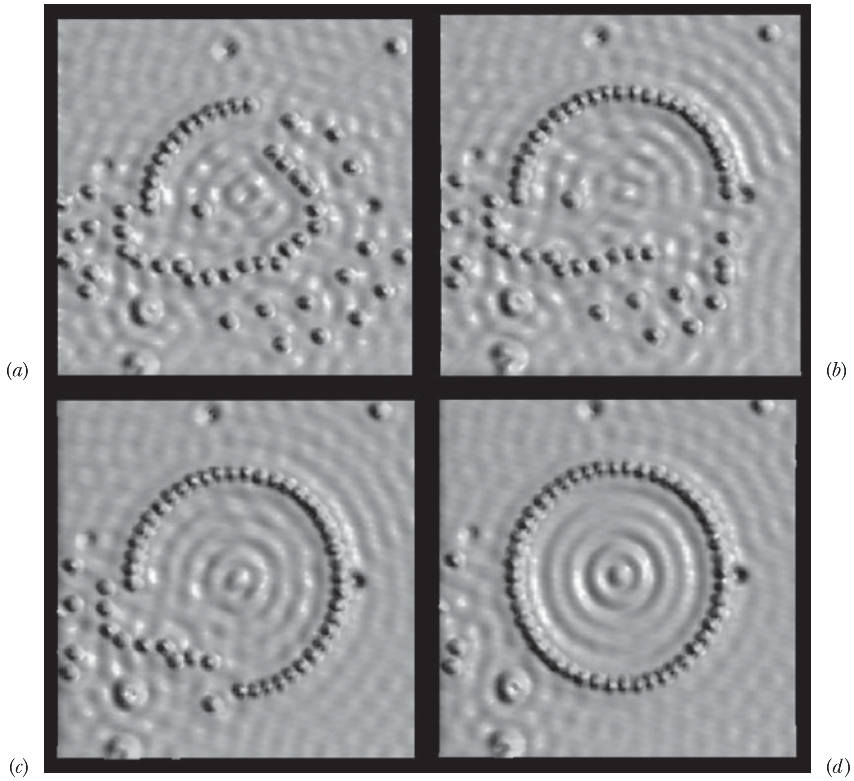
in the two insulating layers, causing the central layer to act as a potential energy well. Figure 39-11*b* is a photograph of an actual quantum dot; the well in which individual electrons can be trapped is the purple region.

The lower (but not the upper) insulating layer in Fig. 39-11*a* is thin enough to permit electrons to tunnel through it if an appropriate potential difference is applied between the leads. In this way the number of electrons confined to the well can be controlled. The arrangement does indeed behave like an artificial atom with the property that the number of electrons it contains can be controlled. Quantum dots can be constructed in two-dimensional arrays that could well form the basis for computing systems of great speed and storage capacity.

Quantum Corrals

When a scanning tunneling microscope (described in Module 38-9) is in operation, its tip exerts a small force on isolated atoms that may be located on an otherwise smooth surface. By careful manipulation of the position of the tip, such isolated atoms can be "dragged" across the surface and deposited at another location. Using this technique, scientists at IBM's Almaden Research Center moved iron atoms across a carefully prepared copper surface, forming the atoms into a circle (Fig. 39-12), which they named a **quantum corral.** Each iron atom in the circle is nestled in a hollow in the copper surface, equidistant from three nearest-neighbor copper atoms. The corral was fabricated at a low temperature (about 4 K) to minimize the tendency of the iron atoms to move randomly about on the surface because of their thermal energy.

The ripples within the corral are due to matter waves associated with electrons that can move over the copper surface but are largely trapped in the potential well of the corral. The dimensions of the ripples are in excellent agreement with the predictions of quantum theory.



From M. F. Crommie, C. P. Lutz, D. M. Eigler, *Science*, 262: 218, 1993. Reprinted with permission from AAAS.

Figure 39-12 A quantum corral during four stages of construction. Note the appearance of ripples caused by electrons trapped in the corral when it is almost complete.

Two- and Three-Dimensional Electron Traps

In the next module, we shall discuss the hydrogen atom as being a three-dimensional finite potential well. As a warm-up for the hydrogen atom, let us extend our discussion of infinite potential wells to two and three dimensions.

Rectangular Corral

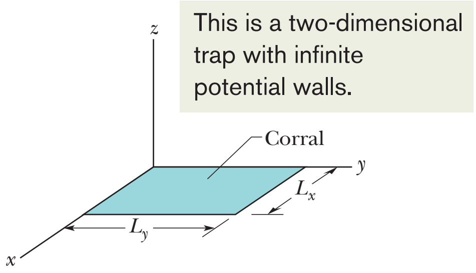

This is a two-dimensional trap with infinite potential walls.

Figure 39-13 A rectangular corral—a two-dimensional version of the infinite potential well of Fig. 39-2—with widths L_x and L_y.

Figure 39-13 shows the rectangular area to which an electron can be confined by the two-dimensional version of Fig. 39-2—a two-dimensional infinite potential well of widths L_x and L_y that forms a rectangular corral. The corral might be on the surface of a body that somehow prevents the electron from moving parallel to the z axis and thus from leaving the surface. You have to imagine infinite potential energy functions (like $U(x)$ in Fig. 39-2) along each side of the corral, keeping the electron within the corral.

Solution of Schrödinger's equation for the rectangular corral of Fig. 39-13 shows that, for the electron to be trapped, its matter wave must fit into each of the two widths separately, just as the matter wave of a trapped electron must fit into a one-dimensional infinite well. This means the wave is separately quantized in width L_x and in width L_y. Let n_x be the quantum number for which the matter wave fits into width L_x, and let n_y be the quantum number for which the matter wave fits into width L_y. As with a one-dimensional potential well, these quantum numbers can be only positive integers. We can extend Eqs. 39-10 and 39-17 to write the normalized wave function as

$$\psi_{nx,ny} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L_x}}\sin\left(\frac{n_x\pi}{L}x\right)\sqrt{\frac{2}{L_y}}\sin\left(\frac{n_y\pi}{L}y\right), \tag{39-19}$$

The energy of the electron depends on both quantum numbers and is the sum of the energy the electron would have if it were confined along the x axis alone and the energy it would have if it were confined along the y axis alone. From Eq. 39-4, we can write this sum as

$$E_{nx,ny} = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL_x^2}\right)n_x^2 + \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL_y^2}\right)n_y^2 = \frac{h^2}{8m}\left(\frac{n_x^2}{L_x^2} + \frac{n_y^2}{L_y^2}\right). \tag{39-20}$$

Excitation of the electron by photon absorption and de-excitation of the electron by photon emission have the same requirements as for one-dimensional traps. Now, however, two quantum numbers (n_x and n_y) are involved. Because of that, different states might have the same energy; such states and their energy levels are said to be *degenerate*.

Rectangular Box

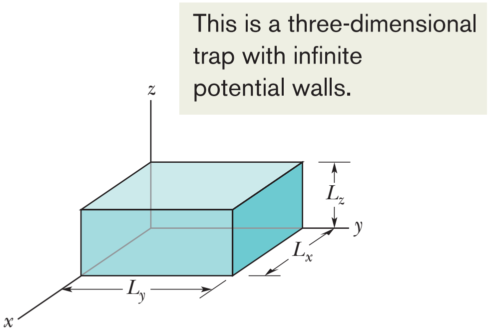

This is a three-dimensional trap with infinite potential walls.

Figure 39-14 A rectangular box—a three-dimensional version of the infinite potential well of Fig. 39-2—with widths L_x, L_y, and L_z.

An electron can also be trapped in a three-dimensional infinite potential well—a *box*. If the box is rectangular as in Fig. 39-14, then Schrödinger's equation shows us that we can write the energy of the electron as

$$E_{nx,ny,nz} = \frac{h^2}{8m}\left(\frac{n_x^2}{L_x^2} + \frac{n_y^2}{L_y^2} + \frac{n_z^2}{L_z^2}\right). \tag{39-21}$$

Here n_z is a third quantum number, for fitting the matter wave into width L_z.

Checkpoint 4

In the notation of Eq. 39-20, is $E_{0,0}$, $E_{1,0}$, $E_{0,1}$, or $E_{1,1}$ the ground-state energy of an electron in a (two-dimensional) rectangular corral?

Sample Problem 39.05 Energy levels in a 2D infinite potential well

An electron is trapped in a square corral that is a two-dimensional infinite potential well (Fig. 39-13) with widths $L_x = L_y$.

(a) Find the energies of the lowest five possible energy levels for this trapped electron, and construct the corresponding energy-level diagram.

KEY IDEA

Because the electron is trapped in a two-dimensional well that is rectangular, the electron's energy depends on two quantum numbers, n_x and n_y, according to Eq. 39-20.

Energy levels: Because the well here is square, we can let the widths be $L_x = L_y = L$. Then Eq. 39-20 simplifies to

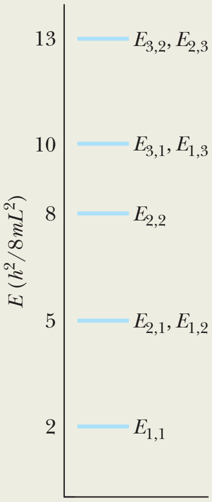
$$E_{nx,ny} = \frac{h^2}{8mL^2}(n_x^2 + n_y^2). \qquad (39\text{-}22)$$

The lowest energy states correspond to low values of the quantum numbers n_x and n_y, which are the positive integers 1, 2, . . . , ∞. Substituting those integers for n_x and n_y in Eq. 39-22, starting with the lowest value 1, we can obtain the energy values as listed in Table 39-1. There we can see that several of the pairs of quantum numbers (n_x, n_y) give the same energy. For example, the (1, 2) and (2, 1) states both have an energy of $5(h^2/8mL^2)$. Each such pair is associated with degenerate energy levels. Note also that, perhaps surprisingly, the (4, 1) and (1, 4) states have less energy than the (3, 3) state.

Table 39-1 **Energy Levels**

n_x	n_y	Energy[a]	n_x	n_y	Energy[a]
1	3	10	2	4	20
3	1	10	4	2	20
2	2	8	3	3	18
1	2	5	1	4	17
2	1	5	4	1	17
1	1	2	2	3	13
			3	2	13

[a] In multiples of $h^2/8mL^2$.



These are the lowest five energy levels allowed the electron. Different quantum states may have the same energy.

Figure 39-15 Energy-level diagram for an electron trapped in a square corral.

From Table 39-1 (carefully keeping track of degenerate levels), we can construct the energy-level diagram of Fig. 39-15.

(b) As a multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$, what is the energy difference between the ground state and the third excited state?

Energy difference: From Fig. 39-15, we see that the ground state is the (1, 1) state, with an energy of $2(h^2/8mL^2)$. We also see that the third excited state (the third state up from the ground state in the energy-level diagram) is the degenerate (1, 3) and (3, 1) states, with an energy of $10(h^2/8mL^2)$. Thus, the difference ΔE between these two states is

$$\Delta E = 10\left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right) - 2\left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right) = 8\left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right). \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

39-5 THE HYDROGEN ATOM

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

39.34 Identify Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom and explain how he derived the quantized radii and energies.

39.35 For a given quantum number n in the Bohr model, calculate the electron's orbital radius, kinetic energy, potential energy, total energy, orbital period, orbital frequency, momentum, and angular momentum.

39.36 Distinguish the Bohr and Schrödinger descriptions of the hydrogen atom, including the discrepancy between the allowed angular momentum values.

39.37 For a hydrogen atom, apply the relationship between the quantized energies E_n and the quantum number n.

39.38 For a given jump in hydrogen, between quantized states or between a quantized state and a nonquantized state, calculate the change in energy and, if light is involved, the associated energy, frequency, wavelength, and momentum of the photon.

39.39 Sketch an energy-level diagram for hydrogen, identifying the ground state, several of the excited states, the nonquantized region, the Paschen series, the Balmer series, and the Lyman series (including the series limits).

39.40 For each transition series, identify the jumps giving the longest wavelength, the shortest wavelength for downward jumps, the series limit, and ionization.

39.41 List the quantum numbers for an atom and indicate the allowed values.

39.42 Given a normalized wave function for a state, find the radial probability density $P(r)$ and the probability of detecting the electron in a given range of radii.

39.43 For ground-state hydrogen, sketch a graph of the radial probability density versus radial distance and locate one Bohr radius a.

39.44 For a given normalized wave function for hydrogen, verify that it satisfies the Schrödinger equation.

39.45 Distinguish shell from subshell.

39.46 Explain a dot plot of a probability density.

Key Ideas

- The Bohr model of the hydrogen atom successfully derived the energy levels for the atom, to explain the emission/absorption spectrum of the atom, but it is incorrect in almost every other aspect.

- The Bohr model is a planetary model in which the electron orbits the central proton with an angular momentum L that is limited to values given by

$$L = n\hbar, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots,$$

where n is a quantum number. The value $L = 0$ is incorrectly disallowed.

- Application of the Schrödinger equation gives the correct values of L and the quantized energies:

$$E_n = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^2}\frac{1}{n^2} = -\frac{13.60\text{ eV}}{n^2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

- The atom (or the electron in the atom) can change energy only by jumping between these allowed energies.

- If the jump is by photon absorption (the atom's energy increases) or photon emission (the atom's energy decreases), this restriction in energy changes leads to

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{low}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{high}}^2}\right),$$

for the wavelength of the light, where R is the Rydberg constant,

$$R = \frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^3 c} = 1.097\,373 \times 10^7\text{ m}^{-1}.$$

- The radial probability density $P(r)$ for a state of the hydrogen atom is defined so that $P(r)$ is the probability that the electron will be detected somewhere in the space between two spherical shells of radii r and $r + dr$ that are centered on the nucleus.

- Normalization requires that

$$\int_0^\infty P(r)\,dr = 1.$$

- The probability that the electron will be detected between any two given radii r_1 and r_2 is

$$(\text{probability of detection between } r_1 \text{ and } r_2) = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} P(r)\,dr.$$

The Hydrogen Atom Is an Electron Trap

We now move from artificial or fictitious electron traps to natural ones — atoms. In this chapter we focus on the simplest example, a hydrogen atom, which contains an electron that is trapped by the Coulomb force it experiences from the proton, which is the nucleus of the atom. Because the proton's mass is much greater than the electron's mass, we shall assume that the proton is fixed in place. So, we think of the atom as a fixed potential trap with the electron moving around inside it.

We have now discussed at length that confinement of an electron means that the electron's energy E is quantized and thus so is any change ΔE in its energy. In this module we want to calculate the quantized energies of the electron confined to a hydrogen atom. We shall, in principle at least, apply Schrödinger's equation to the trap, to find those energies and the associated wave functions. However, at the discretion of your instructor, let's take an historical aside to examine how the quantizing of atoms began, back when quantization was a revolutionary concept.

The Bohr Model of Hydrogen, a Lucky Break

By the early 1900s, scientists understood that matter came in tiny pieces called atoms and that an atom of hydrogen contained positive charge $+e$ at its center and negative charge $-e$ (an electron) outside that center. However, no one understood why the electrical attraction between the electron and the positive charge did not simply cause the two to collapse together.

Visible Wavelengths. One clue lay in the experimental fact that a hydrogen atom can emit and absorb only four wavelengths in the visible spectrum (656 nm, 486 nm, 434 nm, and 410 nm). Why did it not emit all wavelengths as, say, a hot blackbody radiator? In 1913, Niels Bohr had a remarkable idea that simultaneously explained not only the four visible wavelengths but also why the atom did not simply collapse. However, as successful as his theory was on those two counts, it turned out to be quite wrong in almost every other aspect of the atom and led to very little success in explaining atoms more complicated than hydrogen. Nevertheless, the Bohr model is historically important because it ushered in the quantum physics of atoms.

Assumptions. To build his model, Bohr made two bold (completely unjustified) assumptions: (1) The electron in a hydrogen atom orbits the nucleus in a circle much like Earth orbits the Sun (Fig. 39-16*a*). (2) The magnitude of the angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of the electron in its orbit is restricted (quantized) to the values

$$L = n\hbar, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-23}$$

where $\hbar$ (h-bar) is $h/2\pi$ and n is a positive integer (a quantum number). We are going to follow Bohr's relatively simple arguments to get an equation for the quantized energies of the hydrogen atom, but let's be explicit here: The electron is *not* simply a particle in a planetary orbit and Eq. 39-23 does *not* correctly give the angular momentum values. (For example, $L = 0$ is missing.)

Newton's Second Law. In the orbit picture of Fig. 39-16*a*, the electron is in uniform circular motion and thus experiences a centripetal force (Fig. 39-16*b*), which causes a centripetal acceleration. The force is the Coulomb force (Eq. 21-4) between the electron (with charge $-e$) and the proton (with charge $+e$), separated by the orbital radius r. The centripetal acceleration has the magnitude $a = v^2/r$ (Eq. 4-34), where v is the electron's speed. So, we can write Newton's second law for a radial axis as

$$F = ma$$

$$-\frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{|-e||e|}{r^2} = m\left(-\frac{v^2}{r}\right), \tag{39-24}$$

where m is the electron mass.

We next introduce quantization by using Bohr's assumption expressed in Eq. 39-23. From Eq. 11-19, the magnitude ℓ of the angular momentum of a particle of mass m and speed v moving in a circle of radius r is $\ell = rmv \sin\phi$, where ϕ (the angle between $\vec{r}$ and $\vec{v}$) is 90°. Replacing L in Eq. 39-23 with $rmv \sin 90°$ gives us

$$rmv = n\hbar,$$

or

$$v = \frac{n\hbar}{rm}. \tag{39-25}$$

Substituting this equation into Eq. 39-24, replacing $\hbar$ with $h/2\pi$, and rearranging,

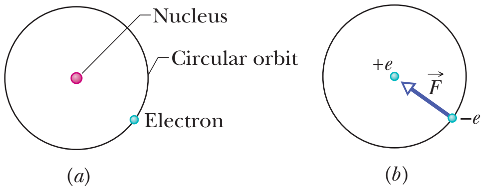


Figure 39-16 (*a*) Circular orbit of an electron in the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom. (*b*) The Coulomb force $\vec{F}$ on the electron is directed radially inward toward the nucleus.

Bohr's model for hydrogen resembles the orbital model of a planet around a star.

we find

$$r = \frac{h^2\varepsilon_0}{\pi me^2}n^2, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{39-26}$$

We can rewrite this as

$$r = an^2, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-27}$$

where

$$a = \frac{h^2\varepsilon_0}{\pi me^2} = 5.291\,772 \times 10^{-11}\text{ m} \approx 52.92\text{ pm}. \tag{39-28}$$

These last three equations tell us that, in the *Bohr model of the hydrogen atom,* the electron's orbital radius r is quantized and the smallest possible orbital radius (for $n = 1$) is a, which is called the *Bohr radius.* According to the Bohr model, the electron cannot get any closer to the nucleus than orbital radius a, and that is why the attraction between electron and nucleus does not simply collapse them together.

Orbital Energy Is Quantized

Let's next find the energy of the hydrogen atom according to the Bohr model. The electron has kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, and the electron–nucleus system has electric potential energy $U = q_1q_2/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r$ (Eq. 24-46). Again, let q_1 be the electron's charge $-e$ and q_2 be the nuclear charge $+e$. Then the mechanical energy is

$$\begin{aligned} E &= K + U \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{e^2}{r}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{39-29}$$

Solving Eq. 39-24 for mv^2 and substituting the result in Eq. 39-29 lead to

$$E = -\frac{1}{8\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{e^2}{r}. \tag{39-30}$$

Next, replacing r with its equivalent from Eq. 39-26, we have

$$E_n = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2h^2}\frac{1}{n^2}, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-31}$$

where the subscript n on E signals that we have now quantized the energy.

From this equation, Bohr was able to calculate the visible wavelengths emitted and absorbed by hydrogen, but before we discuss how to go from the energy equation to the wavelengths, let's discuss the correct model of the hydrogen atom.

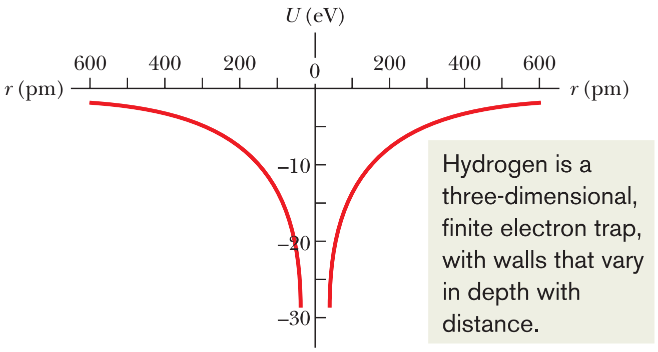


Figure 39-17 The potential energy U of a hydrogen atom as a function of the separation r between the electron and the central proton. The plot is shown twice (on the left and on the right) to suggest the three-dimensional spherically symmetric trap in which the electron is confined.

Schrödinger's Equation and the Hydrogen Atom

In Schrödinger's model of the hydrogen atom, the electron (charge $-e$) is in a potential energy trap due to its electrical attraction to the proton (charge $+e$) at the center of the atom. From Eq. 24-46, we write the potential energy function as

$$U(r) = \frac{-e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 r}. \qquad (39\text{-}32)$$

Because this well is three-dimensional, it is more complex than our previous one- and two-dimensional wells. Because this well is finite, it is more complex than the three-dimensional well of Fig. 39-14. Moreover, it does not have sharply defined walls. Rather, its walls vary in depth with radial distance r. Figure 39-17 is probably the best we can do in drawing the hydrogen potential well, but even that drawing takes much effort to interpret.

To find the allowed energies and wave functions for an electron trapped in the potential well given by Eq. 39-32, we need to apply Schrödinger's equation. With some manipulation, we would find that we could separate the equation into three separate differential equations, two depending on angles and one depending on radial distance r. The solution of the latter equation requires a quantum number n and produces the energy values E_n of the electron:

$$E_n = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^2}\frac{1}{n^2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \qquad (39\text{-}33)$$

(This equation is exactly what Bohr found by using a very wrong planetary model of the atom.) Evaluating the constants in Eq. 39-33 gives us

$$E_n = -\frac{2.180 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J}}{n^2} = -\frac{13.61\ \text{eV}}{n^2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \qquad (39\text{-}34)$$

This equation tells us that the energy E_n of the hydrogen atom is quantized; that is, E_n is restricted by its dependence on the quantum number n. Because the nucleus is assumed to be fixed in place and only the electron has motion, we can assign the energy values of Eq. 39-34 either to the atom as a whole or to the electron alone.

Energy Changes

The energy of a hydrogen atom (or, equivalently, of its electron) changes when the atom emits or absorbs light. As we have seen several times since Eq. 39-6, emission and absorption involve a quantum of light according to

$$hf = \Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}. \qquad (39\text{-}35)$$

Let's make three changes to Eq. 39-35. On the left side, we substitute c/λ for f. On the right side, we use Eq. 39-33 twice to replace the energy terms. Then, with a simple rearrangement, we have

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^3 c}\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{high}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{low}}^2}\right). \qquad (39\text{-}36)$$

We can rewrite this as

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{low}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{high}}^2}\right), \qquad (39\text{-}37)$$

in which R is the *Rydberg constant*:

$$R = \frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^3 c} = 1.097\,373 \times 10^7\ \text{m}^{-1}. \qquad (39\text{-}38)$$

For example, if we replace n_{low} with 2 in Eq. 39-36 and then restrict n_{high} to be 3, 4, 5, and 6, we generate the four visible wavelengths at which hydrogen can emit or absorb light: 656 nm, 486 nm, 434 nm, and 410 nm.

The Hydrogen Spectrum

Figure 39-18*a* shows the energy levels corresponding to various values of n in Eq. 39-34. The lowest level, for $n = 1$, is the ground state of hydrogen. Higher levels correspond to excited states, just as we saw for our simpler potential traps. Note several differences, however. (1) The energy levels now have negative values rather than the positive values we previously chose in, for instance, Figs. 39-3 and 39-9. (2) The levels now become progressively closer as we move to higher levels. (3) The energy for the greatest value of n—namely, $n = \infty$—is now $E_\infty = 0$. For any energy greater than $E_\infty = 0$, the electron and proton are not bound together (there is no hydrogen atom), and the $E > 0$ region in Fig. 39-18*a* is like the nonquantized region for the finite well of Fig. 39-9.

A hydrogen atom can jump between quantized energy levels by emitting or absorbing light at the wavelengths given by Eq. 39-36. Any such wavelength is often called a *line* because of the way it is detected with a spectroscope; thus, a hydrogen atom has *absorption lines* and *emission lines.* A collection of such lines, such as in those in the visible range, is called a **spectrum** of the hydrogen atom.

Series. The lines for hydrogen are said to be grouped into *series,* according to the level at which upward jumps start and downward jumps end. For example, the emission and absorption lines for all possible jumps up from the $n = 1$ level and down to the $n = 1$ level are said to be in the *Lyman series* (Fig. 39-18*b*), named after the person who first studied those lines. Further, we can say that the Lyman series has a *home-base level* of $n = 1$. Similarly, the *Balmer series* has a home-base level of $n = 2$ (Fig. 39-18*c*), and the *Paschen series* has a home-base level of $n = 3$ (Fig. 39-18*d*).

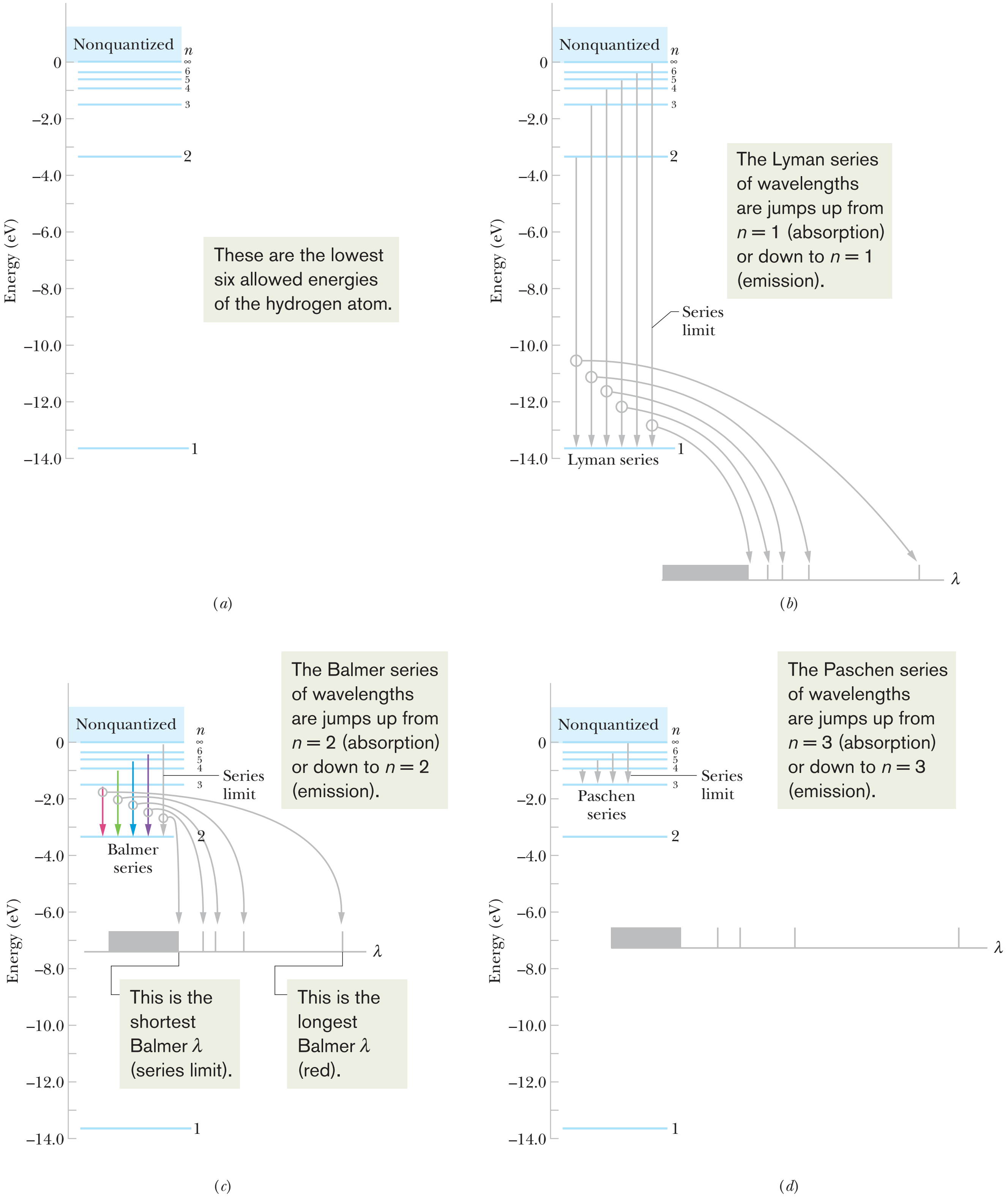
Some of the downward quantum jumps for these three series are shown in Fig. 39-18. Four lines in the Balmer series are in the visible range and are represented in Fig. 39-18*c* with arrows corresponding to their colors. The shortest of those arrows represents the shortest jump in the series, from the $n = 3$ level to the $n = 2$ level. Thus, that jump involves the smallest change in the electron's energy and the smallest amount of emitted photon energy for the series. The emitted light is red. The next jump in the series, from $n = 4$ to $n = 2$, is longer, the photon energy is greater, the wavelength of the emitted light is shorter, and the light is green. The third, fourth, and fifth arrows represent longer jumps and shorter wavelengths. For the fifth jump, the emitted light is in the ultraviolet range and thus is not visible.

The *series limit* of a series is the line produced by the jump between the home-base level and the highest energy level, which is the level with the limiting quantum number $n = \infty$. Thus, the series limit corresponds to the shortest wavelength in the series.

If a jump is upward into the nonquantized portion of Fig. 39-18, the electron's energy is no longer given by Eq. 39-34 because the electron is no longer trapped in the atom. That is, the hydrogen atom has been *ionized,* meaning that the electron has been removed to a distance so great that the Coulomb force on it from the nucleus is negligible. The atom can be ionized if it absorbs any wavelength shorter than the series limit. The free electron then has only kinetic energy K ($=\frac{1}{2}mv^2$, assuming a nonrelativistic situation).

Quantum Numbers for the Hydrogen Atom

Although the energies of the hydrogen atom states can be described by the single quantum number n, the wave functions describing these states require three quantum numbers, corresponding to the three dimensions in which the electron



These are the lowest six allowed energies of the hydrogen atom.

The Lyman series of wavelengths are jumps up from $n = 1$ (absorption) or down to $n = 1$ (emission).

The Balmer series of wavelengths are jumps up from $n = 2$ (absorption) or down to $n = 2$ (emission).

This is the shortest Balmer λ (series limit).

This is the longest Balmer λ (red).

The Paschen series of wavelengths are jumps up from $n = 3$ (absorption) or down to $n = 3$ (emission).

Figure 39-18 (*a*) An energy-level diagram for the hydrogen atom. Some of the transitions for (*b*) the Lyman series, (*c*) the Balmer series, and (*d*) the Paschen series. For each, the longest four wavelengths and the series-limit wavelength are plotted on a wavelength axis. Any wavelength shorter than the series-limit wavelength is allowed.

Table 39-2 Quantum Numbers for the Hydrogen Atom

Symbol	Name	Allowed Values
n	Principal quantum number	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$
ℓ	Orbital quantum number	$0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$
m_ℓ	Orbital magnetic quantum number	$-\ell, -(\ell-1), \ldots, +(\ell-1), +\ell$

can move. The three quantum numbers, along with their names and the values that they may have, are shown in Table 39-2.

Each set of quantum numbers (n, ℓ, m_ℓ) identifies the wave function of a particular quantum state. The quantum number n, called the **principal quantum number,** appears in Eq. 39-34 for the energy of the state. The **orbital quantum number** ℓ is a measure of the magnitude of the angular momentum associated with the quantum state. The **orbital magnetic quantum number** m_ℓ is related to the orientation in space of this angular momentum vector. The restrictions on the values of the quantum numbers for the hydrogen atom, as listed in Table 39-2, are not arbitrary but come out of the solution to Schrödinger's equation. Note that for the ground state ($n = 1$), the restrictions require that $\ell = 0$ and $m_\ell = 0$. That is, the hydrogen atom in its ground state has zero angular momentum, which is not predicted by Eq. 39-23 in the Bohr model.

Checkpoint 5

(a) A group of quantum states of the hydrogen atom has $n = 5$. How many values of ℓ are possible for states in this group? (b) A subgroup of hydrogen atom states in the $n = 5$ group has $\ell = 3$. How many values of m_ℓ are possible for states in this subgroup?

The Wave Function of the Hydrogen Atom's Ground State

The wave function for the ground state of the hydrogen atom, as obtained by solving the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation and normalizing the result, is

$$\psi(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}\,a^{3/2}}\, e^{-r/a} \qquad \text{(ground state)}, \tag{39-39}$$

where a ($= 5.291\,772 \times 10^{-11}$ m) is the Bohr radius. This radius is loosely taken to be the effective radius of a hydrogen atom and turns out to be a convenient unit of length for other situations involving atomic dimensions.

As with other wave functions, $\psi(r)$ in Eq. 39-39 does not have physical meaning but $\psi^2(r)$ does, being the probability density—the probability per unit volume—that the electron can be detected. Specifically, $\psi^2(r)\,dV$ is the probability that the electron can be detected in any given (infinitesimal) volume element dV located at radius r from the center of the atom:

$$\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{in volume } dV\\ \text{at radius } r\end{array}\right) = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{volume probability}\\ \text{density } \psi^2(r)\\ \text{at radius } r\end{array}\right)(\text{volume } dV). \tag{39-40}$$

Because $\psi^2(r)$ here depends only on r, it makes sense to choose, as a volume element dV, the volume between two concentric spherical shells whose radii are r and $r + dr$. That is, we take the volume element dV to be

$$dV = (4\pi r^2)\,dr, \tag{39-41}$$

in which $4\pi r^2$ is the surface area of the inner shell and dr is the radial distance between the two shells. Then, combining Eqs. 39-39, 39-40, and 39-41 gives us

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{in volume } dV\\ \text{at radius } r\end{pmatrix} = \psi^2(r)\,dV = \frac{4}{a^3}e^{-2r/a}r^2\,dr. \tag{39-42}$$

Describing the probability of detecting an electron is easier if we work with a **radial probability density** $P(r)$ instead of a volume probability density $\psi^2(r)$. This $P(r)$ is a linear probability density such that

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{radial probability}\\ \text{density } P(r)\\ \text{at radius } r\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{radial}\\ \text{width } dr\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{volume probability}\\ \text{density } \psi^2(r)\\ \text{at radius } r\end{pmatrix}(\text{volume } dV)$$

or

$$P(r)\,dr = \psi^2(r)\,dV. \tag{39-43}$$

Substituting for $\psi^2(r)\,dV$ from Eq. 39-42, we obtain

$$P(r) = \frac{4}{a^3}r^2e^{-2r/a} \quad \text{(radial probability density, hydrogen atom ground state)}. \tag{39-44}$$

To find the probability of detecting the ground-state electron between any two radii r_1 and r_2 (that is, between a spherical shell of radius r_1 and another of radius r_2), we integrate Eq. 39-44 between those two radii:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{probability of detection}\\ \text{between } r_1 \text{ and } r_2\end{pmatrix} = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} P(r)\,dr. \tag{39-45}$$

If the radial range Δr $(= r_2 - r_1)$ in which we search for the electron is small enough such that $P(r)$ does not vary by much over the range, then we can usually approximate the integral in Eq. 39-45 as being equal to the product $P(r)\,\Delta r$, with $P(r)$ evaluated in the center of Δr.

Figure 39-19 is a plot of Eq. 39-44. The area under the plot is unity; that is,

$$\int_0^\infty P(r)\,dr = 1. \tag{39-46}$$

This equation states that in a hydrogen atom, the electron must be *somewhere* in the space surrounding the nucleus.

The triangular marker on the horizontal axis of Fig. 39-19 is located one Bohr radius from the origin. The graph tells us that in the ground state of the hydrogen atom, the electron is most likely to be found at about this distance from the center of the atom.

Figure 39-19 conflicts sharply with the popular view that electrons in atoms follow well-defined orbits like planets moving around the Sun. *This popular view, however familiar, is incorrect.* Figure 39-19 shows us all that we can ever know about the location of the electron in the ground state of the hydrogen atom. The appropriate question is not "When will the electron arrive at such-and-such a point?" but "What are the odds that the electron will be detected in a small volume centered on such-and-such a point?" Figure 39-20, which we call a dot plot, suggests the probabilistic nature of the wave function: The density of dots represents the probability density of detection of the electron with the hydrogen atom in its ground state. Think of the atom in this state as a fuzzy ball with no sharply defined boundary and no hint of orbits.

It is not easy for a beginner to envision subatomic particles in this probabilistic way. The difficulty is our natural impulse to regard an electron as something like a tiny jelly bean, located at certain places at certain times and following a well-defined path. Electrons and other subatomic particles simply do not behave in this way.

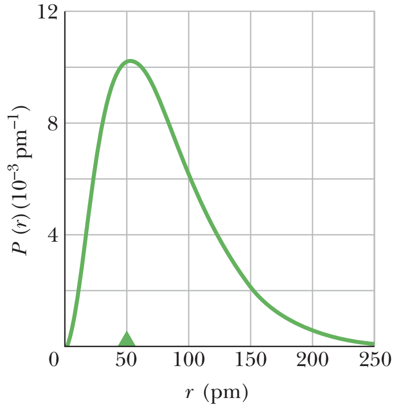


Figure 39-19 A plot of the radial probability density $P(r)$ for the ground state of the hydrogen atom. The triangular marker is located at one Bohr radius from the origin, and the origin represents the center of the atom.

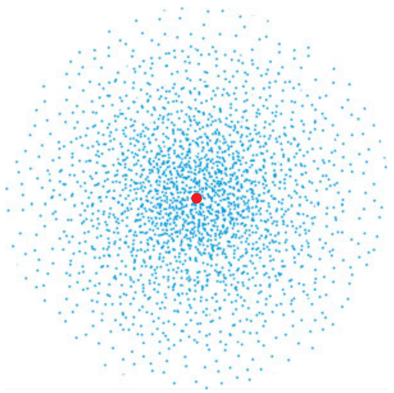


Figure 39-20 A "dot plot" showing the volume probability density $\psi^2(r)$—not the *radial* probability density $P(r)$—for the ground state of the hydrogen atom. The density of dots drops exponentially with increasing distance from the nucleus, which is represented here by a red spot.

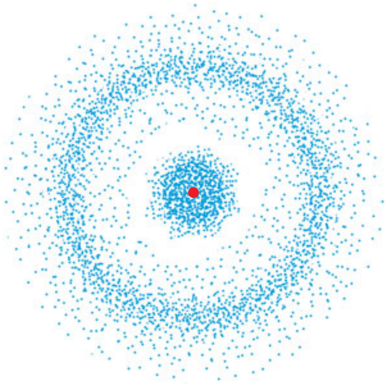


Figure 39-21 A dot plot showing the volume probability density $\psi^2(r)$ for the hydrogen atom in the quantum state with $n = 2$, $\ell = 0$, and $m_\ell = 0$. The plot has spherical symmetry about the central nucleus. The gap in the dot density pattern marks a spherical surface over which $\psi^2(r) = 0$.

Table 39-3 **Quantum Numbers for Hydrogen Atom States with $n = 2$**

n	ℓ	m_ℓ
2	0	0
2	1	+1
2	1	0
2	1	−1

The energy of the ground state, found by putting $n = 1$ in Eq. 39-34, is $E_1 = -13.60$ eV. The wave function of Eq. 39-39 results if you solve Schrödinger's equation with this value of the energy. Actually, you can find a solution of Schrödinger's equation for *any* value of the energy—say, $E = -11.6$ eV or -14.3 eV. This may suggest that the energies of the hydrogen atom states are not quantized—but we know that they are.

The puzzle was solved when physicists realized that such solutions of Schrödinger's equation are not physically acceptable because they yield increasingly large values as $r \rightarrow \infty$. These "wave functions" tell us that the electron is more likely to be found very far from the nucleus rather than closer to it, which makes no sense. We discard such solutions and accept only solutions that meet the boundary condition $\psi(r) \rightarrow 0$ as $r \rightarrow \infty$; that is, we agree to deal only with *confined* electrons. With this restriction, the solutions of Schrödinger's equation form a discrete set, with quantized energies given by Eq. 39-34.

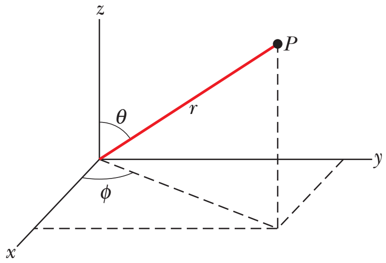


Figure 39-22 The relationship between the coordinates x, y, and z of the rectangular coordinate system and the coordinates r, θ, and ϕ of the spherical coordinate system. The latter are more appropriate for analyzing situations involving spherical symmetry, such as the hydrogen atom.

Hydrogen Atom States with $n = 2$

According to the requirements of Table 39-2, there are four states of the hydrogen atom with $n = 2$; their quantum numbers are listed in Table 39-3. Consider first the state with $n = 2$ and $\ell = m_\ell = 0$; its probability density is represented by the dot plot of Fig. 39-21. Note that this plot, like the plot for the ground state shown in Fig. 39-20, is spherically symmetric. That is, in a spherical coordinate system like that defined in Fig. 39-22, the probability density is a function of the radial coordinate r only and is independent of the angular coordinates θ and ϕ.

It turns out that all quantum states with $\ell = 0$ have spherically symmetric wave functions. This is reasonable because the quantum number ℓ is a measure of the angular momentum associated with a given state. If $\ell = 0$, the angular momentum is also zero, which requires that the probability density representing the state have no preferred axis of symmetry.

Dot plots of ψ^2 for the three states with $n = 2$ and $\ell = 1$ are shown in Fig. 39-23. The probability densities for the states with $m_\ell = +1$ and $m_\ell = -1$ are

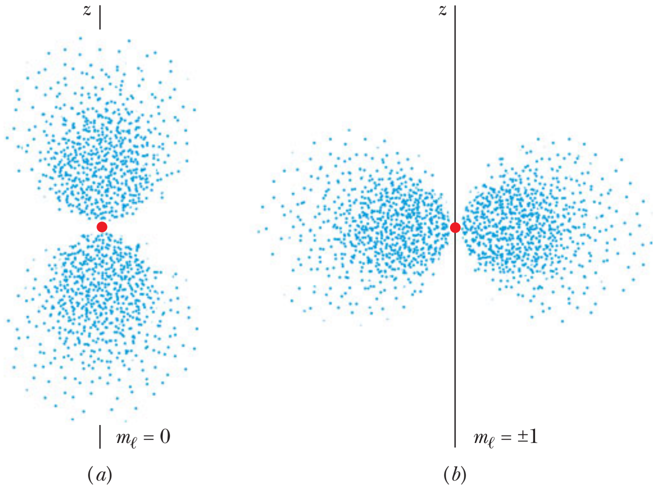


Figure 39-23 Dot plots of the volume probability density $\psi^2(r, \theta)$ for the hydrogen atom in states with $n = 2$ and $\ell = 1$. (*a*) Plot for $m_\ell = 0$. (*b*) Plot for $m_\ell = +1$ and $m_\ell = -1$. Both plots show that the probability density is symmetric about the z axis.

identical. Although these plots are symmetric about the z axis, they are *not* spherically symmetric. That is, the probability densities for these three states are functions of both r and the angular coordinate θ.

Here is a puzzle: What is there about the hydrogen atom that establishes the axis of symmetry that is so obvious in Fig. 39-23? The answer: *absolutely nothing.*

The solution to this puzzle comes about when we realize that all three states shown in Fig. 39-23 have the same energy. Recall that the energy of a state, given by Eq. 39-33, depends only on the principal quantum number n and is independent of ℓ and m_ℓ. In fact, for an *isolated* hydrogen atom there is no way to differentiate experimentally among the three states of Fig. 39-23.

If we add the volume probability densities for the three states for which $n = 2$ and $\ell = 1$, the combined probability density turns out to be spherically symmetrical, with no unique axis. One can, then, think of the electron as spending one-third of its time in each of the three states of Fig. 39-23, and one can think of the weighted sum of the three independent wave functions as defining a spherically symmetric **subshell** specified by the quantum numbers $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$. The individual states will display their separate existence only if we place the hydrogen atom in an external electric or magnetic field. The three states of the $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$ subshell will then have different energies, and the field direction will establish the necessary symmetry axis.

The $n = 2$, $\ell = 0$ state, whose volume probability density is shown in Fig. 39-21, *also* has the same energy as each of the three states of Fig. 39-23. We can view all four states whose quantum numbers are listed in Table 39-3 as forming a spherically symmetric **shell** specified by the single quantum number n. The importance of shells and subshells will become evident in Chapter 40, where we discuss atoms having more than one electron.

To round out our picture of the hydrogen atom, we display in Fig. 39-24 a dot plot of the *radial* probability density for a hydrogen atom state with a relatively high quantum number ($n = 45$) and the highest orbital quantum number that the restrictions of Table 39-2 permit ($\ell = n - 1 = 44$). The probability density forms a ring that is symmetrical about the z axis and lies very close to the xy plane. The mean radius of the ring is n^2a, where a is the Bohr radius. This mean radius is more than 2000 times the effective radius of the hydrogen atom in its ground state.

Figure 39-24 suggests the electron orbit of classical physics — it resembles the circular orbit of a planet around a star. Thus, we have another illustration of Bohr's correspondence principle—namely, that at large quantum numbers the predictions of quantum mechanics merge smoothly with those of classical physics. Imagine what a dot plot like that of Figure 39-24 would look like for *really* large values of n and ℓ—say, $n = 1000$ and $\ell = 999$.

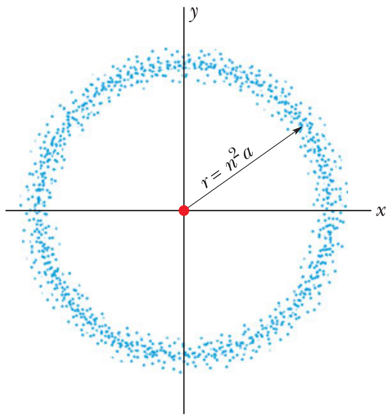


Figure 39-24 A dot plot of the radial probability density $P(r)$ for the hydrogen atom in a quantum state with a relatively large principal quantum number—namely, $n = 45$—and angular momentum quantum number $\ell = n - 1 = 44$. The dots lie close to the xy plane, the ring of dots suggesting a classical electron orbit.

Sample Problem 39.06 Radial probability density for the electron in a hydrogen atom

Show that the radial probability density for the ground state of the hydrogen atom has a maximum at $r = a$.

KEY IDEAS

(1) The radial probability density for a ground-state hydrogen atom is given by Eq. 39-44,

$$P(r) = \frac{4}{a^3} r^2 e^{-2r/a}.$$

(2) To find the maximum (or minimum) of any function, we must differentiate the function and set the result equal to zero.

Calculation: If we differentiate $P(r)$ with respect to r, using derivative 7 of Appendix E and the chain rule for differentiating products, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dP}{dr} &= \frac{4}{a^3} r^2 \left(\frac{-2}{a}\right) e^{-2r/a} + \frac{4}{a^3} 2re^{-2r/a} \\ &= \frac{8r}{a^3} e^{-2r/a} - \frac{8r^2}{a^4} e^{-2r/a} \\ &= \frac{8}{a^4} r(a - r)e^{-2r/a}.\end{aligned}$$

If we set the right side equal to zero, we obtain an equation that is true if $r = a$, so that the term $(a - r)$ in the middle of the equation is zero. In other words, dP/dr is equal to zero when $r = a$. (Note that we also have $dP/dr = 0$ at $r = 0$ and at $r = \infty$. However, these conditions correspond to a *minimum* in $P(r)$, as you can see in Fig. 39-19.)

Sample Problem 39.07 Probability of detection of the electron in a hydrogen atom

It can be shown that the probability $p(r)$ that the electron in the ground state of the hydrogen atom will be detected inside a sphere of radius r is given by

$$p(r) = 1 - e^{-2x}(1 + 2x + 2x^2),$$

in which x, a dimensionless quantity, is equal to r/a. Find r for $p(r) = 0.90$.

KEY IDEA

There is no guarantee of detecting the electron at any particular radial distance r from the center of the hydrogen atom. However, with the given function, we can calculate the probability that the electron will be detected *somewhere* within a sphere of radius r.

Calculation: We seek the radius of a sphere for which $p(r) = 0.90$. Substituting that value in the expression for $p(r)$, we have

$$0.90 = 1 - e^{-2x}(1 + 2x + 2x^2)$$

or

$$10e^{-2x}(1 + 2x + 2x^2) = 1.$$

We must find the value of x that satisfies this equality. It is not possible to solve explicitly for x, but an equation solver on a calculator yields $x = 2.66$. This means that the radius of a sphere within which the electron will be detected 90% of the time is $2.66a$. Mark this position on the horizontal axis of Fig. 39-19. The area under the curve from $r = 0$ to $r = 2.66a$ gives the probability of detection in that range and is 90% of the total area under the curve.

Sample Problem 39.08 Light emission from a hydrogen atom

(a) What is the wavelength of light for the least energetic photon emitted in the Lyman series of the hydrogen atom spectrum lines?

KEY IDEAS

(1) For any series, the transition that produces the least energetic photon is the transition between the home-base level that defines the series and the level immediately above it. (2) For the Lyman series, the home-base level is at $n = 1$ (Fig. 39-18*b*). Thus, the transition that produces the least energetic photon is the transition from the $n = 2$ level to the $n = 1$ level.

Calculations: From Eq. 39-34 the energy difference is

$$\Delta E = E_2 - E_1 = -(13.60 \text{ eV})\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{1^2}\right) = 10.20 \text{ eV}.$$

Then from Eq. 39-6 ($\Delta E = hf$), with c/λ replacing f, we have

$$\lambda = \frac{hc}{\Delta E} = \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J}\cdot\text{s})(3.00 \times 10^{8} \text{ m/s})}{(10.20 \text{ eV})(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J/eV})}$$

$$= 1.22 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m} = 122 \text{ nm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Light with this wavelength is in the ultraviolet range.

(b) What is the wavelength of the series limit for the Lyman series?

KEY IDEA

The series limit corresponds to a jump between the home-base level ($n = 1$ for the Lyman series) and the level at the limit $n = \infty$.

Calculations: Now that we have identified the values of n for the transition, we could proceed as in (a) to find the corresponding wavelength λ. Instead, let's use a more direct procedure. From Eq. 39-37, we find

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{low}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{high}}^2}\right)$$

$$= 1.097\,373 \times 10^{7} \text{ m}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{\infty^2}\right),$$

which yields

$$\lambda = 9.11 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m} = 91.1 \text{ nm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Light with this wavelength is also in the ultraviolet range.

Review & Summary

Confinement Confinement of waves (string waves, matter waves—any type of wave) leads to quantization—that is, discrete states with certain energies. States with intermediate energies are not allowed.

Electron in an Infinite Potential Well Because it is a matter wave, an electron confined to an infinite potential well can exist in only certain discrete states. If the well is one-dimensional with length L, the energies associated with these quantum states are

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-4}$$

where m is the electron mass and n is a *quantum number*. The lowest energy, said to be the *zero-point energy*, is not zero but is given by $n = 1$. The electron can change (jump) from one state to another only if its energy change is

$$\Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}, \tag{39-5}$$

where E_{high} is the higher energy and E_{low} is the lower energy. If the change is done by photon absorption or emission, the energy of the photon must be equal to the change in the electron's energy:

$$hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \Delta E = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}, \tag{39-6}$$

where frequency f and wavelength λ are associated with the photon.

The wave functions for an electron in an infinite, one-dimensional potential well with length L along an x axis are given by

$$\psi_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}x\right), \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-10}$$

where n is the quantum number and the factor $\sqrt{2/L}$ comes from normalizing the wave function. The wave function $\psi_n(x)$ does not have physical meaning, but the probability density $\psi_n^2(x)$ does have physical meaning: The product $\psi_n^2(x)\,dx$ is the probability that the electron will be detected in the interval between x and $x + dx$. If the probability density of an electron is integrated over the entire x axis, the total probability must be 1, which means that the electron will be detected somewhere along the x axis:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_n^2(x)\,dx = 1. \tag{39-14}$$

Electron in a Finite Well The wave function for an electron in a finite, one-dimensional potential well extends into the walls. Compared to the states in an infinite well of the same size, the states in a finite well have a limited number, longer de Broglie wavelengths, and lower energies.

Two-Dimensional Electron Trap The quantized energies for an electron trapped in a two-dimensional infinite potential well that forms a rectangular corral are

$$E_{nx,ny} = \frac{h^2}{8m}\left(\frac{n_x^2}{L_x^2} + \frac{n_y^2}{L_y^2}\right), \tag{39-20}$$

where n_x is a quantum number for which the electron's matter wave fits in well width L_x and n_y is a quantum number for which it fits in well width L_y. The wave functions for an electron in a two-dimensional well are given by

$$\psi_{nx,ny} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L_x}}\sin\left(\frac{n_x\pi}{L_x}x\right)\sqrt{\frac{2}{L_y}}\sin\left(\frac{n_y\pi}{L_y}y\right). \tag{39-19}$$

The Hydrogen Atom The Bohr model of the hydrogen atom successfully derived the energy levels for the atom, to explain the emission/absorption spectrum of the atom, but it is incorrect in almost every other aspect. It is a planetary model in which the electron orbits the central proton with an angular momentum L that is limited to values given by

$$L = n\hbar, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{39-23}$$

where n is a quantum number. The equation is, however, incorrect. Application of the Schrödinger equation gives the correct values of L and the quantized energies:

$$E_n = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2h^2}\frac{1}{n^2} = -\frac{13.60\text{ eV}}{n^2}, \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{39-34}$$

The atom (or, the electron in the atom) can change energy only by jumping between these allowed energies. If the jump is by photon absorption (the atom's energy increases) or photon emission (the atom's energy decreases), this restriction in energy changes leads to

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_{\text{low}}^2} - \frac{1}{n_{\text{high}}^2}\right), \tag{39-37}$$

for the wavelength of the light, where R is the Rydberg constant,

$$R = \frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2h^3c} = 1.097\,373 \times 10^7\text{ m}^{-1}. \tag{39-38}$$

The radial probability density $P(r)$ for a state of the hydrogen atom is defined so that $P(r)$ is the probability that the electron will be detected somewhere in the space between two spherical shells of radii r and $r + dr$ that are centered on the nucleus. The probability that the electron will be detected between any two given radii r_1 and r_2 is

$$(\text{probability of detection}) = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} P(r)\,dr. \tag{39-45}$$

Questions

1 Three electrons are trapped in three different one-dimensional infinite potential wells of widths (a) 50 pm, (b) 200 pm, and (c) 100 pm. Rank the electrons according to their ground-state energies, greatest first.

2 Is the ground-state energy of a proton trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well greater than, less than, or equal to that of an electron trapped in the same potential well?

3 An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well in a state with quantum number $n = 17$. How many points of (a) zero probability and (b) maximum probability does its matter wave have?

4 Figure 39-25 shows three infinite potential wells, each on an x axis. Without written calculation, determine the wave function ψ for a ground-state electron trapped in each well.

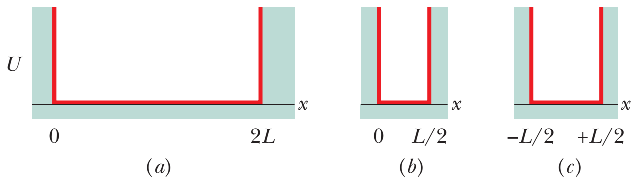


Figure 39-25 Question 4.

5 A proton and an electron are trapped in identical one-dimensional infinite potential wells; each particle is in its ground state. At the center of the wells, is the probability density for the proton greater than, less than, or equal to that of the electron?

6 If you double the width of a one-dimensional infinite potential well, (a) is the energy of the ground state of the trapped electron multiplied by $4, 2, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}$, or some other number? (b) Are the energies of the higher energy states multiplied by this factor or by some other factor, depending on their quantum number?

7 If you wanted to use the idealized trap of Fig. 39-1 to trap a positron, would you need to change (a) the geometry of the trap, (b) the electric potential of the central cylinder, or (c) the electric potentials of the two semi-infinite end cylinders? (A positron has the same mass as an electron but is positively charged.)

8 An electron is trapped in a finite potential well that is deep enough to allow the electron to exist in a state with $n = 4$. How many points of (a) zero probability and (b) maximum probability does its matter wave have within the well?

9 An electron that is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well of width L is excited from the ground state to the first excited state. Does the excitation increase, decrease, or have no effect on the probability of detecting the electron in a small length of the x axis (a) at the center of the well and (b) near one of the well walls?

10 An electron, trapped in a finite potential energy well such as that of Fig. 39-7, is in its state of lowest energy. Are (a) its de Broglie wavelength, (b) the magnitude of its momentum, and (c) its energy greater than, the same as, or less than they would be if the potential well were infinite, as in Fig. 39-2?

11 From a visual inspection of Fig. 39-8, rank the quantum numbers of the three quantum states according to the de Broglie wavelength of the electron, greatest first.

12 You want to modify the finite potential well of Fig. 39-7 to allow its trapped electron to exist in more than four quantum states. Could you do so by making the well (a) wider or narrower, (b) deeper or shallower?

13 A hydrogen atom is in the third excited state. To what state (give the quantum number n) should it jump to (a) emit light with the longest possible wavelength, (b) emit light with the shortest possible wavelength, and (c) absorb light with the longest possible wavelength?

14 Figure 39-26 indicates the lowest energy levels (in electron-volts) for five situations in which an electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well. In wells B, C, D, and E, the electron is in the ground state. We shall excite the electron in well A to the fourth excited state (at 25 eV). The electron can then de-excite to the ground state by emitting one or more photons, corresponding to one long jump or several short jumps. Which photon *emission* energies of this de-excitation match a photon *absorption* energy (from the ground state) of the other four electrons? Give the n values.

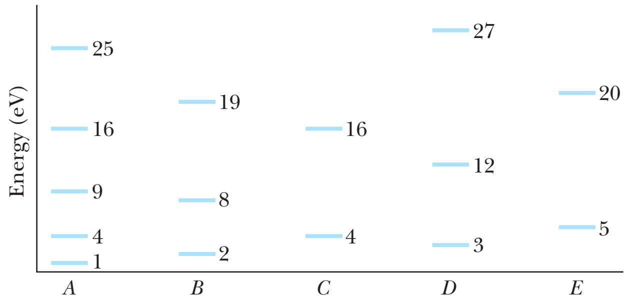


Figure 39-26 Question 14.

15 Table 39-4 lists the quantum numbers for five proposed hydrogen atom states. Which of them are not possible?

Table 39-4

	n	ℓ	m_ℓ
(a)	3	2	0
(b)	2	3	1
(c)	4	3	−4
(d)	5	5	0
(e)	5	3	−2

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign

SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual

• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of difficulty

Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com

WWW Worked-out solution is at

ILW Interactive solution is at

http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 39-1 Energies of a Trapped Electron

•1 An electron in a one-dimensional infinite potential well of length L has ground-state energy E_1. The length is changed to L' so that the new ground-state energy is $E_1' = 0.500E_1$. What is the ratio L'/L?

•2 What is the ground-state energy of (a) an electron and (b) a proton if each is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well that is 200 pm wide?

•3 The ground-state energy of an electron trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well is 2.6 eV. What will this quantity be if the width of the potential well is doubled?

•4 An electron, trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well 250 pm wide, is in its ground state. How much energy must it absorb if it is to jump up to the state with $n = 4$?

•5 What must be the width of a one-dimensional infinite potential well if an electron trapped in it in the $n = 3$ state is to have an energy of 4.7 eV?

•6 A proton is confined to a one-dimensional infinite potential well 100 pm wide. What is its ground-state energy?

•7 Consider an atomic nucleus to be equivalent to a one-dimensional infinite potential well with $L = 1.4 \times 10^{-14}$ m, a typical nuclear diameter. What would be the ground-state energy of an electron if it were trapped in such a potential well? (*Note:* Nuclei do not contain electrons.)

••8 GO An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite well and is in its first excited state. Figure 39-27 indicates the five longest wavelengths of light that the electron could absorb in transitions from this initial state via a single photon absorption: $\lambda_a = 80.78$ nm, $\lambda_b = 33.66$ nm, $\lambda_c = 19.23$ nm, $\lambda_d = 12.62$ nm, and $\lambda_e = 8.98$ nm. What is the width of the potential well?

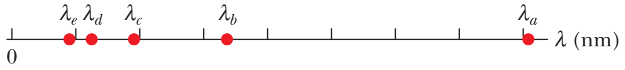


Figure 39-27 Problem 8.

••9 Suppose that an electron trapped in a one-dimensional infinite well of width 250 pm is excited from its first excited state to its third excited state. (a) What energy must be transferred to the electron for this quantum jump? The electron then de-excites back to its ground state by emitting light. In the various possible ways it can do this, what are the (b) shortest, (c) second shortest, (d) longest, and (e) second longest wavelengths that can be emitted? (f) Show the various possible ways on an energy-level diagram. If light of wavelength 29.4 nm happens to be emitted, what are the (g) longest and (h) shortest wavelength that can be emitted afterwards?

••10 An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well. For what (a) higher quantum number and (b) lower quantum number is the corresponding energy difference equal to the energy difference ΔE_{43} between the levels $n = 4$ and $n = 3$? (c) Show that no pair of adjacent levels has an energy difference equal to $2\Delta E_{43}$.

••11 An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well. For what (a) higher quantum number and (b) lower quantum number is the corresponding energy difference equal to the energy of the $n = 5$ level? (c) Show that no pair of adjacent levels has an energy difference equal to the energy of the $n = 6$ level.

••12 GO An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite well of width 250 pm and is in its ground state. What are the (a) longest, (b) second longest, and (c) third longest wavelengths of light that can excite the electron from the ground state via a single photon absorption?

Module 39-2 Wave Functions of a Trapped Electron

••13 GO A one-dimensional infinite well of length 200 pm contains an electron in its third excited state. We position an electron-detector probe of width 2.00 pm so that it is centered on a point of maximum probability density. (a) What is the probability of detection by the probe? (b) If we insert the probe as described 1000 times, how many times should we expect the electron to materialize on the end of the probe (and thus be detected)?

••14 An electron is in a certain energy state in a one-dimensional, infinite potential well from $x = 0$ to $x = L = 200$ pm. The electron's probability density is zero at $x = 0.300L$, and $x = 0.400L$; it is not zero at intermediate values of x. The electron then jumps to the next lower energy level by emitting light. What is the change in the electron's energy?

••15 SSM WWW An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well that is 100 pm wide; the electron is in its ground state. What is the probability that you can detect the electron in an interval of width $\Delta x = 5.0$ pm centered at $x =$ (a) 25 pm, (b) 50 pm, and (c) 90 pm? (*Hint:* The interval Δx is so narrow that you can take the probability density to be constant within it.)

••16 A particle is confined to the one-dimensional infinite potential well of Fig. 39-2. If the particle is in its ground state, what is its probability of detection between (a) $x = 0$ and $x = 0.25L$, (b) $x = 0.75L$ and $x = L$, and (c) $x = 0.25L$ and $x = 0.75L$?

Module 39-3 An Electron in a Finite Well

•17 An electron in the $n = 2$ state in the finite potential well of Fig. 39-7 absorbs 400 eV of energy from an external source. Using the energy-level diagram of Fig. 39-9, determine the electron's kinetic energy after this absorption, assuming that the electron moves to a position for which $x > L$.

•18 Figure 39-9 gives the energy levels for an electron trapped in a finite potential energy well 450 eV deep. If the electron is in the $n = 3$ state, what is its kinetic energy?

••19 GO Figure 39-28*a* shows the energy-level diagram for a finite, one-dimensional energy well that contains an electron. The nonquantized region begins at $E_4 = 450.0$ eV. Figure 39-28*b* gives the absorption spectrum of the electron when it is in the ground state—it can absorb at the indicated wavelengths: $\lambda_a = 14.588$ nm and $\lambda_b = 4.8437$ nm and for any wavelength less than $\lambda_c = 2.9108$ nm. What is the energy of the first excited state?

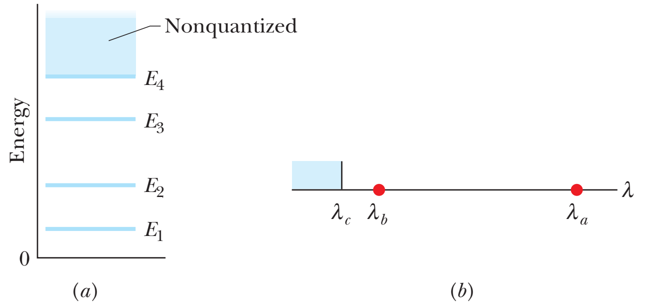


Figure 39-28 Problem 19.

••20 GO Figure 39-29*a* shows a thin tube in which a finite potential trap has been set up where $V_2 = 0$ V. An electron is shown traveling rightward toward the trap, in a region with a voltage of $V_1 =$

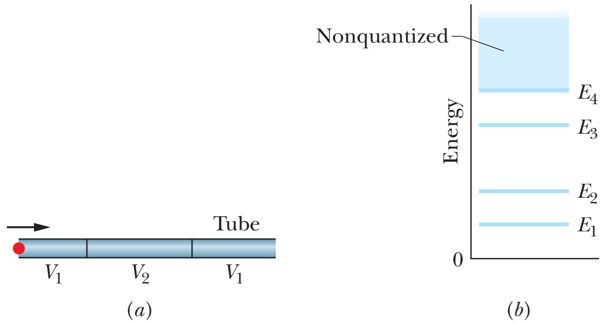


Figure 39-29 Problem 20.

-9.00 V, where it has a kinetic energy of 2.00 eV. When the electron enters the trap region, it can become trapped if it gets rid of enough energy by emitting a photon. The energy levels of the electron within the trap are $E_1 = 1.0$, $E_2 = 2.0$, and $E_3 = 4.0$ eV, and the nonquantized region begins at $E_4 = 9.0$ eV as shown in the energy-level diagram of Fig. 39-29*b*. What is the smallest energy (eV) such a photon can have?

••21 (a) Show that for the region $x > L$ in the finite potential well of Fig. 39-7, $\psi(x) = De^{2kx}$ is a solution of Schrödinger's equation in its one-dimensional form, where D is a constant and k is positive. (b) On what basis do we find this mathematically acceptable solution to be physically unacceptable?

Module 39-4 Two- and Three-Dimensional Electron Traps

•22 GO An electron is contained in the rectangular corral of Fig. 39-13, with widths $L_x = 800$ pm and $L_y = 1600$ pm. What is the electron's ground-state energy?

•23 An electron is contained in the rectangular box of Fig. 39-14, with widths $L_x = 800$ pm, $L_y = 1600$ pm, and $L_z = 390$ pm. What is the electron's ground-state energy?

••24 Figure 39-30 shows a two-dimensional, infinite-potential well lying in an xy plane that contains an electron. We probe for the electron along a line that bisects L_x and find three points at which the detection probability is maximum. Those points are separated by 2.00 nm. Then we probe along a line that bisects L_y and find five points at which the detection probability is maximum. Those points are separated by 3.00 nm. What is the energy of the electron?

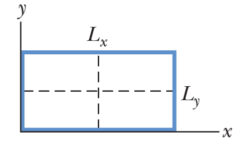


Figure 39-30 Problem 24.

••25 GO The two-dimensional, infinite corral of Fig. 39-31 is square, with edge length $L = 150$ pm. A square probe is centered at xy coordinates $(0.200L, 0.800L)$ and has an x width of 5.00 pm and a y width of 5.00 pm. What is the probability of detection if the electron is in the $E_{1,3}$ energy state?

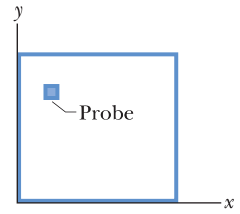


Figure 39-31 Problem 25.

••26 A rectangular corral of widths $L_x = L$ and $L_y = 2L$ holds an electron. What multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$, where m is the electron mass, gives (a) the energy of the electron's ground state, (b) the energy of its first excited state, (c) the energy of its lowest degenerate states, and (d) the difference between the energies of its second and third excited states?

••27 SSM WWW An electron (mass m) is contained in a rectangular corral of widths $L_x = L$ and $L_y = 2L$. (a) How many different frequencies of light could the electron emit or absorb if it makes a transition between a pair of the lowest five energy levels? What multiple of $h/8mL^2$ gives the (b) lowest, (c) second lowest, (d) third lowest, (e) highest, (f) second highest, and (g) third highest frequency?

••28 GO A cubical box of widths $L_x = L_y = L_z = L$ contains an electron. What multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$, where m is the electron mass, is (a) the energy of the electron's ground state, (b) the energy of its second excited state, and (c) the difference between the energies of its second and third excited states? How many degenerate states have the energy of (d) the first excited state and (e) the fifth excited state?

••29 An electron (mass m) is contained in a cubical box of widths $L_x = L_y = L_z$. (a) How many different frequencies of light could the electron emit or absorb if it makes a transition between a pair of the lowest five energy levels? What multiple of $h/8mL^2$ gives the (b) lowest, (c) second lowest, (d) third lowest, (e) highest, (f) second highest, and (g) third highest frequency?

•••30 GO An electron is in the ground state in a two-dimensional, square, infinite potential well with edge lengths L. We will probe for it in a square of area 400 pm^2 that is centered at $x = L/8$ and $y = L/8$. The probability of detection turns out to be 4.5×10^{-8}. What is edge length L?

Module 39-5 The Hydrogen Atom

•31 SSM What is the ratio of the shortest wavelength of the Balmer series to the shortest wavelength of the Lyman series?

•32 An atom (not a hydrogen atom) absorbs a photon whose associated wavelength is 375 nm and then immediately emits a photon whose associated wavelength is 580 nm. How much net energy is absorbed by the atom in this process?

•33 What are the (a) energy, (b) magnitude of the momentum, and (c) wavelength of the photon emitted when a hydrogen atom undergoes a transition from a state with $n = 3$ to a state with $n = 1$?

•34 Calculate the radial probability density $P(r)$ for the hydrogen atom in its ground state at (a) $r = 0$, (b) $r = a$, and (c) $r = 2a$, where a is the Bohr radius.

•35 For the hydrogen atom in its ground state, calculate (a) the probability density $\psi^2(r)$ and (b) the radial probability density $P(r)$ for $r = a$, where a is the Bohr radius.

•36 (a) What is the energy E of the hydrogen-atom electron whose probability density is represented by the dot plot of Fig. 39-21? (b) What minimum energy is needed to remove this electron from the atom?

•37 SSM A neutron with a kinetic energy of 6.0 eV collides with a stationary hydrogen atom in its ground state. Explain why the collision must be elastic—that is, why kinetic energy must be conserved. (*Hint:* Show that the hydrogen atom cannot be excited as a result of the collision.)

•38 An atom (not a hydrogen atom) absorbs a photon whose associated frequency is 6.2×10^{14} Hz. By what amount does the energy of the atom increase?

••39 SSM Verify that Eq. 39-44, the radial probability density for the ground state of the hydrogen atom, is normalized. That is, verify that the following is true:

$$\int_0^\infty P(r)\,dr = 1$$

••40 What are the (a) wavelength range and (b) frequency range of the Lyman series? What are the (c) wavelength range and (d) frequency range of the Balmer series?

••41 What is the probability that an electron in the ground state of the hydrogen atom will be found between two spherical shells whose radii are r and $r + \Delta r$, (a) if $r = 0.500a$ and $\Delta r = 0.010a$ and (b) if $r = 1.00a$ and $\Delta r = 0.01a$, where a is the Bohr radius? (*Hint:* Δr is small enough to permit the radial probability density to be taken to be constant between r and $r + \Delta r$.)

••42 A hydrogen atom, initially at rest in the $n = 4$ quantum state, undergoes a transition to the ground state, emitting a photon in the process. What is the speed of the recoiling hydrogen atom? (*Hint:* This is similar to the explosions of Chapter 9.)

••43 In the ground state of the hydrogen atom, the electron has a total energy of −13.6 eV. What are (a) its kinetic energy and (b) its potential energy if the electron is one Bohr radius from the central nucleus?

••44 A hydrogen atom in a state having a *binding energy* (the energy required to remove an electron) of 0.85 eV makes a transition to a state with an *excitation energy* (the difference between the energy of the state and that of the ground state) of 10.2 eV. (a) What is the energy of the photon emitted as a result of the transition? What are the (b) higher quantum number and (c) lower quantum number of the transition producing this emission?

••45 **SSM** The wave functions for the three states with the dot plots shown in Fig. 39-23, which have $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$, and $m_\ell = 0, +1$, and -1, are

$$\psi_{210}(r, \theta) = (1/4\sqrt{2\pi})(a^{-3/2})(r/a)e^{-r/2a}\cos\theta,$$
$$\psi_{21+1}(r, \theta) = (1/8\sqrt{\pi})(a^{-3/2})(r/a)e^{-r/2a}(\sin\theta)e^{+i\phi},$$
$$\psi_{21-1}(r, \theta) = (1/8\sqrt{\pi})(a^{-3/2})(r/a)e^{-r/2a}(\sin\theta)e^{-i\phi},$$

in which the subscripts on $\psi(r, \theta)$ give the values of the quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ and the angles θ and ϕ are defined in Fig. 39-22. Note that the first wave function is real but the others, which involve the imaginary number i, are complex. Find the radial probability density $P(r)$ for (a) ψ_{210} and (b) ψ_{21+1} (same as for ψ_{21-1}). (c) Show that each $P(r)$ is consistent with the corresponding dot plot in Fig. 39-23. (d) Add the radial probability densities for ψ_{210}, ψ_{21+1}, and ψ_{21-1} and then show that the sum is spherically symmetric, depending only on r.

••46 Calculate the probability that the electron in the hydrogen atom, in its ground state, will be found between spherical shells whose radii are a and $2a$, where a is the Bohr radius.

••47 For what value of the principal quantum number n would the effective radius, as shown in a probability density dot plot for the hydrogen atom, be 1.0 mm? Assume that ℓ has its maximum value of $n - 1$. (*Hint:* See Fig. 39-24.)

••48 Light of wavelength 121.6 nm is emitted by a hydrogen atom. What are the (a) higher quantum number and (b) lower quantum number of the transition producing this emission? (c) What is the name of the series that includes the transition?

••49 How much work must be done to pull apart the electron and the proton that make up the hydrogen atom if the atom is initially in (a) its ground state and (b) the state with $n = 2$?

••50 Light of wavelength 102.6 nm is emitted by a hydrogen atom. What are the (a) higher quantum number and (b) lower quantum number of the transition producing this emission? (c) What is the name of the series that includes the transition?

••51 What is the probability that in the ground state of the hydrogen atom, the electron will be found at a radius greater than the Bohr radius?

••52 A hydrogen atom is excited from its ground state to the state with $n = 4$. (a) How much energy must be absorbed by the atom? Consider the photon energies that can be emitted by the atom as it de-excites to the ground state in the several possible ways. (b) How many different energies are possible; what are the (c) highest, (d) second highest, (e) third highest, (f) lowest, (g) second lowest, and (h) third lowest energies?

••53 **SSM** **WWW** Schrödinger's equation for states of the hydrogen atom for which the orbital quantum number ℓ is zero is

$$\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{d}{dr}\left(r^2\frac{d\psi}{dr}\right) + \frac{8\pi^2 m}{h^2}[E - U(r)]\psi = 0.$$

Verify that Eq. 39-39, which describes the ground state of the hydrogen atom, is a solution of this equation.

•••54 The wave function for the hydrogen-atom quantum state represented by the dot plot shown in Fig. 39-21, which has $n = 2$ and $\ell = m_\ell = 0$, is

$$\psi_{200}(r) = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\,a^{-3/2}\left(2 - \frac{r}{a}\right)e^{-r/2a},$$

in which a is the Bohr radius and the subscript on $\psi(r)$ gives the values of the quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ. (a) Plot $\psi^2_{200}(r)$ and show that your plot is consistent with the dot plot of Fig. 39-21. (b) Show analytically that $\psi^2_{200}(r)$ has a maximum at $r = 4a$. (c) Find the radial probability density $P_{200}(r)$ for this state. (d) Show that

$$\int_0^\infty P_{200}(r)\,dr = 1$$

and thus that the expression above for the wave function $\psi_{200}(r)$ has been properly normalized.

•••55 The radial probability density for the ground state of the hydrogen atom is a maximum when $r = a$, where a is the Bohr radius. Show that the *average* value of r, defined as

$$r_{\text{avg}} = \int P(r)\,r\,dr,$$

has the value $1.5a$. In this expression for r_{avg}, each value of $P(r)$ is weighted with the value of r at which it occurs. Note that the average value of r is greater than the value of r for which $P(r)$ is a maximum.

Additional Problems

56 Let ΔE_{adj} be the energy difference between two adjacent energy levels for an electron trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well. Let E be the energy of either of the two levels. (a) Show that the ratio $\Delta E_{\text{adj}}/E$ approaches the value $2/n$ at large values of the quantum number n. As $n \to \infty$, does (b) ΔE_{adj}, (c) E, or (d) $\Delta E_{\text{adj}}/E$ approach zero? (e) What do these results mean in terms of the correspondence principle?

57 An electron is trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well. Show that the energy difference ΔE between its quantum levels n and $n + 2$ is $(h^2/2mL^2)(n + 1)$.

58 As Fig. 39-8 suggests, the probability density for an electron in the region $0 < x < L$ for the finite potential well of Fig. 39-7 is sinusoidal, being given by $\psi^2(x) = B\sin^2 kx$, in which B is a constant. (a) Show that the wave function $\psi(x)$ that may be found from this equation is a solution of Schrödinger's equation in its one-dimensional form. (b) Find an expression for k that makes this true.

59 **SSM** As Fig. 39-8 suggests, the probability density for the region $x > L$ in the finite potential well of Fig. 39-7 drops off exponentially according to $\psi^2(x) = Ce^{-2kx}$, where C is a constant. (a) Show that the wave function $\psi(x)$ that may be found from this equation is a solution of Schrödinger's equation in its one-dimensional form. (b) Find an expression for k for this to be true.

60 An electron is confined to a narrow evacuated tube of length 3.0 m; the tube functions as a one-dimensional infinite potential well. (a) What is the energy difference between the electron's ground state and its first excited state? (b) At what quantum number n would the energy difference between adjacent energy levels be 1.0 eV—which is measurable, unlike the result of (a)? At that quantum number, (c) what multiple of the electron's rest energy would give the electron's total energy and (d) would the electron be relativistic?

61 (a) Show that the terms in Schrödinger's equation (Eq. 39-18) have the same dimensions. (b) What is the common SI unit for each of these terms?

62 (a) What is the wavelength of light for the least energetic photon emitted in the Balmer series of the hydrogen atom spectrum lines? (b) What is the wavelength of the series limit?

63 (a) For a given value of the principal quantum number n for a hydrogen atom, how many values of the orbital quantum number ℓ are possible? (b) For a given value of ℓ, how many values of the orbital magnetic quantum number m_ℓ are possible? (c) For a given value of n, how many values of m_ℓ are possible?

64 Verify that the combined value of the constants appearing in Eq. 39-33 is 13.6 eV.

65 A diatomic gas molecule consists of two atoms of mass m separated by a fixed distance d rotating about an axis as indicated in Fig. 39-32. Assuming that its angular momentum is quantized as in the Bohr model for the hydrogen atom, find (a) the possible angular velocities and (b) the possible quantized rotational energies.

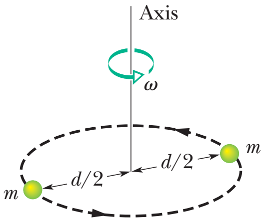


Figure 39-32 Problem 65.

66 In atoms there is a finite, though very small, probability that, at some instant, an orbital electron will actually be found inside the nucleus. In fact, some unstable nuclei use this occasional appearance of the electron to decay by *electron capture*. Assuming that the proton itself is a sphere of radius 1.1×10^{-15} m and that the wave function of the hydrogen atom's electron holds all the way to the proton's center, use the ground-state wave function to calculate the probability that the hydrogen atom's electron is inside its nucleus.

67 (a) What is the separation in energy between the lowest two energy levels for a container 20 cm on a side containing argon atoms? Assume, for simplicity, that the argon atoms are trapped in a one-dimensional well 20 cm wide. The molar mass of argon is 39.9 g/mol. (b) At 300 K, to the nearest power of ten, what is the ratio of the thermal energy of the atoms to this energy separation? (c) At what temperature does the thermal energy equal the energy separation?

68 A muon of charge $-e$ and mass $m = 207m_e$ (where m_e is the mass of an electron) orbits the nucleus of a singly ionized helium atom (He$^+$). Assuming that the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom can be applied to this muon–helium system, verify that the energy levels of the system are given by

$$E = -\frac{11.3\ \text{keV}}{n^2}.$$

69 From the energy-level diagram for hydrogen, explain the observation that the frequency of the second Lyman-series line is the sum of the frequencies of the first Lyman-series line and the first Balmer-series line. This is an example of the empirically discovered *Ritz combination principle*. Use the diagram to find some other valid combinations.

70 A hydrogen atom can be considered as having a central pointlike proton of positive charge e and an electron of negative charge $-e$ that is distributed about the proton according to the volume charge density $\rho = A\exp(-2r/a_0)$. Here A is a constant, $a_0 = 0.53 \times 10^{-10}$ m, and r is the distance from the center of the atom. (a) Using the fact that the hydrogen is electrically neutral, find A. Then find the (b) magnitude and (c) direction of the atom's electric field at a_0.

71 An old model of a hydrogen atom has the charge $+e$ of the proton uniformly distributed over a sphere of radius a_0, with the electron of charge $-e$ and mass m at its center. (a) What would then be the force on the electron if it were displaced from the center by a distance $r \leq a_0$? (b) What would be the angular frequency of oscillation of the electron about the center of the atom once the electron was released?

72 In a simple model of a hydrogen atom, the single electron orbits the single proton (the nucleus) in a circular path. Calculate (a) the electric potential set up by the proton at the orbital radius of 52.9 pm, (b) the electric potential energy of the atom, and (c) the kinetic energy of the electron. (d) How much energy is required to ionize the atom (that is, to remove the electron to an infinite distance with no kinetic energy)? Give the energies in electron-volts.

73 Consider a conduction electron in a cubical crystal of a conducting material. Such an electron is free to move throughout the volume of the crystal but cannot escape to the outside. It is trapped in a three-dimensional infinite well. The electron can move in three dimensions, so that its total energy is given by

$$E = \frac{h^2}{8L^2m}(n_1^2 + n_2^2 + n_3^2),$$

in which n_1, n_2, and n_3 are positive integer values. Calculate the energies of the lowest five distinct states for a conduction electron moving in a cubical crystal of edge length $L = 0.25\ \mu$m.

CHAPTER 40

All About Atoms

40-1 PROPERTIES OF ATOMS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.01 Discuss the pattern that is seen in a plot of ionization energies versus atomic number Z.

40.02 Identify that atoms have angular momentum and magnetism.

40.03 Explain the Einstein–de Haas experiment.

40.04 Identify the five quantum numbers of an electron in an atom and the allowed values of each.

40.05 Determine the number of electron states allowed in a given shell and subshell.

40.06 Identify that an electron in an atom has an orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ and an orbital magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$.

40.07 Calculate magnitudes for orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ and orbital magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$ in terms of the orbital quantum number ℓ.

40.08 Apply the relationship between orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ and orbital magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$.

40.09 Identify that $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$ cannot be observed (measured) but a component on a measurement axis (usually called the z axis) can.

40.10 Calculate the z components L_z of an orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ using the orbital magnetic quantum number m_ℓ.

40.11 Calculate the z components $\mu_{\text{orb},z}$ of an orbital magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$ using the orbital magnetic quantum number m_ℓ and the Bohr magneton μ_B.

40.12 For a given orbital state or spin state, calculate the semiclassical angle θ.

40.13 Identify that a spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ (usually simply called spin) and a spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$ are intrinsic properties of electrons (and also protons and neutrons).

40.14 Calculate magnitudes for spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ and spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$ in terms of the spin quantum number s.

40.15 Apply the relationship between the spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ and the spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$.

40.16 Identify that $\vec{S}$ and $\vec{\mu}_s$ cannot be observed (measured) but a component on a measurement axis can.

40.17 Calculate the z components S_z of the spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ using the spin magnetic quantum number m_s.

40.18 Calculate the z components $\mu_{s,z}$ of the spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$ using the spin magnetic quantum number m_s and the Bohr magneton μ_B.

40.19 Identify the effective magnetic dipole moment of an atom.

Key Ideas

- Atoms have quantized energies and can make quantum jumps between them. If a jump between a higher energy and a lower energy involves the emission or absorption of a photon, the frequency associated with the light is given by

$$hf = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}.$$

- States with the same value of quantum number n form a shell.
- States with the same values of quantum numbers n and ℓ form a subshell.
- The magnitude of the orbital angular momentum of an electron trapped in an atom has quantized values given by

$$L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } \ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, (n-1),$$

where $\hbar$ is $h/2\pi$, ℓ is the orbital quantum number, and n is the electron's principal quantum number.

- The component L_z of the orbital angular momentum on a z axis is quantized and given by

$$L_z = m_\ell \hbar, \quad \text{for } m_\ell = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm \ell,$$

where m_ℓ is the orbital magnetic quantum number.

- The magnitude μ_{orb} of the orbital magnetic moment of the electron is quantized with the values given by

$$\mu_{\text{orb}} = \frac{e}{2m}\sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}\,\hbar,$$

where m is the electron mass.

- The component $\mu_{\text{orb},z}$ on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$\mu_{\text{orb},z} = -\frac{e}{2m} m_\ell \hbar = -m_\ell \mu_B,$$

where μ_B is the Bohr magneton:

$$\mu_B = \frac{eh}{4\pi m} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m} = 9.274 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{J/T}.$$

- Every electron, whether trapped or free, has an intrinsic spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ with a magnitude that is quantized as

$$S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } s = \tfrac{1}{2},$$

where s is the spin quantum number. An electron is said to be a spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particle.

- The component S_z on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$S_z = m_s\hbar, \quad \text{for } m_s = \pm s = \pm\tfrac{1}{2},$$

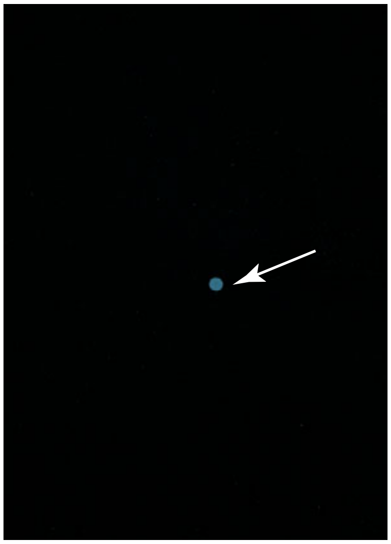
where m_s is the spin magnetic quantum number.

- Every electron, whether trapped or free, has an intrinsic spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$ with a magnitude that is quantized as

$$\mu_s = \frac{e}{m}\sqrt{s(s+1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } s = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

- The component $\mu_{s,z}$ on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$\mu_{s,z} = -2m_s\mu_B, \quad \text{for } m_s = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}.$$



Courtesy Warren Nagourney

Figure 40-1 The blue dot is a photograph of the light emitted from a single barium ion held for a long time in a trap at the University of Washington. Special techniques caused the ion to emit light over and over again as it underwent transitions between the same pair of energy levels. The dot represents the cumulative emission of many photons.

What Is Physics?

In this chapter we continue with a primary goal of physics—discovering and understanding the properties of atoms. About 100 years ago, researchers struggled to find experiments that would prove the existence of atoms. Now we take their existence for granted and even have photographs (scanning tunneling microscope images) of atoms. We can drag them around on surfaces, such as to make the quantum corral shown in the photograph of Fig. 39-12. We can even hold an individual atom indefinitely in a trap (Fig. 40-1) so as to study its properties when it is completely isolated from other atoms.

Some Properties of Atoms

You may think the details of atomic physics are remote from your daily life. However, consider how the following properties of atoms—so basic that we rarely think about them—affect the way we live in our world.

Atoms are stable. Essentially all the atoms that form our tangible world have existed without change for billions of years. What would the world be like if atoms continually changed into other forms, perhaps every few weeks or every few years?

Atoms combine with each other. They stick together to form stable molecules and stack up to form rigid solids. An atom is mostly empty space, but you can stand on a floor—made up of atoms—without falling through it.

These basic properties of atoms can be explained by quantum physics, as can the three less apparent properties that follow.

Atoms Are Put Together Systematically

Figure 40-2 shows an example of a repetitive property of the elements as a function of their position in the periodic table (Appendix G). The figure is a plot

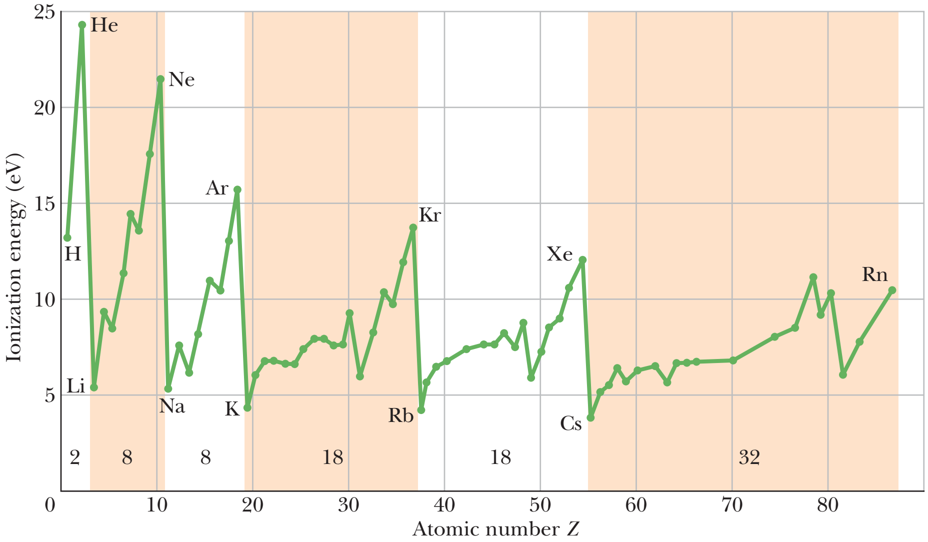


Figure 40-2 A plot of the ionization energies of the elements as a function of atomic number, showing the periodic repetition of properties through the six complete horizontal periods of the periodic table. The number of elements in each of these periods is indicated.

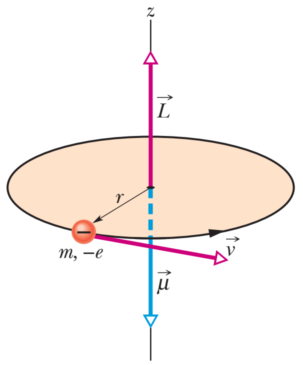


Figure 40-3 A classical model showing a particle of mass m and charge $-e$ moving with speed v in a circle of radius r. The moving particle has an angular momentum $\vec{L}$ given by $\vec{r} \times \vec{p}$, where $\vec{p}$ is its linear momentum $m\vec{v}$. The particle's motion is equivalent to a current loop that has an associated magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}$ that is directed opposite $\vec{L}$.

of the **ionization energy** of the elements; the energy required to remove the most loosely bound electron from a neutral atom is plotted as a function of the position in the periodic table of the element to which the atom belongs. The remarkable similarities in the chemical and physical properties of the elements in each vertical column of the periodic table are evidence enough that the atoms are constructed according to systematic rules.

The elements are arranged in the periodic table in six complete horizontal **periods** (and a seventh incomplete period): except for the first, each period starts at the left with a highly reactive alkali metal (lithium, sodium, potassium, and so on) and ends at the right with a chemically inert noble gas (neon, argon, krypton, and so on). Quantum physics accounts for the chemical properties of these elements. The numbers of elements in the six periods are

$$2, 8, 8, 18, 18, \text{ and } 32.$$

Quantum physics predicts these numbers.

Atoms Emit and Absorb Light

We have already seen that atoms can exist only in discrete quantum states, each state having a certain energy. An atom can make a transition from one state to another by emitting light (to jump to a lower energy level E_{low}) or by absorbing light (to jump to a higher energy level E_{high}). As we first discussed in Module 39-1, the light is emitted or absorbed as a photon with energy

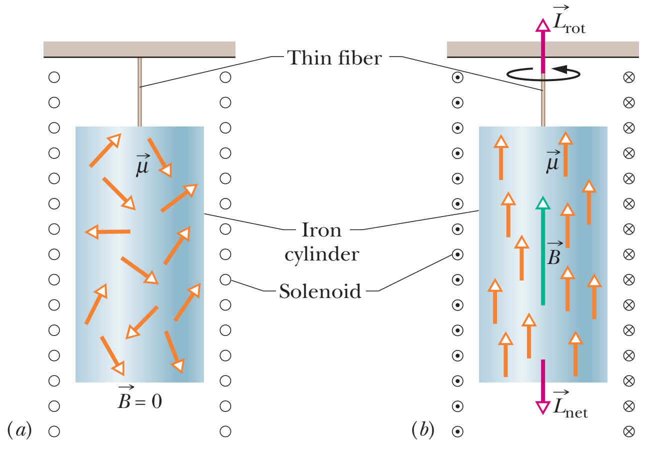
$$hf = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}. \qquad (40\text{-}1)$$

Thus, the problem of finding the frequencies of light emitted or absorbed by an atom reduces to the problem of finding the energies of the quantum states of that atom. Quantum physics allows us—in principle at least—to calculate these energies.

Atoms Have Angular Momentum and Magnetism

Figure 40-3 shows a negatively charged particle moving in a circular orbit around a fixed center. As we discussed in Module 32-5, the orbiting particle has both an angular momentum $\vec{L}$ and (because its path is equivalent to a tiny current loop) a magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$. As Fig. 40-3 shows, vectors $\vec{L}$ and $\vec{\mu}$ are both perpendicular to the plane of the orbit but, because the charge is negative, they point in opposite directions.

The model of Fig. 40-3 is strictly classical and does not accurately represent an electron in an atom. In quantum physics, the rigid orbit model has been replaced by the probability density model, best visualized as a dot plot. In quantum physics, however, it is still true that in general, each quantum state of an electron in an atom involves an angular momentum $\vec{L}$ and a magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ that have opposite directions (those vector quantities are said to be *coupled*).



Aligning the magnetic moment vectors rotates the cylinder.

Figure 40-4 The Einstein–de Haas experimental setup. (*a*) Initially, the magnetic field in the iron cylinder is zero and the magnetic dipole moment vectors $\vec{\mu}$ of its atoms are randomly oriented. (*b*) When a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is set up along the cylinder's axis, the magnetic dipole moment vectors line up parallel to $\vec{B}$ and the cylinder begins to rotate.

The Einstein–de Haas Experiment

In 1915, well before the discovery of quantum physics, Albert Einstein and Dutch physicist W. J. de Haas carried out a clever experiment designed to show that the angular momentum and magnetic moment of individual atoms are coupled.

Einstein and de Haas suspended an iron cylinder from a thin fiber, as shown in Fig. 40-4. A solenoid was placed around the cylinder but not touching it. Initially, the magnetic dipole moments $\vec{\mu}$ of the atoms of the cylinder point in random directions, and so their external magnetic effects cancel (Fig. 40-4*a*). However, when a current is switched on in the solenoid (Fig. 40-4*b*) so that a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is set up parallel to the long axis of the cylinder, the magnetic dipole moments of the atoms of the cylinder reorient themselves, lining up with that field. If the angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of each atom is coupled to its magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}$, then this alignment of the atomic magnetic moments must cause an alignment of the atomic angular momenta opposite the magnetic field.

No external torques initially act on the cylinder; thus, its angular momentum must remain at its initial zero value. However, when $\vec{B}$ is turned on and the atomic angular momenta line up antiparallel to $\vec{B}$, they tend to give a net angular momentum $\vec{L}_{\text{net}}$ to the cylinder as a whole (directed downward in Fig. 40-4*b*). To maintain zero angular momentum, the cylinder begins to rotate around its central axis to produce an angular momentum $\vec{L}_{\text{rot}}$ in the opposite direction (upward in Fig. 40-4*b*).

The twisting of the fiber quickly produces a torque that momentarily stops the cylinder's rotation and then rotates the cylinder in the opposite direction as the twisting is undone. Thereafter, the fiber will twist and untwist as the cylinder oscillates about its initial orientation in angular simple harmonic motion.

Observation of the cylinder's rotation verified that the angular momentum and the magnetic dipole moment of an atom are coupled in opposite directions. Moreover, it dramatically demonstrated that the angular momenta associated with quantum states of atoms can result in *visible* rotation of an object of everyday size.

Angular Momentum, Magnetic Dipole Moments

Every quantum state of an electron in an atom has an associated orbital angular momentum and orbital magnetic dipole moment. Every electron, whether trapped in an atom or free, has a spin angular momentum and a spin magnetic dipole moment that are as intrinsic as its mass and charge. Let's next discuss these various quantities.

Orbital Angular Momentum

Classically, a moving particle has an angular momentum $\vec{L}$ with respect to any given reference point. In Chapter 11 we wrote this as the cross product

Table 40-1 Electron States for an Atom

Quantum Number	Symbol	Allowed Values	Related to
Principal	n	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$	Distance from the nucleus
Orbital	ℓ	$0, 1, 2, \ldots, (n-1)$	Orbital angular momentum
Orbital magnetic	m_ℓ	$0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm\ell$	Orbital angular momentum (z component)
Spin	s	$\frac{1}{2}$	Spin angular momentum
Spin magnetic	m_s	$\pm\frac{1}{2}$	Spin angular momentum (z component)

$\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$, where $\vec{r}$ is a position vector extending to the particle from the reference point and $\vec{p}$ is the particle's linear momentum ($m\vec{v}$). Although an electron in an atom is not a classical moving particle, it too has angular momentum given by $\vec{L} = \vec{r} \times \vec{p}$, with the reference point being the nucleus. However, unlike the classical particle, the electron's *orbital angular momentum* $\vec{L}$ is quantized. For the electron in a hydrogen atom, we can find the quantized (allowed) values by solving Schrödinger's equation. For that situation and any other, we can also find the quantized values by using the appropriate mathematics for a cross product in a quantum situation. (The mathematics is linear algebra, which you may have on your schedule of classes.) Either way we find that the allowed magnitudes of $\vec{L}$ are given by

$$L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } \ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, (n-1), \tag{40-2}$$

where $\hbar$ is $h/2\pi$, ℓ is the orbital quantum number (introduced in Table 39-2, which is reproduced in Table 40-1), and n is the electron's principal quantum number.

The electron can have a definite value of L as given by one of the allowed states in Eq. 40-2, but it cannot have a definite direction for the vector $\vec{L}$. However, we can measure (detect) definite values of a component L_z along a chosen measurement axis (usually taken to be a z axis) as given by

$$L_z = m_\ell \hbar, \quad \text{for } m_\ell = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm\ell, \tag{40-3}$$

where m_ℓ is the orbital magnetic quantum number (Table 40-1). However, if the electron has a definite value of L_z, it does not have definite values for L_x and L_y. We cannot get around this uncertainty by, say, first measuring L_z (getting a definite value) and then measuring L_x (getting a definite value) because the second measurement can change L_z and thus we no longer have a definite value for it. Also, we can never find $\vec{L}$ aligned with an axis because then it would have a definite direction and definite components along the other axes (namely, zero components).

A common way to depict the allowed values for L_z is shown in Fig. 40-5 for the situation in which $\ell = 2$. However, do not take the figure literally because it implies (incorrectly) that $\vec{L}$ has the definite direction of the drawn vector. Still, it allows us to relate the five possible z components to the full vector (which has a magnitude of $\hbar\sqrt{6}$) and to define the *semi-classical angle* θ given by

$$\cos\theta = \frac{L_z}{L}. \tag{40-4}$$

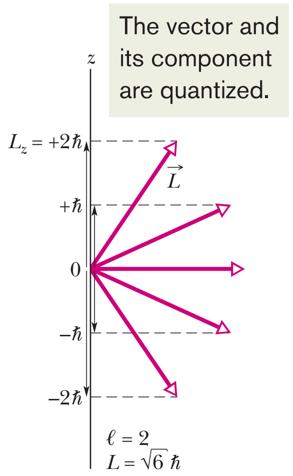

The vector and its component are quantized.

Figure 40-5 The allowed values of L_z for an electron in a quantum state with $\ell = 2$. For every orbital angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ in the figure, there is a vector pointing in the opposite direction, representing the magnitude and direction of the orbital magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$.

Orbital Magnetic Dipole Moment

Classically, an orbiting charged particle sets up the magnetic field of a magnetic dipole, as we discussed in Module 32-5. From Eq. 32-28, the dipole moment is related to the angular momentum of the classical particle by

$$\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}} = -\frac{e}{2m}\vec{L}, \tag{40-5}$$

where m is the mass of the particle, here an electron. The minus sign means that the two vectors in Eq. 40-5 are in opposite directions, which is due to the fact that an electron is negatively charged.

An electron in an atom also has an orbital magnetic dipole moment given by Eq. 40-5, but $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$ is quantized. We find allowed values of the magnitude by substituting from Eq. 40-2:

$$\mu_{\text{orb}} = \frac{e}{2m}\sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar. \tag{40-6}$$

As with the angular momentum, $\vec{\mu}_{\text{orb}}$ can have a definite magnitude but does not have a definite direction. The best we can do is to measure its component on a z axis, and that component can have a definite value as given by

$$\mu_{\text{orb},z} = -m_\ell \frac{e\hbar}{2m} = -m_\ell \mu_{\text{B}}, \tag{40-7}$$

where μ_{B} is the *Bohr magneton*:

$$\mu_{\text{B}} = \frac{eh}{4\pi m} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m} = 9.274 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{J/T} \qquad \text{(Bohr magneton).} \tag{40-8}$$

If the electron has a definite value of $\mu_{\text{orb},z}$, it cannot have definite values of $\mu_{\text{orb},x}$ and $\mu_{\text{orb},y}$.

Spin Angular Momentum

Every electron, whether in an atom or free, has an intrinsic angular momentum that has no classical counterpart (it is *not* of the form $\vec{r} \times \vec{p}$). It is called *spin angular momentum* $\vec{S}$ (or simply *spin*), but the name is misleading because the electron is not spinning. Indeed there is nothing at all rotating in an electron, and yet the electron has angular momentum. The magnitude of $\vec{S}$ is quantized, with values restricted to

$$S = \sqrt{s(s + 1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } s = \tfrac{1}{2}, \tag{40-9}$$

where s is the *spin quantum number*. For every electron, $s = \frac{1}{2}$ and the electron is said to be a spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particle. (Protons and neutrons are also spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particles.) The language here can be confusing, because both $\vec{S}$ and s are often referred to as spin.

As with the angular momentum associated with motion, this intrinsic angular momentum can have a definite magnitude but does not have a definite direction. The best we can do is to measure its component on a z axis, and that component can have only the definite values given by

$$S_z = m_s\hbar, \quad \text{for } m_s = \pm s = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{40-10}$$

Here m_s is the *spin magnetic quantum number*, which can have only two values: $m_s = +s = +\frac{1}{2}$ (the electron is said to be *spin up*) and $m_s = -s = -\frac{1}{2}$ (the electron is said to be *spin down*). Also, if S_z has a definite value, then S_x and S_y do not. Figure 40-6 is another figure that you should not take literally but it serves to show the possible values of S_z.

The existence of electron spin was postulated on experimental evidence by two Dutch graduate students, George Uhlenbeck and Samuel Goudsmit, from their studies of atomic spectra. The theoretical basis for spin was provided a few years later by British physicist P. A. M. Dirac, who developed a relativistic quantum theory of the electron.

We have now seen the full set of quantum numbers for an electron, as listed in Table 40-1. If an electron is free, it has only its intrinsic quantum numbers s and m_s. If it is trapped in an atom, it has also has the quantum numbers n, ℓ, and m_ℓ.

Spin Magnetic Dipole Moment

As with the orbital angular momentum, a magnetic dipole moment is associated with the spin angular momentum:

$$\vec{\mu}_s = -\frac{e}{m}\vec{S}, \tag{40-11}$$

where the minus sign means that the two vectors are in opposite directions, which is due to the fact that an electron is negatively charged. This $\vec{\mu}_s$ is an intrinsic property of every electron. The vector $\vec{\mu}_s$ does not have a definite direction but it can have a definite magnitude, given by

$$\mu_s = \frac{e}{m}\sqrt{s(s+1)}\,\hbar. \tag{40-12}$$

The vector can also have a definite component on a z axis, given by

$$\mu_{s,z} = -2m_s\mu_B, \tag{40-13}$$

but that means that it cannot have a definite value of $\mu_{s,x}$ or $\mu_{s,y}$. Figure 40-6 shows the possible values of $\mu_{s,z}$. In the next module we shall discuss the early experimental evidence for the quantized nature in Eq. 40-13.

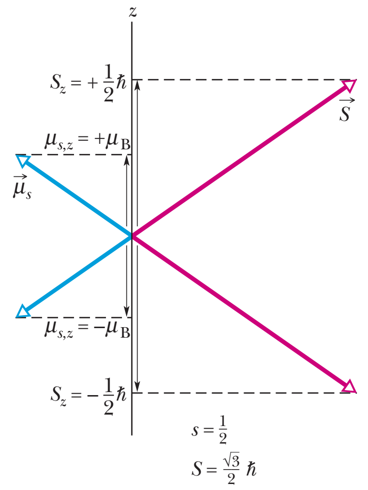


Figure 40-6 The allowed values of S_z and μ_z for an electron.

Shells and Subshells

As we discussed in Module 39-5, all states with the same n form a *shell*, and all states with the same value of n and ℓ form a *subshell*. As displayed in Table 40-1, for a given ℓ, there are $2\ell + 1$ possible values of quantum number m_ℓ and, for each m_ℓ, there are two possible values for the quantum number m_s (spin up and spin down). Thus, there are $2(2\ell + 1)$ states in a subshell. If we count all the states throughout a given shell with quantum number n, we find that the total number in the shell is $2n^2$.

Orbital and Spin Angular Momenta Combined

For an atom containing more than one electron, we define a total angular momentum $\vec{J}$, which is the vector sum of the angular momenta of the individual electrons—both their orbital and their spin angular momenta. Each element in the periodic table is defined by the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom of the element. This number of protons is defined as being the *atomic number* (or *charge number*) Z of the element. Because an electrically neutral atom contains equal numbers of protons and electrons, Z is also the number of electrons in the neutral atom, and we use this fact to indicate a $\vec{J}$ value for a neutral atom:

$$\vec{J} = (\vec{L}_1 + \vec{L}_2 + \vec{L}_3 + \cdots + \vec{L}_Z) + (\vec{S}_1 + \vec{S}_2 + \vec{S}_3 + \cdots + \vec{S}_Z). \tag{40-14}$$

Similarly, the total magnetic dipole moment of a multielectron atom is the vector sum of the magnetic dipole moments (both orbital and spin) of its individual electrons. However, because of the factor 2 in Eq. 40-13, the resultant magnetic dipole moment for the atom does not have the direction of vector $-\vec{J}$; instead, it makes a certain angle with that vector. The **effective magnetic dipole moment** $\vec{\mu}_{\text{eff}}$ for the atom is the component of the vector sum of the individual magnetic dipole moments in the direction of $-\vec{J}$ (Fig. 40-7). In typical atoms the orbital angular momenta and the spin angular momenta of most of the electrons sum vectorially to zero. Then $\vec{J}$ and $\vec{\mu}_{\text{eff}}$ of those atoms are due to a relatively small number of electrons, often only a single valence electron.

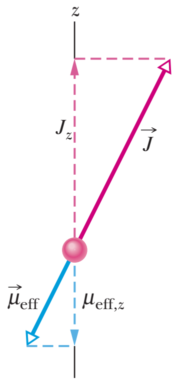


Figure 40-7 A classical model showing the total angular momentum vector $\vec{J}$ and the effective magnetic moment vector $\vec{\mu}_{\text{eff}}$.

Checkpoint 1

An electron is in a quantum state for which the magnitude of the electron's orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ is $2\sqrt{3}\hbar$. How many projections of the electron's orbital magnetic dipole moment on a z axis are allowed?

40-2 THE STERN-GERLACH EXPERIMENT

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.20 Sketch the Stern–Gerlach experiment and explain the type of atom required, the anticipated result, the actual result, and the importance of the experiment.

40.21 Apply the relationship between the magnetic field gradient and the force on an atom in a Stern–Gerlach experiment.

Key Ideas

- The Stern–Gerlach experiment demonstrated that the magnetic moment of silver atoms is quantized, experimental proof that magnetic moments at the atomic level are quantized.
- An atom with a magnetic dipole moment experiences a force in a nonuniform magnetic field. If the field changes at the rate of dB/dz along a z axis, then the force is along the z axis and its magnitude is related to the component μ_z of the dipole moment:

$$F_z = \mu_z \frac{dB}{dz}.$$

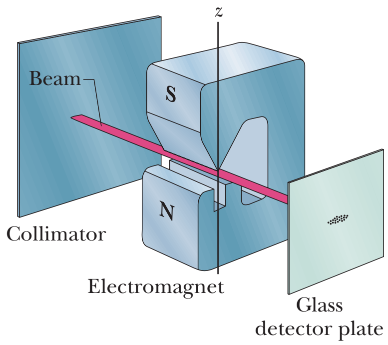


Figure 40-8 Apparatus used by Stern and Gerlach.

The Stern-Gerlach Experiment

In 1922, Otto Stern and Walther Gerlach at the University of Hamburg in Germany showed experimentally that the magnetic moment of silver atoms is quantized. In the Stern–Gerlach experiment, as it is now known, silver is vaporized in an oven, and some of the atoms in that vapor escape through a narrow slit in the oven wall and pass into an evacuated tube. Some of those escaping atoms then pass through a second narrow slit, to form a narrow beam of atoms (Fig. 40-8). (The atoms are said to be *collimated*—made into a beam—and the second slit is called a *collimator.*) The beam passes between the poles of an electromagnet and then lands on a glass detector plate where it forms a silver deposit.

When the electromagnet is off, the silver deposit is a narrow spot. However, when the electromagnet is turned on, the silver deposit should be spread vertically. The reason is that silver atoms are magnetic dipoles, and so vertical magnetic forces act on them as they pass through the vertical magnetic field of the electromagnet; these forces deflect them slightly up or down. Thus, by analyzing the silver deposit on the plate, we can determine what deflections the atoms underwent in the magnetic field. When Stern and Gerlach analyzed the pattern of silver on their detector plate, they found a surprise. However, before we discuss that surprise and its quantum implications, let us discuss the magnetic deflecting force acting on the silver atoms.

The Magnetic Deflecting Force on a Silver Atom

We have not previously discussed the type of magnetic force that deflects the silver atoms in a Stern–Gerlach experiment. It is *not* the magnetic deflecting force that acts on a moving charged particle, as given by Eq. 28-2 ($\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$). The reason is simple: A silver atom is electrically neutral (its net charge q is zero), and thus this type of magnetic force is also zero.

The type of magnetic force we seek is due to an interaction between the magnetic field $\vec{B}$ of the electromagnet and the magnetic dipole of the individual silver atom. We can derive an expression for the force in this interaction by starting with the energy U of the dipole in the magnetic field. Equation 28-38 tells us that

$$U = -\vec{\mu} \cdot \vec{B}, \tag{40-15}$$

where $\vec{\mu}$ is the magnetic dipole moment of a silver atom. In Fig. 40-8, the positive direction of the z axis and the direction of $\vec{B}$ are vertically upward. Thus, we can write Eq. 40-15 in terms of the component μ_z of the atom's magnetic dipole moment along the direction of $\vec{B}$:

$$U = -\mu_z B. \tag{40-16}$$

Then, using Eq. 8-22 ($F = -dU/dx$) for the z axis shown in Fig. 40-8, we obtain

$$F_z = -\frac{dU}{dz} = \mu_z \frac{dB}{dz}. \tag{40-17}$$

This is what we sought—an equation for the magnetic force that deflects a silver atom as the atom passes through a magnetic field.

The term dB/dz in Eq. 40-17 is the *gradient* of the magnetic field along the z axis. If the magnetic field does not change along the z axis (as in a uniform magnetic field or no magnetic field), then $dB/dz = 0$ and a silver atom is not deflected as it moves between the magnet's poles. In the Stern–Gerlach experiment, the poles are designed to maximize the gradient dB/dz, so as to vertically deflect the silver atoms passing between the poles as much as possible, so that their deflections show up in the deposit on the glass plate.

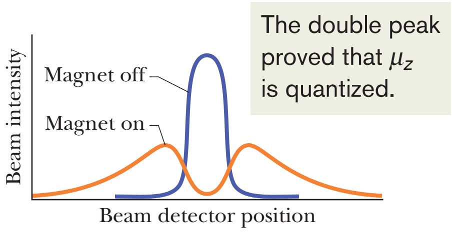
According to classical physics, the components μ_z of silver atoms passing through the magnetic field in Fig. 40-8 should range in value from $-\mu$ (the dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ is directed straight down the z axis) to $+\mu$ ($\vec{\mu}$ is directed straight up the z axis). Thus, from Eq. 40-17, there should be a range of forces on the atoms, and therefore a range of deflections of the atoms, from a greatest downward deflection to a greatest upward deflection. This means that we should expect the atoms to land along a vertical line on the glass plate, but they *don't.*

The Experimental Surprise

What Stern and Gerlach found was that the atoms formed two distinct spots on the glass plate, one spot above the point where they would have landed with no deflection and the other spot just as far below that point. The spots were initially too faint to be seen, but they became visible when Stern happened to breathe on the glass plate after smoking a cheap cigar. Sulfur in his breath (from the cigar) combined with the silver to produce a noticeably black silver sulfide.

This two-spot result can be seen in the plots of Fig. 40-9, which shows the outcome of a more recent version of the Stern–Gerlach experiment. In that version, a beam of cesium atoms (magnetic dipoles like the silver atoms in the original Stern–Gerlach experiment) was sent through a magnetic field with a large vertical gradient dB/dz. The field could be turned on and off, and a detector could be moved up and down through the beam.

When the field was turned off, the beam was, of course, undeflected and the detector recorded the central-peak pattern shown in Fig. 40-9. When the field was turned on, the original beam was split vertically by the magnetic field into two smaller beams, one beam higher than the previously undeflected beam and the other beam lower. As the detector moved vertically up through these two smaller beams, it recorded the two-peak pattern shown in Fig. 40-9.



The double peak proved that μ_z is quantized.

Figure 40-9 Results of a modern repetition of the Stern–Gerlach experiment. With the electromagnet turned off, there is only a single beam; with the electromagnet turned on, the original beam splits into two subbeams. The two subbeams correspond to parallel and antiparallel alignment of the magnetic moments of cesium atoms with the external magnetic field.

The Meaning of the Results

In the original Stern–Gerlach experiment, two spots of silver were formed on the glass plate, not a vertical line of silver. This means that the component μ_z along $\vec{B}$ (and along z) could not have any value between $-\mu$ and $+\mu$ as classical physics predicts. Instead, μ_z is restricted to only two values, one for each spot on the glass. Thus, the original Stern–Gerlach experiment showed that μ_z is quantized, implying (correctly) that $\vec{\mu}$ is also. Moreover, because the angular momentum $\vec{L}$ of an atom is associated with $\vec{\mu}$, that angular momentum and its component L_z are also quantized.

With modern quantum theory, we can add to the explanation of the two-spot result in the Stern–Gerlach experiment. We now know that a silver atom consists of many electrons, each with a spin magnetic moment and an orbital magnetic moment. We also know that all those moments vectorially cancel out *except* for a single electron, and the orbital dipole moment of that electron is zero. Thus, the combined dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ of a silver atom is the *spin* magnetic dipole moment of that single electron. According to Eq. 40-13, this means that μ_z can have only two components along the z axis in Fig. 40-8. One component is for quantum number $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$ (the single electron is spin up), and the other component is for quantum number $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$ (the single electron is spin down). Substituting into Eq. 40-13 gives us

$$\mu_{s,z} = -2(+\tfrac{1}{2})\mu_B = -\mu_B \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_{s,z} = -2(-\tfrac{1}{2})\mu_B = +\mu_B. \tag{40-18}$$

Then substituting these expressions for μ_z in Eq. 40-17, we find that the force component F_z deflecting the silver atoms as they pass through the magnetic field can have only the two values

$$F_z = -\mu_B\left(\frac{dB}{dz}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad F_z = +\mu_B\left(\frac{dB}{dz}\right), \tag{40-19}$$

which result in the two spots of silver on the glass. Although no one knew about spin at the time, the Stern–Gerlach results were actually the first experimental evidence of electron spin.

Sample Problem 40.01 Beam separation in a Stern–Gerlach experiment

In the Stern–Gerlach experiment of Fig. 40-8, a beam of silver atoms passes through a magnetic field gradient dB/dz of magnitude 1.4 T/mm that is set up along the z axis. This region has a length w of 3.5 cm in the direction of the original beam. The speed of the atoms is 750 m/s. By what distance d have the atoms been deflected when they leave the region of the field gradient? The mass M of a silver atom is 1.8×10^{-25} kg.

KEY IDEAS

(1) The deflection of a silver atom in the beam is due to an interaction between the magnetic dipole of the atom and the magnetic field, because of the gradient dB/dz. The deflecting force is directed along the field gradient (along the z axis) and is given by Eqs. 40-19. Let us consider only deflection in the positive direction of z; thus, we shall use $F_z = \mu_B(dB/dz)$ from Eqs. 40-19.

(2) We assume the field gradient dB/dz has the same value throughout the region through which the silver atoms travel. Thus, force component F_z is constant in that region, and from Newton's second law, the acceleration a_z of an atom along the z axis due to F_z is also constant.

Calculations: Putting these ideas together, we write the acceleration as

$$a_z = \frac{F_z}{M} = \frac{\mu_B(dB/dz)}{M}.$$

Because this acceleration is constant, we can use Eq. 2-15 (from Table 2-1) to write the deflection d parallel to the z axis as

$$d = v_{0z}t + \tfrac{1}{2}a_z t^2 = 0t + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\mu_B(dB/dz)}{M}\right)t^2. \tag{40-20}$$

Because the deflecting force on the atom acts perpendicular to the atom's original direction of travel, the component v of the atom's velocity along the original direction of travel is not changed by the force. Thus, the atom requires time $t = w/v$ to travel through length w in that direction. Substituting w/v for t into Eq. 40-20, we find

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\mu_B(dB/dz)}{M}\right)\left(\frac{w}{v}\right)^2 = \frac{\mu_B(dB/dz)w^2}{2Mv^2} \\ &= (9.27 \times 10^{-24}\ \text{J/T})(1.4 \times 10^3\ \text{T/m}) \\ &\quad \times \frac{(3.5 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}{(2)(1.8 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{kg})(750\ \text{m/s})^2} \\ &= 7.85 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m} \approx 0.08\ \text{mm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

The separation between the two subbeams is twice this, or 0.16 mm. This separation is not large but is easily measured.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

40-3 MAGNETIC RESONANCE

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.22 For a proton in a magnetic field, sketch the field vector and the proton's magnetic moment vector for the lower energy state and the upper energy state and then include the labels of spin up and spin down.

40.23 For a proton in a magnetic field, calculate the energy difference between the two spin states and find the photon frequency and wavelength required for a transition between the states.

40.24 Explain the procedure of producing a nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum.

Key Ideas

- A proton has an intrinsic spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ and an intrinsic magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ that are in the same direction (because the proton is positively charged).
- The magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ of a proton in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ has two quantized components along the field axis: spin up (μ_z is in the direction $\vec{B}$ and spin down μ_z is in the opposite direction).
- Contrary to the situation with an electron, spin up is the lower energy orientation; the difference between the two orientations is $2\mu_z B$.
- The energy required of a photon to spin-flip the proton between the two orientations is

$$hf = 2\mu_z B.$$

- The field is the vector sum of an external field set up by equipment and an internal field set up by the atoms and nuclei surrounding the proton.
- Detection of spin-flips can lead to nuclear magnetic resonance spectra by which specific substances can be identified.

Magnetic Resonance

As we discussed briefly in Module 32-5, a proton has a spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ that is associated with the proton's intrinsic spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$. The two vectors are said to be coupled together and, because the proton is positively charged, they are in the same direction. Suppose a proton is located in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ that is directed along the positive direction of a z axis. Then $\vec{\mu}$ has two possible quantized components along that axis: the component can be $+\mu_z$ if the vector is in the direction of $\vec{B}$ (Fig. 40-10*a*) or $-\mu_z$ if it is opposite the direction of $\vec{B}$ (Fig. 40-10*b*).

From Eq. 28-38 ($U(\theta) = -\vec{\mu}\cdot\vec{B}$), recall that an energy is associated with the orientation of any magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ located in an external magnetic field $\vec{B}$. Thus, energy is associated with the two orientations of Figs. 40-10*a* and *b*. The orientation in Fig. 40-10*a* is the lower-energy state ($-\mu_z B$) and is called the *spin-up state* because the proton's spin component S_z (not shown) is also aligned with $\vec{B}$. The orientation in Fig. 40-10*b* (the *spin-down state*) is the higher-energy state ($\mu_z B$). Thus, the energy difference between these two states is

$$\Delta E = \mu_z B - (-\mu_z B) = 2\mu_z B. \tag{40-21}$$

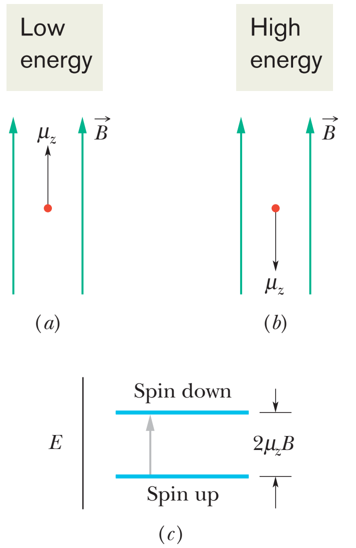


Figure 40-10 The z component of $\vec{\mu}$ for a proton in the (*a*) lower-energy (spin-up) and (*b*) higher-energy (spin-down) state. (*c*) An energy-level diagram for the states, showing the upward quantum jump the proton makes when its spin flips from up to down.

If we place a sample of water in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$, the protons in the hydrogen portions of each water molecule tend to be in the lower-energy state. (We shall not consider the oxygen portions.) Any one of these protons can jump to the higher-energy state by absorbing a photon with an energy hf equal to ΔE. That is, the proton can jump by absorbing a photon of energy

$$hf = 2\mu_z B. \tag{40-22}$$

Such absorption is called **magnetic resonance** or, as originally, **nuclear magnetic resonance** (NMR), and the consequent reversal of S_z is called *spin-flipping.*

In practice, the photons required for magnetic resonance have an associated frequency in the radio-frequency (RF) range and are provided by a small coil wrapped around the sample undergoing resonance. An electromagnetic oscillator called an *RF source* drives a sinusoidal current in the coil at frequency f. The electromagnetic (EM) field set up within the coil and sample also oscillates at

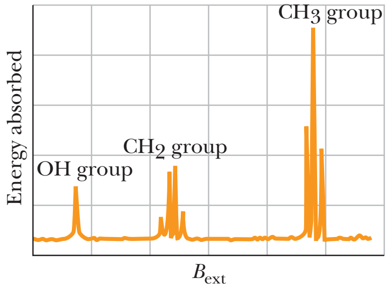


Figure 40-11 A nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum for ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH. The spectral lines represent the absorption of energy associated with spin-flips of protons. The three groups of lines correspond, as indicated, to protons in the OH group, the CH_2 group, and the CH_3 group of the ethanol molecule. Note that the two protons in the CH_2 group occupy four different local environments. The entire horizontal axis covers less than 10^{-4} T.

frequency f. If f meets the requirement of Eq. 40-22, the oscillating EM field can transfer a quantum of energy to a proton in the sample via a photon absorption, spin-flipping the proton.

The magnetic field magnitude B that appears in Eq. 40-22 is actually the magnitude of the net magnetic field $\vec{B}$ at the site where a given proton undergoes spin-flipping. That net field is the vector sum of the external field $\vec{B}_{\text{ext}}$ set up by the magnetic resonance equipment (primarily a large magnet) and the internal field $\vec{B}_{\text{int}}$ set up by the magnetic dipole moments of the atoms and nuclei near the given proton. For practical reasons we do not discuss here, magnetic resonance is usually detected by sweeping the magnitude B_{ext} through a range of values while the frequency f of the RF source is kept at a predetermined value and the energy of the RF source is monitored. A graph of the energy loss of the RF source versus B_{ext} shows a *resonance peak* when B_{ext} sweeps through the value at which spin-flipping occurs. Such a graph is called a *nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum,* or *NMR spectrum.*

Figure 40-11 shows the NMR spectrum of ethanol, which is a molecule consisting of three groups of atoms: CH_3, CH_2, and OH. Protons in each group can undergo magnetic resonance, but each group has its own unique magnetic-resonance value of B_{ext} because the groups lie in different internal fields $\vec{B}_{\text{int}}$ due to their arrangement within the CH_3CH_2OH molecule. Thus, the resonance peaks in the spectrum of Fig. 40-11 form a unique NMR signature by which ethanol can be indentified.

40-4 EXCLUSION PRINCIPLE AND MULTIPLE ELECTRONS IN A TRAP

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.25 Identify the Pauli exclusion principle.

40.26 Explain the procedure for placing multiple electrons in traps of one, two, and three dimensions, including the need to obey the exclusion principle and to allow for degenerate states, and explain the terms empty, partially occupied, and fully occupied.

40.27 For a system of multiple electrons in traps of one, two, and three dimensions, produce energy-level diagrams.

Key Idea

- Electrons in atoms and other traps obey the Pauli exclusion principle, which requires that no two electrons in a trap can have the same set of quantum numbers.

The Pauli Exclusion Principle

In Chapter 39 we considered a variety of electron traps, from fictional one-dimensional traps to the real three-dimensional trap of a hydrogen atom. In all those examples, we trapped only one electron. However, when we discuss traps containing two or more electrons (as we shall below), we must consider a principle that governs any particle whose spin quantum number s is not zero or an integer. This principle applies not only to electrons but also to protons and neutrons, all of which have $s = \frac{1}{2}$. The principle is known as the **Pauli exclusion principle** after Wolfgang Pauli, who formulated it in 1925. For electrons, it states that

> No two electrons confined to the same trap can have the same set of values for their quantum numbers.

As we shall discuss in Module 40-5, this principle means that no two electrons in an atom can have the same four values for the quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s. All electrons have the same quantum number $s = \frac{1}{2}$. Thus, any two electrons in an atom must differ in at least one of these other quantum numbers. Were this not true, atoms would collapse, and thus you and the world could not exist.

Multiple Electrons in Rectangular Traps

To prepare for our discussion of multiple electrons in atoms, let us discuss two electrons confined to the rectangular traps of Chapter 39. However, here we shall also include the spin angular momenta. To do this, we assume that the traps are located in a uniform magnetic field. Then according to Eq. 40-10 ($S_z = m_s\hbar$), an electron can be either spin up with $m_s = \frac{1}{2}$ or spin down with $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. (We assume that the field is very weak so that the associated energy is negligible.)

As we confine the two electrons to one of the traps, we must keep the Pauli exclusion principle in mind; that is, the electrons cannot have the same set of values for their quantum numbers.

1. *One-dimensional trap.* In the one-dimensional trap of Fig. 39-2, fitting an electron wave to the trap's width L requires the single quantum number n. Therefore, any electron confined to the trap must have a certain value of n, and its quantum number m_s can be either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. The two electrons could have different values of n, or they could have the same value of n if one of them is spin up and the other is spin down.
2. *Rectangular corral.* In the rectangular corral of Fig. 39-13, fitting an electron wave to the corral's widths L_x and L_y requires the two quantum numbers n_x and n_y. Thus, any electron confined to the trap must have certain values for those two quantum numbers, and its quantum number m_s can be either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$; so now there are three quantum numbers. According to the Pauli exclusion principle, two electrons confined to the trap must have different values for at least one of those three quantum numbers.
3. *Rectangular box.* In the rectangular box of Fig. 39-14, fitting an electron wave to the box's widths L_x, L_y, and L_z requires the three quantum numbers n_x, n_y, and n_z. Thus, any electron confined to the trap must have certain values for these three quantum numbers, and its quantum number m_s can be either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$; so now there are four quantum numbers. According to the Pauli exclusion principle, two electrons confined to the trap must have different values for at least one of those four quantum numbers.

Suppose we add more than two electrons, one by one, to a rectangular trap in the preceding list. The first electrons naturally go into the lowest possible energy level—they are said to *occupy* that level. However, eventually the Pauli exclusion principle disallows any more electrons from occupying that lowest energy level, and the next electron must occupy the next higher level. When an energy level cannot be occupied by more electrons because of the Pauli exclusion principle, we say that level is **full** or **fully occupied.** In contrast, a level that is not occupied by any electrons is **empty** or **unoccupied.** For intermediate situations, the level is **partially occupied.** The *electron configuration* of a system of trapped electrons is a listing or drawing either of the energy levels the electrons occupy or of the set of the quantum numbers of the electrons.

Finding the Total Energy

To find the energy of a system of two or more electrons confined to a trap, we assume that the electrons do not electrically interact with one another; that is, we shall neglect the electric potential energies of pairs of electrons. Then we can calculate the total energy for the system by calculating the energy of each electron (as in Chapter 39) and then summing those energies.

A good way to organize the energy values of a given system of electrons is with an energy-level diagram *for the system,* just as we did for a single electron in the traps of Chapter 39. The lowest level, with energy E_{gr}, corresponds to the ground state of the system. The next higher level, with energy E_{fe}, corresponds to the first excited state of the system. The next level, with energy E_{se}, corresponds to the second excited state of the system, and so on.

Sample Problem 40.02 Energy levels of multiple electrons in a 2D infinite potential well

Seven electrons are confined to a square corral (two-dimensional infinite potential well) with widths $L_x = L_y = L$ (Fig. 39-13). Assume that the electrons do not electrically interact with one another.

(a) What is the electron configuration for the ground state of the system of seven electrons?

One-electron diagram: We can determine the electron configuration of the system by placing the seven electrons in the corral one by one, to build up the system. Because we assume the electrons do not electrically interact with one another, we can use the energy-level diagram for a single trapped electron in order to keep track of how we place the seven electrons in the corral. That *one-electron energy-level diagram* is given in Fig. 39-15 and partially reproduced here as Fig. 40-12*a*. Recall that the levels are labeled as $E_{nx,ny}$ for their associated energy. For example, the lowest level is for energy $E_{1,1}$, where quantum number n_x is 1 and quantum number n_y is 1.

Pauli principle: The trapped electrons must obey the Pauli exclusion principle; that is, no two electrons can have the same set of values for their quantum numbers n_x, n_y, and m_s. The first electron goes into energy level $E_{1,1}$ and can have $m_s = \frac{1}{2}$ or $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. We arbitrarily choose the latter

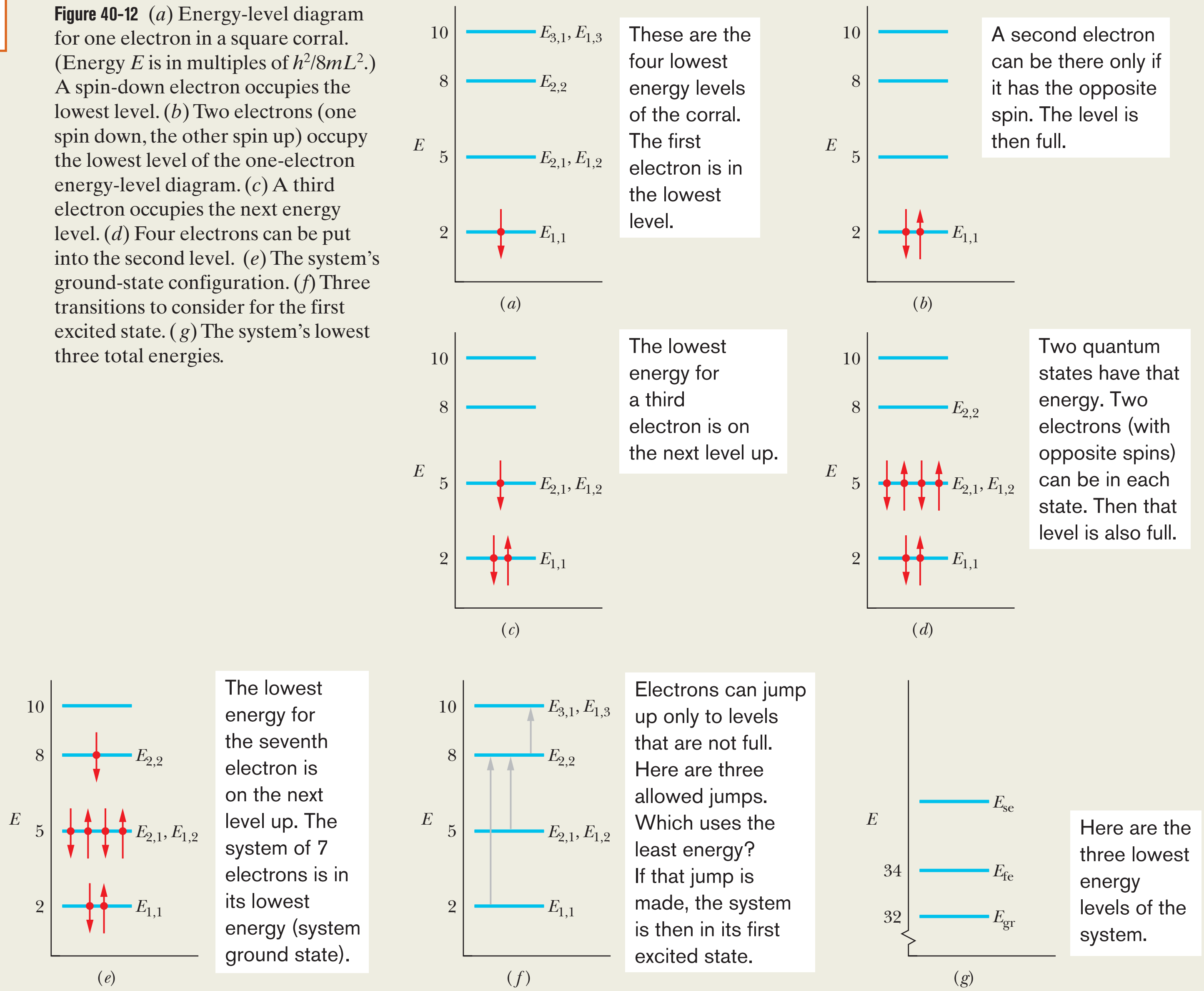


Figure 40-12 (*a*) Energy-level diagram for one electron in a square corral. (Energy E is in multiples of $h^2/8mL^2$.) A spin-down electron occupies the lowest level. (*b*) Two electrons (one spin down, the other spin up) occupy the lowest level of the one-electron energy-level diagram. (*c*) A third electron occupies the next energy level. (*d*) Four electrons can be put into the second level. (*e*) The system's ground-state configuration. (*f*) Three transitions to consider for the first excited state. (*g*) The system's lowest three total energies.

(*a*) These are the four lowest energy levels of the corral. The first electron is in the lowest level.

(*b*) A second electron can be there only if it has the opposite spin. The level is then full.

(*c*) The lowest energy for a third electron is on the next level up.

(*d*) Two quantum states have that energy. Two electrons (with opposite spins) can be in each state. Then that level is also full.

(*e*) The lowest energy for the seventh electron is on the next level up. The system of 7 electrons is in its lowest energy (system ground state).

(*f*) Electrons can jump up only to levels that are not full. Here are three allowed jumps. Which uses the least energy? If that jump is made, the system is then in its first excited state.

(*g*) Here are the three lowest energy levels of the system.

and draw a down arrow (to represent spin down) on the $E_{1,1}$ level in Fig. 40-12*a*. The second electron also goes into the $E_{1,1}$ level but must have $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$ so that one of its quantum numbers differs from those of the first electron. We represent this second electron with an up arrow (for spin up) on the $E_{1,1}$ level in Fig. 40-12*b*.

Electrons, one by one: The level for energy $E_{1,1}$ is fully occupied, and thus the third electron cannot have that energy. Therefore, the third electron goes into the next higher level, which is for the equal energies $E_{2,1}$ and $E_{1,2}$ (the level is degenerate). This third electron can have quantum numbers n_x and n_y of either 1 and 2 or 2 and 1, respectively. It can also have a quantum number m_s of either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. Let us arbitrarily assign it the quantum numbers $n_x = 2$, $n_y = 1$, and $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. We then represent it with a down arrow on the level for $E_{1,2}$ and $E_{2,1}$ in Fig. 40-12*c*.

You can show that the next three electrons can also go into the level for energies $E_{2,1}$ and $E_{1,2}$, provided that no set of three quantum numbers is completely duplicated. That level then contains four electrons (Fig. 40-12*d*), with quantum numbers (n_x, n_y, m_s) of

$$(2, 1, -\tfrac{1}{2}),\ (2, 1, +\tfrac{1}{2}),\ (1, 2, -\tfrac{1}{2}),\ (1, 2, +\tfrac{1}{2}),$$

and the level is fully occupied. Thus, the seventh electron goes into the next higher level, which is the $E_{2,2}$ level. Let us assume this electron is spin down, with $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$.

Figure 40-12*e* shows all seven electrons on a one-electron energy-level diagram. We now have seven electrons in the corral, and they are in the configuration with the lowest energy that satisfies the Pauli exclusion principle. Thus, the ground-state configuration of the system is that shown in Fig. 40-12*e* and listed in Table 40-2.

(b) What is the total energy of the seven-electron system in its ground state, as a multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$?

KEY IDEA

The total energy E_{gr} is the sum of the energies of the individual electrons in the system's ground-state configuration.

Ground-state energy: The energy of each electron can be read from Table 39-1, which is partially reproduced in Table 40-2, or from Fig. 40-12*e*. Because there are two electrons in the first (lowest) level, four in the second level, and one in the third level, we have

$$E_{gr} = 2\left(2\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right) + 4\left(5\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right) + 1\left(8\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)$$

$$= 32\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(c) How much energy must be transferred to the system for it to jump to its first excited state, and what is the energy of that state?

KEY IDEAS

1. If the system is to be excited, one of the seven electrons must make a quantum jump up the one-electron energy-level diagram of Fig. 40-12*e*.
2. If that jump is to occur, the energy change ΔE of the electron (and thus of the system) must be $\Delta E = E_{high} - E_{low}$ (Eq. 39-5), where E_{low} is the energy of the level where the jump begins and E_{high} is the energy of the level where the jump ends.
3. The Pauli exclusion principle must still apply; an electron *cannot* jump to a level that is fully occupied.

First-excited-state energy: Let us consider the three jumps shown in Fig. 40-12*f*; all are allowed by the Pauli exclusion principle because they are jumps to either empty or partially occupied states. In one of those possible jumps, an electron jumps from the $E_{1,1}$ level to the partially occupied $E_{2,2}$ level. The change in the energy is

$$\Delta E = E_{2,2} - E_{1,1} = 8\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} - 2\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} = 6\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}.$$

(We shall assume that the spin orientation of the electron making the jump can change as needed.)

In another of the possible jumps in Fig. 40-12*f*, an electron jumps from the degenerate level of $E_{2,1}$ and $E_{1,2}$ to the partially occupied $E_{2,2}$ level. The change in the energy is

$$\Delta E = E_{2,2} - E_{2,1} = 8\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} - 5\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} = 3\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}.$$

In the third possible jump in Fig. 40-12*f*, the electron in the $E_{2,2}$ level jumps to the unoccupied, degenerate level of $E_{1,3}$ and $E_{3,1}$. The change in energy is

$$\Delta E = E_{1,3} - E_{2,2} = 10\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} - 8\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} = 2\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}.$$

Table 40-2 Ground-State Configuration and Energies

n_x	n_y	m_s	Energy[a]
2	2	$-\frac{1}{2}$	8
2	1	$+\frac{1}{2}$	5
2	1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	5
1	2	$+\frac{1}{2}$	5
1	2	$-\frac{1}{2}$	5
1	1	$+\frac{1}{2}$	2
1	1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	2
			Total 32

[a] In multiples of $h^2/8mL^2$.

Of these three possible jumps, the one requiring the least energy change ΔE is the last one. We could consider even more possible jumps, but none would require less energy. Thus, for the system to jump from its ground state to its first excited state, the electron in the $E_{2,2}$ level must jump to the unoccupied, degenerate level of $E_{1,3}$ and $E_{3,1}$, and the required energy is

$$\Delta E = 2\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

The energy E_{fe} of the first excited state of the system is then

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{fe}} &= E_{\text{gr}} + \Delta E \\ &= 32\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} + 2\frac{h^2}{8mL^2} = 34\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

We can represent this energy and the energy E_{gr} for the ground state of the system on an energy-level diagram *for the system,* as shown in Fig. 40-12*g*.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

40-5 BUILDING THE PERIODIC TABLE

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.28 Identify that all states in a subshell have the same energy that is determined primarily by quantum number n but to a lesser extent by quantum number ℓ.

40.29 Identify the labeling system for the orbital angular momentum quantum number.

40.30 Identify the procedure for filling up the shells and subshells in building up the periodic table for as long as the electron–electron interaction can be neglected.

40.31 Distinguish the noble gases from the other elements in terms of chemical interactions, net angular momentum, and ionization energy.

40.32 For a transition between two given atomic energy levels, for either emission or absorption of light, apply the relationship between the energy difference and the frequency and wavelength of the light.

Key Ideas

- In the periodic table, the elements are listed in order of increasing atomic number Z, where Z is the number of protons in the nucleus. For a neutral atom, Z is also the number of electrons.
- States with the same value of quantum number n form a shell.
- States with the same values of quantum numbers n and ℓ form a subshell.
- A closed shell and a closed subshell contain the maximum number of electrons as allowed by the Pauli exclusion principle. The net angular momentum and net magnetic moment of such closed structures are zero.

Building the Periodic Table

The four quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s identify the quantum states of individual electrons in a multielectron atom. The wave functions for these states, however, are not the same as the wave functions for the corresponding states of the hydrogen atom because, in multielectron atoms, the potential energy associated with a given electron is determined not only by the charge and position of the atom's nucleus but also by the charges and positions of all the other electrons in the atom. Solutions of Schrödinger's equation for multielectron atoms can be carried out numerically—in principle at least—using a computer.

Shells and Subshells

As we discussed in Module 40-1, all states with the same n form a *shell*, and all states with the same value of n and ℓ form a *subshell*. For a given ℓ, there are $2\ell + 1$ possible values of quantum number m_ℓ and, for each m_ℓ, there are two possible values for the quantum number m_s (spin up and spin down). Thus, there are $2(2\ell + 1)$

states in a subshell. If we count all the states throughout a given shell with quantum number n, we find that the total number in the shell is $2n^2$. All states in a given subshell have about the same energy, which depends primarily on the value of n, but it also depends somewhat on the value of ℓ.

For the purpose of labeling subshells, the values of ℓ are represented by letters:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} \ell = 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & \ldots \\ s & p & d & f & g & h & \ldots . \end{array}$$

For example, the $n = 3, \ell = 2$ subshell would be labeled the $3d$ subshell.

When we assign electrons to states in a multielectron atom, we must be guided by the Pauli exclusion principle of Module 40-4; that is, no two electrons in an atom can have the same set of the quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s. If this important principle did not hold, *all* the electrons in any atom could jump to the atom's lowest energy level, which would eliminate the chemistry of atoms and molecules, and thus also eliminate biochemistry and us. Let us examine the atoms of a few elements to see how the Pauli exclusion principle operates in the building up of the periodic table.

Neon

The neon atom has 10 electrons. Only two of them fit into the lowest-energy subshell, the $1s$ subshell. These two electrons both have $n = 1$, $\ell = 0$, and $m_\ell = 0$, but one has $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$ and the other has $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. The $1s$ subshell contains $2[2(0) + 1] = 2$ states. Because this subshell then contains all the electrons permitted by the Pauli principle, it is said to be **closed.**

Two of the remaining eight electrons fill the next lowest energy subshell, the $2s$ subshell. The last six electrons just fill the $2p$ subshell, which, with $\ell = 1$, holds $2[2(1) + 1] = 6$ states.

In a closed subshell, all allowed z projections of the orbital angular momentum vector $\vec{L}$ are present and, as you can verify from Fig. 40-5, these projections cancel for the subshell as a whole; for every positive projection there is a corresponding negative projection of the same magnitude. Similarly, the z projections of the spin angular momenta also cancel. Thus, a closed subshell has no angular momentum and no magnetic moment of any kind. Furthermore, its probability density is spherically symmetric. Then neon with its three closed subshells ($1s$, $2s$, and $2p$) has no "loosely dangling electrons" to encourage chemical interaction with other atoms. Neon, like the other **noble gases** that form the right-hand column of the periodic table, is almost chemically inert.

Sodium

Next after neon in the periodic table comes sodium, with 11 electrons. Ten of them form a closed neon-like core, which, as we have seen, has zero angular momentum. The remaining electron is largely outside this inert core, in the $3s$ subshell—the next lowest energy subshell. Because this **valence electron** of sodium is in a state with $\ell = 0$ (that is, an s state using the lettering system above), the sodium atom's angular momentum and magnetic dipole moment must be due entirely to the spin of this single electron.

Sodium readily combines with other atoms that have a "vacancy" into which sodium's loosely bound valence electron can fit. Sodium, like the other **alkali metals** that form the left-hand column of the periodic table, is chemically active.

Chlorine

The chlorine atom, which has 17 electrons, has a closed 10-electron, neon-like core, with 7 electrons left over. Two of them fill the $3s$ subshell, leaving five to be assigned to the $3p$ subshell, which is the subshell next lowest in energy. This subshell, which has $\ell = 1$, can hold $2[2(1) + 1] = 6$ electrons, and so there is a vacancy, or a "hole," in this subshell.

Chlorine is receptive to interacting with other atoms that have a valence electron that might fill this hole. Sodium chloride (NaCl), for example, is a very stable compound. Chlorine, like the other **halogens** that form column VIIA of the periodic table, is chemically active.

Iron

The arrangement of the 26 electrons of the iron atom can be represented as follows:

$$\underbrace{1s^2 \quad 2s^2\ 2p^6 \quad 3s^2\ 3p^6}\ 3d^6 \quad 4s^2.$$

The subshells are listed in numerical order and, following convention, a superscript gives the number of electrons in each subshell. From Table 40-1 we can see that an s subshell ($\ell = 0$) can hold 2 electrons, a p subshell ($\ell = 1$) can hold 6, and a d subshell ($\ell = 2$) can hold 10. Thus, iron's first 18 electrons form the five filled subshells that are marked off by the bracket, leaving 8 electrons to be accounted for. Six of the eight go into the $3d$ subshell, and the remaining two go into the $4s$ subshell.

The reason the last two electrons do not also go into the $3d$ subshell (which can hold 10 electrons) is that the $3d^6\ 4s^2$ configuration results in a lower-energy state for the atom as a whole than would the $3d^8$ configuration. An iron atom with 8 electrons (rather than 6) in the $3d$ subshell would quickly make a transition to the $3d^6\ 4s^2$ configuration, emitting electromagnetic radiation in the process. The lesson here is that except for the simplest elements, the states may not be filled in what we might think of as their "logical" sequence.

40-6 X RAYS AND THE ORDERING OF THE ELEMENTS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.33 Identify where x rays are located in the electromagnetic spectrum.

40.34 Explain how x rays are produced in a laboratory or medical setting.

40.35 Distinguish between a continuous x-ray spectrum and a characteristic x-ray spectrum.

40.36 In a continuous x-ray spectrum, identify the cause of the cutoff wavelength λ_{min}.

40.37 Identify that in an electron–atom collision, energy and momentum are conserved.

40.38 Apply the relationship between a cutoff wavelength λ_{min} and the kinetic energy K_0 of the incident electrons.

40.39 Draw an energy-level diagram for holes and identify (with labels) the transitions that produce x rays.

40.40 For a given hole transition, calculate the wavelength of the emitted x ray.

40.41 Explain the importance of Moseley's work with regard to the periodic table.

40.42 Sketch a Moseley plot.

40.43 Describe the screening effect in a multielectron atom.

40.44 Apply the relationship between the frequency of the emitted K-alpha x rays and the atomic number Z of the atoms.

Key Ideas

- When a beam of high-energy electrons impact a target, the electrons can lose their energy by scattering from atoms and emitting a continuous spectrum of x rays.
- The shortest wavelength in the spectrum is the cutoff wavelength λ_{min}, which is emitted when an incident electron loses its full kinetic energy K_0 in a single collision:

$$\lambda_{\text{min}} = \frac{hc}{K_0}.$$

- The characteristic x-ray spectrum is produced when incident electrons eject low-lying electrons in the target atoms and electrons from upper levels jump down to the resulting holes, emitting light.
- A Moseley plot is a graph of the square root of the characteristic-emission frequencies $\sqrt{f}$ versus atomic number Z of the target atoms. The straight-line plot reveals that the position of an element in the periodic table is set by Z and not the atomic weight.

X Rays and the Ordering of the Elements

When a solid target, such as solid copper or tungsten, is bombarded with electrons whose kinetic energies are in the kiloelectron-volt range, electromagnetic radiation called **x rays** is emitted. Our concern here is what these rays can teach us about the atoms that absorb or emit them. Figure 40-13 shows the wavelength spectrum of the x rays produced when a beam of 35 keV electrons falls on a molybdenum target. We see a broad, continuous spectrum of radiation on which are superimposed two peaks of sharply defined wavelengths. The continuous spectrum and the peaks arise in different ways, which we next discuss separately.

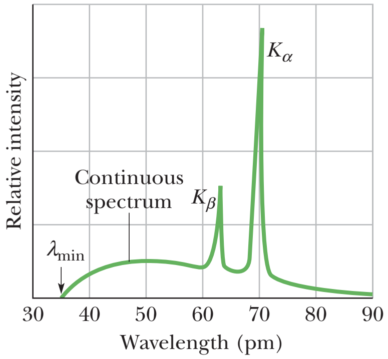


Figure 40-13 The distribution by wavelength of the x rays produced when 35 keV electrons strike a molybdenum target. The sharp peaks and the continuous spectrum from which they rise are produced by different mechanisms.

The Continuous X-Ray Spectrum

Here we examine the continuous x-ray spectrum of Fig. 40-13, ignoring for the time being the two prominent peaks that rise from it. Consider an electron of initial kinetic energy K_0 that collides (interacts) with one of the target atoms, as in Fig. 40-14. The electron may lose an amount of energy ΔK, which will appear as the energy of an x-ray photon that is radiated away from the site of the collision. (Very little energy is transferred to the recoiling atom because of the relatively large mass of the atom; here we neglect that transfer.)

The scattered electron in Fig. 40-14, whose energy is now less than K_0, may have a second collision with a target atom, generating a second photon, with a different photon energy. This electron-scattering process can continue until the electron is approximately stationary. All the photons generated by these collisions form part of the continuous x-ray spectrum.

A prominent feature of that spectrum in Fig. 40-13 is the sharply defined **cutoff wavelength** λ_{min}, below which the continuous spectrum does not exist. This minimum wavelength corresponds to a collision in which an incident electron loses *all* its initial kinetic energy K_0 in a single head-on collision with a target atom. Essentially all this energy appears as the energy of a single photon, whose associated wavelength—the minimum possible x-ray wavelength—is found from

$$K_0 = hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda_{min}},$$

or

$$\lambda_{min} = \frac{hc}{K_0} \quad \text{(cutoff wavelength).} \tag{40-23}$$

The cutoff wavelength is totally independent of the target material. If we were to switch from a molybdenum target to a copper target, for example, all features of the x-ray spectrum of Fig. 40-13 would change *except* the cutoff wavelength.

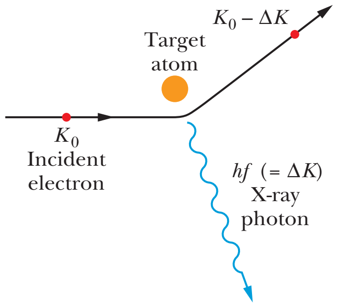


Figure 40-14 An electron of kinetic energy K_0 passing near an atom in the target may generate an x-ray photon, the electron losing part of its energy in the process. The continuous x-ray spectrum arises in this way.

Checkpoint 2

Does the cutoff wavelength λ_{min} of the continuous x-ray spectrum increase, decrease, or remain the same if you (a) increase the kinetic energy of the electrons that strike the x-ray target, (b) allow the electrons to strike a thin foil rather than a thick block of the target material, (c) change the target to an element of higher atomic number?

The Characteristic X-Ray Spectrum

We now turn our attention to the two peaks of Fig. 40-13, labeled K_α and K_β. These (and other peaks that appear at wavelengths beyond the range displayed in Fig. 40-13) form the **characteristic x-ray spectrum** of the target material.

The peaks arise in a two-part process. (1) An energetic electron strikes an atom in the target and, while it is being scattered, the incident electron knocks out one of the atom's deep-lying (low n value) electrons. If the deep-lying electron is in the shell defined by $n = 1$ (called, for historical reasons, the K shell), there remains a vacancy, or *hole,* in this shell. (2) An electron in one of the shells with a higher energy jumps to the K shell, filling the hole in this shell. During this jump, the atom emits a characteristic x-ray photon. If the electron that fills the K-shell vacancy jumps from the shell with $n = 2$ (called the L shell), the emitted radiation is the K_α line of Fig. 40-13; if it jumps from the shell with $n = 3$ (called the M shell), it produces the K_β line, and so on. The hole left in either the L or M shell will be filled by an electron from still farther out in the atom.

In studying x rays, it is more convenient to keep track of where a hole is created deep in the atom's "electron cloud" than to record the changes in the quantum state of the electrons that jump to fill that hole. Figure 40-15 does exactly that; it is an energy-level diagram for molybdenum, the element to which Fig. 40-13 refers. The baseline ($E = 0$) represents the neutral atom in its ground state. The level marked K (at $E = 20$ keV) represents the energy of the molybdenum atom with a hole in its K shell, the level marked L (at $E = 2.7$ keV) represents the atom with a hole in its L shell, and so on.

The transitions marked K_α and K_β in Fig. 40-15 are the ones that produce the two x-ray peaks in Fig. 40-13. The K_α spectral line, for example, originates when an electron from the L shell fills a hole in the K shell. To state this transition in terms of what the arrows in Fig. 40-15 show, a hole originally in the K shell moves to the L shell.

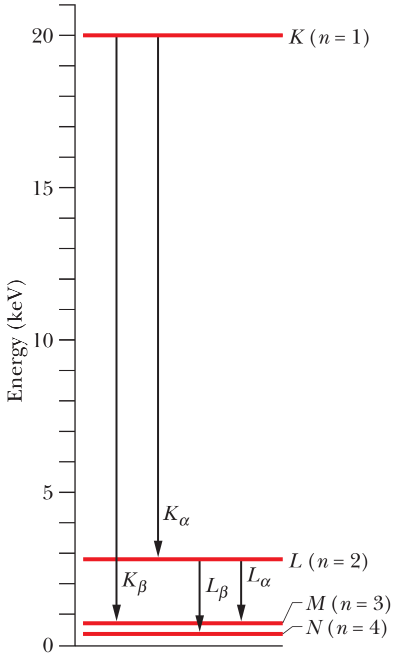


Figure 40-15 A simplified energy-level diagram for a molybdenum atom, showing the transitions (of holes rather than electrons) that give rise to some of the characteristic x rays of that element. Each horizontal line represents the energy of the atom with a hole (a missing electron) in the shell indicated.

Ordering the Elements

In 1913, British physicist H. G. J. Moseley generated characteristic x rays for as many elements as he could find—he found 38—by using them as targets for electron bombardment in an evacuated tube of his own design. By means of a trolley manipulated by strings, Moseley was able to move the individual targets into the path of an electron beam. He measured the wavelengths of the emitted x rays by the crystal diffraction method described in Module 36-7.

Moseley then sought (and found) regularities in these spectra as he moved from element to element in the periodic table. In particular, he noted that if, for a given spectral line such as K_α, he plotted for each element the square root of the frequency f against the position of the element in the periodic table, a straight line resulted. Figure 40-16 shows a portion of his extensive data. Moseley's conclusion was this:

> We have here a proof that there is in the atom a fundamental quantity, which increases by regular steps as we pass from one element to the next. This quantity can only be the charge on the central nucleus.

As a result of Moseley's work, the characteristic x-ray spectrum became the universally accepted signature of an element, permitting the solution of a number of

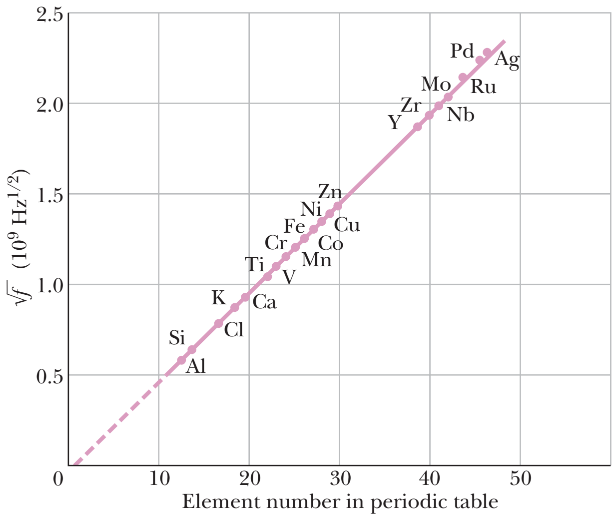


Figure 40-16 A Moseley plot of the K_α line of the characteristic x-ray spectra of 21 elements. The frequency is calculated from the measured wavelength.

periodic table puzzles. Prior to that time (1913), the positions of elements in the table were assigned in order of atomic *mass,* although it was necessary to invert this order for several pairs of elements because of compelling chemical evidence; Moseley showed that it is the nuclear charge (that is, atomic number Z) that is the real basis for ordering the elements.

In 1913 the periodic table had several empty squares, and a surprising number of claims for new elements had been advanced. The x-ray spectrum provided a conclusive test of such claims. The lanthanide elements, often called the rare earth elements, had been sorted out only imperfectly because their similar chemical properties made sorting difficult. Once Moseley's work was reported, these elements were properly organized.

It is not hard to see why the characteristic x-ray spectrum shows such impressive regularities from element to element whereas the optical spectrum in the visible and near-visible region does not: The key to the identity of an element is the charge on its nucleus. Gold, for example, is what it is because its atoms have a nuclear charge of $+79e$ (that is, $Z = 79$). An atom with one more elementary charge on its nucleus is mercury; with one fewer, it is platinum. The K electrons, which play such a large role in the production of the x-ray spectrum, lie very close to the nucleus and are thus sensitive probes of its charge. The optical spectrum, on the other hand, involves transitions of the outermost electrons, which are heavily screened from the nucleus by the remaining electrons of the atom and thus are *not* sensitive probes of nuclear charge.

Accounting for the Moseley Plot

Moseley's experimental data, of which the Moseley plot of Fig. 40-16 is but a part, can be used directly to assign the elements to their proper places in the periodic table. This can be done even if no theoretical basis for Moseley's results can be established. However, there is such a basis.

According to Eq. 39-33, the energy of the hydrogen atom is

$$E_n = -\frac{me^4}{8\varepsilon_0^2 h^2}\,\frac{1}{n^2} = -\frac{13.60\text{ eV}}{n^2}, \qquad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{40-24}$$

Consider now one of the two innermost electrons in the K shell of a multielectron atom. Because of the presence of the other K-shell electron, our electron "sees" an effective nuclear charge of approximately $(Z - 1)e$, where e is the elementary charge and Z is the atomic number of the element. The factor e^4 in Eq. 40-24 is the product of e^2—the square of hydrogen's nuclear charge—and $(-e)^2$—the square of an electron's charge. For a multielectron atom, we can approximate the effective energy of the atom by replacing the factor e^4 in Eq. 40-24 with $(Z - 1)^2e^2 \times (-e)^2$, or $e^4(Z - 1)^2$. That gives us

$$E_n = -\frac{(13.60\text{ eV})(Z-1)^2}{n^2}. \tag{40-25}$$

We saw that the K_α x-ray photon (of energy hf) arises when an electron makes a transition from the L shell (with $n = 2$ and energy E_2) to the K shell (with $n = 1$ and energy E_1). Thus, using Eq. 40-25, we may write the energy change as

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E &= E_2 - E_1\\ &= \frac{-(13.60\text{ eV})(Z-1)^2}{2^2} - \frac{-(13.60\text{ eV})(Z-1)^2}{1^2}\\ &= (10.2\text{ eV})(Z-1)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Then the frequency f of the K_α line is

$$\begin{aligned}f &= \frac{\Delta E}{h} = \frac{(10.2\text{ eV})(Z-1)^2}{(4.14\times10^{-15}\text{ eV}\cdot\text{s})}\\ &= (2.46\times10^{15}\text{ Hz})(Z-1)^2.\end{aligned} \tag{40-26}$$

Taking the square root of both sides yields

$$\sqrt{f} = CZ - C, \tag{40-27}$$

in which C is a constant ($= 4.96 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{Hz}^{1/2}$). Equation 40-27 is the equation of a straight line. It shows that if we plot the square root of the frequency of the K_α x-ray spectral line against the atomic number Z, we should obtain a straight line. As Fig. 40-16 shows, that is exactly what Moseley found.

Sample Problem 40.03 Characteristic spectrum in x-ray production

A cobalt target is bombarded with electrons, and the wavelengths of its characteristic x-ray spectrum are measured. There is also a second, fainter characteristic spectrum, which is due to an impurity in the cobalt. The wavelengths of the K_α lines are 178.9 pm (cobalt) and 143.5 pm (impurity), and the proton number for cobalt is $Z_{\mathrm{Co}} = 27$. Determine the impurity using only these data.

KEY IDEA

The wavelengths of the K_α lines for both the cobalt (Co) and the impurity (X) fall on a K_α Moseley plot, and Eq. 40-27 is the equation for that plot.

Calculations: Substituting c/λ for f in Eq. 40-27, we obtain

$$\sqrt{\frac{c}{\lambda_{\mathrm{Co}}}} = CZ_{\mathrm{Co}} - C \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{\frac{c}{\lambda_{\mathrm{X}}}} = CZ_{\mathrm{X}} - C.$$

Dividing the second equation by the first neatly eliminates C, yielding

$$\sqrt{\frac{\lambda_{\mathrm{Co}}}{\lambda_{\mathrm{X}}}} = \frac{Z_{\mathrm{X}} - 1}{Z_{\mathrm{Co}} - 1}.$$

Substituting the given data yields

$$\sqrt{\frac{178.9\ \mathrm{pm}}{143.5\ \mathrm{pm}}} = \frac{Z_{\mathrm{X}} - 1}{27 - 1}.$$

Solving for the unknown, we find that

$$Z_{\mathrm{X}} = 30.0. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Thus, the number of protons in the impurity nucleus is 30, and a glance at the periodic table identifies the impurity as zinc. Note that with a larger value of Z than cobalt, zinc has a smaller value of the K_α line. This means that the energy associated with that jump must be greater in zinc than cobalt.

40-7 LASERS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

40.45 Distinguish the light of a laser from the light of a common lightbulb.

40.46 Sketch energy-level diagrams for the three basic ways that light can interact with matter (atoms) and identify which is the basis of lasing.

40.47 Identify metastable states.

40.48 For two energy states, apply the relationship between the relative number of atoms in the higher state due to thermal agitation, the energy difference, and the temperature.

40.49 Identify population inversion, explain why it is required in a laser, and relate it to the lifetimes of the states.

40.50 Discuss how a helium–neon laser works, pointing out which gas lases and explaining why the other gas is required.

40.51 For stimulated emission, apply the relationships between energy change, frequency, and wavelength.

40.52 For stimulated emission, apply the relationships between energy, power, time, intensity, area, photon energy, and rate of photon emission.

Key Ideas

- In stimulated emission, an atom in an excited state can be induced to de-excite to a lower energy state by emitting a photon if an identical photon passes the atom.
- The light emitted in stimulated emission is in phase with and travels in the direction of the light causing the emission.
- A laser can emit light via stimulated emission provided that its atoms are in a population inversion. That is, for the pair of levels involved in the stimulated emission, more atoms must be in the upper level than the lower level so that there is more stimulated emission than just absorption.

Lasers and Laser Light

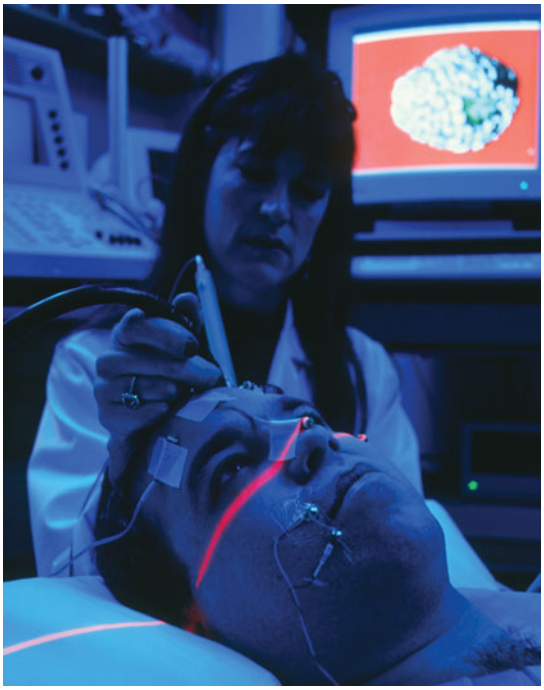
In the early 1960s, quantum physics made one of its many contributions to technology: the **laser.** Laser light, like the light from an ordinary lightbulb, is emitted when atoms make a transition from one quantum state to a lower one. However, in a lightbulb the emissions are random, both in time and direction, and in a laser they are coordinated so that the emissions are at the same time and in the same direction. As a result, laser light has the following characteristics:

1. ***Laser light is highly monochromatic.*** Light from an ordinary incandescent lightbulb is spread over a continuous range of wavelengths and is certainly not monochromatic. The radiation from a fluorescent neon sign is monochromatic, true, to about 1 part in 10^6, but the sharpness of definition of laser light can be many times greater, as much as 1 part in 10^{15}.
2. ***Laser light is highly coherent.*** Individual long waves (*wave trains*) for laser light can be several hundred kilometers long. When two separated beams that have traveled such distances over separate paths are recombined, they "remember" their common origin and are able to form a pattern of interference fringes. The corresponding *coherence length* for wave trains emitted by a lightbulb is typically less than a meter.
3. ***Laser light is highly directional.*** A laser beam spreads very little; it departs from strict parallelism only because of diffraction at the exit aperture of the laser. For example, a laser pulse used to measure the distance to the Moon generates a spot on the Moon's surface with a diameter of only a few kilometers. Light from an ordinary bulb can be made into an approximately parallel beam by a lens, but the beam divergence is much greater than for laser light. Each point on a lightbulb's filament forms its own separate beam, and the angular divergence of the overall composite beam is set by the size of the filament.
4. ***Laser light can be sharply focused.*** If two light beams transport the same amount of energy, the beam that can be focused to the smaller spot will have the greater intensity (power per unit area) at that spot. For laser light, the focused spot can be so small that an intensity of 10^{17} W/cm^2 is readily obtained. An oxyacetylene flame, by contrast, has an intensity of only about 10^3 W/cm^2.

Lasers Have Many Uses

The smallest lasers, used for voice and data transmission over optical fibers, have as their active medium a semiconducting crystal about the size of a pinhead. Small as they are, such lasers can generate about 200 mW of power. The largest lasers, used for nuclear fusion research and for astronomical and military applications, fill a large building. The largest such laser can generate brief pulses of laser light with a power level, during the pulse, of about 10^{14} W. This is a few hundred times greater than the total electrical power generating capacity of the United States. To avoid a brief national power blackout during a pulse, the energy required for each pulse is stored up at a steady rate during the relatively long interpulse interval.

Among the many uses of lasers are reading bar codes, manufacturing and reading compact discs and DVDs, performing surgery of many kinds (both as a surgical aid as in Fig. 40-17 and as a cutting and cauterizing tool), surveying, cutting cloth in the garment industry (several hundred layers at a time), welding auto bodies, and generating holograms.



Sam Ogden/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 40-17 A patient's head is scanned and mapped by (red) laser light in preparation for brain surgery. During the surgery, the laser-derived image of the head will be superimposed on the model of the brain shown on the monitor, to guide the surgical team into the region shown in green (lower right) on the model displayed on the screen.

How Lasers Work

Because the word "laser" is an acronym for "light amplification by the stimulated emission of radiation," you should not be surprised that stimulated emission is the key to laser operation. Einstein introduced this concept in 1917 in the paper where he explained the Planck formula for an ideal blackbody radiator (Eq. 38-14). Although the world had to wait until 1960 to see an operating laser, the groundwork for its development was put in place decades earlier.

Consider an isolated atom that can exist either in its state of lowest energy (its ground state), whose energy is E_0, or in a state of higher energy (an excited state), whose energy is E_x. Here are three processes by which the atom can move from one of these states to the other:

1. ***Absorption.*** Figure 40-18*a* shows the atom initially in its ground state. If the atom is placed in an electromagnetic field that is alternating at frequency f, the atom can absorb an amount of energy hf from that field and move to the higher-energy state. From the principle of conservation of energy we have

$$hf = E_x - E_0. \tag{40-28}$$

We call this process **absorption.**

2. ***Spontaneous emission.*** In Fig. 40-18*b* the atom is in its excited state and no external radiation is present. After a time, the atom will de-excite to its ground state, emitting a photon of energy hf in the process. We call this process **spontaneous emission**—*spontaneous* because the event is random and set by chance. The light from the filament of an ordinary lightbulb or any other common light source is generated in this way.

   Normally, the mean life of excited atoms before spontaneous emission occurs is about 10^{-8} s. However, for some excited states, this mean life is perhaps as much as 10^5 times longer. We call such long-lived states **metastable;** they play an important role in laser operation.

3. ***Stimulated emission.*** In Fig. 40-18*c* the atom is again in its excited state, but this time radiation with a frequency given by Eq. 40-28 is present. A photon of energy hf can stimulate the atom to move to its ground state, during which process the atom emits an additional photon, whose energy is also hf. We call this process **stimulated emission**—*stimulated* because the event is triggered by the external photon. The emitted photon is in every way identical to the stimulating photon. Thus, the waves associated with the photons have the same energy, phase, polarization, and direction of travel.

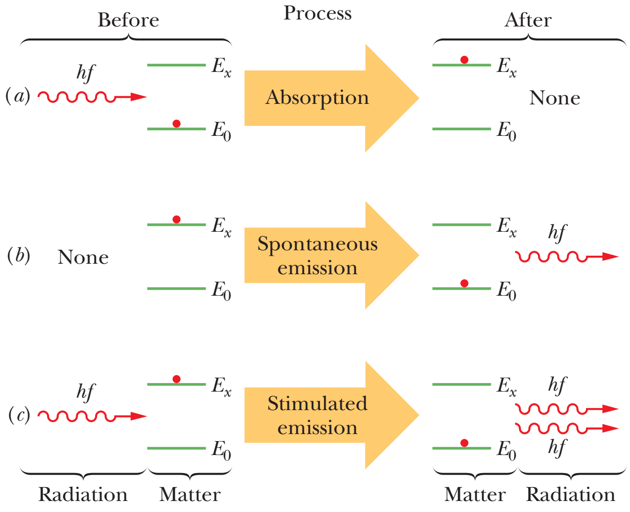


Figure 40-18 The interaction of radiation and matter in the processes of (*a*) absorption, (*b*) spontaneous emission, and (*c*) stimulated emission. An atom (matter) is represented by the red dot; the atom is in either a lower quantum state with energy E_0 or a higher quantum state with energy E_x. In (*a*) the atom absorbs a photon of energy hf from a passing light wave. In (*b*) it emits a light wave by emitting a photon of energy hf. In (*c*) a passing light wave with photon energy hf causes the atom to emit a photon of the same energy, increasing the energy of the light wave.

These are three ways that radiation (light) can interact with matter. The third way is the basis of lasing.

Figure 40-18*c* describes stimulated emission for a single atom. Suppose now that a sample contains a large number of atoms in thermal equilibrium at temperature T. Before any radiation is directed at the sample, a number N_0 of these atoms are in their ground state with energy E_0 and a number N_x are in a state of higher energy E_x. Ludwig Boltzmann showed that N_x is given in terms of N_0 by

$$N_x = N_0 e^{-(E_x - E_0)/kT}, \tag{40-29}$$

in which k is Boltzmann's constant. This equation seems reasonable. The quantity kT is the mean kinetic energy of an atom at temperature T. The higher the temperature, the more atoms—on average—will have been "bumped up" by thermal agitation (that is, by atom–atom collisions) to the higher energy state E_x. Also, because $E_x > E_0$, Eq. 40-29 requires that $N_x < N_0$; that is, there will always be fewer atoms in the excited state than in the ground state. This is what we expect if the level populations N_0 and N_x are determined only by the action of thermal agitation. Figure 40-19*a* illustrates this situation.

If we now flood the atoms of Fig. 40-19*a* with photons of energy $E_x - E_0$, photons will disappear via absorption by ground-state atoms and photons will be generated largely via stimulated emission of excited-state atoms. Einstein showed that the probabilities per atom for these two processes are identical. Thus, because there are more atoms in the ground state, the *net* effect will be the absorption of photons.

To produce laser light, we must have more photons emitted than absorbed; that is, we must have a situation in which stimulated emission dominates. Thus, we need more atoms in the excited state than in the ground state, as in Fig. 40-19*b*. However, because such a **population inversion** is not consistent with thermal equilibrium, we must think up clever ways to set up and maintain one.

The Helium–Neon Gas Laser

Figure 40-20 shows a common type of laser developed in 1961 by Ali Javan and his coworkers. The glass discharge tube is filled with a 20 : 80 mixture of helium and neon gases, neon being the medium in which laser action occurs.

Figure 40-21 shows simplified energy-level diagrams for the two types of atoms. An electric current passed through the helium–neon gas mixture serves—through collisions between helium atoms and electrons of the current—to raise many helium

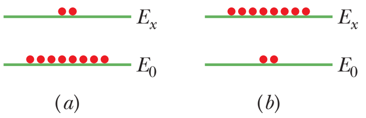


Figure 40-19 (*a*) The equilibrium distribution of atoms between the ground state E_0 and excited state E_x accounted for by thermal agitation. (*b*) An inverted population, obtained by special methods. Such a population inversion is essential for laser action.

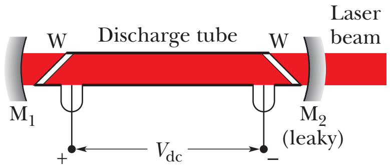
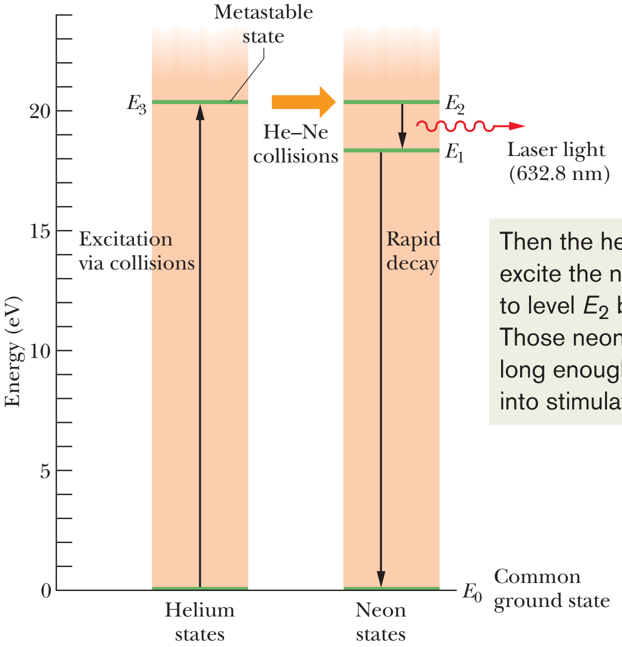


Figure 40-20 The elements of a helium–neon gas laser. An applied potential V_{dc} sends electrons through a discharge tube containing a mixture of helium gas and neon gas. Electrons collide with helium atoms, which then collide with neon atoms, which emit light along the length of the tube. The light passes through transparent windows W and reflects back and forth through the tube from mirrors M_1 and M_2 to cause more neon atom emissions. Some of the light leaks through mirror M_2 to form the laser beam.

The current (electrons) excite the helium atoms by collisions (but not the more massive neon atoms).



Then the helium atoms excite the neon atoms to level E_2 by collisions. Those neon atoms stay long enough to be forced into stimulated emission.

Figure 40-21 Five essential energy levels for helium and neon atoms in a helium–neon gas laser. Laser action occurs between levels E_2 and E_1 of neon when more atoms are at the E_2 level than at the E_1 level.

atoms to state E_3, which is metastable with a mean life of at least 1 μs. (The neon atoms are too massive to be excited by collisions with the (low-mass) electrons.)

The energy of helium state E_3 (20.61 eV) is very close to the energy of neon state E_2 (20.66 eV). Thus, when a metastable (E_3) helium atom and a ground-state (E_0) neon atom collide, the excitation energy of the helium atom is often transferred to the neon atom, which then moves to state E_2. In this manner, neon level E_2 (with a mean life of 170 ns) can become more heavily populated than neon level E_1 (which, with a mean life of only 10 ns, is almost empty).

This population inversion is relatively easy to set up because (1) initially there are essentially no neon atoms in state E_1, (2) the long mean life of helium level E_3 means that there is always a good chance that collisions will excite neon atoms to their E_2 level, and (3) once those neon atoms undergo stimulated emission and fall to their E_1 level, they almost immediately fall down to their ground state (via intermediate levels not shown) and are then ready to be re-excited by collisions.

Suppose now that a single photon is spontaneously emitted as a neon atom transfers from state E_2 to state E_1. Such a photon can trigger a stimulated emission event, which, in turn, can trigger other stimulated emission events. Through such a chain reaction, a coherent beam of laser light, moving parallel to the tube axis, can build up rapidly. This light, of wavelength 632.8 nm (red), moves through the discharge tube many times by successive reflections from mirrors M_1 and M_2 shown in Fig. 40-20, accumulating additional stimulated emission photons with each passage. M_1 is totally reflecting, but M_2 is slightly "leaky" so that a small fraction of the laser light escapes to form a useful external beam.

Checkpoint 3

The wavelength of light from laser *A* (a helium–neon gas laser) is 632.8 nm; that from laser *B* (a carbon dioxide gas laser) is 10.6 μm; that from laser *C* (a gallium arsenide semiconductor laser) is 840 nm. Rank these lasers according to the energy interval between the two quantum states responsible for laser action, greatest first.

Sample Problem 40.04 Population inversion in a laser

In the helium–neon laser of Fig. 40-20, laser action occurs between two excited states of the neon atom. However, in many lasers, laser action (*lasing*) occurs between the ground state and an excited state, as suggested in Fig. 40-19*b*.

(a) Consider such a laser that emits at wavelength $\lambda = 550$ nm. If a population inversion is not generated, what is the ratio of the population of atoms in state E_x to the population in the ground state E_0, with the atoms at room temperature?

KEY IDEAS

(1) The naturally occurring population ratio N_x/N_0 of the two states is due to thermal agitation of the gas atoms (Eq. 40-29):

$$N_x/N_0 = e^{-(E_x - E_0)/kT}. \tag{40-30}$$

To find N_x/N_0 with Eq. 40-30, we need to find the energy separation $E_x - E_0$ between the two states. (2) We can obtain $E_x - E_0$ from the given wavelength of 550 nm for the lasing between those two states.

Calculation: The lasing wavelength gives us

$$\begin{aligned} E_x - E_0 &= hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} \\ &= \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m/s})}{(550 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m})(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{J/eV})} \\ &= 2.26\ \mathrm{eV}. \end{aligned}$$

To solve Eq. 40-30, we also need the mean energy of thermal agitation kT for an atom at room temperature (assumed to be 300 K), which is

$$kT = (8.62 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{eV/K})(300\ \mathrm{K}) = 0.0259\ \mathrm{eV},$$

in which k is Boltzmann's constant.

Substituting the last two results into Eq. 40-30 gives us the population ratio at room temperature:

$$\begin{aligned} N_x/N_0 &= e^{-(2.26\ \mathrm{eV})/(0.0259\ \mathrm{eV})} \\ &\approx 1.3 \times 10^{-38}. \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

This is an extremely small number. It is not unreasonable, however. Atoms with a mean thermal agitation energy of only 0.0259 eV will not often impart an energy of 2.26 eV to another atom in a collision.

(b) For the conditions of (a), at what temperature would the ratio N_x/N_0 be 1/2?

Calculation: Now we want the temperature T such that thermal agitation has bumped enough neon atoms up to the higher-energy state to give $N_x/N_0 = 1/2$. Substituting that ratio into Eq. 40-30, taking the natural logarithm of both sides, and solving for T yield

$$T = \frac{E_x - E_0}{k(\ln 2)} = \frac{2.26\text{ eV}}{(8.62 \times 10^{-5}\text{ eV/K})(\ln 2)}$$
$$= 38\,000\text{ K}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

This is much hotter than the surface of the Sun. Thus, it is clear that if we are to invert the populations of these two levels, some specific mechanism for bringing this about is needed—that is, we must "pump" the atoms. No temperature, however high, will naturally generate a population inversion by thermal agitation.

Review & Summary

Some Properties of Atoms Atoms have quantized energies and can make quantum jumps between them. If a jump between a higher energy and a lower energy involves the emission or absorption of a photon, the frequency associated with the light is given by

$$hf = E_{\text{high}} - E_{\text{low}}. \tag{40-1}$$

States with the same value of quantum number n form a shell. States with the same values of quantum numbers n and ℓ form a subshell.

Orbital Angular Momentum and Magnetic Dipole Moments The magnitude of the orbital angular momentum of an electron trapped in an atom has quantized values given by

$$L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar, \qquad \text{for } \ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, (n-1), \tag{40-2}$$

where $\hbar$ is $h/2\pi$, ℓ is the orbital magnetic quantum number, and n is the electron's principal quantum number. The component L_z of the orbital angular momentum on a z axis is quantized and given by

$$L_z = m_\ell \hbar, \quad \text{for } m_\ell = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm \ell, \tag{40-3}$$

where m_ℓ is the orbital magnetic quantum number. The magnitude μ_{orb} of the orbital magnetic moment of the electron is quantized with the values given by

$$\mu_{\text{orb}} = \frac{e}{2m}\sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar, \tag{40-6}$$

where m is the electron mass. The component $\mu_{\text{orb},z}$ on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$\mu_{\text{orb},z} = -\frac{e}{2m} m_\ell \hbar = -m_\ell \mu_B, \tag{40-7}$$

where μ_B is the Bohr magneton:

$$\mu_B = \frac{eh}{4\pi m} = \frac{e\hbar}{2m} = 9.274 \times 10^{-24}\text{ J/T}. \tag{40-8}$$

Spin Angular Momentum and Magnetic Dipole Moment Every electron, whether trapped or free, has an intrinsic spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ with a magnitude that is quantized as

$$S = \sqrt{s(s + 1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } s = \tfrac{1}{2}, \tag{40-9}$$

where s is the spin quantum number. An electron is said to be a spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particle. The component S_z on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$S_z = m_s \hbar, \quad \text{for } m_s = \pm s = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}, \tag{40-10}$$

where m_s is the spin magnetic quantum number. Every electron, whether trapped or free, has an intrinsic spin magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$ with a magnitude that is quantized as

$$\mu_s = \frac{e}{m}\sqrt{s(s + 1)}\,\hbar, \quad \text{for } s = \tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{40-12}$$

The component $\mu_{s,z}$ on a z axis is also quantized according to

$$\mu_{s,z} = -2m_s\mu_B, \quad \text{for } m_s = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{40-13}$$

Stern–Gerlach Experiment The Stern–Gerlach experiment demonstrated that the magnetic moment of silver atoms is quantized, experimental proof that magnetic moments at the atomic level are quantized. An atom with magnetic dipole moment experiences a force in a nonuniform magnetic field. If the field changes at the rate of dB/dz along a z axis, then the force is along the z axis and is related to the component μ_z of the dipole moment:

$$F_z = \mu_z \frac{dB}{dz}. \tag{40-17}$$

A proton has an intrinsic spin angular momentum $\vec{S}$ and an intrinsic magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ that are in the same direction.

Magnetic Resonance The magnetic dipole moment of a proton in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ along a z axis has two quantized components on that axis: spin up (μ_z is in the direction $\vec{B}$) and spin down (μ_z is in the opposite direction). Contrary to the situation with an electron, spin up is the lower energy orientation; the difference between the two orientations is $2\mu_z B$. The energy required of a photon to spin-flip the proton between the two orientations is

$$hf = 2\mu_z B. \tag{40-22}$$

The field is the vector sum of an external field set up by equipment and an internal field set up by the atoms and nuclei surrounding the proton. Detection of spin-flips can lead to nuclear magnetic resonance spectra by which specific substances can be identified.

Pauli Exclusion Principle Electrons in atoms and other traps obey the Pauli exclusion principle, which requires that no two electrons in a trap can have the same set of quantum numbers.

Building the Periodic Table In the periodic table, the elements are listed in order of increasing atomic number Z, where Z is the number of protons in the nucleus. For a neutral atom, Z is also the number of electrons. States with the same value of quantum number n form a shell. States with the same values of quantum numbers n and ℓ form a subshell. A closed shell and a closed subshell contain the maximum number of electrons as allowed by the Pauli exclusion principle. The net angular momentum and net magnetic moment of such closed structures is zero.

X Rays and the Numbering of the Elements When a beam of high-energy electrons impacts a target, the electrons can lose their energy by emitting x rays when they scatter from atoms in the target. The emission is over a range of wavelengths, said to be a continuous spectrum. The shortest wavelength in the spectrum is the cutoff wavelength $\lambda_{\min}$, which is emitted when an incident electron loses its full kinetic energy K_0 in a single scattering event, with a single x-ray emission:

$$\lambda_{\min} = \frac{hc}{K_0}.$$

The characteristic x-ray spectrum is produced when incident electrons eject low-lying electrons in the target atoms and electrons from upper levels jump down to the resulting holes, emitting light. A Moseley plot is a graph of the square root of the characteristic-emission frequencies $\sqrt{f}$ versus atomic number Z of the target atoms. The straight-line plot reveals that the position of an element in the periodic table is set by Z and not by the atomic weight.

Lasers In stimulated emission, an atom in an excited state can be induced to de-excite to a lower energy state by emitting a photon if an identical photon passes the atom. The light emitted in stimulated emission is in phase with and travels in the direction of the light causing the emission.

A laser can emit light via stimulated emission provided that its atoms are in population inversion. That is, for the pair of levels involved in the stimulated emission, more atoms must be in the upper level than the lower level so that there is more stimulated emission than just absorption.

Questions

1 How many (a) subshells and (b) electron states are in the $n = 2$ shell? How many (c) subshells and (d) electron states are in the $n = 5$ shell?

2 An electron in an atom of gold is in a state with $n = 4$. Which of these values of ℓ are possible for it: $-3, 0, 2, 3, 4, 5$?

3 Label these statements as true or false: (a) One (and only one) of these subshells cannot exist: $2p, 4f, 3d, 1p$. (b) The number of values of m_ℓ that are allowed depends only on ℓ and not on n. (c) There are four subshells with $n = 4$. (d) The smallest value of n for a given value of ℓ is $\ell + 1$. (e) All states with $\ell = 0$ also have $m_\ell = 0$. (f) There are n subshells for each value of n.

4 An atom of uranium has closed $6p$ and $7s$ subshells. Which subshell has the greater number of electrons?

5 An atom of silver has closed $3d$ and $4d$ subshells. Which subshell has the greater number of electrons, or do they have the same number?

6 From which atom of each of the following pairs is it easier to remove an electron: (a) krypton or bromine, (b) rubidium or cerium, (c) helium or hydrogen?

7 An electron in a mercury atom is in the $3d$ subshell. Which of the following m_ℓ values are possible for it: $-3, -1, 0, 1, 2$?

8 Figure 40-22 shows three points at which a spin-up electron can be placed in a nonuniform magnetic field (there is a gradient along the z axis). (a) Rank the three points according to the energy U of the electron's intrinsic magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}_s$, most positive first. (b) What is the direction of the force on the electron due to the magnetic field if the spin-up electron is at point 2?

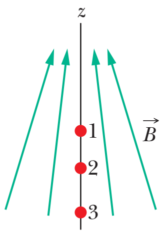


Figure 40-22 Question 8.

9 The K_α x-ray line for any element arises because of a transition between the K shell ($n = 1$) and the L shell ($n = 2$). Figure 40-13 shows this line (for a molybdenum target) occurring at a single wavelength. With higher resolution, however, the line splits into several wavelength components because the L shell does not have a unique energy. (a) How many components does the K_α line have? (b) Similarly, how many components does the K_β line have?

10 Consider the elements krypton and rubidium. (a) Which is more suitable for use in a Stern–Gerlach experiment of the kind described in connection with Fig. 40-8? (b) Which, if either, would not work at all?

11 On which quantum numbers does the energy of an electron depend in (a) a hydrogen atom and (b) a vanadium atom?

12 Which (if any) of the following are essential for laser action to occur between two energy levels of an atom? (a) There are more atoms in the upper level than in the lower. (b) The upper level is metastable. (c) The lower level is metastable. (d) The lower level is the ground state of the atom. (e) The lasing medium is a gas.

13 Figure 40-21 shows partial energy-level diagrams for the helium and neon atoms that are involved in the operation of a helium–neon laser. It is said that a helium atom in state E_3 can collide with a neon atom in its ground state and raise the neon atom to state E_2. The energy of helium state E_3 (20.61 eV) is close to, but not exactly equal to, the energy of neon state E_2 (20.66 eV). How can the energy transfer take place if these energies are not *exactly* equal?

14 The x-ray spectrum of Fig. 40-13 is for 35.0 keV electrons striking a molybdenum ($Z = 42$) target. If you substitute a silver ($Z = 47$) target for the molybdenum target, will (a) $\lambda_{\min}$, (b) the wavelength for the K_α line, and (c) the wavelength for the K_β line increase, decrease, or remain unchanged?

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
WWW Worked-out solution is at
ILW Interactive solution is at
http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com

Module 40-1 Properties of Atoms

•1 An electron in a hydrogen atom is in a state with $\ell = 5$. What is the minimum possible value of the semiclassical angle between $\vec{L}$ and L_z?

•2 How many electron states are there in a shell defined by the quantum number $n = 5$?

•3 (a) What is the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum in a state with $\ell = 3$? (b) What is the magnitude of its largest projection on an imposed z axis?

•4 How many electron states are there in the following shells: (a) $n = 4$, (b) $n = 1$, (c) $n = 3$, (d) $n = 2$?

•5 (a) How many ℓ values are associated with $n = 3$? (b) How many m_ℓ values are associated with $\ell = 1$?

•6 How many electron states are in these subshells: (a) $n = 4$, $\ell = 3$; (b) $n = 3$, $\ell = 1$; (c) $n = 4$, $\ell = 1$; (d) $n = 2$, $\ell = 0$?

•7 An electron in a multielectron atom has $m_\ell = +4$. For this electron, what are (a) the value of ℓ, (b) the smallest possible value of n, and (c) the number of possible values of m_s?

•8 In the subshell $\ell = 3$, (a) what is the greatest (most positive) m_ℓ value, (b) how many states are available with the greatest m_ℓ value, and (c) what is the total number of states available in the subshell?

••9 **SSM** **WWW** An electron is in a state with $\ell = 3$. (a) What multiple of $\hbar$ gives the magnitude of $\vec{L}$? (b) What multiple of μ_B gives the magnitude of $\vec{\mu}$? (c) What is the largest possible value of m_ℓ, (d) what multiple of $\hbar$ gives the corresponding value of L_z, and (e) what multiple of μ_B gives the corresponding value of $\mu_{\text{orb},z}$? (f) What is the value of the semiclassical angle θ between the directions of L_z and $\vec{L}$? What is the value of angle θ for (g) the second largest possible value of m_ℓ and (h) the smallest (that is, most negative) possible value of m_ℓ?

••10 An electron is in a state with $n = 3$. What are (a) the number of possible values of ℓ, (b) the number of possible values of m_ℓ, (c) the number of possible values of m_s, (d) the number of states in the $n = 3$ shell, and (e) the number of subshells in the $n = 3$ shell?

••11 **SSM** If orbital angular momentum $\vec{L}$ is measured along, say, a z axis to obtain a value for L_z, show that

$$(L_x^2 + L_y^2)^{1/2} = [\ell(\ell + 1) - m_\ell^2]^{1/2}\hbar$$

is the most that can be said about the other two components of the orbital angular momentum.

•••12 **GO** A magnetic field is applied to a freely floating uniform iron sphere with radius $R = 2.00$ mm. The sphere initially had no net magnetic moment, but the field aligns 12% of the magnetic moments of the atoms (that is, 12% of the magnetic moments of the loosely bound electrons in the sphere, with one such electron per atom). The magnetic moment of those aligned electrons is the sphere's intrinsic magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}_s$. What is the sphere's resulting angular speed ω?

Module 40-2 The Stern–Gerlach Experiment

•13 **SSM** What is the acceleration of a silver atom as it passes through the deflecting magnet in the Stern–Gerlach experiment of Fig. 40-8 if the magnetic field gradient is 1.4 T/mm?

•14 Suppose that a hydrogen atom in its ground state moves 80 cm through and perpendicular to a vertical magnetic field that has a magnetic field gradient $dB/dz = 1.6 \times 10^2$ T/m. (a) What is the magnitude of force exerted by the field gradient on the atom due to the magnetic moment of the atom's electron, which we take to be 1 Bohr magneton? (b) What is the vertical displacement of the atom in the 80 cm of travel if its speed is 1.2×10^5 m/s?

•15 Calculate the (a) smaller and (b) larger value of the semiclassical angle between the electron spin angular momentum vector and the magnetic field in a Stern–Gerlach experiment. Bear in mind that the orbital angular momentum of the valence electron in the silver atom is zero.

•16 Assume that in the Stern–Gerlach experiment as described for neutral silver atoms, the magnetic field $\vec{B}$ has a magnitude of 0.50 T. (a) What is the energy difference between the magnetic moment orientations of the silver atoms in the two subbeams? (b) What is the frequency of the radiation that would induce a transition between these two states? (c) What is the wavelength of this radiation, and (d) to what part of the electromagnetic spectrum does it belong?

Module 40-3 Magnetic Resonance

•17 In an NMR experiment, the RF source oscillates at 34 MHz and magnetic resonance of the hydrogen atoms in the sample being investigated occurs when the external field $\vec{B}_{\text{ext}}$ has magnitude 0.78 T. Assume that $\vec{B}_{\text{int}}$ and $\vec{B}_{\text{ext}}$ are in the same direction and take the proton magnetic moment component μ_z to be 1.41×10^{-26} J/T. What is the magnitude of $\vec{B}_{\text{int}}$?

•18 A hydrogen atom in its ground state actually has two possible, closely spaced energy levels because the electron is in the magnetic field $\vec{B}$ of the proton (the nucleus). Accordingly, an energy is associated with the orientation of the electron's magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}$ relative to $\vec{B}$, and the electron is said to be either spin up (higher energy) or spin down (lower energy) in that field. If the electron is excited to the higher-energy level, it can de-excite by spin-flipping and emitting a photon. The wavelength associated with that photon is 21 cm. (Such a process occurs extensively in the Milky Way galaxy, and reception of the 21 cm radiation by radio telescopes reveals where hydrogen gas lies between stars.) What is the effective magnitude of $\vec{B}$ as experienced by the electron in the ground-state hydrogen atom?

•19 What is the wavelength associated with a photon that will induce a transition of an electron spin from parallel to antiparallel orientation in a magnetic field of magnitude 0.200 T? Assume that $\ell = 0$.

Module 40-4 Exclusion Principle and Multiple Electrons in a Trap

•20 A rectangular corral of widths $L_x = L$ and $L_y = 2L$ contains seven electrons. What multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of the ground state of this system? Assume that the electrons do not interact with one another, and do not neglect spin.

•21 Seven electrons are trapped in a one-dimensional infinite potential well of width L. What multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of the ground state of this system? Assume that the electrons do not interact with one another, and do not neglect spin.

•22 GO Figure 40-23 is an energy-level diagram for a fictitious infinite potential well that contains one electron. The number of degenerate states of the levels are indicated: "non" means nondegenerate (which includes the ground state of the electron), "double" means 2 states, and "triple" means 3 states. We put a total of 11 electrons in the well. If the electrostatic forces between the electrons can be neglected, what multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of the first excited state of the 11-electron system?

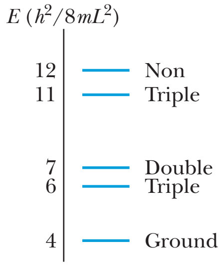


Figure 40-23 Problem 22.

••23 GO SSM A cubical box of widths $L_x = L_y = L_z = L$ contains eight electrons. What multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of the ground state of this system? Assume that the electrons do not interact with one another, and do not neglect spin.

••24 GO For Problem 20, what multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of (a) the first excited state, (b) the second excited state, and (c) the third excited state of the system of seven electrons? (d) Construct an energy-level diagram for the lowest four energy levels.

••25 GO For the situation of Problem 21, what multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of (a) the first excited state, (b) the second excited state, and (c) the third excited state of the system of seven electrons? (d) Construct an energy-level diagram for the lowest four energy levels of the system.

•••26 GO For the situation of Problem 23, what multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of (a) the first excited state, (b) the second excited state, and (c) the third excited state of the system of eight electrons? (d) Construct an energy-level diagram for the lowest four energy levels of the system.

Module 40-5 Building the Periodic Table

•27 SSM WWW Two of the three electrons in a lithium atom have quantum numbers (n, ℓ, m_ℓ, m_s) of $(1, 0, 0, +\frac{1}{2})$ and $(1, 0, 0, -\frac{1}{2})$. What quantum numbers are possible for the third electron if the atom is (a) in the ground state and (b) in the first excited state?

•28 Show that the number of states with the same quantum number n is $2n^2$.

•29 GO A recently named element is darmstadtium (Ds), which has 110 electrons. Assume that you can put the 110 electrons into the atomic shells one by one and can neglect any electron–electron interaction. With the atom in ground state, what is the spectroscopic notation for the quantum number ℓ for the last electron?

•30 For a helium atom in its ground state, what are quantum numbers (n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s) for the (a) spin-up electron and (b) spin-down electron?

•31 Consider the elements selenium ($Z = 34$), bromine ($Z = 35$), and krypton ($Z = 36$). In their part of the periodic table, the subshells of the electronic states are filled in the sequence

$$1s\ 2s\ 2p\ 3s\ 3p\ 3d\ 4s\ 4p\ \ldots.$$

What are (a) the highest occupied subshell for selenium and (b) the number of electrons in it, (c) the highest occupied subshell for bromine and (d) the number of electrons in it, and (e) the highest occupied subshell for krypton and (f) the number of electrons in it?

•32 Suppose two electrons in an atom have quantum numbers $n = 2$ and $\ell = 1$. (a) How many states are possible for those two electrons? (Keep in mind that the electrons are indistinguishable.) (b) If the Pauli exclusion principle did not apply to the electrons, how many states would be possible?

Module 40-6 X Rays and the Ordering of the Elements

•33 Through what minimum potential difference must an electron in an x-ray tube be accelerated so that it can produce x rays with a wavelength of 0.100 nm?

••34 The wavelength of the K_α line from iron is 193 pm. What is the energy difference between the two states of the iron atom that give rise to this transition?

••35 SSM WWW In Fig. 40-13, the x rays shown are produced when 35.0 keV electrons strike a molybdenum ($Z = 42$) target. If the accelerating potential is maintained at this value but a silver ($Z = 47$) target is used instead, what values of (a) $\lambda_{\min}$, (b) the wavelength of the K_α line, and (c) the wavelength of the K_β line result? The K, L, and M atomic x-ray levels for silver (compare Fig. 40-15) are 25.51, 3.56, and 0.53 keV.

••36 When electrons bombard a molybdenum target, they produce both continuous and characteristic x rays as shown in Fig. 40-13. In that figure the kinetic energy of the incident electrons is 35.0 keV. If the accelerating potential is increased to 50.0 keV, (a) what is the value of $\lambda_{\min}$, and (b) do the wavelengths of the K_α and K_β lines increase, decrease, or remain the same?

••37 Show that a moving electron cannot spontaneously change into an x-ray photon in free space. A third body (atom or nucleus) must be present. Why is it needed? (*Hint:* Examine the conservation of energy and momentum.)

••38 Here are the K_α wavelengths of a few elements:

Element	λ (pm)	Element	λ (pm)
Ti	275	Co	179
V	250	Ni	166
Cr	229	Cu	154
Mn	210	Zn	143
Fe	193	Ga	134

Make a Moseley plot (like that in Fig. 40-16) from these data and verify that its slope agrees with the value given for C in Module 40-6.

••39 SSM Calculate the ratio of the wavelength of the K_α line for niobium (Nb) to that for gallium (Ga). Take needed data from the periodic table of Appendix G.

••40 (a) From Eq. 40-26, what is the ratio of the photon energies due to K_α transitions in two atoms whose atomic numbers are Z and Z'? (b) What is this ratio for uranium and aluminum? (c) For uranium and lithium?

••41 The binding energies of K-shell and L-shell electrons in copper are 8.979 and 0.951 keV, respectively. If a K_α x ray from copper is incident on a sodium chloride crystal and gives a first-order Bragg reflection at an angle of 74.1° measured relative to parallel planes of sodium atoms, what is the spacing between these parallel planes?

••42 From Fig. 40-13, calculate approximately the energy difference $E_L - E_M$ for molybdenum. Compare it with the value that may be obtained from Fig. 40-15.

••43 A tungsten ($Z = 74$) target is bombarded by electrons in an x-ray tube. The K, L, and M energy levels for tungsten (compare Fig. 40-15) have the energies 69.5, 11.3, and 2.30 keV, respectively. (a) What is the minimum value of the accelerating potential that will permit the production of the characteristic K_α and K_β lines of tungsten? (b) For this same accelerating potential, what is $\lambda_{\min}$? What are the (c) K_α and (d) K_β wavelengths?

••44 A 20 keV electron is brought to rest by colliding twice with target nuclei as in Fig. 40-14. (Assume the nuclei remain stationary.) The wavelength associated with the photon emitted in the second collision is 130 pm greater than that associated with the photon emitted in the first collision. (a) What is the kinetic energy of the electron after the first collision? What are (b) the wavelength λ_1 and (c) the energy E_1 associated with the first photon? What are (d) λ_2 and (e) E_2 associated with the second photon?

••45 X rays are produced in an x-ray tube by electrons accelerated through an electric potential difference of 50.0 kV. Let K_0 be the kinetic energy of an electron at the end of the acceleration. The electron collides with a target nucleus (assume the nucleus remains stationary) and then has kinetic energy $K_1 = 0.500K_0$. (a) What wavelength is associated with the photon that is emitted? The electron collides with another target nucleus (assume it, too, remains stationary) and then has kinetic energy $K_2 = 0.500K_1$. (b) What wavelength is associated with the photon that is emitted?

•••46 Determine the constant C in Eq. 40-27 to five significant figures by finding C in terms of the fundamental constants in Eq. 40-24 and then using data from Appendix B to evaluate those constants. Using this value of C in Eq. 40-27, determine the theoretical energy E_{theory} of the K_α photon for the low-mass elements listed in the following table. The table includes the value (eV) of the measured energy E_{exp} of the K_α photon for each listed element. The percentage deviation between E_{theory} and E_{exp} can be calculated as

$$\text{percentage deviation} = \frac{E_{\text{theory}} - E_{\text{exp}}}{E_{\text{exp}}}\,100.$$

What is the percentage deviation for (a) Li, (b) Be, (c) B, (d) C, (e) N, (f) O, (g) F, (h) Ne, (i) Na, and (j) Mg?

Li	54.3	O	524.9
Be	108.5	F	676.8
B	183.3	Ne	848.6
C	277	Na	1041
N	392.4	Mg	1254

(There is actually more than one K_α ray because of the splitting of the L energy level, but that effect is negligible for the elements listed here.)

Module 40-7 Lasers

•47 The active volume of a laser constructed of the semiconductor GaAlAs is only 200 μm^3 (smaller than a grain of sand), and yet the laser can continuously deliver 5.0 mW of power at a wavelength of 0.80 μm. At what rate does it generate photons?

•48 A high-powered laser beam ($\lambda = 600$ nm) with a beam diameter of 12 cm is aimed at the Moon, 3.8×10^5 km distant. The beam spreads only because of diffraction. The angular location of the edge of the central diffraction disk (see Eq. 36-12) is given by

$$\sin\theta = \frac{1.22\lambda}{d},$$

where d is the diameter of the beam aperture. What is the diameter of the central diffraction disk on the Moon's surface?

•49 Assume that lasers are available whose wavelengths can be precisely "tuned" to anywhere in the visible range—that is, in the range 450 nm $< \lambda <$ 650 nm. If every television channel occupies a bandwidth of 10 MHz, how many channels can be accommodated within this wavelength range?

•50 A hypothetical atom has only two atomic energy levels, separated by 3.2 eV. Suppose that at a certain altitude in the atmosphere of a star there are 6.1×10^{13}/cm^3 of these atoms in the higher-energy state and 2.5×10^{15}/cm^3 in the lower-energy state. What is the temperature of the star's atmosphere at that altitude?

•51 SSM A hypothetical atom has energy levels uniformly separated by 1.2 eV. At a temperature of 2000 K, what is the ratio of the number of atoms in the 13th excited state to the number in the 11th excited state?

•52 GO A laser emits at 424 nm in a single pulse that lasts 0.500 μs. The power of the pulse is 2.80 MW. If we assume that the atoms contributing to the pulse underwent stimulated emission only once during the 0.500 μs, how many atoms contributed?

•53 A helium–neon laser emits laser light at a wavelength of 632.8 nm and a power of 2.3 mW. At what rate are photons emitted by this device?

•54 A certain gas laser can emit light at wavelength 550 nm, which involves population inversion between ground state and an excited state. At room temperature, how many moles of neon are needed to put 10 atoms in that excited state by thermal agitation?

•55 A pulsed laser emits light at a wavelength of 694.4 nm. The pulse duration is 12 ps, and the energy per pulse is 0.150 J. (a) What is the length of the pulse? (b) How many photons are emitted in each pulse?

•56 A population inversion for two energy levels is often described by assigning a negative Kelvin temperature to the system. What negative temperature would describe a system in which the population of the upper energy level exceeds that of the lower level by 10% and the energy difference between the two levels is 2.26 eV?

••57 A hypothetical atom has two energy levels, with a transition wavelength between them of 580 nm. In a particular sample at 300 K, 4.0×10^{20} such atoms are in the state of lower energy. (a) How many atoms are in the upper state, assuming conditions of thermal equilibrium? (b) Suppose, instead, that 3.0×10^{20} of these atoms are "pumped" into the upper state by an external process, with 1.0×10^{20} atoms remaining in the lower state. What is the maximum energy that could be released by the atoms in a single laser pulse if each atom jumps once between those two states (either via absorption or via stimulated emission)?

••58 The mirrors in the laser of Fig. 40-20, which are separated by 8.0 cm, form an optical cavity in which standing waves of laser light can be set up. Each standing wave has an integral number n of half wavelengths in the 8.0 cm length, where n is large and the waves differ slightly in wavelength. Near $\lambda = 533$ nm, how far apart in wavelength are the standing waves?

••59 Figure 40-24 shows the energy levels of two types of atoms. Atoms A are in one tube, and atoms B are in another tube. The energies (relative to a ground-state energy of zero) are indicated; the average lifetime of atoms in each level is also indicated. All the atoms are initially pumped to levels higher than the levels shown in the figure. The atoms then drop down through the levels, and many become "stuck" on certain levels, leading to population inversion and lasing. The light emitted by A illuminates B and can cause stimulated emission of B. What is the energy per photon of that stimulated emission of B?

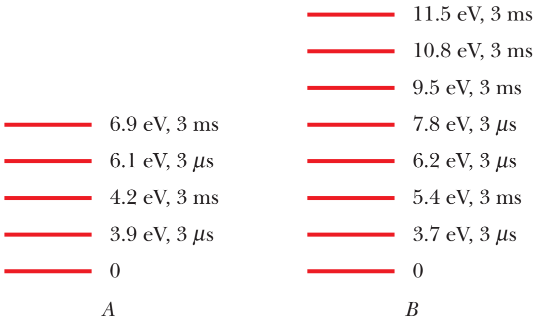


Figure 40-24 Problem 59.

••60 The beam from an argon laser (of wavelength 515 nm) has a diameter d of 3.00 mm and a continuous energy output rate of 5.00 W. The beam is focused onto a diffuse surface by a lens whose focal length f is 3.50 cm. A diffraction pattern such as that of Fig. 36-10 is formed, the radius of the central disk being given by

$$R = \frac{1.22\, f\lambda}{d}$$

(see Eq. 36-12 and Fig. 36-14). The central disk can be shown to contain 84% of the incident power. (a) What is the radius of the central disk? (b) What is the average intensity (power per unit area) in the incident beam? (c) What is the average intensity in the central disk?

••61 The active medium in a particular laser that generates laser light at a wavelength of 694 nm is 6.00 cm long and 1.00 cm in diameter. (a) Treat the medium as an optical resonance cavity analogous to a closed organ pipe. How many standing-wave nodes are there along the laser axis? (b) By what amount Δf would the beam frequency have to shift to increase this number by one? (c) Show that Δf is just the inverse of the travel time of laser light for one round trip back and forth along the laser axis. (d) What is the corresponding fractional frequency shift $\Delta f/f$? The appropriate index of refraction of the lasing medium (a ruby crystal) is 1.75.

••62 Ruby lases at a wavelength of 694 nm. A certain ruby crystal has 4.00×10^{19} Cr ions (which are the atoms that lase). The lasing transition is between the first excited state and the ground state, and the output is a light pulse lasting 2.00 μs. As the pulse begins, 60.0% of the Cr ions are in the first excited state and the rest are in the ground state. What is the average power emitted during the pulse? (*Hint:* Don't just ignore the ground-state ions.)

Additional Problems

63 Figure 40-25 is an energy-level diagram for a fictitious three-dimensional infinite potential well that contains one electron. The number of degenerate states of the levels are indicated: "non" means nondegenerate (which includes the ground state) and "triple" means 3 states. If we put a total of 22 electrons in the well, what multiple of $h^2/8mL^2$ gives the energy of the ground state of the 22-electron system? Assume that the electrostatic forces between the electrons are negligible.

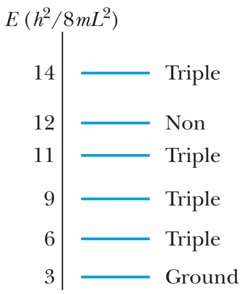


Figure 40-25 Problem 63.

64 *Martian CO_2 laser.* Where sunlight shines on the atmosphere of Mars, carbon dioxide molecules at an altitude of about 75 km undergo natural laser action. The energy levels involved in the action are shown in Fig. 40-26; population inversion occurs between energy levels E_2 and E_1. (a) What wavelength of sunlight excites the molecules in the lasing action? (b) At what wavelength does lasing occur? (c) In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum do the excitation and lasing wavelengths lie?

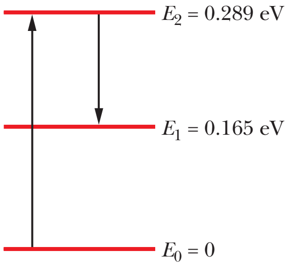


Figure 40-26 Problem 64.

65 Excited sodium atoms emit two closely spaced spectrum lines called the *sodium doublet* (Fig. 40-27) with wavelengths 588.995 nm and 589.592 nm. (a) What is the difference in energy between the two upper energy levels ($n = 3$, $\ell = 1$)? (b) This energy difference occurs because the electron's spin magnetic moment can be oriented either parallel or antiparallel to the internal magnetic field associated with the electron's orbital motion. Use your result in (a) to find the magnitude of this internal magnetic field.

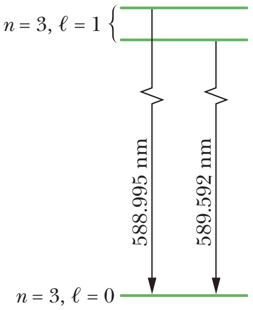


Figure 40-27 Problem 65.

66 *Comet stimulated emission.* When a comet approaches the Sun, the increased warmth evaporates water from the ice on the surface of the comet nucleus, producing a thin atmosphere of water vapor around the nucleus. Sunlight can then dissociate H_2O molecules in the vapor to H atoms and OH molecules. The sunlight can also excite the OH molecules to higher energy levels.

When the comet is still relatively far from the Sun, the sunlight causes equal excitation to the E_2 and E_1 levels (Fig. 40-28*a*). Hence, there is no population inversion between the two levels. However, as the comet approaches the Sun, the excitation to the E_1 level decreases and population inversion occurs. The reason has to do with one of the many wavelengths—said to be *Fraunhofer lines*—that are missing in sunlight because, as the light travels outward through the Sun's atmosphere, those particular wavelengths are absorbed by the atmosphere.

As a comet approaches the Sun, the Doppler effect due to the comet's speed relative to the Sun shifts the Fraunhofer lines in wavelength, apparently overlapping one of them with the wavelength required for excitation to the E_1 level in OH molecules. Population inversion then occurs in those molecules, and they radiate stimulated emission (Fig. 40-28*b*). For example, as comet Kouhoutek approached the Sun in December 1973 and January 1974, it radiated stimulated emission at about 1666 MHz during mid-January. (a) What was the energy difference $E_2 - E_1$ for that emission? (b) In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum was the emission?

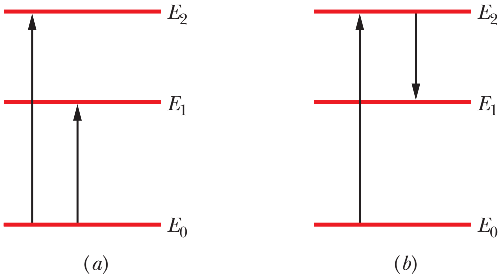


Figure 40-28 Problem 66.

67 Show that the cutoff wavelength (in picometers) in the continuous x-ray spectrum from any target is given by $\lambda_{\min} = 1240/V$, where V is the potential difference (in kilovolts) through which the electrons are accelerated before they strike the target.

68 By measuring the go-and-return time for a laser pulse to travel from an Earth-bound observatory to a reflector on the Moon, it is possible to measure the separation between these bodies. (a) What is the predicted value of this time? (b) The separation can be measured to a precision of about 15 cm. To what uncertainty in travel time does this correspond? (c) If the laser beam forms a spot on the Moon 3 km in diameter, what is the angular divergence of the beam?

69 SSM Can an incoming intercontinental ballistic missile be destroyed by an intense laser beam? A beam of intensity 10^8 W/m^2 would probably burn into and destroy a nonspinning missile in 1 s. (a) If the laser had 5.0 MW power, 3.0 μm wavelength, and a 4.0 m beam diameter (a very powerful laser indeed), would it destroy a missile at a distance of 3000 km? (b) If the wavelength could be changed, what maximum value would work? Use the equation for the central diffraction maximum as given by Eq. 36-12 ($\sin\theta = 1.22\lambda/d$).

70 A molybdenum ($Z = 42$) target is bombarded with 35.0 keV electrons and the x-ray spectrum of Fig. 40-13 results. The K_β and K_α wavelengths are 63.0 and 71.0 pm, respectively. What photon energy corresponds to the (a) K_β and (b) K_α radiation? The two radiations are to be filtered through one of the substances in the following table such that the substance absorbs the K_β line more strongly than the K_α line. A substance will absorb radiation x_1 more strongly than it absorbs radiation x_2 if a photon of x_1 has enough energy to eject a K electron from an atom of the substance but a photon of x_2 does not. The table gives the ionization energy of the K electron in molybdenum and four other substances. Which substance in the table will serve (c) best and (d) second best as the filter?

	Zr	Nb	Mo	Tc	Ru
Z	40	40	42	43	44
E_K (keV)	18.00	18.99	20.00	21.04	22.12

71 An electron in a multielectron atom is known to have the quantum number $\ell = 3$. What are its possible n, m_ℓ, and m_s quantum numbers?

72 Show that if the 63 electrons in an atom of europium were assigned to shells according to the "logical" sequence of quantum numbers, this element would be chemically similar to sodium.

73 SSM Lasers can be used to generate pulses of light whose durations are as short as 10 fs. (a) How many wavelengths of light ($\lambda = 500$ nm) are contained in such a pulse? (b) In

$$\frac{10\text{ fs}}{1\text{ s}} = \frac{1\text{ s}}{X},$$

what is the missing quantity X (in years)?

74 Show that $\hbar = 1.06 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s} = 6.59 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{eV}\cdot\text{s}$.

75 Suppose that the electron had no spin and that the Pauli exclusion principle still held. Which, if any, of the present noble gases would remain in that category?

76 (A correspondence principle problem.) Estimate (a) the quantum number ℓ for the orbital motion of Earth around the Sun and (b) the number of allowed orientations of the plane of Earth's orbit. (c) Find $\theta_{\min}$, the half-angle of the smallest cone that can be swept out by a perpendicular to Earth's orbit as Earth revolves around the Sun.

77 Knowing that the minimum x-ray wavelength produced by 40.0 keV electrons striking a target is 31.1 pm, determine the Planck constant h.

78 Consider an atom with two closely spaced excited states A and B. If the atom jumps to ground state from A or from B, it emits a wavelength of 500 nm or 510 nm, respectively. What is the energy difference between states A and B?

79 In 1911, Ernest Rutherford modeled an atom as being a point of positive charge Ze surrounded by a negative charge $-Ze$ uniformly distributed in a sphere of radius R centered at the point. At distance r within the sphere, the electric potential is

$$V = \frac{Ze}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\left(\frac{1}{r} - \frac{3}{2R} + \frac{r^2}{2R^3}\right).$$

(a) From this formula, determine the magnitude of electric field for $0 \le r \le R$. What are the (b) electric field and (c) potential for $r \ge R$?

CHAPTER 41

Conduction of Electricity in Solids

41-1 THE ELECTRICAL PROPERTIES OF METALS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

41.01 Identify the three basic properties of crystalline solids and sketch unit cells for them.

41.02 Distinguish insulators, metals, and semiconductors.

41.03 With sketches, explain the transition of an energy-level diagram for a single atom to an energy-band diagram for many atoms.

41.04 Draw a band–gap diagram for an insulator, indicating the filled and empty bands and explaining what prevents the electrons from participating in a current.

41.05 Draw a band–gap diagram for a metal, and explain what feature, in contrast to an insulator, allows electrons to participate in a current.

41.06 Identify the Fermi level, Fermi energy, and Fermi speed.

41.07 Distinguish monovalent atoms, bivalent atoms, and trivalent atoms.

41.08 For a conducting material, apply the relationships between the number density n of conduction electrons and the material's density, volume V, and molar mass M.

41.09 Identify that in a metal's partially filled band, thermal agitation can jump some of the conduction electrons to higher energy levels.

41.10 For a given energy level in a band, calculate the density of states $N(E)$ and identify that it is actually a double density (per volume and per energy).

41.11 Find the number of states per unit volume in a range ΔE at height E in a band by integrating $N(E)$ over that range or, if ΔE is small relative to E, by evaluating the product $N(E)\,\Delta E$.

41.12 For a given energy level, calculate the probability $P(E)$ that the level is occupied by electrons.

41.13 Identify that probability $P(E)$ is 0.5 at the Fermi level.

41.14 At a given energy level, calculate the density $N_o(E)$ of occupied states.

41.15 For a given range in energy levels, calculate the number of states and the number of occupied states.

41.16 Sketch graphs of the density of states $N(E)$, occupancy probability $P(E)$, and the density of occupied states $N_o(E)$, all versus height in a band.

41.17 Apply the relationship between the Fermi energy E_F and the number density of conduction electrons n.

Key Ideas

- Crystalline solids can be broadly divided into insulators, metals, and semiconductors.

- The quantized energy levels for a crystalline solid form bands that are separated by gaps.

- In a metal, the highest band that contains any electrons is only partially filled, and the highest filled level at a temperature of $0\ \mathrm{K}$ is called the Fermi level E_F.

- The electrons in the partially filled band are the conduction electrons, and their number density (number per unit volume) is

$$n = \frac{\text{material's density}}{M/N_A},$$

where M is the material's molar mass and N_A is Avogadro's number.

- The number density of states of the allowed energy levels per unit volume and per unit energy interval is

$$N(E) = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} E^{1/2},$$

where m is the electron mass and E is the energy *in joules* at which $N(E)$ is to be evaluated.

- The occupancy probability $P(E)$ is the probability that a given available state will be occupied by an electron:

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{(E-E_F)/kT} + 1}.$$

- The density of occupied states $N_o(E)$ is given by the product of the density of states function and the occupancy probability function:

$$N_o(E) = N(E)\,P(E).$$

- The Fermi energy E_F for a metal can be found by integrating $N_o(E)$ for temperature $T = 0\ \mathrm{K}$ (absolute zero) from $E = 0$ to $E = E_F$. The result is

$$E_F = \left(\frac{3}{16\sqrt{2}\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m} n^{2/3} = \frac{0.121h^2}{m} n^{2/3}.$$

What Is Physics?

A major question in physics, which underlies *solid-state* electronic devices, is this: What are the mechanisms by which a material conducts, or does not conduct, electricity? The answers are complex and poorly understood, largely because they involve the application of quantum physics to a tremendous number of particles and atoms grouped together and interacting. Let's start by characterizing conducting and nonconducting materials.

The Electrical Properties of Solids

We shall examine only **crystalline solids**—that is, solids whose atoms are arranged in a repetitive three-dimensional structure called a **lattice.** We shall not consider such solids as wood, plastic, glass, and rubber, whose atoms are not arranged in such repetitive patterns. Figure 41-1 shows the basic repetitive units (the **unit cells**) of the lattice structures of copper, our prototype of a metal, and silicon and diamond (carbon), our prototypes of a semiconductor and an insulator, respectively.

We can classify solids electrically according to three basic properties:

1. Their **resistivity** ρ at room temperature, with the SI unit ohm-meter ($\Omega\cdot$m); resistivity is defined in Module 26-3.
2. Their **temperature coefficient of resistivity** α, defined as $\alpha = (1/\rho)(d\rho/dT)$ in Eq. 26-17 and having the SI unit inverse kelvin (K^{-1}). We can evaluate α for any solid by measuring ρ over a range of temperatures.
3. Their **number density of charge carriers** n. This quantity, the number of charge carriers per unit volume, can be found from measurements of the Hall effect, as discussed in Module 28-2, and has the SI unit inverse cubic meter (m^{-3}).

From measurements of resistivity, we find that there are some materials, **insulators**, that do not conduct electricity at all. These are materials with very high resistivity. Diamond, an excellent example, has a resistivity greater than that of copper by the enormous factor of about 10^{24}.

We can then use measurements of ρ, α, and n to divide most noninsulators, at least at low temperatures, into two categories: **metals** and **semiconductors.**

Semiconductors have a considerably greater resistivity ρ than metals.

Semiconductors have a temperature coefficient of resistivity α that is both high and negative. That is, the resistivity of a semiconductor *decreases* with temperature, whereas that of a metal *increases.*

Semiconductors have a considerably lower number density of charge carriers n than metals.

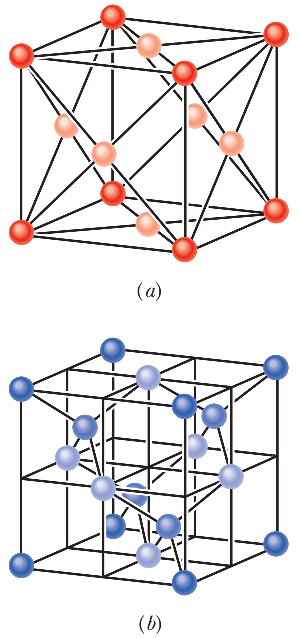
Table 41-1 shows values of these quantities for copper, our prototype metal, and silicon, our prototype semiconductor.

Now let's consider our central question: *What features make diamond an insulator, copper a metal, and silicon a semiconductor?*

Table 41-1 **Some Electrical Properties of Two Materials**[a]

Property	Unit	Material Copper	 Silicon
Type of conductor		Metal	Semiconductor
Resistivity, ρ	$\Omega\cdot$m	2×10^{-8}	3×10^{3}
Temperature coefficient of resistivity, α	K^{-1}	$+4 \times 10^{-3}$	-70×10^{-3}
Number density of charge carriers, n	m^{-3}	9×10^{28}	1×10^{16}

[a] All values are for room temperature.


(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 41-1 (*a*) The unit cell for copper is a cube. There is one copper atom (darker) at each corner of the cube and one copper atom (lighter) at the center of each face of the cube. The arrangement is called *face-centered cubic.* (*b*) The unit cell for either silicon or the carbon atoms in diamond is also a cube, the atoms being arranged in what is called a *diamond lattice.* There is one atom (darkest) at each corner of the cube and one atom (lightest) at the center of each cube face; in addition, four atoms (medium color) lie within the cube. Every atom is bonded to its four nearest neighbors by a two-electron covalent bond (only the four atoms within the cube show all four nearest neighbors).

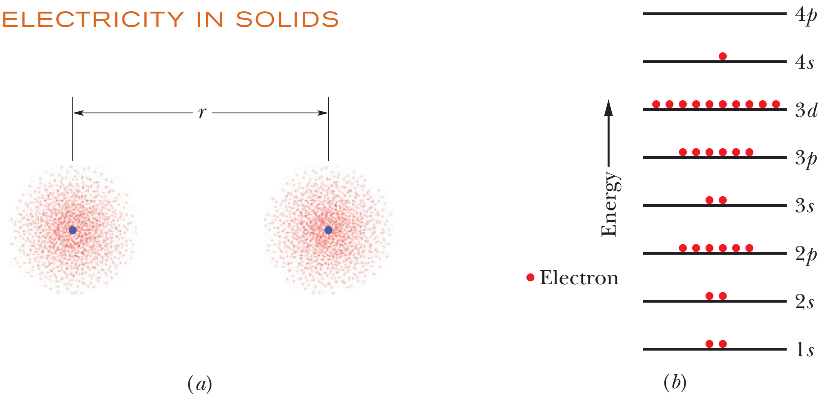


Figure 41-2 (*a*) Two copper atoms separated by a large distance; their electron distributions are represented by dot plots. (*b*) Each copper atom has 29 electrons distributed among a set of subshells. In the neutral atom in its ground state, all subshells up through the 3*d* level are filled, the 4*s* subshell contains one electron (it can hold two), and higher subshells are empty. For simplicity, the subshells are shown as being evenly spaced in energy.

Energy Levels in a Crystalline Solid

The distance between adjacent copper atoms in solid copper is 260 pm. Figure 41-2*a* shows two isolated copper atoms separated by a distance *r* that is much greater than that. As Fig. 41-2*b* shows, each of these isolated neutral atoms stacks up its 29 electrons in an array of discrete subshells as follows:

$$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 3d^{10}\ 4s^1.$$

Here we use the shorthand notation of Module 40-5 to identify the subshells. Recall, for example, that the subshell with principal quantum number $n = 3$ and orbital quantum number $\ell = 1$ is called the 3*p* subshell; it can hold up to $2(2\ell + 1) = 6$ electrons; the number it actually contains is indicated by a numerical superscript. We see above that the first six subshells in copper are filled, but the (outermost) 4*s* subshell, which can hold two electrons, holds only one.

If we bring the atoms of Fig. 41-2*a* closer, their wave functions begin to overlap, starting with those of the outer electrons. We then have a single two-atom system with 58 electrons, not two independent atoms. The Pauli exclusion principle requires that each of these electrons occupy a different quantum state. In fact, 58 quantum states are available because each energy level of the isolated atom splits into *two* levels for the two-atom system.

If we bring up more atoms, we gradually assemble a lattice of solid copper. For *N* atoms, each level of an isolated copper atom must split into *N* levels in the solid. Thus, the individual energy levels of the solid form energy **bands,** adjacent bands being separated by an energy **gap,** with the gap representing a range of energies that no electron can possess. A typical band ranges over only a few electron-volts. Since *N* may be of the order of 10^{24}, the individual levels within a band are very close together indeed, and there are a vast number of levels.

Figure 41-3 suggests the band–gap structure of the energy levels in a generalized crystalline solid. Note that bands of lower energy are narrower than those of higher energy. This occurs because electrons that occupy the lower energy bands spend most of their time deep within the atom's electron cloud. The wave functions of these core electrons do not overlap as much as the wave functions of the outer electrons do. Hence the splitting of the lower energy levels (core electrons) is less than that of the higher energy levels (outer electrons).

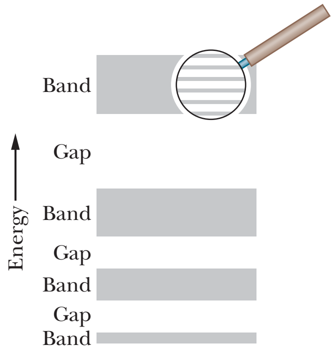


Figure 41-3 The band–gap pattern of energy levels for an idealized crystalline solid. As the magnified view suggests, each band consists of a very large number of very closely spaced energy levels. (In many solids, adjacent bands may overlap; for clarity, we have not shown this condition.)

Insulators

A solid is said to be an electrical insulator if no current exists within it when we apply a potential difference across it. For a current to exist, the kinetic energy of the average electron must increase. In other words, some electrons in the solid must move to a higher energy level. However, as Fig. 41-4 shows, in an insulator the highest band containing any electrons is fully occupied. Because the Pauli exclusion principle keeps electrons from moving to occupied levels, no electrons in the solid are allowed to move. Thus, the electrons in the filled band of an insulator have no place to go; they are in gridlock, like a child on a ladder filled with children.

In an insulator, electrons need a big energy jump.

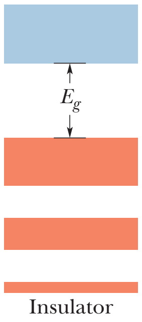


Figure 41-4 The band–gap pattern for an insulator; filled levels are shown in red and empty levels in blue.

There are plenty of unoccupied levels (or *vacant levels*) in the band above the filled band in Fig. 41-4. However, if an electron is to occupy one of those levels, it must acquire enough energy to jump across the substantial energy gap E_g that separates the two bands. In diamond, this gap is so wide (the energy needed to cross it is 5.5 eV, about 140 times the average thermal energy of a free particle at room temperature) that essentially no electron can jump across it. Diamond is thus an electrical insulator, and a very good one.

Sample Problem 41.01 Probability of electron excitation in an insulator

Approximately what is the probability that, at room temperature (300 K), an electron at the top of the highest filled band in diamond (an insulator) will jump the energy gap E_g in Fig. 41-4? For diamond, E_g is 5.5 eV.

KEY IDEA

In Chapter 40 we used Eq. 40-29,

$$\frac{N_x}{N_0} = e^{-(E_x - E_0)/kT}, \qquad (41\text{-}1)$$

to relate the population N_x of atoms at energy level E_x to the population N_0 at energy level E_0, where the atoms are part of a system at temperature T (measured in kelvins); k is the Boltzmann constant (8.62×10^{-5} eV/K). In this chapter we can use Eq. 41-1 to *approximate* the probability P that an electron in an insulator will jump the energy gap E_g in Fig. 41-4.

Calculations: We first set the energy difference $E_x - E_0$ to E_g. Then the probability P of the jump is approximately equal to the ratio N_x/N_0 of the number of electrons just above the energy gap to the number of electrons just below the gap.

For diamond, the exponent in Eq. 41-1 is

$$-\frac{E_g}{kT} = -\frac{5.5 \text{ eV}}{(8.62 \times 10^{-5} \text{ eV/K})(300 \text{ K})} = -213.$$

The required probability is then

$$P = \frac{N_x}{N_0} = e^{-(E_g/kT)} = e^{-213} \approx 3 \times 10^{-93}. \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

This result tells us that approximately 3 electrons out of 10^{93} electrons would jump across the energy gap. Because any diamond stone has fewer than 10^{23} electrons, we see that the probability of the jump is vanishingly small. No wonder diamond is such a good insulator.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Metals

The feature that defines a metal is that, as Fig. 41-5 shows, the highest occupied energy level falls somewhere near the middle of an energy band. If we apply a potential difference across a metal, a current can exist because there are plenty of vacant levels at nearby higher energies into which electrons (the charge carriers in a metal) can jump. Thus, a metal can conduct electricity because electrons in its highest occupied band can easily move into higher energy levels.

In Module 26-4 we discussed the **free-electron model** of a metal, in which the **conduction electrons** are free to move throughout the volume of the sample like the molecules of a gas in a closed container. We used this model to derive an expression for the resistivity of a metal. Here we use the model to explain the behavior of the conduction electrons in the partially filled band of Fig. 41-5. However, we now assume the energies of these electrons to be quantized and the Pauli exclusion principle to hold.

Assuming that the electric potential energy U of a conduction electron is uniform throughout the lattice, let's set $U = 0$ so that the mechanical energy E is entirely kinetic. Then the level at the bottom of the partially filled band of Fig. 41-5 corresponds to $E = 0$. The highest occupied level in this band at absolute zero ($T = 0$ K) is called the **Fermi level,** and the energy corresponding to it is called the **Fermi energy** E_F; for copper, $E_F = 7.0$ eV.

The electron speed corresponding to the Fermi energy is called the **Fermi speed** v_F. For copper the Fermi speed is 1.6×10^6 m/s. Thus, all motion does *not* cease at absolute zero; at that temperature—and solely because of the Pauli ex-

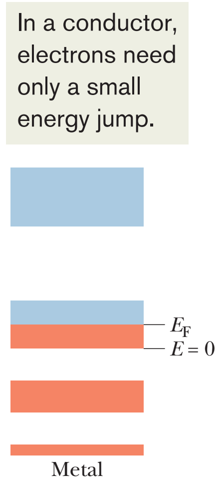


Figure 41-5 The band–gap pattern for a metal. The highest filled level, called the Fermi level, lies near the middle of a band. Since vacant levels are available within that band, electrons in the band can easily change levels, and conduction can take place.

clusion principle—the conduction electrons are stacked up in the partially filled band of Fig. 41-5 with energies that range from zero to the Fermi energy.

How Many Conduction Electrons Are There?

If we could bring individual atoms together to form a sample of a metal, we would find that the conduction electrons in the metal are the *valence electrons* of the atoms (the electrons in the outermost occupied shells of the atoms). A *monovalent* atom contributes one such electron to the conduction electrons in a metal; a *bivalent* atom contributes two such electrons. Thus, the total number of conduction electrons is

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of conduction}\\ \text{electrons in sample}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of valence}\\ \text{electrons per atom}\end{pmatrix}. \qquad (41\text{-}2)$$

(In this chapter, we shall write several equations largely in words because the symbols we have previously used for the quantities in them now represent other quantities.) The *number density n* of conduction electrons in a sample is the number of conduction electrons per unit volume:

$$n = \frac{\text{number of conduction electrons in sample}}{\text{sample volume } V}. \qquad (41\text{-}3)$$

We can relate the number of atoms in a sample to various other properties of the sample and to the material making up the sample with the following:

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} &= \frac{\text{sample mass } M_{\text{sam}}}{\text{atomic mass}} = \frac{\text{sample mass } M_{\text{sam}}}{(\text{molar mass } M)/N_A}\\ &= \frac{(\text{material's density})(\text{sample volume } V)}{(\text{molar mass } M)/N_A}, \qquad (41\text{-}4)\end{aligned}$$

where the molar mass M is the mass of one mole of the material in the sample and N_A is Avogadro's number ($6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1}$).

Sample Problem 41.02 Number of conduction electrons in a metal

How many conduction electrons are in a cube of magnesium of volume $2.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3$? Magnesium atoms are bivalent.

KEY IDEAS

1. Because magnesium atoms are bivalent, each magnesium atom contributes two conduction electrons.
2. The cube's number of conduction electrons is related to its number of magnesium atoms by Eq. 41-2.
3. We can find the number of atoms with Eq. 41-4 and known data about the cube's volume and magnesium's properties.

Calculations: We can write Eq. 41-4 as

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number}\\ \text{of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} = \frac{(\text{density})(\text{sample volume } V)N_A}{\text{molar mass } M}.$$

Magnesium has density $1.738\ \text{g/cm}^3$ $(= 1.738 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3)$ and molar mass $24.312\ \text{g/mol}$ $(= 24.312 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg/mol})$ (see Appendix F). The numerator gives us

$$\begin{aligned}&(1.738 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3)(2.00 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3)\\ &\qquad \times (6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{atoms/mol}) = 2.0926 \times 10^{21}\ \text{kg/mol}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} &= \frac{2.0926 \times 10^{21}\ \text{kg/mol}}{24.312 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg/mol}}\\ &= 8.61 \times 10^{22}.\end{aligned}$$

Using this result and the fact that magnesium atoms are bivalent, we find that Eq. 41-2 yields

$$\begin{aligned}&\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of}\\ \text{conduction electrons}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix}\\ &\qquad = (8.61 \times 10^{22}\ \text{atoms})\left(2\ \frac{\text{electrons}}{\text{atom}}\right)\\ &\qquad = 1.72 \times 10^{23}\ \text{electrons}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Conductivity Above Absolute Zero

Our practical interest in the conduction of electricity in metals is at temperatures above absolute zero. What happens to the electron distribution of Fig. 41-5 at such higher temperatures? As we shall see, surprisingly little. Of the electrons in the partially filled band of Fig. 41-5, only those that are close to the Fermi energy find unoccupied levels above them, and only those electrons are free to be boosted to these higher levels by thermal agitation. Even at $T = 1000$ K (the copper would glow brightly in a dark room), the electron distribution among the available levels does not differ much from the distribution at $T = 0$ K.

Let us see why. The quantity kT, where k is the Boltzmann constant, is a convenient measure of the energy that may be given to a conduction electron by the random thermal motions of the lattice. At $T = 1000$ K, we have $kT = 0.086$ eV. No electron can hope to have its energy changed by more than a few times this relatively small amount by thermal agitation alone; so at best only those few conduction electrons whose energies are close to the Fermi energy are likely to jump to higher energy levels due to thermal agitation. Poetically stated, thermal agitation normally causes only ripples on the surface of the Fermi sea of electrons; the vast depths of that sea lie undisturbed.

How Many Quantum States Are There?

The ability of a metal to conduct electricity depends on how many quantum states are available to its electrons and what the energies of those states are. Thus, a question arises: What are the energies of the individual states in the partially filled band of Fig. 41-5? This question is too difficult to answer because we cannot possibly list the energies of so many states individually. We ask instead: How many states in a unit volume of a sample have energies in the energy range E to $E + dE$? We write this number as $N(E)\,dE$, where $N(E)$ is called the **density of states** at energy E. The conventional unit for $N(E)\,dE$ is states per cubic meter (states/m^3, or simply m^{-3}), and the conventional unit for $N(E)$ is states per cubic meter per electron-volt (m^{-3} eV^{-1}).

We can find an expression for the density of states by counting the number of standing electron matter waves that can fit into a box the size of the metal sample we are considering. This is analogous to counting the number of standing waves of sound that can exist in a closed organ pipe. Here the problem is three-dimensional (not one-dimensional) and the waves are matter waves (not sound waves). Such counting is covered in more advanced treatments of solid state physics; the result is

$$N(E) = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} E^{1/2} \quad \text{(density of states, m}^{-3}\text{ J}^{-1}\text{)}, \qquad (41\text{-}5)$$

where m ($= 9.109 \times 10^{-31}$ kg) is the electron mass, h ($= 6.626 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s) is the Planck constant, E is the energy in joules at which $N(E)$ is to be evaluated, and $N(E)$ is in states per cubic meter per joule (m^{-3} J^{-1}). To modify this equation so that the value of E is in electron-volts and the value of $N(E)$ is in states per cubic meter per electron-volt (m^{-3} eV^{-1}), multiply the right side of the equation by $e^{3/2}$, where e is the fundamental charge, 1.602×10^{-19} C. Figure 41-6 is a plot of such a modified version of Eq. 41-5. Note that nothing in Eq. 41-5 or Fig. 41-6 involves the shape, temperature, or composition of the sample.

The density of energy levels increases upward in a band.

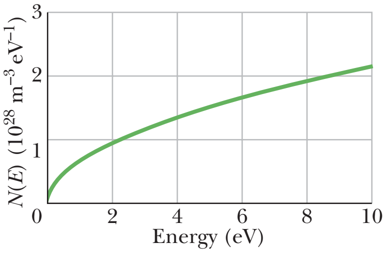


Figure 41-6 The density of states $N(E)$—that is, the number of electron energy levels per unit energy interval per unit volume—plotted as a function of electron energy. The density of states function simply counts the available states; it says nothing about whether these states are occupied by electrons.

☑ Checkpoint 1

Is the spacing between adjacent energy levels at $E = 4$ eV in copper larger than, the same as, or smaller than the spacing at $E = 6$ eV?

Sample Problem 41.03 Number of states per electron volt in a metal

(a) Using the data of Fig. 41-6, determine the number of states per electron-volt at 7 eV in a metal sample with a volume V of 2×10^{-9} m^3.

KEY IDEA

We can obtain the number of states per electron-volt at a given energy by using the density of states $N(E)$ at that energy and the sample's volume V.

Calculations: At an energy of 7 eV, we write

$$\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{number of states}\\ \text{per eV at 7 eV}\end{array}\right) = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{density of states}\\ N(E)\text{ at 7 eV}\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{volume } V\\ \text{of sample}\end{array}\right).$$

From Fig. 41-6, we see that at an energy E of 7 eV, the density of states is about $1.8 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{eV}^{-1}$. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{number of states}\\ \text{per eV at 7 eV}\end{array}\right) &= (1.8 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{eV}^{-1})(2 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^3)\\ &= 3.6 \times 10^{19}\ \text{eV}^{-1}\\ &\approx 4 \times 10^{19}\ \text{eV}^{-1}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

(b) Next, determine the number of states N in the sample within a *small* energy range ΔE of 0.003 eV centered at 7 eV (the range is small relative to the energy level in the band).

Calculation: From Eq. 41-5 and Fig. 41-6, we know that the density of states is a function of energy E. However, for an energy range ΔE that is small relative to E, we can approximate the density of states (and thus the number of states per electron-volt) to be constant. Thus, at an energy of 7 eV, we find the number of states N in the energy range ΔE of 0.003 eV as

$$\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{number of states } N\\ \text{in range } \Delta E \text{ at 7 eV}\end{array}\right) = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{number of states}\\ \text{per eV at 7 eV}\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{energy}\\ \text{range } \Delta E\end{array}\right)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}N &= (3.6 \times 10^{19}\ \text{eV}^{-1})(0.003\ \text{eV})\\ &= 1.1 \times 10^{17} \approx 1 \times 10^{17}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

(When you are asked for the number of states in a certain energy range, first see if that range is small enough to allow this type of approximation.)

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

The Occupancy Probability $P(E)$

If an energy level is available at energy E, what is the probability $P(E)$ that it is actually occupied by an electron? At $T = 0$ K, we know that all levels with energies below the Fermi energy are certainly occupied ($P(E) = 1$) and all higher levels are certainly not occupied ($P(E) = 0$). Figure 41-7*a* illustrates this situation. To find $P(E)$ at temperatures above absolute zero, we must use a set of quantum counting rules called **Fermi–Dirac statistics,** named for the physicists who introduced them. With these rules, the **occupancy probability** $P(E)$ is

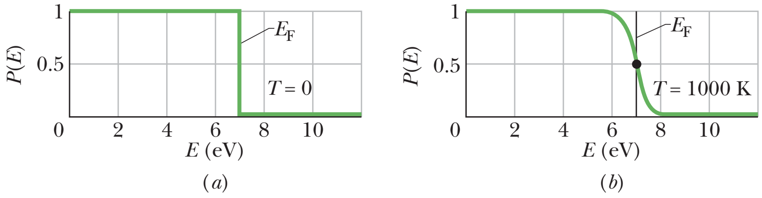
$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{(E - E_F)/kT} + 1} \quad \text{(occupancy probability),} \qquad (41\text{-}6)$$

in which E_F is the Fermi energy. Note that $P(E)$ depends not on the energy E of the level but only on the difference $E - E_F$, which may be positive or negative.

To see whether Eq. 41-6 describes Fig. 41-7*a*, we substitute $T = 0$ K in it. Then,

For $E < E_F$, the exponential term in Eq. 41-6 is $e^{-\infty}$, or zero; so $P(E) = 1$, in agreement with Fig. 41-7*a*.

For $E > E_F$, the exponential term is $e^{+\infty}$; so $P(E) = 0$, again in agreement with Fig. 41-7*a*.



The occupancy probability is high below the Fermi level.

Figure 41-7 The occupancy probability $P(E)$ is the probability that an energy level will be occupied by an electron. (*a*) At $T = 0$ K, $P(E)$ is unity for levels with energies E up to the Fermi energy E_F and zero for levels with higher energies. (*b*) At $T = 1000$ K, a few electrons whose energies were slightly less than the Fermi energy at $T = 0$ K move up to states with energies slightly greater than the Fermi energy. The dot on the curve shows that, for $E = E_F$, $P(E) = 0.5$.

Figure 41-7*b* is a plot of $P(E)$ for $T = 1000$ K. Compared with Fig. 41-7*a*, it shows that, as stated above, changes in the distribution of electrons among the available states involve only states whose energies are near the Fermi energy E_F. Note that if $E = E_F$ (no matter what the temperature T), the exponential term in Eq. 41-6 is $e^0 = 1$ and $P(E) = 0.5$. This leads us to a more useful definition of the Fermi energy:

> The Fermi energy of a given material is the energy of a quantum state that has the probability 0.5 of being occupied by an electron.

Figures 41-7*a* and *b* are plotted for copper, which has a Fermi energy of 7.0 eV. Thus, for copper both at $T = 0$ K and at $T = 1000$ K, a state at energy $E = 7.0$ eV has a probability of 0.5 of being occupied.

Sample Problem 41.04 Probability of occupancy of an energy state in a metal

(a) What is the probability that a quantum state whose energy is 0.10 eV above the Fermi energy will be occupied? Assume a sample temperature of 800 K.

KEY IDEA

The occupancy probability of any state in a metal can be found from Fermi–Dirac statistics according to Eq. 41-6.

Calculations: Let's start with the exponent in Eq. 41-6:

$$\frac{E - E_F}{kT} = \frac{0.10 \text{ eV}}{(8.62 \times 10^{-5} \text{ eV/K})(800 \text{ K})} = 1.45.$$

Inserting this exponent into Eq. 41-6 yields

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{1.45} + 1} = 0.19 \text{ or } 19\%. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) What is the probability of occupancy for a state that is 0.10 eV *below* the Fermi energy?

Calculation: The Key Idea of part (a) applies here also except that now the state has an energy *below* the Fermi energy. Thus, the exponent in Eq. 41-6 has the same magnitude we found in part (a) but is negative, and that makes the denominator smaller. Equation 41-6 now yields

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{-1.45} + 1} = 0.81 \text{ or } 81\%. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

For states below the Fermi energy, we are often more interested in the probability that the state is *not* occupied. This probability is just $1 - P(E)$, or 19%. Note that it is the same as the probability of occupancy in (a).

How Many Occupied States Are There?

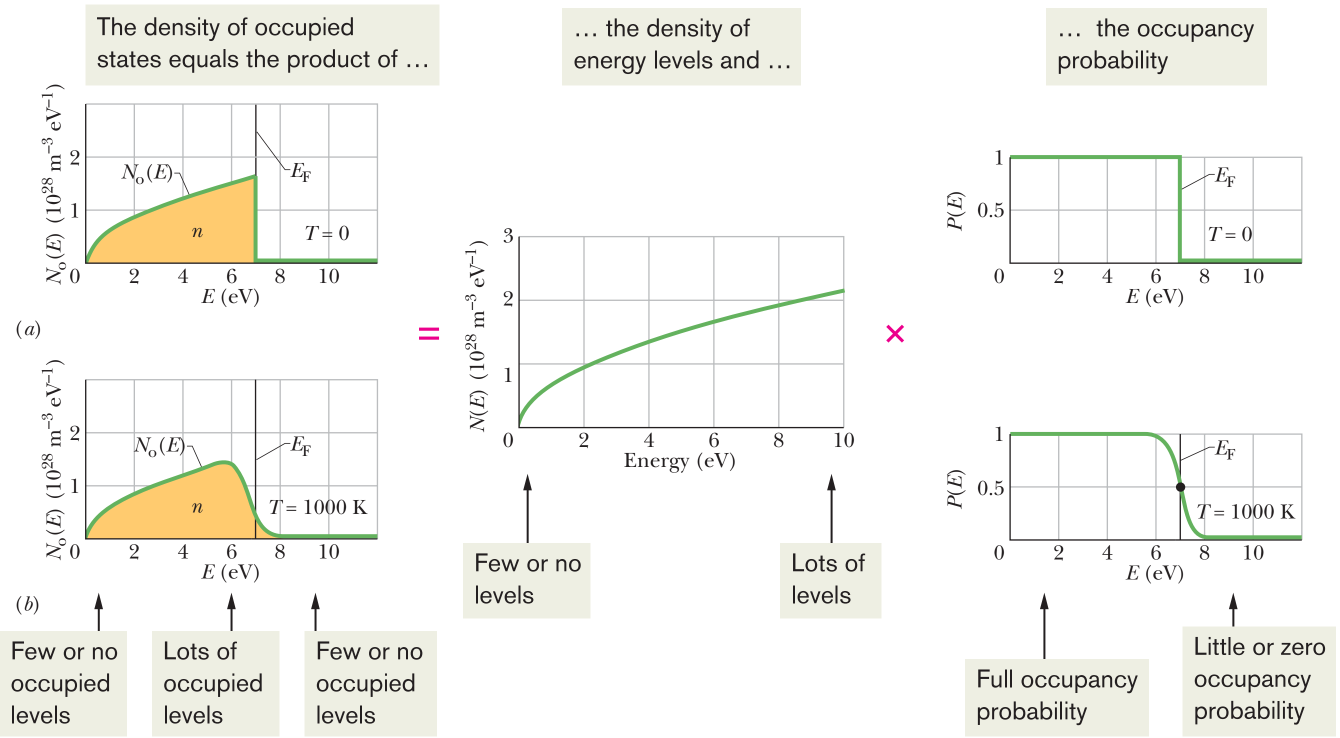
Equation 41-5 and Fig. 41-6 tell us how the available states are distributed in energy. The occupancy probability of Eq. 41-6 gives us the probability that any given state will actually be occupied by an electron. To find $N_o(E)$, the **density of occupied states,** we must multiply each available state by the corresponding value of the occupancy probability; that is,

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{density of occupied states}\\ N_o(E) \text{ at energy } E\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{density of states}\\ N(E) \text{ at energy } E\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{occupancy probability}\\ P(E) \text{ at energy } E\end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$N_o(E) = N(E)\,P(E) \quad \text{(density of occupied states).} \qquad (41\text{-}7)$$

For copper at $T = 0$ K, Eq. 41-7 tells us to multiply, at each energy, the value of the density of states function (Eq. 41-6) by the value of the occupancy probability for absolute zero (Fig. 41-7*a*). The result is Fig. 41-8*a*. Figure 41-8*b* shows the density of occupied states at $T = 1000$ K.


The density of occupied states equals the product of …

… the density of energy levels and …

… the occupancy probability

Few or no occupied levels

Lots of occupied levels

Few or no occupied levels

Few or no levels

Lots of levels

Full occupancy probability

Little or zero occupancy probability

Figure 41-8 (*a*) The density of occupied states $N_o(E)$ for copper at absolute zero. The area under the curve is the number density of electrons n. Note that all states with energies up to the Fermi energy $E_F = 7$ eV are occupied, and all those with energies above the Fermi energy are vacant. (*b*) The same for copper at $T = 1000$ K. Note that only electrons with energies near the Fermi energy have been affected and redistributed.

Sample Problem 41.05 Number of occupied states in an energy range in a metal

A lump of copper (Fermi energy = 7.0 eV) has volume 2×10^{-9} m^3. How many occupied states per eV lie in a narrow energy range around 7.0 eV?

KEY IDEAS

(1) First we want the density of occupied states $N_o(E)$ as given by Eq. 41-7 ($N_o(E) = N(E)\,P(E)$). (2) Because we want to evaluate quantities for a narrow energy range around 7.0 eV (the Fermi energy for copper), the occupancy probability $P(E)$ is 0.50.

Calculations: From Fig. 41-6, we see that the density of states at 7 eV is about 1.8×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1}. Thus, Eq. 41-7 tells us that the density of occupied states is

$$N_o(E) = N(E)\,P(E) = (1.8 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{eV}^{-1})(0.50)$$
$$= 0.9 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{eV}^{-1}.$$

Next, we write

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of } \textit{occupied}\\ \text{states per eV at 7 eV}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{density of } \textit{occupied}\\ \text{states } N_o(E) \text{ at 7 eV}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{volume } V\\ \text{of sample}\end{pmatrix}.$$

Substituting for $N_o(E)$ and V gives us

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of occupied}\\ \text{states per eV}\\ \text{at 7 eV}\end{pmatrix} = (0.9 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{eV}^{-1})(2 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^3)$$
$$= 1.8 \times 10^{19}\ \text{eV}^{-1}$$
$$\approx 2 \times 10^{19}\ \text{eV}^{-1}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Calculating the Fermi Energy

Suppose we add up (via integration) the number of occupied states per unit volume in Fig. 41-8*a* (for $T = 0$ K) at all energies between $E = 0$ and $E = E_F$. The result must equal n, the number of conduction electrons per unit volume for the metal, because at that temperature none of the energy states above the Fermi level are occupied. In equation form, we have

$$n = \int_0^{E_F} N_o(E)\, dE. \tag{41-8}$$

(Graphically, the integral here represents the area under the distribution curve of Fig. 41-8*a*.) Because $P(E) = 1$ for all energies below the Fermi energy when $T = 0$ K, Eq. 41-7 tells us we can replace $N_o(E)$ in Eq. 41-8 with $N(E)$ and then use Eq. 41-8 to find the Fermi energy E_F. If we substitute Eq. 41-5 into Eq. 41-8, we find that

$$n = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} \int_0^{E_F} E^{1/2}\, dE = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} \frac{2E_F^{3/2}}{3},$$

in which m is the electron mass. Solving for E_F now leads to

$$E_F = \left(\frac{3}{16\sqrt{2}\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m} n^{2/3} = \frac{0.121h^2}{m} n^{2/3}. \tag{41-9}$$

Thus, when we know n, the number of conduction electrons per unit volume for a metal, we can find the Fermi energy for that metal.

41-2 SEMICONDUCTORS AND DOPING

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

41.18 Sketch a band–gap diagram for a semiconductor, identifying the conduction and valence bands, conduction electrons, holes, and the energy gap.

41.19 Compare the energy gap of a semiconductor with that of an insulator.

41.20 Apply the relationship between a semiconductor's energy gap and the wavelength of light associated with a transition across the gap.

41.21 Sketch the lattice structure for pure silicon and doped silicon.

41.22 Identify holes, how they are produced, and how they move in an applied electric field.

41.23 For metals and semiconductors, compare the resistivity ρ and the temperature coefficient of resistivity α, and explain how the resistivity changes with temperature.

41.24 Explain the procedure for producing n-type semiconductors and p-type semiconductors.

41.25 Apply the relationship between the number of conduction electrons in a pure material and the number in the doped material.

41.26 Identify donors and acceptors and indicate where their energy levels lie in an energy-level diagram.

41.27 Identify majority carriers and minority carriers.

41.28 Explain the advantage of doping a semiconductor.

Key Ideas

- The band structure of a semiconductor is like that of an insulator except it has a much smaller gap width E_g, which can be jumped by thermally excited electrons.
- In silicon at room temperature, thermal agitation raises a few electrons to the conduction band, leaving an equal number of holes in the valence band. When the silicon is put under a potential difference, both electrons and holes serve as charge carriers.
- The number of electrons in the conduction band of silicon can be increased greatly by doping with small amounts of phosphorus, thus forming n-type material. The phosphorus atoms are said to be donor atoms.
- The number of holes in the valence band of silicon can be greatly increased by doping with small amounts of aluminum, thus forming p-type material. The aluminum atoms are said to be acceptor atoms.

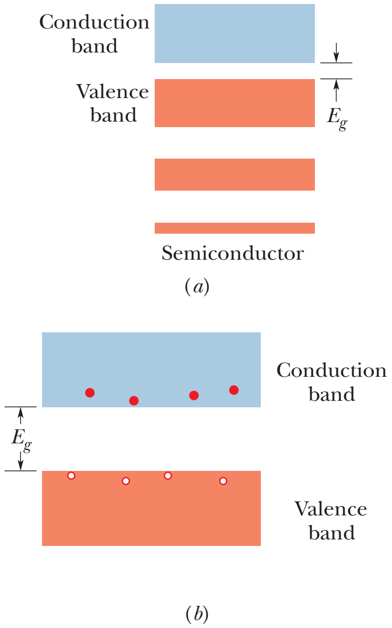


Figure 41-9 (*a*) The band–gap pattern for a semiconductor. It resembles that of an insulator (see Fig. 41-4) except that here the energy gap E_g is much smaller; thus electrons, because of their thermal agitation, have some reasonable probability of being able to jump the gap. (*b*) Thermal agitation has caused a few electrons to jump the gap from the valence band to the conduction band, leaving an equal number of holes in the valence band.

Semiconductors

If you compare Fig. 41-9*a* with Fig. 41-4, you can see that the band structure of a semiconductor is like that of an insulator. The main difference is that the semiconductor has a much smaller energy gap E_g between the top of the highest filled band (called the **valence band**) and the bottom of the vacant band just above it (called the **conduction band**). Thus, there is no doubt that silicon ($E_g = 1.1$ eV) is a semiconductor and diamond ($E_g = 5.5$ eV) is an insulator. In silicon—but not in diamond—there is a real possibility that thermal agitation at room temperature will cause electrons to jump the gap from valence to conduction band.

In Table 41-1 we compared three basic electrical properties of copper, our prototype metallic conductor, and silicon, our prototype semiconductor. Let us look again at that table, one row at a time, to see how a semiconductor differs from a metal.

Number Density of Charge Carriers n

The bottom row of Table 41-1 shows that copper has far more charge carriers per unit volume than silicon, by a factor of about 10^{13}. For copper, each atom contributes one electron, its single valence electron, to the conduction process. Charge carriers in silicon arise only because, at thermal equilibrium, thermal agitation causes a certain (very small) number of valence-band electrons to jump the energy gap into the conduction band, leaving an equal number of unoccupied energy states, called **holes,** in the valence band. Figure 41-9*b* shows the situation.

Both the electrons in the conduction band and the holes in the valence band serve as charge carriers. The holes do so by permitting a certain freedom of movement to the electrons remaining in the valence band, electrons that, in the absence of holes, would be gridlocked. If an electric field $\vec{E}$ is set up in a semiconductor, the electrons in the valence band, being negatively charged, tend to drift in the direction opposite $\vec{E}$. This causes the positions of the holes to drift in the direction of $\vec{E}$. In effect, the holes behave like moving particles of charge $+e$.

It may help to think of a row of cars parked bumper to bumper, with the lead car at one car's length from a barrier and the empty one-car-length distance being an available parking space. If the leading car moves forward to the barrier, it opens up a parking space behind it. The second car can then move up to fill that space, allowing the third car to move up, and so on. The motions of the many cars toward the barrier are most simply analyzed by focusing attention on the drift of the single "hole" (parking space) away from the barrier.

In semiconductors, conduction by holes is just as important as conduction by electrons. In thinking about hole conduction, we can assume that all unoccupied states in the valence band are occupied by particles of charge $+e$ and that all electrons in the valence band have been removed, so that these positive charge carriers can move freely throughout the band.

Resistivity ρ

Recall from Chapter 26 that the resistivity ρ of a material is $m/e^2n\tau$, where m is the electron mass, e is the fundamental charge, n is the number of charge carriers per unit volume, and τ is the mean time between collisions of the charge carriers. Table 41-1 shows that, at room temperature, the resistivity of silicon is higher than that of copper by a factor of about 10^{11}. This vast difference can be accounted for by the vast difference in n. Other factors enter, but their effect on the resistivity is swamped by the enormous difference in n.

Temperature Coefficient of Resistivity α

Recall that α (see Eq. 26-17) is the fractional change in resistivity per unit change in temperature:

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{d\rho}{dT}. \tag{41-10}$$

The resistivity of copper *increases* with temperature (that is, $d\rho/dT > 0$) because collisions of copper's charge carriers occur more frequently at higher temperatures. Thus, α is *positive* for copper.

The collision frequency also increases with temperature for silicon. However, the resistivity of silicon actually *decreases* with temperature ($d\rho/dT < 0$) because the number of charge carriers n (electrons in the conduction band and holes in the valence band) increases so rapidly with temperature. (More electrons jump the gap from the valence band to the conduction band.) Thus, the fractional change α is *negative* for silicon.

Doped Semiconductors

The usefulness of semiconductors in technology can be greatly improved by introducing a small number of suitable replacement atoms (called impurities) into the semiconductor lattice—a process called **doping.** Typically, only about 1 silicon atom in 10^7 is replaced by a dopant atom in the doped semiconductor. Essentially all modern semiconducting devices are based on doped material. Such materials are of two types, called ***n*-type** and ***p*-type;** we discuss each in turn.

n-Type Semiconductors

The electrons in an isolated silicon atom are arranged in subshells according to the scheme

$$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^2,$$

in which, as usual, the superscripts (which add to 14, the atomic number of silicon) represent the numbers of electrons in the specified subshells.

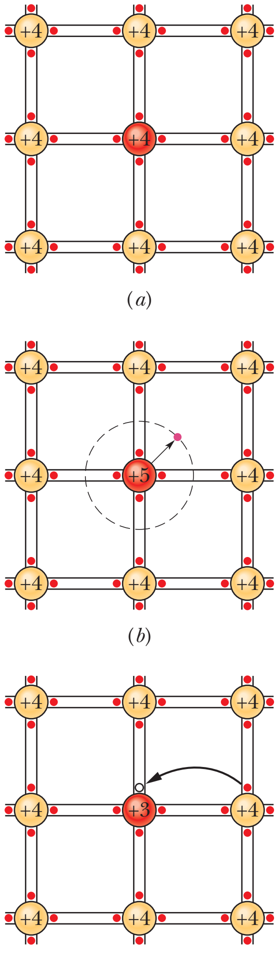
Figure 41-10*a* is a flattened-out representation of a portion of the lattice of pure silicon in which the portion has been projected onto a plane; compare the figure with Fig. 41-1*b*, which represents the unit cell of the lattice in three dimensions. Each silicon atom contributes its pair of 3*s* electrons and its pair of 3*p* electrons to form a rigid two-electron covalent bond with each of its four nearest neighbors. (A covalent bond is a link between two atoms in which the atoms share a pair of electrons.) The four atoms that lie within the unit cell in Fig. 41-1*b* show these four bonds.

The electrons that form the silicon–silicon bonds constitute the valence band of the silicon sample. If an electron is torn from one of these bonds so that it becomes free to wander throughout the lattice, we say that the electron has been raised from the valence band to the conduction band. The minimum energy required to do this is the gap energy E_g.

Because four of its electrons are involved in bonds, each silicon "atom" is actually an ion consisting of an inert neon-like electron cloud (containing 10 electrons) surrounding a nucleus whose charge is $+14e$, where 14 is the atomic number of silicon. The net charge of each of these ions is thus $+4e$, and the ions are said to have a *valence number* of 4.

In Fig. 41-10*b* the central silicon ion has been replaced by an atom of phosphorus (valence = 5). Four of the valence electrons of the phosphorus form bonds with the four surrounding silicon ions. The fifth ("extra") electron is only loosely bound to the phosphorus ion core. On an energy-band diagram, we usually say that such an electron occupies a localized energy state that lies within the energy gap, at an average energy interval E_d below the bottom of the conduction band; this is indicated in Fig. 41-11*a*. Because $E_d \ll E_g$, the energy required to excite electrons from *these* levels into the conduction band is much less than that required to excite silicon valence electrons into the conduction band.

The phosphorus atom is called a **donor** atom because it readily *donates* an electron to the conduction band. In fact, at room temperature virtually *all* the

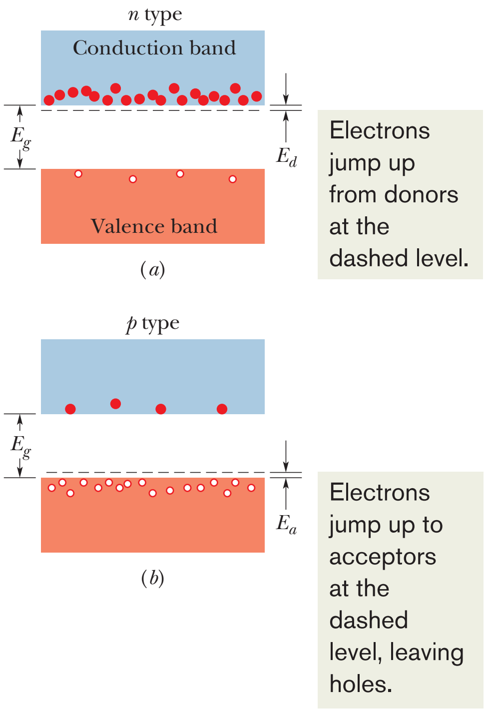


(*c*)

Figure 41-10 (*a*) A flattened-out representation of the lattice structure of pure silicon. Each silicon ion is coupled to its four nearest neighbors by a two-electron covalent bond (represented by a pair of red dots between two parallel black lines). The electrons belong to the bond—not to the individual atoms—and form the valence band of the sample. (*b*) One silicon atom is replaced by a phosphorus atom (valence = 5). The "extra" electron is only loosely bound to its ion core and may easily be elevated to the conduction band, where it is free to wander through the volume of the lattice. (*c*) One silicon atom is replaced by an aluminum atom (valence = 3). There is now a hole in one of the covalent bonds and thus in the valence band of the sample. The hole can easily migrate through the lattice as electrons from neighboring bonds move in to fill it. Here the hole migrates rightward.

electrons contributed by the donor atoms are in the conduction band. By adding donor atoms, it is possible to increase greatly the number of electrons in the conduction band, by a factor very much larger than Fig. 41-11*a* suggests.

Semiconductors doped with donor atoms are called ***n*-type semiconductors;** the *n* stands for *negative,* to imply that the negative charge carriers introduced into the conduction band greatly outnumber the positive charge carriers, which are the holes in the valence band. In *n*-type semiconductors, the electrons are called the **majority carriers** and the holes are called the **minority carriers.**



Electrons jump up from donors at the dashed level.

Electrons jump up to acceptors at the dashed level, leaving holes.

Figure 41-11 (*a*) In a doped *n*-type semiconductor, the energy levels of donor electrons lie a small interval E_d below the bottom of the conduction band. Because donor electrons can be easily excited to the conduction band, there are now many more electrons in that band. The valence band contains the same small number of holes as before the dopant was added. (*b*) In a doped *p*-type semiconductor, the acceptor levels lie a small energy interval E_a above the top of the valence band. There are now many more holes in the valence band. The conduction band contains the same small number of electrons as before the dopant was added. The ratio of majority carriers to minority carriers in both (*a*) and (*b*) is very much greater than is suggested by these diagrams.

p-Type Semiconductors

Now consider Fig. 41-10*c*, in which one of the silicon atoms (valence = 4) has been replaced by an atom of aluminum (valence = 3). The aluminum atom can bond covalently with only three silicon atoms, and so there is now a “missing” electron (a hole) in one aluminum–silicon bond. With a small expenditure of energy, an electron can be torn from a neighboring silicon–silicon bond to fill this hole, thereby creating a hole in *that* bond. Similarly, an electron from some other bond can be moved to fill the newly created hole. In this way, the hole can migrate through the lattice.

The aluminum atom is called an **acceptor** atom because it readily *accepts* an electron from a neighboring bond—that is, from the valence band of silicon. As Fig. 41-11*b* suggests, this electron occupies a localized energy state that lies within the energy gap, at an average energy interval E_a above the top of the valence band. Because this energy interval E_a is small, valence electrons are easily bumped up to the acceptor level, leaving holes in the valence band. Thus, by adding acceptor atoms, it is possible to greatly increase the number of holes in the valence band, by a factor much larger than Fig. 41-11*b* suggests. In silicon at room temperature, virtually *all* the acceptor levels are occupied by electrons.

Semiconductors doped with acceptor atoms are called ***p*-type semiconductors;** the *p* stands for *positive* to imply that the holes introduced into the valence band, which behave like positive charge carriers, greatly outnumber the electrons in the conduction band. In *p*-type semiconductors, holes are the majority carriers and electrons are the minority carriers.

Table 41-2 summarizes the properties of a typical *n*-type and a typical *p*-type semiconductor. Note particularly that the donor and acceptor ion cores, although they are charged, are not charge *carriers* because they are fixed in place.

Table 41-2 Properties of Two Doped Semiconductors

	Type of Semiconductor	
Property	*n*	*p*
Matrix material	Silicon	Silicon
Matrix nuclear charge	$+14e$	$+14e$
Matrix energy gap	1.2 eV	1.2 eV
Dopant	Phosphorus	Aluminum
Type of dopant	Donor	Acceptor
Majority carriers	Electrons	Holes
Minority carriers	Holes	Electrons
Dopant energy gap	$E_d = 0.045$ eV	$E_a = 0.067$ eV
Dopant valence	5	3
Dopant nuclear charge	$+15e$	$+13e$
Dopant net ion charge	$+e$	$-e$

Sample Problem 41.06 Doping silicon with phosphorus

The number density n_0 of conduction electrons in pure silicon at room temperature is about $10^{16}\ \text{m}^{-3}$. Assume that, by doping the silicon lattice with phosphorus, we want to increase this number by a factor of a million (10^6). What fraction of silicon atoms must we replace with phosphorus atoms? (Recall that at room temperature, thermal agitation is so effective that essentially every phosphorus atom donates its "extra" electron to the conduction band.)

Number of phosphorus atoms: Because each phosphorus atom contributes one conduction electron and because we want the total number density of conduction electrons to be $10^6 n_0$, the number density of phosphorus atoms n_P must be given by

$$10^6 n_0 = n_0 + n_\text{P}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} n_\text{P} &= 10^6 n_0 - n_0 \approx 10^6 n_0 \\ &= (10^6)(10^{16}\ \text{m}^{-3}) = 10^{22}\ \text{m}^{-3}. \end{aligned}$$

This tells us that we must add 10^{22} atoms of phosphorus per cubic meter of silicon.

Fraction of silicon atoms: We can find the number density n_Si of silicon atoms in pure silicon (before the doping) from Eq. 41-4, which we can write as

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} = \frac{(\text{silicon density})(\text{sample volume } V)}{(\text{silicon molar mass } M_\text{Si})/N_\text{A}}.$$

Dividing both sides by the sample volume V to get the number density of silicon atoms n_Si on the left, we then have

$$n_\text{Si} = \frac{(\text{silicon density})N_\text{A}}{M_\text{Si}}.$$

Appendix F tells us that the density of silicon is $2.33\ \text{g/cm}^3$ ($= 2330\ \text{kg/m}^3$) and the molar mass of silicon is $28.1\ \text{g/mol}$ ($= 0.0281\ \text{kg/mol}$). Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} n_\text{Si} &= \frac{(2330\ \text{kg/m}^3)(6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{atoms/mol})}{0.0281\ \text{kg/mol}} \\ &= 5 \times 10^{28}\ \text{atoms/m}^3 = 5 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}. \end{aligned}$$

The fraction we seek is approximately

$$\frac{n_\text{P}}{n_\text{Si}} = \frac{10^{22}\ \text{m}^{-3}}{5 \times 10^{28}\ \text{m}^{-3}} = \frac{1}{5 \times 10^6}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

If we replace only *one silicon atom in five million* with a phosphorus atom, the number of electrons in the conduction band will be increased by a factor of a million.

How can such a tiny admixture of phosphorus have what seems to be such a big effect? The answer is that, although the effect is very significant, it is not "big." The number density of conduction electrons was $10^{16}\ \text{m}^{-3}$ before doping and $10^{22}\ \text{m}^{-3}$ after doping. For copper, however, the conduction-electron number density (given in Table 41-1) is about $10^{29}\ \text{m}^{-3}$. Thus, even after doping, the number density of conduction electrons in silicon remains much less than that of a typical metal, such as copper, by a factor of about 10^7.

41-3 THE *p-n* JUNCTION AND THE TRANSISTOR

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

41.29 Describe a *p-n* junction and outline how it works.

41.30 Identify diffusion current, space charge, depletion zone, contact potential difference, and drift current.

41.31 Describe the functioning of a junction rectifier.

41.32 Distinguish forward bias and back bias.

41.33 Explain the general properties of a light-emitting diode, a photodiode, a junction laser, and a MOSFET.

Key Ideas

- A *p-n* junction is a single semiconducting crystal with one end doped to form *p*-type material and the other end doped to form *n*-type material. The two types meet at a junction plane.
- At thermal equilibrium, the following occur at the junction plane: (1) Majority carriers diffuse across the plane, producing a diffusion current I_diff. (2) Minority carriers are swept across the plane, forming a drift current I_drift. (3) A depletion zone forms at the plane. (4) A contact potential V_0 develops across the depletion zone.
- A *p-n* junction conducts electricity better for one direction of an applied potential difference (forward biased) than for the opposite direction (back biased), and thus the device can serve as a junction rectifier.
- A *p-n* junction made with certain materials can emit light when forward biased and thus can serve as a light-emitting diode (LED).
- A light-emitting *p-n* junction can also be made to emit stimulated emission and thus can serve as a laser.

The *p-n* Junction

A ***p-n* junction** (Fig. 41-12*a*), essential to most semiconductor devices, is a single semiconductor crystal that has been selectively doped so that one region is *n*-type material and the adjacent region is *p*-type material. Let's assume that the junction has been formed mechanically by jamming together a bar of *n*-type semiconductor and a bar of *p*-type semiconductor. Thus, the transition from one region to the other is perfectly sharp, occurring at a single **junction plane.**

Let us discuss the motions of electrons and holes just after the *n*-type bar and the *p*-type bar, both electrically neutral, have been jammed together to form the junction. We first examine the majority carriers, which are electrons in the *n*-type material and holes in the *p*-type material.

Motions of the Majority Carriers

If you burst a helium-filled balloon, helium atoms will diffuse (spread) outward into the surrounding air. This happens because there are very few helium atoms in normal air. In more formal language, there is a helium *density gradient* at the balloon–air interface (the number density of helium atoms varies across the interface); the helium atoms move so as to reduce the gradient.

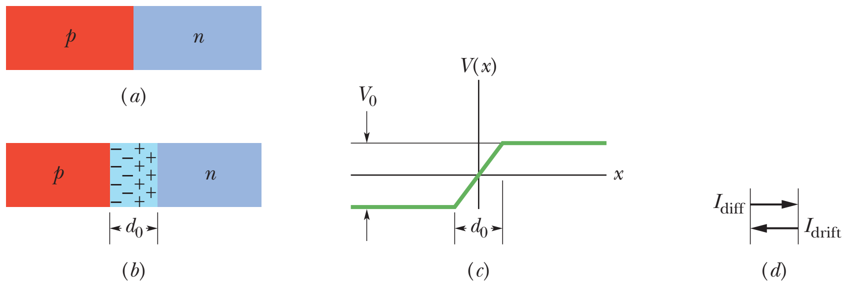
In the same way, electrons on the *n* side of Fig. 41-12*a* that are close to the junction plane tend to diffuse across it (from right to left in the figure) and into the *p* side, where there are very few free electrons. Similarly, holes on the *p* side that are close to the junction plane tend to diffuse across that plane (from left to right) and into the *n* side, where there are very few holes. The motions of both the electrons and the holes contribute to a **diffusion current** I_{diff}, conventionally directed from left to right as indicated in Fig. 41-12*d*.

Recall that the *n*-side is studded throughout with positively charged donor ions, fixed firmly in their lattice sites. Normally, the excess positive charge of each of these ions is compensated electrically by one of the conduction-band electrons. When an *n*-side electron diffuses across the junction plane, however, the diffusion "uncovers" one of these donor ions, thus introducing a fixed positive charge near the junction plane on the *n* side. When the diffusing electron arrives on the *p* side, it quickly combines with an acceptor ion (which lacks one electron), thus introducing a fixed negative charge near the junction plane on the *p* side.

In this way electrons diffusing through the junction plane from right to left in Fig. 41-12*a* result in a buildup of **space charge** on each side of the junction plane, with positive charge on the *n* side and negative charge on the *p* side, as shown in Fig. 41-12*b*. Holes diffusing through the junction plane from left to right have exactly the same effect. (Take the time now to convince yourself of that.) The motions of both majority carriers—electrons and holes—contribute to the buildup of these two space charge regions, one positive and one negative. These two regions form a **depletion zone,** so named because it is relatively free of *mobile* charge carriers; its width is shown as d_0 in Fig. 41-12*b*.

The buildup of space charge generates an associated **contact potential difference** V_0 across the depletion zone, as Fig. 41-12*c* shows. This potential difference

Figure 41-12 (*a*) A *p-n* junction. (*b*) Motions of the majority charge carriers across the junction plane uncover a space charge associated with uncompensated donor ions (to the right of the plane) and acceptor ions (to the left). (*c*) Associated with the space charge is a contact potential difference V_0 across d_0. (*d*) The diffusion of majority carriers (both electrons and holes) across the junction plane produces a diffusion current I_{diff}. (In a real *p-n* junction, the boundaries of the depletion zone would not be sharp, as shown here, and the contact potential curve (*c*) would be smooth, with no sharp corners.)



limits further diffusion of electrons and holes across the junction plane. Negative charges tend to avoid regions of low potential. Thus, an electron approaching the junction plane from the right in Fig. 41-12*b* is moving toward a region of low potential and would tend to turn back into the *n* side. Similarly, a positive charge (a hole) approaching the junction plane from the left is moving toward a region of high potential and would tend to turn back into the *p* side.

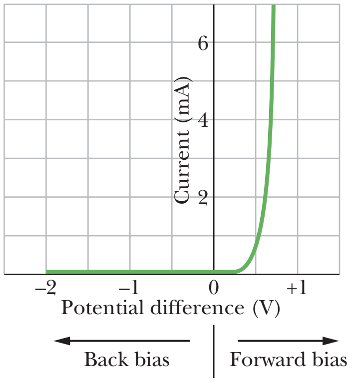


Figure 41-13 A current–voltage plot for a *p-n* junction, showing that the junction is highly conducting when forward-biased and essentially nonconducting when back-biased.

Motions of the Minority Carriers

As Fig. 41-11*a* shows, although the majority carriers in *n*-type material are electrons, there are a few holes. Likewise in *p*-type material (Fig. 41-11*b*), although the majority carriers are holes, there are also a few electrons. These few holes and electrons are the minority carriers in the corresponding materials.

Although the potential difference V_0 in Fig. 41-12*c* acts as a barrier for the majority carriers, it is a downhill trip for the minority carriers, be they electrons on the *p* side or holes on the *n* side. Positive charges (holes) tend to seek regions of low potential; negative charges (electrons) tend to seek regions of high potential. Thus, both types of minority carriers are *swept across* the junction plane by the contact potential difference and together constitute a **drift current** I_{drift} across the junction plane from right to left, as Fig. 41-12*d* indicates.

Thus, an isolated *p-n* junction is in an equilibrium state in which a contact potential difference V_0 exists between its ends. At equilibrium, the average diffusion current I_{diff} that moves through the junction plane from the *p* side to the *n* side is just balanced by an average drift current I_{drift} that moves in the opposite direction. These two currents cancel because the net current through the junction plane must be zero; otherwise charge would be transferred without limit from one end of the junction to the other.

Checkpoint 2

Which of the following five currents across the junction plane of Fig. 41-12*a* must be zero?

(a) the net current due to holes, both majority and minority carriers included
(b) the net current due to electrons, both majority and minority carriers included
(c) the net current due to both holes and electrons, both majority and minority carriers included
(d) the net current due to majority carriers, both holes and electrons included
(e) the net current due to minority carriers, both holes and electrons included

The Junction Rectifier

Look now at Fig. 41-13. It shows that, if we place a potential difference across a *p-n* junction in one direction (here labeled + and "Forward bias"), there will be a current through the junction. However, if we reverse the direction of the potential difference, there will be approximately zero current through the junction.

One application of this property is the **junction rectifier,** whose symbol is shown in Fig. 41-14*b*; the arrowhead corresponds to the *p*-type end of the device and points in the allowed direction of conventional current. A sine wave input potential to the device (Fig. 41-14*a*) is transformed to a half-wave output potential (Fig. 41-14*c*) by the junction rectifier; that is, the rectifier acts as essentially a closed switch (zero resistance) for one polarity of the input potential and as essentially an open switch (infinite resistance) for the other. The average input voltage is zero, but the average output voltage is not. Thus, a junction rectifier can be used as part of an apparatus to convert an alternating potential difference into a constant potential difference, as for a power supply.

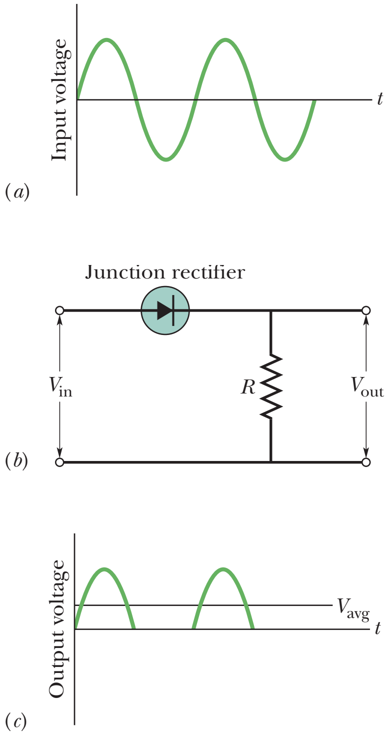


Figure 41-14 A *p-n* junction connected as a junction rectifier. The action of the circuit in (*b*) is to pass the positive half of the input wave form in (*a*) but to suppress the negative half. The average potential of the input wave form is zero; that of the output wave form in (*c*) has a positive value V_{avg}.

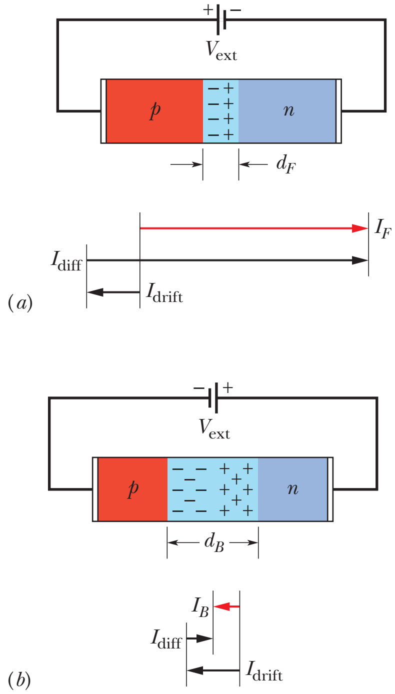


Figure 41-15 (*a*) The forward-bias connection of a *p*-*n* junction, showing the narrowed depletion zone and the large forward current I_F. (*b*) The back-bias connection, showing the widened depletion zone and the small back current I_B.

Figure 41-15 shows why a *p*-*n* junction operates as a junction rectifier. In Fig. 41-15*a*, a battery is connected across the junction with its positive terminal connected at the *p* side. In this **forward-bias connection,** the *p* side becomes more positive and the *n* side becomes more negative, thus *decreasing* the height of the potential barrier V_0 of Fig. 41-12*c*. More of the majority carriers can now surmount this smaller barrier; hence, the diffusion current I_{diff} increases markedly.

The minority carriers that form the drift current, however, sense no barrier; so the drift current I_{drift} is not affected by the external battery. The nice current balance that existed at zero bias (see Fig. 41-12*d*) is thus upset, and, as shown in Fig. 41-15*a*, a large net forward current I_F appears in the circuit.

Another effect of forward bias is to narrow the depletion zone, as a comparison of Fig. 41-12*b* and Fig. 41-15*a* shows. The depletion zone narrows because the reduced potential barrier associated with forward bias must be associated with a smaller space charge. Because the ions producing the space charge are fixed in their lattice sites, a reduction in their number can come about only through a reduction in the width of the depletion zone.

Because the depletion zone normally contains very few charge carriers, it is normally a region of high resistivity. However, when its width is substantially reduced by a forward bias, its resistance is also reduced substantially, as is consistent with the large forward current.

Figure 41-15*b* shows the **back-bias** connection, in which the negative terminal of the battery is connected at the *p*-type end of the *p*-*n* junction. Now the applied emf *increases* the contact potential difference, the diffusion current *decreases* substantially while the drift current remains unchanged, and a relatively *small* back current I_B results. The depletion zone *widens,* its *high* resistance being consistent with the *small* back current I_B.

The Light-Emitting Diode (LED)

Nowadays, we can hardly avoid the brightly colored "electronic" numbers that glow at us from cash registers and gasoline pumps, microwave ovens and alarm clocks, and we cannot seem to do without the invisible infrared beams that control elevator doors and operate television sets via remote control. In nearly all cases this light is emitted from a *p*-*n* junction operating as a **light-emitting diode** (LED). How can a *p*-*n* junction generate light?

Consider first a simple semiconductor. When an electron from the bottom of the conduction band falls into a hole at the top of the valence band, an energy E_g equal to the gap width is released. In silicon, germanium, and many other semiconductors, this energy is largely transformed into thermal energy of the vibrating lattice, and as a result, no light is emitted.

In some semiconductors, however, including gallium arsenide, the energy can be emitted as a photon of energy *hf* at wavelength

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{c}{E_g/h} = \frac{hc}{E_g}. \tag{41-11}$$

To emit enough light to be useful as an LED, the material must have a suitably large number of electron–hole transitions. This condition is not satisfied by a pure semiconductor because, at room temperature, there are simply not enough electron–hole pairs. As Fig. 41-11 suggests, doping will not help. In doped *n*-type material the number of conduction electrons is greatly increased, but there are not enough holes for them to combine with; in doped *p*-type material there are plenty of holes but not enough electrons to combine with them. Thus, neither a pure semiconductor nor a doped semiconductor can provide enough electron–hole transitions to serve as a practical LED.

What we need is a semiconductor material with a very large number of electrons in the conduction band *and* a correspondingly large number of holes in the valence band. A device with this property can be fabricated by placing a strong forward bias on a heavily doped *p-n* junction, as in Fig. 41-16. In such an arrangement the current I through the device serves to inject electrons into the *n*-type material and to inject holes into the *p*-type material. If the doping is heavy enough and the current is great enough, the depletion zone can become very narrow, perhaps only a few micrometers wide. The result is a great number density of electrons in the *n*-type material facing a correspondingly great number density of holes in the *p*-type material, across the narrow depletion zone. With such great number densities so near each other, many electron–hole combinations occur, causing light to be emitted from that zone. Figure 41-17 shows the construction of an actual LED.

Commercial LEDs designed for the visible region are commonly based on gallium suitably doped with arsenic and phosphorus atoms. An arrangement in which 60% of the nongallium sites are occupied by arsenic ions and 40% by phosphorus ions results in a gap width E_g of about 1.8 eV, corresponding to red light. Other doping and transition-level arrangements make it possible to construct LEDs that emit light in essentially any desired region of the visible and near-visible spectra.

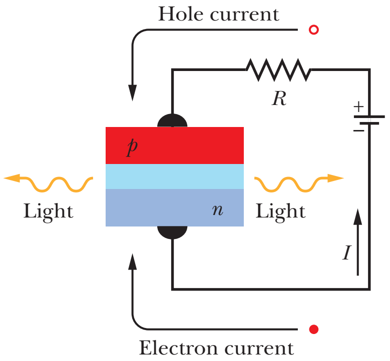


Figure 41-16 A forward-biased *p-n* junction, showing electrons being injected into the *n*-type material and holes into the *p*-type material. (Holes move in the conventional direction of the current I, equivalent to electrons moving in the opposite direction.) Light is emitted from the narrow depletion zone each time an electron and a hole combine across that zone.

The Photodiode

Passing a current through a suitably arranged *p-n* junction can generate light. The reverse is also true; that is, shining light on a suitably arranged *p-n* junction can produce a current in a circuit that includes the junction. This is the basis for the **photodiode.**

When you click your television remote control, an LED in the device sends out a coded sequence of pulses of infrared light. The receiving device in your television set is an elaboration of the simple (two-terminal) photodiode that not only detects the infrared signals but also amplifies them and transforms them into electrical signals that change the channel or adjust the volume, among other tasks.

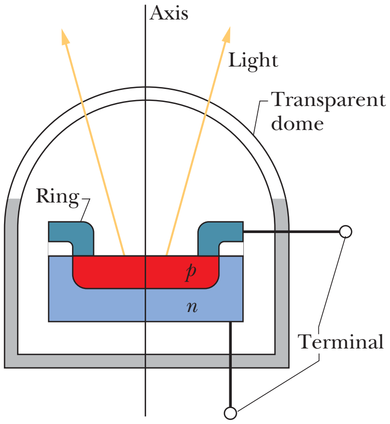


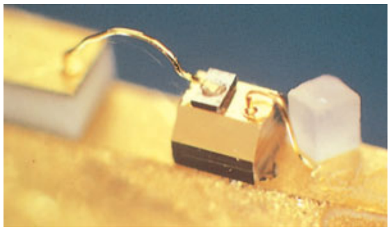
Figure 41-17 Cross section of an LED (the device has rotational symmetry about the central axis). The *p*-type material, which is thin enough to transmit light, is in the form of a circular disk. A connection is made to the *p*-type material through a circular metal ring that touches the disk at its periphery. The depletion zone between the *n*-type material and the *p*-type material is not shown.

The Junction Laser

In the arrangement of Fig. 41-16, there are many electrons in the conduction band of the *n*-type material and many holes in the valence band of the *p*-type material. Thus, there is a **population inversion** for the electrons; that is, there are more electrons in higher energy levels than in lower energy levels. As we discussed in Module 40-7, this can lead to lasing.

When a single electron moves from the conduction band to the valence band, it can release its energy as a photon. This photon can stimulate a second electron to fall into the valence band, producing a second photon by stimulated emission. In this way, if the current through the junction is great enough, a chain reaction of stimulated emission events can occur and laser light can be generated. To bring this about, opposite faces of the *p-n* junction crystal must be flat and parallel, so that light can be reflected back and forth within the crystal. (Recall that in the helium–neon laser of Fig. 40-20, a pair of mirrors served this purpose.) Thus, a *p-n* junction can act as a **junction laser,** its light output being highly coherent and much more sharply defined in wavelength than light from an LED.

Junction lasers are built into compact disc (CD) players, where, by detecting reflections from the rotating disc, they are used to translate microscopic pits in the disc into sound. They are also much used in optical communication systems based on optical fibers. Figure 41-18 suggests their tiny scale. Junction lasers are usually designed to operate in the infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum because optical fibers have two "windows" in that region (at $\lambda = 1.31$ and $1.55\ \mu$m) for which the energy absorption per unit length of the fiber is a minimum.



Courtesy AT&T Archives and History Center, Warren, NJ

Figure 41-18 A junction laser developed at the AT&T Bell Laboratories. The cube at the right is a grain of salt.

Sample Problem 41.07 Light-emitting diode (LED)

An LED is constructed from a p-n junction based on a certain Ga-As-P semiconducting material whose energy gap is 1.9 eV. What is the wavelength of the emitted light?

Calculation: For jumps from the bottom of the conduction band to the top of the valence band, Eq. 41-11 tells us

$$\lambda = \frac{hc}{E_g} = \frac{(6.63\times 10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s})(3.00\times 10^{8}\,\text{m/s})}{(1.9\,\text{eV})(1.60\times 10^{-19}\,\text{J/eV})}$$

$$= 6.5\times 10^{-7}\,\text{m} = 650\,\text{nm}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Light of this wavelength is red.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

The Transistor

A **transistor** is a three-terminal semiconducting device that can be used to amplify input signals. Figure 41-19 shows a generalized **f**ield-**e**ffect **t**ransistor (FET); in it, the flow of electrons from terminal S (the *source*) leftward through the shaded region to terminal D (the *drain*) can be controlled by an electric field (hence field effect) set up within the device by a suitable electric potential applied to terminal G (the *gate*). Transistors are available in many types; we shall discuss only a particular FET called a MOSFET, or **m**etal-**o**xide-**s**emiconductor-**f**ield-**e**ffect **t**ransistor. The MOSFET has been described as the workhorse of the modern electronics industry.

For many applications the MOSFET is operated in only two states: with the drain-to-source current I_{DS} ON (gate open) or with it OFF (gate closed). The first of these can represent a 1 and the other a 0 in the binary arithmetic on which digital logic is based, and therefore MOSFETs can be used in digital logic circuits. Switching between the ON and OFF states can occur at high speed, so that binary logic data can be moved through MOSFET-based circuits very rapidly. MOSFETs about 500 nm in length—about the same as the wavelength of yellow light—are routinely fabricated for use in electronic devices of all kinds.

Figure 41-20 shows the basic structure of a MOSFET. A single crystal of silicon or other semiconductor is lightly doped to form p-type material that serves as the *substrate.* Embedded in this substrate, by heavily "overdoping" with n-type dopants, are two "islands" of n-type material, forming the drain D and the source S. The drain and source are connected by a thin channel of n-type material, called the ***n* channel.** A thin insulating layer of silicon dioxide (hence the O in MOSFET) is deposited on the crystal and penetrated by two metallic terminals (hence the M) at D and S, so that electrical contact can be made with the drain and the source. A thin metallic layer—the gate G—is deposited facing the n channel. Note that the gate makes no electrical contact with the transistor proper, being separated from it by the insulating oxide layer.

Consider first that the source and p-type substrate are grounded (at zero potential) and the gate is "floating"; that is, the gate is not connected to an external source of emf. Let a potential V_{DS} be applied between the drain and the source, such that the drain is positive. Electrons will then flow through the n channel from source to drain, and the conventional current I_{DS}, as shown in Fig. 41-20, will be from drain to source through the n channel.

Now let a potential V_{GS} be applied to the gate, making it negative with respect to the source. The negative gate sets up within the device an electric field (hence the "field effect") that tends to repel electrons from the n channel down into the substrate. This electron movement widens the (naturally occurring) depletion zone between the n channel and the substrate, at the expense of the n channel. The reduced width of the n channel, coupled with a reduction in the number of charge carriers in that channel, increases the resistance of that channel

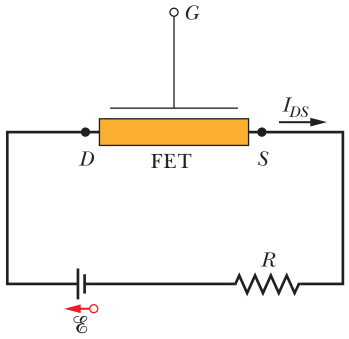


Figure 41-19 A circuit containing a generalized field-effect transistor through which electrons flow from the source terminal S to the drain terminal D. (The conventional current I_{DS} is in the opposite direction.) The magnitude of I_{DS} is controlled by the electric field set up within the FET by a potential applied to G, the gate terminal.

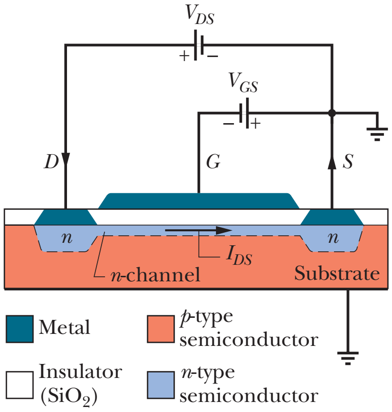


Figure 41-20 A particular type of field-effect transistor known as a MOSFET. The magnitude of the drain-to-source conventional current I_{DS} through the n channel is controlled by the potential difference V_{GS} applied between the source S and the gate G. A depletion zone that exists between the n-type material and the p-type substrate is not shown.

and thus decreases the current I_{DS}. With the proper value of V_{GS}, this current can be shut off completely; hence, by controlling V_{GS}, the MOSFET can be switched between its ON and OFF modes.

Charge carriers do not flow through the substrate because it (1) is lightly doped, (2) is not a good conductor, and (3) is separated from the n channel and the two n-type islands by an insulating depletion zone, not specifically shown in Fig. 41-20. Such a depletion zone always exists at a boundary between n-type material and p-type material, as Fig. 41-12b shows.

Computers and other electronic devices employ thousands (if not millions) of transistors and other electronic components, such as capacitors and resistors. These are not assembled as separate units but are crafted into a single semiconducting **chip,** forming an **integrated circuit** with millions of transistors and many other electronic components.

Review & Summary

Metals, Semiconductors, and Insulators Three electrical properties that can be used to distinguish among crystalline solids are **resistivity** ρ, **temperature coefficient of resistivity** α, and **number density of charge carriers** n. Solids can be broadly divided into **insulators** (very high ρ), **metals** (low ρ, positive and low α, large n), and **semiconductors** (high ρ, negative and high α, small n).

Energy Levels and Gaps in a Crystalline Solid An isolated atom can exist in only a discrete set of energy levels. As atoms come together to form a solid, the levels of the individual atoms merge to form the discrete energy **bands** of the solid. These energy bands are separated by energy **gaps,** each of which corresponds to a range of energies that no electron may possess.

Any energy band is made up of an enormous number of very closely spaced levels. The Pauli exclusion principle asserts that only one electron may occupy each of these levels.

Insulators In an insulator, the highest band containing electrons is completely filled and is separated from the vacant band above it by an energy gap so large that electrons can essentially never become thermally agitated enough to jump across the gap.

Metals In a metal, the highest band that contains any electrons is only partially filled. The energy of the highest filled level at a temperature of 0 K is called the **Fermi energy** E_F for the metal.

The electrons in the partially filled band are the **conduction electrons** and their number is

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of conduction}\\ \text{electrons in sample}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{number of valence}\\ \text{electrons per atom}\end{pmatrix}. \tag{41-2}$$

The number of atoms in a sample is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{number of atoms}\\ \text{in sample}\end{pmatrix} = \frac{\text{sample mass } M_{\text{sam}}}{\text{atomic mass}} = \frac{\text{sample mass } M_{\text{sam}}}{(\text{molar mass } M)/N_A} = \frac{\begin{pmatrix}\text{material's}\\ \text{density}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{sample}\\ \text{volume } V\end{pmatrix}}{(\text{molar mass } M)/N_A}. \tag{41-4}$$

The number density n of the conduction electrons is

$$n = \frac{\text{number of conduction electrons in sample}}{\text{sample volume } V}. \tag{41-3}$$

The **density of states** function $N(E)$ is the number of available energy levels per unit volume of the sample and per unit energy interval and is given by

$$N(E) = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\pi m^{3/2}}{h^3} E^{1/2} \quad (\text{density of states, m}^{-3}\ \text{J}^{-1}), \tag{41-5}$$

where m $(= 9.109 \times 10^{-31}$ kg) is the electron mass, h $(= 6.626 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s) is the Planck constant, and E is the energy in joules at which $N(E)$ is to be evaluated. To modify the equation so that the value of E is in eV and the value of $N(E)$ is in m^{-3} eV^{-1}, multiply the right side by $e^{3/2}$ (where $e = 1.602 \times 10^{-19}$ C).

The **occupancy probability** $P(E)$, the probability that a given available state will be occupied by an electron, is

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{(E-E_F)/kT} + 1} \quad (\text{occupancy probability}). \tag{41-6}$$

The **density of occupied states** $N_o(E)$ is given by the product of the two quantities in Eqs. (41-5) and (41-6):

$$N_o(E) = N(E)\,P(E) \quad (\text{density of occupied states}). \tag{41-7}$$

The Fermi energy for a metal can be found by integrating $N_o(E)$ for $T = 0$ from $E = 0$ to $E = E_F$. The result is

$$E_F = \left(\frac{3}{16\sqrt{2}\pi}\right)^{2/3} \frac{h^2}{m} n^{2/3} = \frac{0.121h^2}{m} n^{2/3}. \tag{41-9}$$

Semiconductors The band structure of a semiconductor is like that of an insulator except that the gap width E_g is much smaller in the semiconductor. For silicon (a semiconductor) at room temperature, thermal agitation raises a few electrons to the **conduction band,** leaving an equal number of **holes** in the **valence band.** Both electrons and holes serve as charge carriers. The number of electrons in the conduction band of silicon can be increased greatly by doping with small amounts of phosphorus, thus forming ***n*-type material.** The number of holes in the valence band can be greatly increased by doping with aluminum, thus forming ***p*-type material.**

The *p-n* Junction A ***p-n* junction** is a single semiconducting crystal with one end doped to form *p*-type material and the other end doped to form *n*-type material, the two types meeting at a **junction plane.** At thermal equilibrium, the following occurs at that plane:

The **majority carriers** (electrons on the *n* side and holes on the *p* side) diffuse across the junction plane, producing a **diffusion current** I_{diff}.

The **minority carriers** (holes on the *n* side and electrons on the *p* side) are swept across the junction plane, forming a **drift current** I_{drift}. These two currents are equal in magnitude, making the net current zero.

A **depletion zone,** consisting largely of charged donor and acceptor ions, forms across the junction plane.

A **contact potential difference** V_0 develops across the depletion zone.

Applications of the *p-n* Junction When a potential difference is applied across a *p-n* junction, the device conducts electricity more readily for one polarity of the applied potential difference than for the other. Thus, a *p-n* junction can serve as a **junction rectifier.**

When a *p-n* junction is forward biased, it can emit light, hence can serve as a **light-emitting diode** (LED). The wavelength of the emitted light is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{hc}{E_g}. \tag{41-11}$$

A strongly forward-biased *p-n* junction with parallel end faces can operate as a **junction laser,** emitting light of a sharply defined wavelength.

Questions

1 On which of the following does the interval between adjacent energy levels in the highest occupied band of a metal depend: (a) the material of which the sample is made, (b) the size of the sample, (c) the position of the level in the band, (d) the temperature of the sample, (e) the Fermi energy of the metal?

2 Figure 41-1*a* shows 14 atoms that represent the unit cell of copper. However, because each of these atoms is shared with one or more adjoining unit cells, only a fraction of each atom belongs to the unit cell shown. What is the number of atoms per unit cell for copper? (To answer, count up the fractional atoms belonging to a single unit cell.)

3 Figure 41-1*b* shows 18 atoms that represent the unit cell of silicon. Fourteen of these atoms, however, are shared with one or more adjoining unit cells. What is the number of atoms per unit cell for silicon? (See Question 2.)

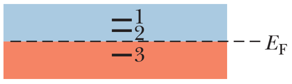


Figure 41-21 Question 4.

4 Figure 41-21 shows three labeled levels in a band and also the Fermi level for the material. The temperature is 0 K. Rank the three levels according to the probability of occupation, greatest first if the temperature is (a) 0 K and (b) 1000 K. (c) At the latter temperature, rank the levels according to the density of states $N(E)$ there, greatest first.

5 The occupancy probability at a certain energy E_1 in the valence band of a metal is 0.60 when the temperature is 300 K. Is E_1 above or below the Fermi energy?

6 An isolated atom of germanium has 32 electrons, arranged in subshells according to this scheme:

$$1s^2\ 2s^2\ 2p^6\ 3s^2\ 3p^6\ 3d^{10}\ 4s^2\ 4p^2.$$

This element has the same crystal structure as silicon and, like silicon, is a semiconductor. Which of these electrons form the valence band of crystalline germanium?

7 If the temperature of a piece of a metal is increased, does the probability of occupancy 0.1 eV above the Fermi level increase, decrease, or remain the same?

8 In the biased *p-n* junctions shown in Fig. 41-15, there is an electric field $\vec{E}$ in each of the two depletion zones, associated with the potential difference that exists across that zone. (a) Is the electric field vector directed from left to right in the figure or from right to left? (b) Is the magnitude of the field greater for forward bias or for back bias?

9 Consider a copper wire that is carrying, say, a few amperes of current. Is the drift speed v_d of the conduction electrons that form that current about equal to, much greater than, or much less than the Fermi speed v_F for copper (the speed associated with the Fermi energy for copper)?

10 In a silicon lattice, where should you look if you want to find (a) a conduction electron, (b) a valence electron, and (c) an electron associated with the 2*p* subshell of the isolated silicon atom?

11 The energy gaps E_g for the semiconductors silicon and germanium are, respectively, 1.12 and 0.67 eV. Which of the following statements, if any, are true? (a) Both substances have the same number density of charge carriers at room temperature. (b) At room temperature, germanium has a greater number density of charge carriers than silicon. (c) Both substances have a greater number density of conduction electrons than holes. (d) For each substance, the number density of electrons equals that of holes.

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com
WWW Worked-out solution is at
ILW Interactive solution is at
http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 41-1 The Electrical Properties of Metals

•1 Show that Eq. 41-9 can be written as $E_F = An^{2/3}$, where the constant A has the value $3.65 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{eV}$.

•2 Calculate the density of states $N(E)$ for a metal at energy $E = 8.0$ eV and show that your result is consistent with the curve of Fig. 41-6.

•3 Copper, a monovalent metal, has molar mass 63.54 g/mol and density 8.96 g/cm^3. What is the number density n of conduction electrons in copper?

•4 A state 63 meV above the Fermi level has a probability of occupancy of 0.090. What is the probability of occupancy for a state 63 meV *below* the Fermi level?

•5 (a) Show that Eq. 41-5 can be written as $N(E) = CE^{1/2}$. (b) Evaluate C in terms of meters and electron-volts. (c) Calculate $N(E)$ for $E = 5.00$ eV.

•6 Use Eq. 41-9 to verify 7.0 eV as copper's Fermi energy.

•7 SSM What is the probability that a state 0.0620 eV above the Fermi energy will be occupied at (a) $T = 0$ K and (b) $T = 320$ K?

•8 What is the number density of conduction electrons in gold, which is a monovalent metal? Use the molar mass and density provided in Appendix F.

••9 SSM WWW Silver is a monovalent metal. Calculate (a) the number density of conduction electrons, (b) the Fermi energy, (c) the Fermi speed, and (d) the de Broglie wavelength corresponding to this electron speed. See Appendix F for the needed data on silver.

••10 Show that the probability $P(E)$ that an energy level having energy E is not occupied is

$$P(E) = \frac{1}{e^{-\Delta E/kT} + 1},$$

where $\Delta E = E - E_F$.

••11 Calculate $N_o(E)$, the density of occupied states, for copper at $T = 1000$ K for an energy E of (a) 4.00 eV, (b) 6.75 eV, (c) 7.00 eV, (d) 7.25 eV, and (e) 9.00 eV. Compare your results with the graph of Fig. 41-8*b*. The Fermi energy for copper is 7.00 eV.

••12 What is the probability that, at a temperature of $T = 300$ K, an electron will jump across the energy gap E_g $(= 5.5$ eV$)$ in a diamond that has a mass equal to the mass of Earth? Use the molar mass of carbon in Appendix F; assume that in diamond there is one valence electron per carbon atom.

••13 GO The Fermi energy for copper is 7.00 eV. For copper at 1000 K, (a) find the energy of the energy level whose probability of being occupied by an electron is 0.900. For this energy, evaluate (b) the density of states $N(E)$ and (c) the density of occupied states $N_o(E)$.

••14 Assume that the total volume of a metal sample is the sum of the volume occupied by the metal ions making up the lattice and the (separate) volume occupied by the conduction electrons. The density and molar mass of sodium (a metal) are 971 kg/m^3 and 23.0 g/mol, respectively; assume the radius of the Na$^+$ ion is 98.0 pm. (a) What percent of the volume of a sample of metallic sodium is occupied by its conduction electrons? (b) Carry out the same calculation for copper, which has density, molar mass, and ionic radius of 8960 kg/m^3, 63.5 g/mol, and 135 pm, respectively. (c) For which of these metals do you think the conduction electrons behave more like a free-electron gas?

••15 SSM WWW In Eq. 41-6 let $E - E_F = \Delta E = 1.00$ eV. (a) At what temperature does the result of using this equation differ by 1.0% from the result of using the classical Boltzmann equation $P(E) = e^{-\Delta E/kT}$ (which is Eq. 41-1 with two changes in notation)? (b) At what temperature do the results from these two equations differ by 10%?

••16 Calculate the number density (number per unit volume) for (a) molecules of oxygen gas at 0.0°C and 1.0 atm pressure and (b) conduction electrons in copper. (c) What is the ratio of the latter to the former? What is the average distance between (d) the oxygen molecules and (e) the conduction electrons, assuming this distance is the edge length of a cube with a volume equal to the available volume per particle (molecule or electron)?

••17 The Fermi energy of aluminum is 11.6 eV; its density and molar mass are 2.70 g/cm^3 and 27.0 g/mol, respectively. From these data, determine the number of conduction electrons per atom.

••18 GO A sample of a certain metal has a volume of 4.0×10^{-5} m^3. The metal has a density of 9.0 g/cm^3 and a molar mass of 60 g/mol. The atoms are bivalent. How many conduction electrons (or valence electrons) are in the sample?

••19 The Fermi energy for silver is 5.5 eV. At $T = 0$°C, what are the probabilities that states with the following energies are occupied: (a) 4.4 eV, (b) 5.4 eV, (c) 5.5 eV, (d) 5.6 eV, and (e) 6.4 eV? (f) At what temperature is the probability 0.16 that a state with energy $E = 5.6$ eV is occupied?

••20 GO What is the number of occupied states in the energy range of 0.0300 eV that is centered at a height of 6.10 eV in the valence band if the sample volume is 5.00×10^{-8} m^3, the Fermi level is 5.00 eV, and the temperature is 1500 K?

••21 At 1000 K, the fraction of the conduction electrons in a metal that have energies greater than the Fermi energy is equal to the area under the curve of Fig. 41-8*b* beyond E_F divided by the area under the entire curve. It is difficult to find these areas by direct integration. However, an approximation to this fraction at any temperature T is

$$frac = \frac{3kT}{2E_F}.$$

Note that $frac = 0$ for $T = 0$ K, just as we would expect. What is this fraction for copper at (a) 300 K and (b) 1000 K? For copper, $E_F = 7.0$ eV. (c) Check your answers by numerical integration using Eq. 41-7.

••22 At what temperature do 1.30% of the conduction electrons in lithium (a metal) have energies greater than the Fermi energy E_F, which is 4.70 eV? (See Problem 21.)

••23 Show that, at $T = 0$ K, the average energy E_{avg} of the conduction electrons in a metal is equal to $\frac{3}{5}E_F$. (*Hint:* By definition of average, $E_{avg} = (1/n)\int E\, N_o(E)\, dE$, where n is the number density of charge carriers.)

••24 GO A certain material has a molar mass of 20.0 g/mol, a Fermi energy of 5.00 eV, and 2 valence electrons per atom. What is the density (g/cm^3)?

••25 (a) Using the result of Problem 23 and 7.00 eV for copper's Fermi energy, determine how much energy would be released by the conduction electrons in a copper coin with mass 3.10 g if we could suddenly turn off the Pauli exclusion principle. (b) For how long would this amount of energy light a 100 W lamp? (*Note:* There is no way to turn off the Pauli principle!)

••26 At $T = 300$ K, how far above the Fermi energy is a state for which the probability of occupation by a conduction electron is 0.10?

••27 Zinc is a bivalent metal. Calculate (a) the number density of conduction electrons, (b) the Fermi energy, (c) the Fermi speed, and (d) the de Broglie wavelength corresponding to this electron speed. See Appendix F for the needed data on zinc.

••28 GO What is the Fermi energy of gold (a monovalent metal with molar mass 197 g/mol and density 19.3 g/cm^3)?

••29 Use the result of Problem 23 to calculate the total translational kinetic energy of the conduction electrons in 1.00 cm^3 of copper at $T = 0$ K.

•••30 GO A certain metal has 1.70×10^{28} conduction electrons per cubic meter. A sample of that metal has a volume of 6.00×10^{-6} m^3 and a temperature of 200 K. How many occupied states are in the energy range of 3.20×10^{-20} J that is centered on the energy 4.00×10^{-19} J? (*Caution:* Avoid round-off in the exponential.)

Module 41-2 Semiconductors and Doping

•31 SSM (a) What maximum light wavelength will excite an electron in the valence band of diamond to the conduction band? The energy gap is 5.50 eV. (b) In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum does this wavelength lie?

••32 The compound gallium arsenide is a commonly used semiconductor, having an energy gap E_g of 1.43 eV. Its crystal structure is like that of silicon, except that half the silicon atoms are replaced by gallium atoms and half by arsenic atoms. Draw a flattened-out sketch of the gallium arsenide lattice, following the pattern of Fig. 41-10*a*. What is the net charge of the (a) gallium and (b) arsenic ion core? (c) How many electrons per bond are there? (*Hint:* Consult the periodic table in Appendix G.)

••33 The occupancy probability function (Eq. 41-6) can be applied to semiconductors as well as to metals. In semiconductors the Fermi energy is close to the midpoint of the gap between the valence band and the conduction band. For germanium, the gap width is 0.67 eV. What is the probability that (a) a state at the bottom of the conduction band is occupied and (b) a state at the top of the valence band is not occupied? Assume that $T = 290$ K. (*Note:* In a pure semiconductor, the Fermi energy lies symmetrically between the population of conduction electrons and the population of holes and thus is at the center of the gap. There need not be an available state at the location of the Fermi energy.)

••34 In a simplified model of an undoped semiconductor, the actual distribution of energy states may be replaced by one in which there are N_v states in the valence band, all these states having the same energy E_v, and N_c states in the conduction band, all these states having the same energy E_c. The number of electrons in the conduction band equals the number of holes in the valence band. (a) Show that this last condition implies that

$$\frac{N_c}{\exp(\Delta E_c/kT) + 1} = \frac{N_v}{\exp(\Delta E_v/kT) + 1},$$

in which

$$\Delta E_c = E_c - E_F \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta E_v = -(E_v - E_F).$$

(b) If the Fermi level is in the gap between the two bands and its distance from each band is large relative to kT, then the exponentials dominate in the denominators. Under these conditions, show that

$$E_F = \frac{(E_c + E_v)}{2} + \frac{kT \ln(N_v/N_c)}{2}$$

and that, if $N_v \approx N_c$, the Fermi level for the undoped semiconductor is close to the gap's center.

••35 SSM WWW What mass of phosphorus is needed to dope 1.0 g of silicon so that the number density of conduction electrons in the silicon is increased by a multiply factor of 10^6 from the 10^{16} m^{-3} in pure silicon.

••36 GO A silicon sample is doped with atoms having donor states 0.110 eV below the bottom of the conduction band. (The energy gap in silicon is 1.11 eV.) If each of these donor states is occupied with a probability of 5.00×10^{-5} at $T = 300$ K, (a) is the Fermi level above or below the top of the silicon valence band and (b) how far above or below? (c) What then is the probability that a state at the bottom of the silicon conduction band is occupied?

••37 GO Doping changes the Fermi energy of a semiconductor. Consider silicon, with a gap of 1.11 eV between the top of the valence band and the bottom of the conduction band. At 300 K the Fermi level of the pure material is nearly at the mid-point of the gap. Suppose that silicon is doped with donor atoms, each of which has a state 0.15 eV below the bottom of the silicon conduction band, and suppose further that doping raises the Fermi level to 0.11 eV below the bottom of that band (Fig. 41-22). For (a) pure and (b) doped silicon, calculate the probability that a state at the bottom of the silicon conduction band is occupied. (c) Calculate the probability that a state in the doped material (at the donor level) is occupied.

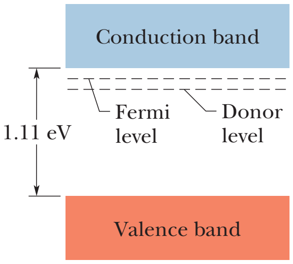


Figure 41-22 Problem 37.

••38 Pure silicon at room temperature has an electron number density in the conduction band of about 5×10^{15} m^{-3} and an equal density of holes in the valence band. Suppose that one of every 10^7 silicon atoms is replaced by a phosphorus atom. (a) Which type will the doped semiconductor be, *n* or *p*? (b) What charge carrier number density will the phosphorus add? (c) What is the ratio of the charge carrier number density (electrons in the conduction band and holes in the valence band) in the doped silicon to that in pure silicon?

Module 41-3 The *p-n* Junction and the Transistor

•39 SSM When a photon enters the depletion zone of a *p-n* junction, the photon can scatter from the valence electrons there, transferring part of its energy to each electron, which then jumps to the conduction band. Thus, the photon creates electron–hole pairs. For this reason, the junctions are often used as light detectors, especially in the x-ray and gamma-ray regions of the electromagnetic spectrum. Suppose a single 662 keV gamma-ray photon transfers its energy to electrons in multiple scattering events inside a semiconductor with an energy gap of 1.1 eV, until all the energy is transferred. Assuming that each electron jumps the gap from the top of the valence band to the bottom of the conduction band, find the number of electron–hole pairs created by the process.

•40 For an ideal *p-n* junction rectifier with a sharp boundary between its two semiconducting sides, the current I is related to the potential difference V across the rectifier by

$$I = I_0(e^{eV/kT} - 1),$$

where I_0, which depends on the materials but not on I or V, is called the *reverse saturation current.* The potential difference V is positive if the rectifier is forward-biased and negative if it is back-biased. (a) Verify that this expression predicts the behavior of a junction rectifier by graphing I versus V from -0.12 V to $+0.12$ V. Take $T = 300$ K and $I_0 = 5.0$ nA. (b) For the same temperature, calculate the ratio of the current for a 0.50 V forward bias to the current for a 0.50 V back bias.

•41 In a particular crystal, the highest occupied band is full. The crystal is transparent to light of wavelengths longer than 295 nm but opaque at shorter wavelengths. Calculate, in electron-volts, the gap between the highest occupied band and the next higher (empty) band for this material.

•42 A potassium chloride crystal has an energy band gap of 7.6 eV above the topmost occupied band, which is full. Is this crystal opaque or transparent to light of wavelength 140 nm?

•43 A certain computer chip that is about the size of a postage stamp (2.54 cm × 2.22 cm) contains about 3.5 million transistors. If the transistors are square, what must be their *maximum* dimension? (*Note:* Devices other than transistors are also on the chip, and there must be room for the interconnections among the circuit elements. Transistors smaller than 0.7 μm are now commonly and inexpensively fabricated.)

•44 A silicon-based MOSFET has a square gate 0.50 μm on edge. The insulating silicon oxide layer that separates the gate from the p-type substrate is 0.20 μm thick and has a dielectric constant of 4.5. (a) What is the equivalent gate–substrate capacitance (treating the gate as one plate and the substrate as the other plate)? (b) Approximately how many elementary charges e appear in the gate when there is a gate–source potential difference of 1.0 V?

Additional Problems

45 SSM (a) Show that the slope dP/dE of Eq. 41-6 evaluated at $E = E_F$ is $-1/4kT$. (b) Show that the tangent line to the curve of Fig. 41-7*b* evaluated at $E = E_F$ intercepts the horizontal axis at $E = E_F + 2kT$.

46 Calculate $d\rho/dT$ at room temperature for (a) copper and (b) silicon, using data from Table 41-1.

47 (a) Find the angle θ between adjacent nearest-neighbor bonds in the silicon lattice. Recall that each silicon atom is bonded to four of its nearest neighbors. The four neighbors form a regular tetrahedron—a pyramid whose sides and base are equilateral triangles. (b) Find the bond length, given that the atoms at the corners of the tetrahedron are 388 pm apart.

48 Show that $P(E)$, the occupancy probability in Eq. 41-6, is symmetrical about the value of the Fermi energy; that is, show that

$$P(E_F + \Delta E) + P(E_F - \Delta E) = 1.$$

49 (a) Show that the density of states at the Fermi energy is given by

$$\begin{aligned} N(E_F) &= \frac{(4)(3^{1/3})(\pi^{2/3})mn^{1/3}}{h^2} \\ &= (4.11 \times 10^{18}\ \text{m}^{-2}\ \text{eV}^{-1})n^{1/3}, \end{aligned}$$

in which n is the number density of conduction electrons. (b) Calculate $N(E_F)$ for copper, which is a monovalent metal with molar mass 63.54 g/mol and density 8.96 g/cm^3. (c) Verify your calculation with the curve of Fig. 41-6, recalling that $E_F = 7.0$ eV for copper.

50 Silver melts at 961°C. At the melting point, what fraction of the conduction electrons are in states with energies greater than the Fermi energy of 5.5 eV? (See Problem 21.)

51 The Fermi energy of copper is 7.0 eV. Verify that the corresponding Fermi speed is 1600 km/s.

52 Verify the numerical factor 0.121 in Eq. 41-9.

53 At what pressure, in atmospheres, would the number of molecules per unit volume in an ideal gas be equal to the number density of the conduction electrons in copper, with both gas and copper at temperature $T = 300$ K?

CHAPTER 42

Nuclear Physics

42-1 DISCOVERING THE NUCLEUS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.01 Explain the general arrangement for Rutherford scattering and what was learned from it.

42.02 In a Rutherford scattering arrangement, apply the relationship between the projectile's initial kinetic energy and the distance of its closest approach to the target nucleus.

Key Ideas

- The positive charge of an atom is concentrated in the central nucleus rather than being spread through the volume of the atom. This structure was proposed in 1910 by Ernest Rutherford of England after he conducted experiments with what we now call Rutherford scattering. Alpha particles (positively charged particles consisting of two protons and two neutrons) are directed through a thin metal foil to be scattered by the (positive) nuclei within the atoms.
- The total energy (kinetic energy plus electric potential energy) of the system of alpha particle and target nucleus is conserved as the alpha particle approaches the nucleus.

What Is Physics?

We now turn to what lies at the center of an atom—the nucleus. For the last 90 years, a principal goal of physics has been to work out the quantum physics of nuclei, and, for almost as long, a principal goal of some types of engineering has been to apply that quantum physics with applications ranging from radiation therapy in the war on cancer to detectors of radon gas in basements.

Before we get to such applications and the quantum physics of nuclei, let's first discuss how physicists discovered that an atom has a nucleus. As obvious as that fact is today, it initially came as an incredible surprise.

Discovering the Nucleus

In the first years of the 20th century, not much was known about the structure of atoms beyond the fact that they contain electrons. The electron had been discovered (by J. J. Thomson) in 1897, and its mass was unknown in those early days. Thus, it was not possible even to say how many negatively charged electrons a given atom contained. Scientists reasoned that because atoms were electrically neutral, they must also contain some positive charge, but nobody knew what form this compensating positive charge took. One popular model was that the positive and negative charges were spread uniformly in a sphere.

In 1911 Ernest Rutherford proposed that the positive charge of the atom is densely concentrated at the center of the atom, forming its **nucleus,** and that, furthermore, the nucleus is responsible for most of the mass of the atom. Rutherford's proposal was no mere conjecture but was based firmly on the results of an experiment suggested by him and carried out by his collaborators, Hans Geiger (of Geiger counter fame) and Ernest Marsden, a 20-year-old student who had not yet earned his bachelor's degree.

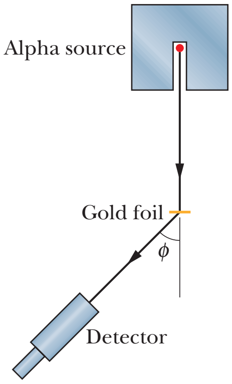


Figure 42-1 An arrangement (top view) used in Rutherford's laboratory in 1911–1913 to study the scattering of α particles by thin metal foils. The detector can be rotated to various values of the scattering angle ϕ. The alpha source was radon gas, a decay product of radium. With this simple "tabletop" apparatus, the atomic nucleus was discovered.

In Rutherford's day it was known that certain elements, called **radioactive,** transform into other elements spontaneously, emitting particles in the process. One such element is radon, which emits alpha (α) particles that have an energy of about 5.5 MeV. We now know that these particles are helium nuclei.

Rutherford's idea was to direct energetic alpha particles at a thin target foil and measure the extent to which they were deflected as they passed through the foil. Alpha particles, which are about 7300 times more massive than electrons, have a charge of $+2e$.

Figure 42-1 shows the experimental arrangement of Geiger and Marsden. Their alpha source was a thin-walled glass tube of radon gas. The experiment involves counting the number of alpha particles that are deflected through various scattering angles ϕ.

Figure 42-2 shows their results. Note especially that the vertical scale is logarithmic. We see that most of the particles are scattered through rather small angles, but—and this was the big surprise—a very small fraction of them are scattered through very large angles, approaching 180°. In Rutherford's words: "It was quite the most incredible event that ever happened to me in my life. It was almost as incredible as if you had fired a 15-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it [the shell] came back and hit you."

Why was Rutherford so surprised? At the time of these experiments, most physicists believed in the so-called plum pudding model of the atom, which had been advanced by J. J. Thomson. In this view the positive charge of the atom was thought to be spread out through the entire volume of the atom. The electrons (the "plums") were thought to vibrate about fixed points within this sphere of positive charge (the "pudding").

The maximum deflecting force that could act on an alpha particle as it passed through such a large positive sphere of charge would be far too small to deflect the alpha particle by even as much as 1°. (The expected deflection has been compared to what you would observe if you fired a bullet through a sack of snowballs.) The electrons in the atom would also have very little effect on the massive, energetic alpha particle. They would, in fact, be themselves strongly deflected, much as a swarm of gnats would be brushed aside by a stone thrown through them.

Rutherford saw that, to deflect the alpha particle backward, there must be a large force; this force could be provided if the positive charge, instead of being spread throughout the atom, were concentrated tightly at its center. Then the incoming alpha particle could get very close to the positive charge without penetrating it; such a close encounter would result in a large deflecting force.

Figure 42-3 shows possible paths taken by typical alpha particles as they pass through the atoms of the target foil. As we see, most are either undeflected or only slightly deflected, but a few (those whose incoming paths pass, by chance, very close to a nucleus) are deflected through large angles. From an analysis of the data, Rutherford concluded that the radius of the nucleus must be smaller than the radius of an atom by a factor of about 10^4. In other words, the atom is mostly empty space.

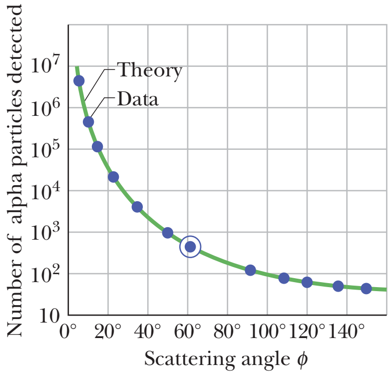


Figure 42-2 The dots are alpha-particle scattering data for a gold foil, obtained by Geiger and Marsden using the apparatus of Fig. 42-1. The solid curve is the theoretical prediction, based on the assumption that the atom has a small, massive, positively charged nucleus. The data have been adjusted to fit the theoretical curve at the experimental point that is enclosed in a circle.

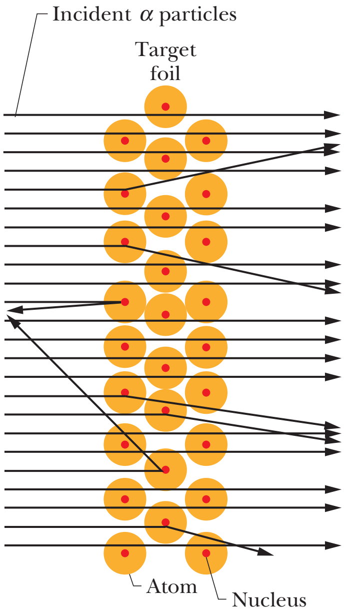


Figure 42-3 The angle through which an incident alpha particle is scattered depends on how close the particle's path lies to an atomic nucleus. Large deflections result only from very close encounters.

Sample Problem 42.01 Rutherford scattering of an alpha particle by a gold nucleus

An alpha particle with kinetic energy K_i = 5.30 MeV happens, by chance, to be headed directly toward the nucleus of a neutral gold atom (Fig. 42-4*a*). What is its *distance of closest approach d* (least center-to-center separation) to the nucleus? Assume that the atom remains stationary.

KEY IDEAS

(1) Throughout the motion, the total mechanical energy E of the particle–atom system is conserved. (2) In addition to the kinetic energy, that total energy includes electric potential energy U as given by Eq. 24-46 ($U = q_1q_2/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r$).

Calculations: The alpha particle has a charge of $+2e$ because it contains two protons. The target nucleus has a charge of $q_{\text{Au}} = +79e$ because it contains 79 protons. However, that nuclear charge is surrounded by an electron "cloud" with a charge of $q_e = -79e$, and thus the alpha particle initially "sees" a neutral atom with a net charge of $q_{\text{atom}} = 0$. The electric force on the particle is zero and the initial electric potential energy of the particle–atom system is $U_i = 0$.

Once the alpha particle enters the atom, we say that it passes through the electron cloud surrounding the nucleus. That cloud then acts as a closed conducting spherical shell and, by Gauss' law, has no effect on the (now internal) charged alpha particle. Then the alpha particle "sees" only the nuclear charge q_{Au}. Because q_α and q_{Au} are both positively charged, a repulsive electric force acts on the alpha particle, slowing it, and the particle–atom system has a potential energy

$$U = \frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{q_\alpha q_{\text{Au}}}{r}$$

that depends on the center-to-center separation r of the incoming particle and the target nucleus (Fig. 42-4*b*).

As the repulsive force slows the alpha particle, energy is transferred from kinetic energy to electric potential energy. The transfer is complete when the alpha particle momentarily stops at the distance of closest approach d to the target nucleus (Fig. 42-4*c*). Just then the kinetic energy is $K_f = 0$ and the particle–atom system has the electric potential energy

$$U_f = \frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{q_\alpha q_{\text{Au}}}{d}.$$

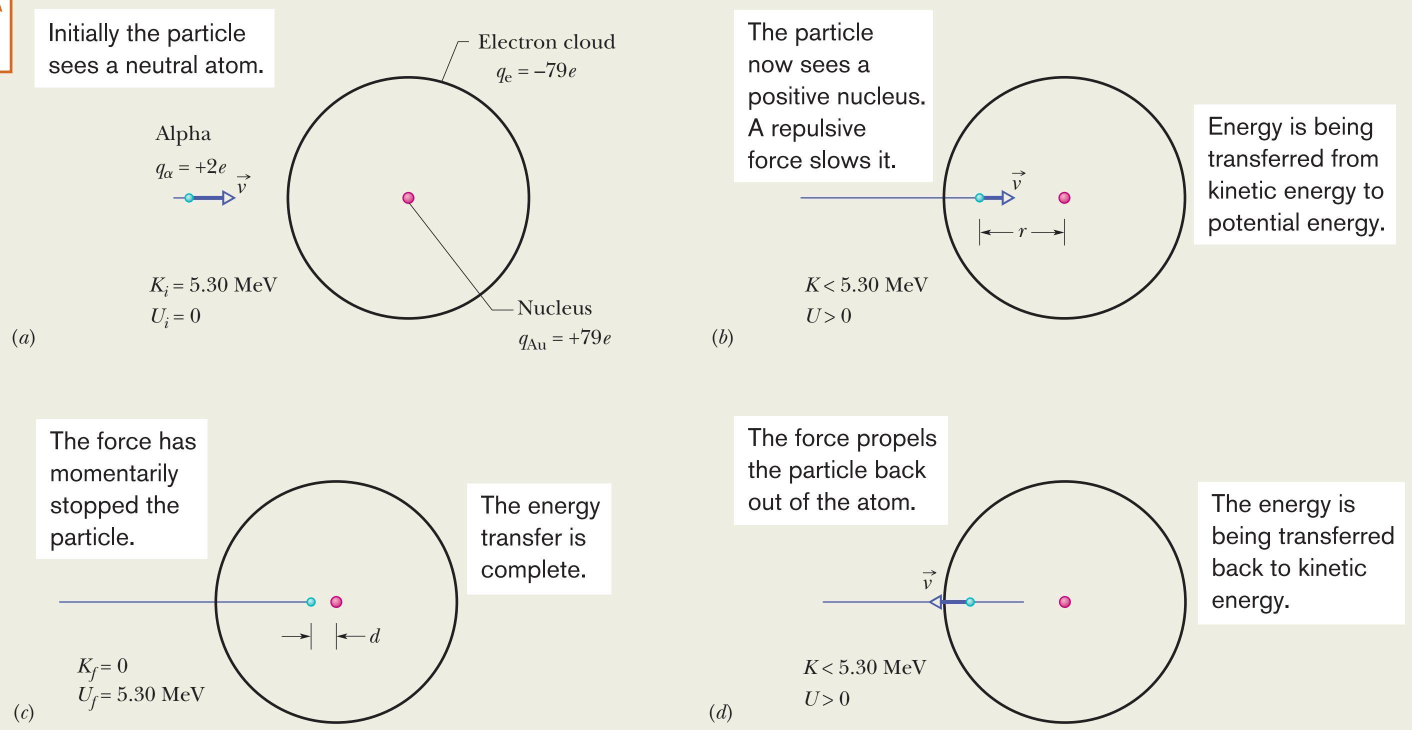


Figure 42-4 An alpha particle (*a*) approaches and (*b*) then enters a gold atom, headed toward the nucleus. The alpha particle (*c*) comes to a stop at the point of closest approach and (*d*) is propelled back out of the atom.

To find d, we conserve the total mechanical energy between the initial state i and this later state f, writing

$$K_i + U_i = K_f + U_f$$

and

$$K_i + 0 = 0 + \frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\frac{q_\alpha q_{\text{Au}}}{d}.$$

(We are assuming that the alpha particle is not affected by the force holding the nucleus together, which acts over only a short distance.) Solving for d and then substituting for the charges and initial kinetic energy lead to

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \frac{(2e)(79e)}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 K_\alpha} \\ &= \frac{(2\times 79)(1.60\times 10^{-19}\text{ C})^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0(5.30\text{ MeV})(1.60\times 10^{-13}\text{ J/MeV})} \\ &= 4.29\times 10^{-14}\text{ m.} \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This distance is considerably larger than the sum of the radii of the gold nucleus and the alpha particle. Thus, this alpha particle reverses its motion (Fig. 42-4d) without ever actually "touching" the gold nucleus.

42-2 SOME NUCLEAR PROPERTIES

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.03 Identify nuclides, atomic number (or proton number), neutron number, mass number, nucleon, isotope, disintegration, neutron excess, isobar, zone of stable nuclei, and island of stability, and explain the symbols used for nuclei (such as ^{197}Au).

42.04 Sketch a graph of proton number versus neutron number and identify the approximate location of the stable nuclei, the proton-rich nuclei, and the neutron-rich nuclei.

42.05 For spherical nuclei, apply the relationship between radius and mass number and calculate the nuclear density.

42.06 Work with masses in atomic mass units, relate the mass number and the approximate nuclear mass, and convert between mass units and energy.

42.07 Calculate mass excess.

42.08 For a given nucleus, calculate the binding energy ΔE_{be} and the binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben}, and explain the meaning of each term.

42.09 Sketch a graph of the binding energy per nucleon versus mass number, indicating the nuclei that are the most tightly bound, those that can undergo fission with a release of energy, and those that can undergo fusion with a release of energy.

42.10 Identify the force that holds nucleons together.

Key Ideas

- Different types of nuclei are called nuclides. Each is characterized by an atomic number Z (the number of protons), a neutron number N, and a mass number A (the total number of nucleons—protons and neutrons). Thus, $A = Z + N$. A nuclide is represented with a symbol such as ^{197}Au or $^{197}_{79}$Au, where the chemical symbol carries a superscript with the value of A and (possibly) a subscript with the value of Z.
- Nuclides with the same atomic number but different neutron numbers are isotopes of one another.
- Nuclei have a mean radius r given by

$$r = r_0 A^{1/3}$$

where $r_0 \approx 1.2$ fm.

- Atomic masses are often reported in terms of mass excess

$$\Delta = M - A,$$

where M is the actual mass of an atom in atomic mass units and A is the mass number for that atom's nucleus.

- The binding energy of a nucleus is the difference

$$\Delta E_{\text{be}} = \Sigma(mc^2) - Mc^2,$$

where $\Sigma(mc^2)$ is the total mass energy of the individual protons and neutrons. The binding energy of a nucleus is the amount of energy needed to break the nucleus into its constituent parts (and is *not* an energy that resides in the nucleus).

- The binding energy per nucleon is

$$\Delta E_{\text{ben}} = \frac{\Delta E_{\text{be}}}{A}.$$

- The energy equivalent of one mass unit (u) is 931.494 013 MeV.
- A plot of the binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben} versus mass number A shows that middle-mass nuclides are the most stable and that energy can be released both by fission of high-mass nuclei and by fusion of low-mass nuclei.

Some Nuclear Properties

Table 42-1 shows some properties of a few atomic nuclei. When we are interested primarily in their properties as specific nuclear species (rather than as parts of atoms), we call these particles **nuclides.**

Some Nuclear Terminology

Nuclei are made up of protons and neutrons. The number of protons in a nucleus (called the **atomic number** or **proton number** of the nucleus) is represented by the symbol Z; the number of neutrons (the **neutron number**) is represented by the symbol N. The total number of neutrons and protons in a nucleus is called its **mass number** A; thus

$$A = Z + N. \tag{42-1}$$

Neutrons and protons, when considered collectively as members of a nucleus, are called **nucleons.**

We represent nuclides with symbols such as those displayed in the first column of Table 42-1. Consider ^{197}Au, for example. The superscript 197 is the mass number A. The chemical symbol Au tells us that this element is gold, whose atomic number is 79. Sometimes the atomic number is explicitly shown as a subscript, as in $^{197}_{79}$Au. From Eq. 42-1, the neutron number of this nuclide is the difference between the mass number and the atomic number, namely, $197 - 79$, or 118.

Nuclides with the same atomic number Z but different neutron numbers N are called **isotopes** of one another. The element gold has 36 isotopes, ranging from ^{173}Au to ^{204}Au. Only one of them (^{197}Au) is stable; the remaining 35 are radioactive. Such **radionuclides** undergo **decay** (or **disintegration**) by emitting a particle and thereby transforming to a different nuclide.

Organizing the Nuclides

The neutral atoms of all isotopes of an element (all with the same Z) have the same number of electrons and the same chemical properties, and they fit into the same box in the periodic table of the elements. The *nuclear* properties of the isotopes of a given element, however, are very different from one isotope to another. Thus, the periodic table is of limited use to the nuclear physicist, the nuclear chemist, or the nuclear engineer.

Table 42-1 **Some Properties of Selected Nuclides**

Nuclide	Z	N	A	Stability[a]	Mass[b] (u)	Spin[c]	Binding Energy (MeV/nucleon)
^{1}H	1	0	1	99.985%	1.007 825	$\frac{1}{2}$	—
^{7}Li	3	4	7	92.5%	7.016 004	$\frac{3}{2}$	5.60
^{31}P	15	16	31	100%	30.973 762	$\frac{1}{2}$	8.48
^{84}Kr	36	48	84	57.0%	83.911 507	0	8.72
^{120}Sn	50	70	120	32.4%	119.902 197	0	8.51
^{157}Gd	64	93	157	15.7%	156.923 957	$\frac{3}{2}$	8.21
^{197}Au	79	118	197	100%	196.966 552	$\frac{3}{2}$	7.91
^{227}Ac	89	138	227	21.8 y	227.027 747	$\frac{3}{2}$	7.65
^{239}Pu	94	145	239	24 100 y	239.052 157	$\frac{1}{2}$	7.56

[a] For stable nuclides, the **isotopic abundance** is given; this is the fraction of atoms of this type found in a typical sample of the element. For radioactive nuclides, the half-life is given.

[b] Following standard practice, the reported mass is that of the neutral atom, not that of the bare nucleus.

[c] Spin angular momentum in units of $\hbar$.

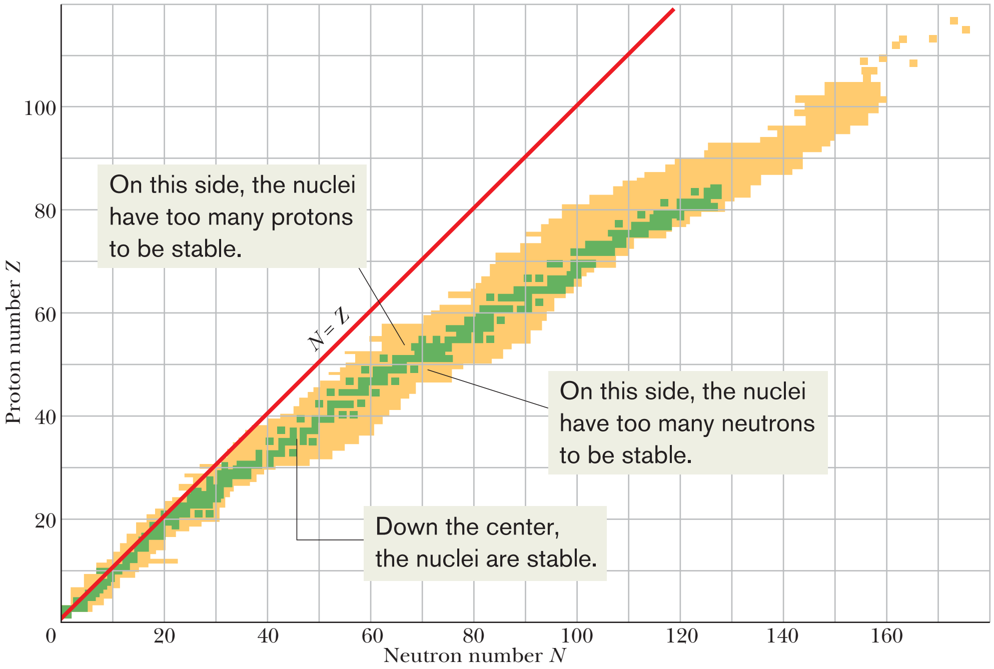


Figure 42-5 A plot of the known nuclides. The green shading identifies the band of stable nuclides, the beige shading the radionuclides. Low-mass, stable nuclides have essentially equal numbers of neutrons and protons, but more massive nuclides have an increasing excess of neutrons. The figure shows that there are no stable nuclides with $Z > 83$ (bismuth).

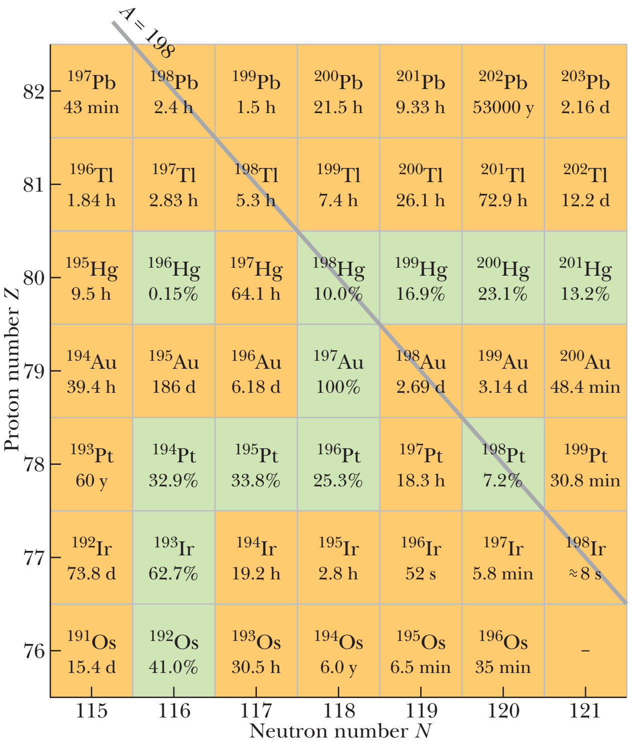
We organize the nuclides on a **nuclidic chart** like that in Fig. 42-5, in which a nuclide is represented by plotting its proton number against its neutron number. The stable nuclides in this figure are represented by the green, the radionuclides by the beige. As you can see, the radionuclides tend to lie on either side of—and at the upper end of—a well-defined band of stable nuclides. Note too that light stable nuclides tend to lie close to the line $N = Z$, which means that they have about the same numbers of neutrons and protons. Heavier nuclides, however, tend to have many more neutrons than protons. As an example, we saw that ^{197}Au has 118 neutrons and only 79 protons, a *neutron excess* of 39.

Nuclidic charts are available as wall charts, in which each small box on the chart is filled with data about the nuclide it represents. Figure 42-6 shows a section of such a chart, centered on ^{197}Au. Relative abundances (usually, as found on Earth) are shown for stable nuclides, and half-lives (a measure of decay rate) are shown for radionuclides. The sloping line points out a line of **isobars**—nuclides of the same mass number, $A = 198$ in this case.

In recent years, nuclides with atomic numbers as high as $Z = 118$ ($A = 294$) have been found in laboratory experiments (no elements with Z greater than 92 occur naturally). Although large nuclides generally should be highly unstable and last only a very brief time, certain supermassive nuclides are relatively stable, with fairly long lifetimes. These stable supermassive nuclides and other predicted ones form an *island of stability* at high values of Z and N on a nuclidic chart like Fig. 42-5.

✓ Checkpoint 1

Based on Fig. 42-5, which of the following nuclides do you conclude are not likely to be detected: ^{52}Fe ($Z = 26$), ^{90}As ($Z = 33$), ^{158}Nd ($Z = 60$), ^{175}Lu ($Z = 71$), ^{208}Pb ($Z = 82$)?



Z \ N	115	116	117	118	119	120	121
82	^{197}Pb 43 min	^{198}Pb 2.4 h	^{199}Pb 1.5 h	^{200}Pb 21.5 h	^{201}Pb 9.33 h	^{202}Pb 53000 y	^{203}Pb 2.16 d
81	^{196}Tl 1.84 h	^{197}Tl 2.83 h	^{198}Tl 5.3 h	^{199}Tl 7.4 h	^{200}Tl 26.1 h	^{201}Tl 72.9 h	^{202}Tl 12.2 d
80	^{195}Hg 9.5 h	^{196}Hg 0.15%	^{197}Hg 64.1 h	^{198}Hg 10.0%	^{199}Hg 16.9%	^{200}Hg 23.1%	^{201}Hg 13.2%
79	^{194}Au 39.4 h	^{195}Au 186 d	^{196}Au 6.18 d	^{197}Au 100%	^{198}Au 2.69 d	^{199}Au 3.14 d	^{200}Au 48.4 min
78	^{193}Pt 60 y	^{194}Pt 32.9%	^{195}Pt 33.8%	^{196}Pt 25.3%	^{197}Pt 18.3 h	^{198}Pt 7.2%	^{199}Pt 30.8 min
77	^{192}Ir 73.8 d	^{193}Ir 62.7%	^{194}Ir 19.2 h	^{195}Ir 2.8 h	^{196}Ir 52 s	^{197}Ir 5.8 min	^{198}Ir ≈8 s
76	^{191}Os 15.4 d	^{192}Os 41.0%	^{193}Os 30.5 h	^{194}Os 6.0 y	^{195}Os 6.5 min	^{196}Os 35 min	–

Figure 42-6 An enlarged and detailed section of the nuclidic chart of Fig. 42-5, centered on ^{197}Au. Green squares represent stable nuclides, for which relative isotopic abundances are given. Beige squares represent radionuclides, for which half-lives are given. Isobaric lines of constant mass number A slope as shown by the example line for $A = 198$.

Nuclear Radii

A convenient unit for measuring distances on the scale of nuclei is the *femtometer* ($= 10^{-15}$ m). This unit is often called the *fermi;* the two names share the same abbreviation. Thus,

$$1 \text{ femtometer} = 1 \text{ fermi} = 1 \text{ fm} = 10^{-15} \text{ m}. \tag{42-2}$$

We can learn about the size and structure of nuclei by bombarding them with a beam of high-energy electrons and observing how the nuclei deflect the incident electrons. The electrons must be energetic enough (at least 200 MeV) to have de Broglie wavelengths that are smaller than the nuclear structures they are to probe.

The nucleus, like the atom, is not a solid object with a well-defined surface. Furthermore, although most nuclides are spherical, some are notably ellipsoidal. Nevertheless, electron-scattering experiments (as well as experiments of other kinds) allow us to assign to each nuclide an effective radius given by

$$r = r_0 A^{1/3}, \tag{42-3}$$

in which A is the mass number and $r_0 \approx 1.2$ fm. We see that the volume of a nucleus, which is proportional to r^3, is directly proportional to the mass number A and is independent of the separate values of Z and N. That is, we can treat most nuclei as being a sphere with a volume that depends on the number of nucleons, regardless of their type.

Equation 42-3 does not apply to *halo nuclides,* which are neutron-rich nuclides that were first produced in laboratories in the 1980s. These nuclides are larger than predicted by Eq. 42-3, because some of the neutrons form a *halo* around a spherical core of the protons and the rest of the neutrons. Lithium isotopes give an example. When a neutron is added to ^{8}Li to form ^{9}Li, neither of which are halo nuclides, the effective radius increases by about 4%. However, when two neutrons are added to ^{9}Li to form the neutron-rich isotope ^{11}Li (the largest of the lithium isotopes), they do not join that existing nucleus but instead form a halo around it, increasing the effective radius by about 30%. Apparently this halo configuration involves less energy than a core containing all 11 nucleons. (In this chapter we shall generally assume that Eq. 42-3 applies.)

Atomic Masses

Atomic masses are now measured to great precision, but usually nuclear masses are not directly measurable because stripping off all the electrons from an atom is difficult. As we briefly discussed in Module 37-6, atomic masses are often reported in *atomic mass units,* a system in which the atomic mass of neutral ^{12}C is defined to be exactly 12 u.

Precise atomic masses are available in tables on the web and are usually provided in homework problems. However, sometimes we need only an approximation of the mass of either a nucleus alone or a neutral atom. The mass number A of a nuclide gives such an approximate mass in atomic mass units. For example, the approximate mass of both the nucleus and the neutral atom for ^{197}Au is 197 u, which is close to the actual atomic mass of 196.966 552 u.

As we saw in Module 37-6,

$$1 \text{ u} = 1.660\,538\,86 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg}. \tag{42-4}$$

We also saw that if the total mass of the participants in a nuclear reaction changes by an amount Δm, there is an energy release or absorption given by Eq. 37-50 ($Q = -\Delta m\, c^2$). As we shall now see, nuclear energies are often reported in multiples of 1 MeV. Thus, a convenient conversion between mass units and energy units is provided by Eq. 37-46:

$$c^2 = 931.494\,013 \text{ MeV/u}. \tag{42-5}$$

Scientists and engineers working with atomic masses often prefer to report the mass of an atom by means of the atom's *mass excess* Δ, defined as

$$\Delta = M - A \qquad \text{(mass excess)}, \tag{42-6}$$

where M is the actual mass of the atom in atomic mass units and A is the mass number for that atom's nucleus.

Nuclear Binding Energies

The mass M of a nucleus is *less* than the total mass Σm of its individual protons and neutrons. That means that the mass energy Mc^2 of a nucleus is *less* than the total mass energy $\Sigma(mc^2)$ of its individual protons and neutrons. The difference between these two energies is called the **binding energy** of the nucleus:

$$\Delta E_{\text{be}} = \Sigma(mc^2) - Mc^2 \qquad \text{(binding energy)}. \tag{42-7}$$

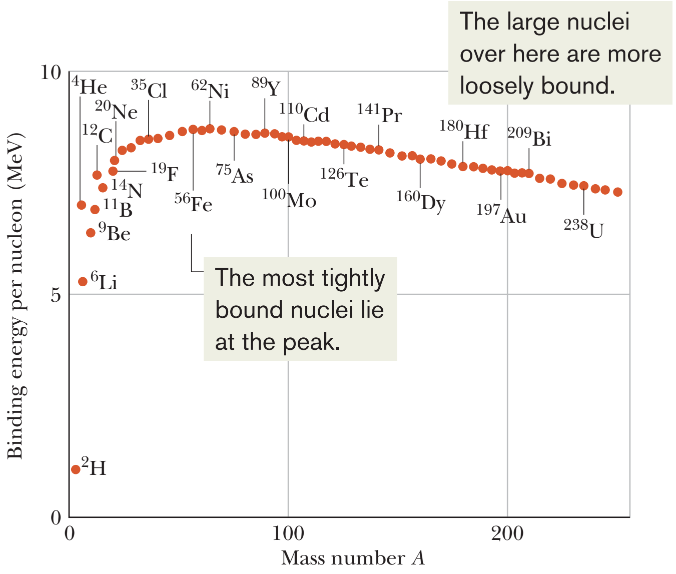
Caution: Binding energy is not an energy that resides in the nucleus. Rather, it is a *difference* in mass energy between a nucleus and its individual nucleons: If we were able to separate a nucleus into its nucleons, we would have to transfer a total energy equal to ΔE_{be} to those particles during the separating process. Although we cannot actually tear apart a nucleus in this way, the nuclear binding energy is still a convenient measure of how well a nucleus is held together, in the sense that it measures how difficult the nucleus would be to take apart.

A better measure is the **binding energy per nucleon** ΔE_{ben}, which is the ratio of the binding energy ΔE_{be} of a nucleus to the number A of nucleons in that nucleus:

$$\Delta E_{\text{ben}} = \frac{\Delta E_{\text{be}}}{A} \qquad \text{(binding energy per nucleon)}. \tag{42-8}$$

We can think of the binding energy per nucleon as the average energy needed to separate a nucleus into its individual nucleons. *A greater binding energy per nucleon means a more tightly bound nucleus.*

Figure 42-7 is a plot of the binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben} versus mass number A for a large number of nuclei. Those high on the plot are very tightly



The large nuclei over here are more loosely bound.

The most tightly bound nuclei lie at the peak.

Figure 42-7 The binding energy per nucleon for some representative nuclides. The nickel nuclide ^{62}Ni has the highest binding energy per nucleon (about 8.794 60 MeV/nucleon) of any known stable nuclide. Note that the alpha particle (^{4}He) has a higher binding energy per nucleon than its neighbors in the periodic table and thus is also particularly stable.

bound; that is, we would have to supply a great amount of energy per nucleon to break apart one of those nuclei. The nuclei that are lower on the plot, at the left and right sides, are less tightly bound, and less energy per nucleon would be required to break them apart.

These simple statements about Fig. 42-7 have profound consequences. The nucleons in a nucleus on the right side of the plot would be more tightly bound if that nucleus were to split into two nuclei that lie near the top of the plot. Such a process, called **fission,** occurs naturally with large (high mass number A) nuclei such as uranium, which can undergo fission spontaneously (that is, without an external cause or source of energy). The process can also occur in nuclear weapons, in which many uranium or plutonium nuclei are made to fission all at once, to create an explosion.

The nucleons in any pair of nuclei on the left side of the plot would be more tightly bound if the pair were to combine to form a single nucleus that lies near the top of the plot. Such a process, called **fusion,** occurs naturally in stars. Were this not true, the Sun would not shine and thus life could not exist on Earth. As we shall discuss in the next chapter, fusion is also the basis of thermonuclear weapons (with an explosive release of energy) and anticipated power plants (with a sustained and controlled release of energy).

Nuclear Energy Levels

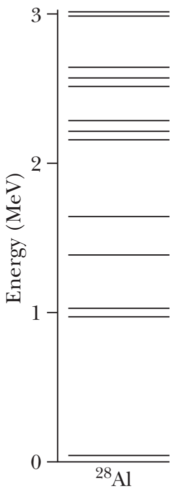


Figure 42-8 Energy levels for the nuclide ^{28}Al, deduced from nuclear reaction experiments.

The energy of nuclei, like that of atoms, is quantized. That is, nuclei can exist only in discrete quantum states, each with a well-defined energy. Figure 42-8 shows some of these energy levels for ^{28}Al, a typical low-mass nuclide. Note that the energy scale is in millions of electron-volts, rather than the electron-volts used for atoms. When a nucleus makes a transition from one level to a level of lower energy, the emitted photon is typically in the gamma-ray region of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Nuclear Spin and Magnetism

Many nuclides have an intrinsic *nuclear angular momentum,* or spin, and an associated intrinsic *nuclear magnetic moment*. Although nuclear angular momenta are roughly of the same magnitude as the angular momenta of atomic electrons, nuclear magnetic moments are much smaller than typical atomic magnetic moments.

The Nuclear Force

The force that controls the motions of atomic electrons is the familiar electromagnetic force. To bind the nucleus together, however, there must be a strong attractive nuclear force of a totally different kind, strong enough to overcome the repulsive force between the (positively charged) nuclear protons and to bind both protons and neutrons into the tiny nuclear volume. The nuclear force must also be of short range because its influence does not extend very far beyond the nuclear "surface."

The present view is that the nuclear force that binds neutrons and protons in the nucleus is not a fundamental force of nature but is a secondary, or "spillover," effect of the **strong force** that binds quarks together to form neutrons and protons. In much the same way, the attractive force between certain neutral molecules is a spillover effect of the Coulomb electric force that acts within each molecule to bind it together.

Sample Problem 42.02 Binding energy per nucleon

What is the binding energy per nucleon for ^{120}Sn?

KEY IDEAS

1. We can find the binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben} if we first find the binding energy ΔE_{be} and then divide by the number of nucleons A in the nucleus, according to Eq. 42-8 ($\Delta E_{\text{ben}} = \Delta E_{\text{be}}/A$).
2. We can find ΔE_{be} by finding the difference between the mass energy Mc^2 of the nucleus and the total mass energy $\Sigma(mc^2)$ of the individual nucleons that make up the nucleus, according to Eq. 42-7 ($\Delta E_{\text{be}} = \Sigma(mc^2) - Mc^2$).

Calculations: From Table 42-1, we see that a ^{120}Sn nucleus consists of 50 protons ($Z = 50$) and 70 neutrons ($N = A - Z = 120 - 50 = 70$). Thus, we need to imagine a ^{120}Sn nucleus being separated into its 50 protons and 70 neutrons,

$$(^{120}\text{Sn nucleus}) \rightarrow 50\begin{pmatrix}\text{separate}\\ \text{protons}\end{pmatrix} + 70\begin{pmatrix}\text{separate}\\ \text{neutrons}\end{pmatrix}, \tag{42-9}$$

and then compute the resulting change in mass energy.

For that computation, we need the masses of a ^{120}Sn nucleus, a proton, and a neutron. However, because the mass of a neutral atom (nucleus *plus* electrons) is much easier to measure than the mass of a bare nucleus, calculations of binding energies are traditionally done with atomic masses. Thus, let's modify Eq. 42-9 so that it has a neutral ^{120}Sn atom on the left side. To do that, we include 50 electrons on the left side (to match the 50 protons in the ^{120}Sn nucleus). We must also add 50 electrons on the right side to balance Eq. 42-9. Those 50 electrons can be combined with the 50 protons, to form 50 neutral hydrogen atoms. We then have

$$(^{120}\text{Sn atom}) \rightarrow 50\begin{pmatrix}\text{separate}\\ \text{H atoms}\end{pmatrix} + 70\begin{pmatrix}\text{separate}\\ \text{neutrons}\end{pmatrix}. \tag{42-10}$$

From the mass column of Table 42-1, the mass M_{Sn} of a ^{120}Sn atom is 119.902 197 u and the mass m_{H} of a hydrogen atom is 1.007 825 u; the mass m_{n} of a neutron is 1.008 665 u. Thus, Eq. 42-7 yields

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E_{\text{be}} &= \Sigma(mc^2) - Mc^2\\ &= 50(m_{\text{H}}c^2) + 70(m_{\text{n}}c^2) - M_{\text{Sn}}c^2\\ &= 50(1.007\,825\text{ u})c^2 + 70(1.008\,665\text{ u})c^2\\ &\quad - (119.902\,197\text{ u})c^2\\ &= (1.095\,603\text{ u})c^2\\ &= (1.095\,603\text{ u})(931.494\,013\text{ MeV/u})\\ &= 1020.5\text{ MeV},\end{aligned}$$

where Eq. 42-5 ($c^2 = 931.494\,013$ MeV/u) provides an easy unit conversion. Note that using atomic masses instead of nuclear masses does not affect the result because the mass of the 50 electrons in the ^{120}Sn atom subtracts out from the mass of the electrons in the 50 hydrogen atoms.

Now Eq. 42-8 gives us the binding energy per nucleon as

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E_{\text{ben}} &= \frac{\Delta E_{\text{be}}}{A} = \frac{1020.5\text{ MeV}}{120}\\ &= 8.50\text{ MeV/nucleon.} \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

Sample Problem 42.03 Density of nuclear matter

We can think of all nuclides as made up of a neutron–proton mixture that we can call *nuclear matter.* What is the density of nuclear matter?

KEY IDEA

We can find the (average) density ρ of a nucleus by dividing its total mass by its volume.

Calculations: Let m represent the mass of a nucleon (either a proton or a neutron, because those particles have about the same mass). Then the mass of a nucleus containing A nucleons is Am. Next, we assume the nucleus is spherical with radius r. Then its volume is $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$, and we can write the density of the nucleus as

$$\rho = \frac{Am}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3}.$$

The radius r is given by Eq. 42-3 ($r = r_0 A^{1/3}$), where r_0 is 1.2 fm ($= 1.2 \times 10^{-15}$ m). Substituting for r then leads to

$$\rho = \frac{Am}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r_0^3 A} = \frac{m}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r_0^3}.$$

Note that A has canceled out; thus, this equation for density ρ applies to any nucleus that can be treated as spherical with a radius given by Eq. 42-3. Using 1.67×10^{-27} kg for the mass m of a nucleon, we then have

$$\rho = \frac{1.67 \times 10^{-27}\text{ kg}}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(1.2 \times 10^{-15}\text{ m})^3} \approx 2 \times 10^{17}\text{ kg/m}^3. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

This is about 2×10^{14} times the density of water and is the density of neutron stars, which contain only neutrons.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

42-3 RADIOACTIVE DECAY

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.11 Explain what is meant by radioactive decay and identify that it is a random process.

42.12 Identify disintegration constant (or decay constant) λ.

42.13 Identify that, at any given instant, the rate dN/dt at which radioactive nuclei decay is proportional to the number N of them still present then.

42.14 Apply the relationship that gives the number N of radioactive nuclei as a function of time.

42.15 Apply the relationship that gives the decay rate R of radioactive nuclei as a function of time.

42.16 For any given time, apply the relationship between the decay rate R and the remaining number N of radioactive nuclei.

42.17 Identify activity.

42.18 Distinguish Becquerel (Bq), curie (Ci), and counts per unit time.

42.19 Distinguish half-life $T_{1/2}$ and mean life τ.

42.20 Apply the relationship between half-life $T_{1/2}$, mean life τ, and disintegration constant λ.

42.21 Identify that in any nuclear process, including radioactive decay, the charge and the number of nucleons are conserved.

Key Ideas

- Most nuclides spontaneously decay at a rate $R = dN/dt$ that is proportional to the number N of radioactive atoms present. The proportionality constant is the disintegration constant λ.
- The number of radioactive nuclei is given as a function of time by
$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$
where N_0 is the number at time $t = 0$.
- The rate at which the nuclei decay is given as a function of time by
$$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t},$$
where R_0 is the rate at time $t = 0$.
- The half-life $T_{1/2}$ and the mean life τ are measures of how quickly radioactive nuclei decay and are related by
$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \tau \ln 2.$$

Radioactive Decay

As Fig. 42-5 shows, most nuclides are radioactive. They each spontaneously (randomly) emit a particle and transform into a different nuclide. Thus these decays reveal that the laws for subatomic processes are statistical. For example, in a 1 mg sample of uranium metal, with 2.5×10^{18} atoms of the very long-lived radionuclide ^{238}U, only about 12 of the nuclei will decay in a given second by emitting an alpha particle and transforming into a nucleus of ^{234}Th. However,

> There is absolutely no way to predict whether any given nucleus in a radioactive sample will be among the small number of nuclei that decay during any given second. All have the same chance.

Although we cannot predict which nuclei in a sample will decay, we can say that if a sample contains N radioactive nuclei, then the rate ($= -dN/dt$) at which nuclei will decay is proportional to N:

$$-\frac{dN}{dt} = \lambda N, \qquad (42\text{-}11)$$

in which λ, the **disintegration constant** (or **decay constant**) has a characteristic value for every radionuclide. Its SI unit is the inverse second (s^{-1}).

To find N as a function of time t, we first rearrange Eq. 42-11 as

$$\frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda\, dt, \qquad (42\text{-}12)$$

and then integrate both sides, obtaining

$$\int_{N_0}^{N} \frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda \int_{t_0}^{t} dt,$$

or

$$\ln N - \ln N_0 = -\lambda(t - t_0). \qquad (42\text{-}13)$$

Here N_0 is the number of radioactive nuclei in the sample at some arbitrary initial time t_0. Setting $t_0 = 0$ and rearranging Eq. 42-13 give us

$$\ln \frac{N}{N_0} = -\lambda t. \tag{42-14}$$

Taking the exponential of both sides (the exponential function is the antifunction of the natural logarithm) leads to

$$\frac{N}{N_0} = e^{-\lambda t}$$

or

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t} \quad \text{(radioactive decay)}, \tag{42-15}$$

in which N_0 is the number of radioactive nuclei in the sample at $t = 0$ and N is the number remaining at any subsequent time t. Note that lightbulbs (for one example) follow no such exponential decay law. If we life-test 1000 bulbs, we expect that they will all "decay" (that is, burn out) at more or less the same time. The decay of radionuclides follows quite a different law.

We are often more interested in the decay rate R $(= -dN/dt)$ than in N itself. Differentiating Eq. 42-15, we find

$$R = -\frac{dN}{dt} = \lambda N_0 e^{-\lambda t}$$

or

$$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t} \quad \text{(radioactive decay)}, \tag{42-16}$$

an alternative form of the law of radioactive decay (Eq. 42-15). Here R_0 is the decay rate at time $t = 0$ and R is the rate at any subsequent time t. We can now rewrite Eq. 42-11 in terms of the decay rate R of the sample as

$$R = \lambda N, \tag{42-17}$$

where R and the number of radioactive nuclei N that have not yet undergone decay must be evaluated at the same instant.

The total decay rate R of a sample of one or more radionuclides is called the **activity** of that sample. The SI unit for activity is the **becquerel,** named for Henri Becquerel, the discoverer of radioactivity:

$$1 \text{ becquerel} = 1 \text{ Bq} = 1 \text{ decay per second}.$$

An older unit, the **curie,** is still in common use:

$$1 \text{ curie} = 1 \text{ Ci} = 3.7 \times 10^{10} \text{ Bq}.$$

Often a radioactive sample will be placed near a detector that does not record all the disintegrations that occur in the sample. The reading of the detector under these circumstances is proportional to (and smaller than) the true activity of the sample. Such proportional activity measurements are reported not in becquerel units but simply in counts per unit time.

Lifetimes. There are two common time measures of how long any given type of radionuclides lasts. One measure is the **half-life** $T_{1/2}$ of a radionuclide, which is the time at which both N and R have been reduced to one-half their initial values. The other measure is the **mean** (or **average**) **life** τ, which is the time at which both N and R have been reduced to e^{-1} of their initial values.

To relate $T_{1/2}$ to the disintegration constant λ, we put $R = \frac{1}{2}R_0$ in Eq. 42-16 and substitute $T_{1/2}$ for t. We obtain

$$\tfrac{1}{2}R_0 = R_0 e^{-\lambda T_{1/2}}.$$

Taking the natural logarithm of both sides and solving for $T_{1/2}$, we find

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda}.$$

Similarly, to relate τ to λ, we put $R = e^{-1}R_0$ in Eq. 42-16, substitute τ for t, and solve for τ, finding

$$\tau = \frac{1}{\lambda}.$$

We summarize these results with the following:

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \tau \ln 2. \qquad (42\text{-}18)$$

Checkpoint 2

The nuclide ^{131}I is radioactive, with a half-life of 8.04 days. At noon on January 1, the activity of a certain sample is 600 Bq. Using the concept of half-life, without written calculation, determine whether the activity at noon on January 24 will be a little less than 200 Bq, a little more than 200 Bq, a little less than 75 Bq, or a little more than 75 Bq.

Sample Problem 42.04 Finding the disintegration constant and half-life from a graph

The table that follows shows some measurements of the decay rate of a sample of ^{128}I, a radionuclide often used medically as a tracer to measure the rate at which iodine is absorbed by the thyroid gland.

Time (min)	R (counts/s)	Time (min)	R (counts/s)
4	392.2	132	10.9
36	161.4	164	4.56
68	65.5	196	1.86
100	26.8	218	1.00

Find the disintegration constant λ and the half-life $T_{1/2}$ for this radionuclide.

KEY IDEAS

The disintegration constant λ determines the exponential rate at which the decay rate R decreases with time t (as indicated by Eq. 42-16, $R = R_0e^{-\lambda t}$). Therefore, we should be able to determine λ by plotting the measurements of R against the measurement times t. However, obtaining λ from a plot of R versus t is difficult because R decreases exponentially with t, according to Eq. 42-16. A neat solution is to transform Eq. 42-16 into a linear function of t, so that we can easily find λ. To do so, we take the natural logarithms of both sides of Eq. 42-16.

Calculations: We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \ln R &= \ln(R_0e^{-\lambda t}) = \ln R_0 + \ln(e^{-\lambda t}) \\ &= \ln R_0 - \lambda t. \end{aligned} \qquad (42\text{-}19)$$

Because Eq. 42-19 is of the form $y = b + mx$, with b and m constants, it is a linear equation giving the quantity $\ln R$ as a function of t. Thus, if we plot $\ln R$ (instead of R) versus t, we should get a straight line. Further, the slope of the line should be equal to $-\lambda$.

Figure 42-9 shows a plot of $\ln R$ versus time t for the given measurements. The slope of the straight line that fits through the plotted points is

$$\text{slope} = \frac{0 - 6.2}{225 \text{ min} - 0} = -0.0276 \text{ min}^{-1}.$$

Thus, $$-\lambda = -0.0276 \text{ min}^{-1}$$

or $$\lambda = 0.0276 \text{ min}^{-1} \approx 1.7 \text{ h}^{-1}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

The time for the decay rate R to decrease by 1/2 is related to the disintegration constant λ via Eq. 42-18 ($T_{1/2} = (\ln 2)/\lambda$). From that equation, we find

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \frac{\ln 2}{0.0276 \text{ min}^{-1}} \approx 25 \text{ min}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

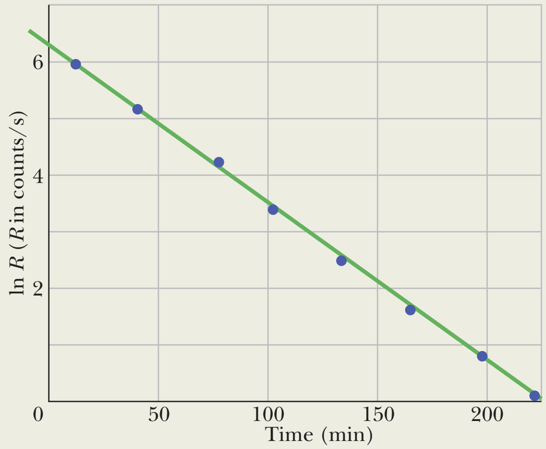


Figure 42-9 A semilogarithmic plot of the decay of a sample of ^{128}I, based on the data in the table.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Sample Problem 42.05 Radioactivity of the potassium in a banana

Of the 600 mg of potassium in a large banana, 0.0117% is radioactive ^{40}K, which has a half-life $T_{1/2}$ of 1.25×10^9 y. What is the activity of the banana?

KEY IDEAS

(1) We can relate the activity R to the disintegration constant λ with Eq. 42-17, but let's write it as $R = \lambda N_{40}$, where N_{40} is the number of ^{40}K nuclei (and thus atoms) in the banana. (2) We can relate the disintegration constant to the known half-life $T_{1/2}$ with Eq. 42-18 ($T_{1/2} = (\ln 2)/\lambda$).

Calculations: Combining Eqs. 42-18 and 42-17 yields

$$R = \frac{N_{40} \ln 2}{T_{1/2}}. \qquad (42\text{-}20)$$

We know that N_{40} is 0.0117% of the total number N of potassium atoms in the banana. We can find an expression for N by combining two equations that give the number of moles n of potassium in the banana. From Eq. 19-2, $n = N/N_A$, where N_A is Avogadro's number (6.02×10^{23} mol^{-1}). From Eq. 19-3, $n = M_{sam}/M$, where M_{sam} is the sample mass (here the given 600 mg of potassium) and M is the molar mass of potassium. Combining those two equations to eliminate n, we can write

$$N_{40} = (1.17 \times 10^{-4}) \frac{M_{sam} N_A}{M}. \qquad (42\text{-}21)$$

From Appendix F, we see that the molar mass of potassium is 39.102 g/mol. Equation 42-21 then yields

$$\begin{aligned} N_{40} &= (1.17 \times 10^{-4}) \frac{(600 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{g})(6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1})}{39.102\ \text{g/mol}} \\ &= 1.081 \times 10^{18}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this value for N_{40} and the given half-life of 1.25×10^9 y for $T_{1/2}$ into Eq. 42-20 leads to

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \frac{(1.081 \times 10^{18})(\ln 2)}{(1.25 \times 10^9\ \text{y})(3.16 \times 10^7\ \text{s/y})} \\ &= 18.96\ \text{Bq} \approx 19.0\ \text{Bq}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

This is about 0.51 nCi. Your body always has about 160 g of potassium. If you repeat our calculation here, you will find that the ^{40}K component of that everyday amount has an activity of 5.06×10^3 Bq (or 0.14 μCi). So, eating a banana adds less than 1% to the radiation your body receives daily from radioactive potassium.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

42-4 ALPHA DECAY

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.22 Identify alpha particle and alpha decay.

42.23 For a given alpha decay, calculate the mass change and the Q of the reaction.

42.24 Determine the change in atomic number Z and mass number A of a nucleus undergoing alpha decay.

42.25 In terms of the potential barrier, explain how an alpha particle can escape from a nucleus with less energy than the barrier height.

Key Idea

- Some nuclides decay by emitting an alpha particle (a helium nucleus, ^{4}He). Such decay is inhibited by a potential energy barrier that must be penetrated by tunneling.

Alpha Decay

When a nucleus undergoes **alpha decay,** it transforms to a different nuclide by emitting an alpha particle (a helium nucleus, ^{4}He). For example, when uranium ^{238}U undergoes alpha decay, it transforms to thorium ^{234}Th:

$$^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{234}\text{Th} + {}^{4}\text{He}. \qquad (42\text{-}22)$$

This alpha decay of ^{238}U can occur spontaneously (without an external source of energy) because the total mass of the decay products ^{234}Th and ^{4}He is less than the mass of the original ^{238}U. Thus, the total mass energy of the decay

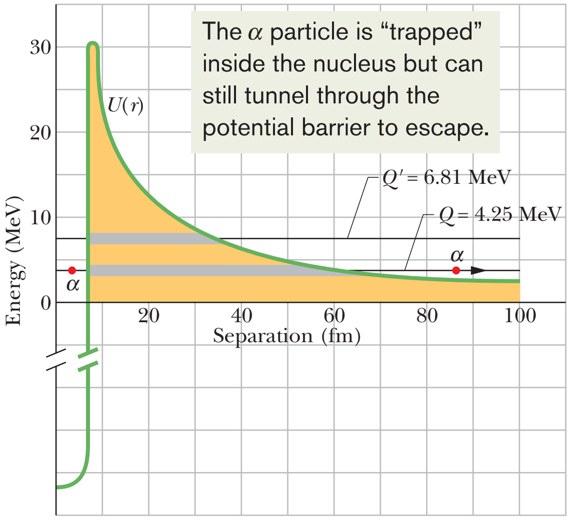


Figure 42-10 A potential energy function for the emission of an alpha particle by ^{238}U. The horizontal black line marked $Q = 4.25$ MeV shows the disintegration energy for the process. The thick gray portion of this line represents separations r that are classically forbidden to the alpha particle. The alpha particle is represented by a dot, both inside this potential energy barrier (at the left) and outside it (at the right), after the particle has tunneled through. The horizontal black line marked $Q' = 6.81$ MeV shows the disintegration energy for the alpha decay of ^{228}U. (Both isotopes have the same potential energy function because they have the same nuclear charge.)

products is less than the mass energy of the original nuclide. As defined by Eq. 37-50 ($Q = -\Delta M\ c^2$), in such a process the difference between the initial mass energy and the total final mass energy is called the Q of the process.

For a nuclear decay, we say that the difference in mass energy is the decay's *disintegration energy* Q. The Q for the decay in Eq. 42-22 is 4.25 MeV—that amount of energy is said to be released by the alpha decay of ^{238}U, with the energy transferred from mass energy to the kinetic energy of the two products.

The half-life of ^{238}U for this decay process is 4.5×10^9 y. Why so long? If ^{238}U can decay in this way, why doesn't every ^{238}U nuclide in a sample of ^{238}U atoms simply decay at once? To answer the questions, we must examine the process of alpha decay.

We choose a model in which the alpha particle is imagined to exist (already formed) inside the nucleus before it escapes from the nucleus. Figure 42-10 shows the approximate potential energy $U(r)$ of the system consisting of the alpha particle and the residual ^{234}Th nucleus, as a function of their separation r. This energy is a combination of (1) the potential energy associated with the (attractive) strong nuclear force that acts in the nuclear interior and (2) a Coulomb potential associated with the (repulsive) electric force that acts between the two particles before and after the decay has occurred.

The horizontal black line marked $Q = 4.25$ MeV shows the disintegration energy for the process. If we assume that this represents the total energy of the alpha particle during the decay process, then the part of the $U(r)$ curve above this line constitutes a potential energy barrier like that in Fig. 38-17. This barrier cannot be surmounted. If the alpha particle were able to be at some separation r within the barrier, its potential energy U would exceed its total energy E. This would mean, classically, that its kinetic energy K (which equals $E - U$) would be negative, an impossible situation.

Tunneling. We can see now why the alpha particle is not immediately emitted from the ^{238}U nucleus. That nucleus is surrounded by an impressive potential barrier, occupying—if you think of it in three dimensions—the volume lying between two spherical shells (of radii about 8 and 60 fm). This argument is so convincing that we now change our last question and ask: Since the particle seems permanently trapped inside the nucleus by the barrier, how can the ^{238}U nucleus *ever* emit an alpha particle? The answer is that, as you learned in Module 38-9, there is a finite probability that a particle can tunnel through an energy barrier that is classically insurmountable. In fact, alpha decay occurs as a result of barrier tunneling.

The very long half-life of ^{238}U tells us that the barrier is apparently not very "leaky." If we imagine that an already-formed alpha particle is rattling back and forth inside the nucleus, it would arrive at the inner surface of the barrier about 10^{38} times before it would succeed in tunneling through the barrier. This is about 10^{21} times per second for about 4×10^9 years (the age of Earth)! We, of course, are waiting on the outside, able to count only the alpha particles that *do* manage to escape without being able to tell what's going on inside the nucleus.

We can test this explanation of alpha decay by examining other alpha emitters. For an extreme contrast, consider the alpha decay of another uranium isotope, ^{228}U, which has a disintegration energy Q' of 6.81 MeV, about 60% higher than that of ^{238}U. (The value of Q' is also shown as a horizontal black line in Fig. 42-10.) Recall from Module 38-9 that the transmission coefficient of a barrier is very sensitive to small changes in the total energy of the particle seeking to penetrate it. Thus, we expect alpha decay to occur more readily for this nuclide than for ^{238}U. Indeed it does. As Table 42-2 shows, its half-life is only 9.1 min! An increase in Q by a factor of only 1.6 produces a decrease in half-life (that is, in the effectiveness of the barrier) by a factor of 3×10^{14}. This is sensitivity indeed.

Table 42-2 Two Alpha Emitters Compared

Radionuclide	Q	Half-Life
^{238}U	4.25 MeV	4.5×10^9 y
^{228}U	6.81 MeV	9.1 min

Sample Problem 42.06 Q value in an alpha decay, using masses

We are given the following atomic masses:

^{238}U	238.050 79 u	^{4}He	4.002 60 u
^{234}Th	234.043 63 u	^{1}H	1.007 83 u
^{237}Pa	237.051 21 u		

Here Pa is the symbol for the element protactinium ($Z = 91$).

(a) Calculate the energy released during the alpha decay of ^{238}U. The decay process is

$$^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{234}\text{Th} + {}^{4}\text{He}.$$

Note, incidentally, how nuclear charge is conserved in this equation: The atomic numbers of thorium (90) and helium (2) add up to the atomic number of uranium (92). The number of nucleons is also conserved: $238 = 234 + 4$.

KEY IDEA

The energy released in the decay is the disintegration energy Q, which we can calculate from the change in mass ΔM due to the ^{238}U decay.

Calculation: To do this, we use Eq. 37-50,

$$Q = M_i c^2 - M_f c^2, \tag{42-23}$$

where the initial mass M_i is that of ^{238}U and the final mass M_f is the sum of the ^{234}Th and ^{4}He masses. Using the atomic masses given in the problem statement, Eq. 42-23 becomes

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= (238.050\,79\text{ u})c^2 - (234.043\,63\text{ u} + 4.002\,60\text{ u})c^2 \\ &= (0.004\,56\text{ u})c^2 = (0.004\,56\text{ u})(931.494\,013\text{ MeV/u}) \\ &= 4.25\text{ MeV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Note that using atomic masses instead of nuclear masses does not affect the result because the total mass of the electrons in the products subtracts out from the mass of the nucleons + electrons in the original ^{238}U.

(b) Show that ^{238}U cannot spontaneously emit a proton; that is, protons do not leak out of the nucleus in spite of the proton–proton repulsion within the nucleus.

Solution: If this happened, the decay process would be

$$^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{237}\text{Pa} + {}^{1}\text{H}.$$

(You should verify that both nuclear charge and the number of nucleons are conserved in this process.) Using the same Key Idea as in part (a) and proceeding as we did there, we would find that the mass of the two decay products

$$237.051\,21\text{ u} + 1.007\,83\text{ u}$$

would *exceed* the mass of ^{238}U by $\Delta m = 0.008\,25$ u, with disintegration energy

$$Q = -7.68\text{ MeV}.$$

The minus sign indicates that we must *add* 7.68 MeV to a ^{238}U nucleus before it will emit a proton; it will certainly not do so spontaneously.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

42-5 BETA DECAY

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.26 Identify the two types of beta particles and the two types of beta decay.

42.27 Identify neutrino.

42.28 Explain why the beta particles in beta decays are emitted with a range of energies.

42.29 For a given beta decay, calculate the mass change and the Q of the reaction.

42.30 Determine the change in the atomic number Z of a nucleus undergoing a beta decay and identify that the mass number A does not change.

Key Ideas

- In beta decay, either an electron or a positron is emitted by a nucleus, along with a neutrino.
- The emitted particles share the available disintegration energy. Sometimes the neutrino gets most of the energy and sometimes the electron or positron gets most of it.

Beta Decay

A nucleus that decays spontaneously by emitting an electron or a positron (a positively charged particle with the mass of an electron) is said to undergo **beta decay.** Like alpha decay, this is a spontaneous process, with a definite disintegration energy and half-life. Again like alpha decay, beta decay is a statistical process, governed by Eqs. 42-15 and 42-16. In *beta-minus* (β^-) decay, an electron is emitted by a nucleus, as in the decay

$$^{32}\mathrm{P} \rightarrow {}^{32}\mathrm{S} + \mathrm{e}^- + \nu \qquad (T_{1/2} = 14.3\ \mathrm{d}). \tag{42-24}$$

In *beta-plus* (β^+) decay, a positron is emitted by a nucleus, as in the decay

$$^{64}\mathrm{Cu} \rightarrow {}^{64}\mathrm{Ni} + \mathrm{e}^+ + \nu \qquad (T_{1/2} = 12.7\ \mathrm{h}). \tag{42-25}$$

The symbol ν represents a **neutrino,** a neutral particle which has a very small mass, that is emitted from the nucleus along with the electron or positron during the decay process. Neutrinos interact only very weakly with matter and—for that reason—are so extremely difficult to detect that their presence long went unnoticed.*

Both charge and nucleon number are conserved in the above two processes. In the decay of Eq. 42-24, for example, we can write for charge conservation

$$(+15e) = (+16e) + (-e) + (0),$$

because ^{32}P has 15 protons, ^{32}S has 16 protons, and the neutrino ν has zero charge. Similarly, for nucleon conservation, we can write

$$(32) = (32) + (0) + (0),$$

because ^{32}P and ^{32}S each have 32 nucleons and neither the electron nor the neutrino is a nucleon.

It may seem surprising that nuclei can emit electrons, positrons, and neutrinos, since we have said that nuclei are made up of neutrons and protons only. However, we saw earlier that atoms emit photons, and we certainly do not say that atoms "contain" photons. We say that the photons are created during the emission process.

---

*Beta decay also includes *electron capture,* in which a nucleus decays by absorbing one of its atomic electrons, emitting a neutrino in the process. We do not consider that process here. Also, the neutral particle emitted in the decay process of Eq. 42-24 is actually an *antineutrino,* a distinction we shall not make in this introductory treatment.

It is the same with the electrons, positrons, and neutrinos emitted from nuclei during beta decay. They are created during the emission process. For beta-minus decay, a neutron transforms into a proton within the nucleus according to

$$\mathrm{n} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{e}^- + \nu. \tag{42-26}$$

For beta-plus decay, a proton transforms into a neutron via

$$\mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{n} + \mathrm{e}^+ + \nu. \tag{42-27}$$

These processes show why the mass number A of a nuclide undergoing beta decay does not change; one of its constituent nucleons simply changes its character according to Eq. 42-26 or 42-27.

In both alpha decay and beta decay, the same amount of energy is released in every individual decay of a particular radionuclide. In the alpha decay of a particular radionuclide, every emitted alpha particle has the same sharply defined kinetic energy. However, in the beta-minus decay of Eq. 42-26 with electron emission, the disintegration energy Q is shared—in varying proportions—between the emitted electron and neutrino. Sometimes the electron gets nearly all the energy, sometimes the neutrino does. In every case, however, the sum of the electron's energy and the neutrino's energy gives the same value Q. A similar sharing of energy, with a sum equal to Q, occurs in beta-plus decay (Eq. 42-27).

Thus, in beta decay the energy of the emitted electrons or positrons may range from near zero up to a certain maximum $K_{\max}$. Figure 42-11 shows the distribution of positron energies for the beta decay of ^{64}Cu (see Eq. 42-25). The maximum positron energy $K_{\max}$ must equal the disintegration energy Q because the neutrino has approximately zero energy when the positron has $K_{\max}$:

$$Q = K_{\max}. \tag{42-28}$$

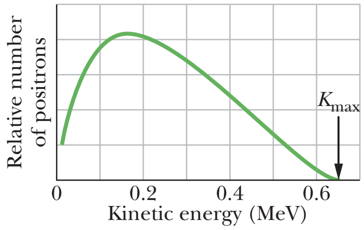


Figure 42-11 The distribution of the kinetic energies of positrons emitted in the beta decay of ^{64}Cu. The maximum kinetic energy of the distribution ($K_{\max}$) is 0.653 MeV. In all ^{64}Cu decay events, this energy is shared between the positron and the neutrino, in varying proportions. The *most probable* energy for an emitted positron is about 0.15 MeV.

The Neutrino

Wolfgang Pauli first suggested the existence of neutrinos in 1930. His neutrino hypothesis not only permitted an understanding of the energy distribution of electrons or positrons in beta decay but also solved another early beta-decay puzzle involving "missing" angular momentum.

The neutrino is a truly elusive particle; the mean free path of an energetic neutrino in water has been calculated as no less than several thousand light-years. At the same time, neutrinos left over from the big bang that presumably marked the creation of the universe are the most abundant particles of physics. Billions of them pass through our bodies every second, leaving no trace.

In spite of their elusive character, neutrinos have been detected in the laboratory. This was first done in 1953 by F. Reines and C. L. Cowan, using neutrinos generated in a high-power nuclear reactor. (In 1995, Reines received a Nobel Prize for this work.) In spite of the difficulties of detection, experimental neutrino physics is now a well-developed branch of experimental physics, with avid practitioners at laboratories throughout the world.

The Sun emits neutrinos copiously from the nuclear furnace at its core, and at night these messengers from the center of the Sun come up at us from below, Earth being almost totally transparent to them. In February 1987, light from an exploding star in the Large Magellanic Cloud (a nearby galaxy) reached Earth after having traveled for 170 000 years. Enormous numbers of neutrinos were generated in this explosion, and about 10 of them were picked up by a sensitive neutrino detector in Japan; Fig. 42-12 shows a record of their passage.

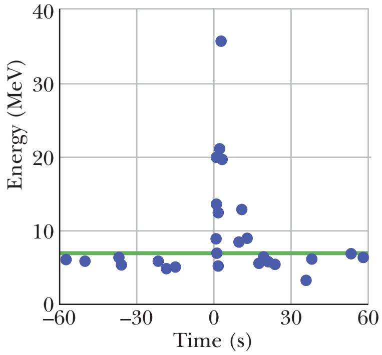


Figure 42-12 A burst of neutrinos from the supernova SN 1987A, which occurred at (relative) time 0, stands out from the usual *background* of neutrinos. (For neutrinos, 10 is a "burst.") The particles were detected by an elaborate detector housed deep in a mine in Japan. The supernova was visible only in the Southern Hemisphere; so the neutrinos had to penetrate Earth (a trifling barrier for them) to reach the detector.

Radioactivity and the Nuclidic Chart

We can increase the amount of information obtainable from the nuclidic chart of Fig. 42-5 by including a third axis showing the mass excess Δ expressed in the

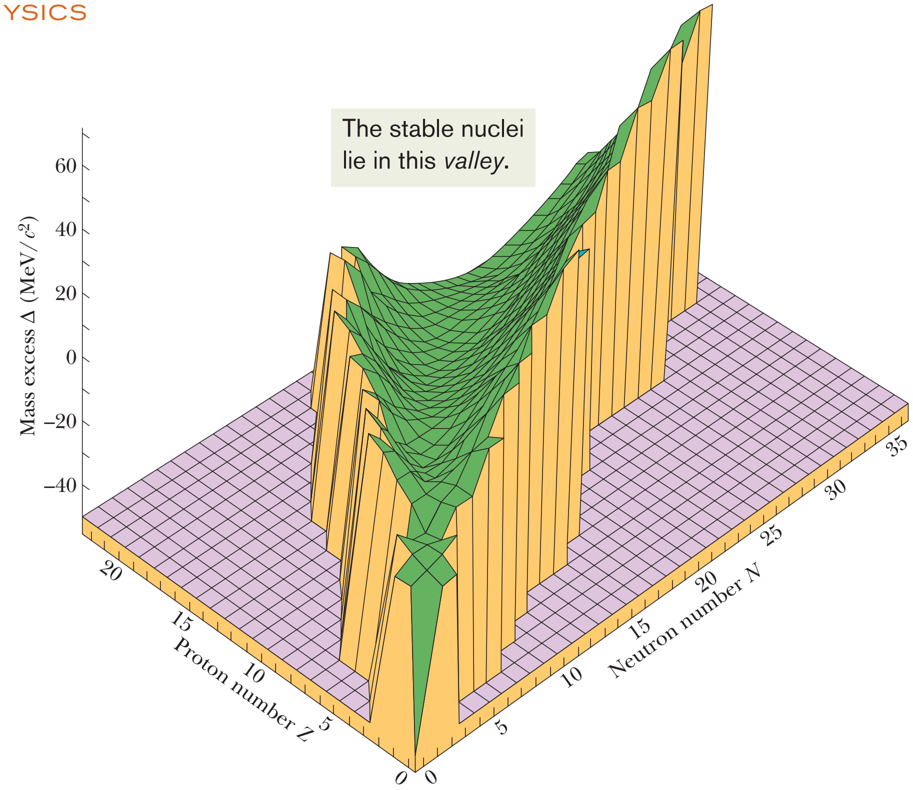


Figure 42-13 A portion of the valley of the nuclides, showing only the nuclides of low mass. Deuterium, tritium, and helium lie at the near end of the plot, with helium at the high point. The valley stretches away from us, with the plot stopping at about $Z = 22$ and $N = 35$. Nuclides with large values of A, which would be plotted much beyond the valley, can decay into the valley by repeated alpha emissions and by fission (splitting of a nuclide).

unit MeV/c^2. The inclusion of such an axis gives Fig. 42-13, which reveals the degree of nuclear stability of the nuclides. For the low-mass nuclides, we find a "valley of the nuclides," with the stability band of Fig. 42-5 running along its bottom. Nuclides on the proton-rich side of the valley decay into it by emitting positrons, and those on the neutron-rich side do so by emitting electrons.

Checkpoint 3

^{238}U decays to ^{234}Th by the emission of an alpha particle. There follows a chain of further radioactive decays, either by alpha decay or by beta decay. Eventually a stable nuclide is reached and, after that, no further radioactive decay is possible. Which of the following stable nuclides is the end product of the ^{238}U radioactive decay chain: ^{206}Pb, ^{207}Pb, ^{208}Pb, or ^{209}Pb? (*Hint:* You can decide by considering the changes in mass number A for the two types of decay.)

Sample Problem 42.07 Q value in a beta decay, using masses

Calculate the disintegration energy Q for the beta decay of ^{32}P, as described by Eq. 42-24. The needed atomic masses are 31.973 91 u for ^{32}P and 31.972 07 u for ^{32}S.

KEY IDEA

The disintegration energy Q for the beta decay is the amount by which the mass energy is changed by the decay.

Calculations: Q is given by Eq. 37-50 ($Q = -\Delta M\ c^2$). However, we must be careful to distinguish between nuclear masses (which we do not know) and atomic masses (which we do know). Let the boldface symbols $\mathbf{m}_\mathrm{P}$ and $\mathbf{m}_\mathrm{S}$ represent the nuclear masses of ^{32}P and ^{32}S, and let the italic symbols m_P and m_S represent their atomic masses. Then we can write the change in mass for the decay of Eq. 42-24 as

$$\Delta m = (\mathbf{m}_\mathrm{S} + m_\mathrm{e}) - \mathbf{m}_\mathrm{P},$$

in which m_e is the mass of the electron. If we add and subtract $15m_\mathrm{e}$ on the right side of this equation, we obtain

$$\Delta m = (\mathbf{m}_\mathrm{S} + 16m_\mathrm{e}) - (\mathbf{m}_\mathrm{P} + 15m_\mathrm{e}).$$

The quantities in parentheses are the atomic masses of ^{32}S and ^{32}P; so

$$\Delta m = m_\mathrm{S} - m_\mathrm{P}.$$

We thus see that if we subtract only the atomic masses, the mass of the emitted electron is automatically taken into account. (This procedure will not work for positron emission.)

The disintegration energy for the ^{32}P decay is then

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= -\Delta m\, c^2 \\ &= -(31.972\,07\text{ u} - 31.973\,91\text{ u})(931.494\,013\text{ MeV/u}) \\ &= 1.71\text{ MeV}. \qquad\qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Experimentally, this calculated quantity proves to be equal to $K_{\max}$, the maximum energy the emitted electrons can have. Although 1.71 MeV is released every time a ^{32}P nucleus decays, in essentially every case the electron carries away less energy than this. The neutrino gets all the rest, carrying it stealthily out of the laboratory.

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

42-6 RADIOACTIVE DATING

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.31 Apply the equations for radioactive decay to determine the age of rocks and archaeological materials.

42.32 Explain how radiocarbon dating can be used to date the age of biological samples.

Key Idea

- Naturally occurring radioactive nuclides provide a means for estimating the dates of historic and prehistoric events. For example, the ages of organic materials can often be found by measuring their ^{14}C content, and rock samples can be dated using the radioactive ^{40}K.

Radioactive Dating

If you know the half-life of a given radionuclide, you can in principle use the decay of that radionuclide as a clock to measure time intervals. The decay of very long-lived nuclides, for example, can be used to measure the age of rocks—that is, the time that has elapsed since they were formed. Such measurements for rocks from Earth and the Moon, and for meteorites, yield a consistent maximum age of about 4.5×10^9 y for these bodies.

The radionuclide ^{40}K, for example, decays to ^{40}Ar, a stable isotope of the noble gas argon. The half-life for this decay is 1.25×10^9 y. A measurement of the ratio of ^{40}K to ^{40}Ar, as found in the rock in question, can be used to calculate the age of that rock. Other long-lived decays, such as that of ^{235}U to ^{207}Pb (involving a number of intermediate stages of unstable nuclei), can be used to verify this calculation.

For measuring shorter time intervals, in the range of historical interest, radiocarbon dating has proved invaluable. The radionuclide ^{14}C (with $T_{1/2} = 5730$ y) is produced at a constant rate in the upper atmosphere as atmospheric nitrogen is bombarded by cosmic rays. This radiocarbon mixes with the carbon that is normally present in the atmosphere (as CO_2) so that there is about one atom of ^{14}C for every 10^{13} atoms of ordinary stable ^{12}C. Through biological activity such as photosynthesis and breathing, the atoms of atmospheric carbon trade places randomly, one atom at a time, with the atoms of carbon in every living thing, including broccoli, mushrooms, penguins, and humans. Eventually an exchange equilibrium is reached at which the carbon atoms of every living thing contain a fixed small fraction of the radioactive nuclide ^{14}C.

This equilibrium persists as long as the organism is alive. When the organism dies, the exchange with the atmosphere stops and the amount of radiocarbon trapped in the organism, since it is no longer being replenished, dwindles away with a half-life of 5730 y. By measuring the amount of radiocarbon per gram of organic matter, it is possible to measure the time that has elapsed since the organism died. Charcoal from ancient campfires, the Dead Sea scrolls (actually, the cloth used to plug the jars holding the scrolls), and many prehistoric artifacts have been dated in this way.

Top photo: George Rockwin/Bruce Coleman, Inc./Photoshot Holdings Ltd. Inset photo: www.BibleLandPictures.com/Alamy

A fragment of the Dead Sea scrolls and the caves from which the scrolls were recovered.

Sample Problem 42.08 Radioactive dating of a moon rock

In a Moon rock sample, the ratio of the number of (stable) ^{40}Ar atoms present to the number of (radioactive) ^{40}K atoms is 10.3. Assume that all the argon atoms were produced by the decay of potassium atoms, with a half-life of 1.25×10^9 y. How old is the rock?

KEY IDEAS

(1) If N_0 potassium atoms were present at the time the rock was formed by solidification from a molten form, the number of potassium atoms now remaining at the time of analysis is

$$N_K = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}, \tag{42-29}$$

in which t is the age of the rock. (2) For every potassium atom that decays, an argon atom is produced. Thus, the number of argon atoms present at the time of the analysis is

$$N_{Ar} = N_0 - N_K. \tag{42-30}$$

Calculations: We cannot measure N_0; so let's eliminate it from Eqs. 42-29 and 42-30. We find, after some algebra, that

$$\lambda t = \ln\left(1 + \frac{N_{Ar}}{N_K}\right), \tag{42-31}$$

in which N_{Ar}/N_K *can* be measured. Solving for t and using Eq. 42-18 to replace λ with $(\ln 2)/T_{1/2}$ yield

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{T_{1/2}\ln(1 + N_{Ar}/N_K)}{\ln 2} \\ &= \frac{(1.25 \times 10^9\ \text{y})[\ln(1 + 10.3)]}{\ln 2} \\ &= 4.37 \times 10^9\ \text{y}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Lesser ages may be found for other lunar or terrestrial rock samples, but no substantially greater ones. Thus, the oldest rocks were formed soon after the solar system formed, and the solar system must be about 4 billion years old.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

42-7 MEASURING RADIATION DOSAGE

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.33 Identify absorbed dose, dose equivalent, and the associated units.

42.34 Calculate absorbed dose and dose equivalent.

Key Ideas

- The Becquerel (1 Bq = 1 decay per second) measures the activity of a source.
- The amount of energy actually absorbed is measured in grays, with 1 Gy corresponding to 1 J/kg.
- The estimated biological effect of the absorbed energy is the dose equivalent and is measured in sieverts.

Measuring Radiation Dosage

The effect of radiation such as gamma rays, electrons, and alpha particles on living tissue (particularly our own) is a matter of public interest. Such radiation is found in nature in cosmic rays (from astronomical sources) and in the emissions by radioactive elements in Earth's crust. Radiation associated with some human activities, such as using x rays and radionuclides in medicine and in industry, also contributes.

Our task here is not to explore the various sources of radiation but simply to describe the units in which the properties and effects of such radiations are expressed. We have already discussed the *activity* of a radioactive source. There are two remaining quantities of interest.

1. *Absorbed Dose.* This is a measure of the radiation dose (as energy per unit mass) actually absorbed by a specific object, such as a patient's hand or chest. Its SI unit is the **gray** (Gy). An older unit, the **rad** (from **r**adiation **a**bsorbed

dose) is still in common use. The terms are defined and related as follows:

$$1 \text{ Gy} = 1 \text{ J/kg} = 100 \text{ rad}. \tag{42-32}$$

A typical dose-related statement is: "A whole-body, short-term gamma-ray dose of 3 Gy (= 300 rad) will cause death in 50% of the population exposed to it." Thankfully, our present average absorbed dose per year, from sources of both natural and human origin, is only about 2 mGy (= 0.2 rad).

2. *Dose Equivalent.* Although different types of radiation (gamma rays and neutrons, say) may deliver the same amount of energy to the body, they do not have the same biological effect. The dose equivalent allows us to express the biological effect by multiplying the absorbed dose (in grays or rads) by a numerical **RBE** factor (from **r**elative **b**iological **e**ffectiveness). For x rays and electrons, for example, RBE = 1; for slow neutrons, RBE = 5; for alpha particles, RBE = 10; and so on. Personnel-monitoring devices such as film badges register the dose equivalent.

The SI unit of dose equivalent is the **sievert** (Sv). An earlier unit, the **rem,** is still in common use. Their relationship is

$$1 \text{ Sv} = 100 \text{ rem}. \tag{42-33}$$

An example of the correct use of these terms is: "The recommendation of the National Council on Radiation Protection is that no individual who is (nonoccupationally) exposed to radiation should receive a dose equivalent greater than 5 mSv (= 0.5 rem) in any one year." This includes radiation of all kinds; of course the appropriate RBE factor must be used for each kind.

42-8 NUCLEAR MODELS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

42.35 Distinguish the collective model and the independent model, and explain the combined model.

42.36 Identify compound nucleus.

42.37 Identify magic numbers.

Key Ideas

- The collective model of nuclear structure assumes that nucleons collide constantly with one another and that relatively long-lived compound nuclei are formed when a projectile is captured. The formation and eventual decay of a compound nucleus are totally independent events.
- The independent particle model of nuclear structure assumes that each nucleon moves, essentially without collision, in a quantized state within the nucleus. The model predicts nucleon levels and magic nucleon numbers associated with closed shells of nucleons.
- The combined model assumes that extra nucleons occupy quantized states outside a central core of closed shells.

Nuclear Models

Nuclei are more complicated than atoms. For atoms, the basic force law (Coulomb's law) is simple in form and there is a natural force center, the nucleus. For nuclei, the force law is complicated and cannot, in fact, be written down explicitly in full detail. Furthermore, the nucleus—a jumble of protons and neutrons—has no natural force center to simplify the calculations.

In the absence of a comprehensive nuclear *theory,* we turn to the construction of nuclear *models.* A nuclear model is simply a way of looking at the nucleus that gives a physical insight into as wide a range of its properties as possible. The usefulness of a model is tested by its ability to provide predictions that can be verified experimentally in the laboratory.

Two models of the nucleus have proved useful. Although based on assumptions that seem flatly to exclude each other, each accounts very well for a selected group of nuclear properties. After describing them separately, we shall see how these two models may be combined to form a single coherent picture of the atomic nucleus.

The Collective Model

In the *collective model,* formulated by Niels Bohr, the nucleons, moving around within the nucleus at random, are imagined to interact strongly with each other, like the molecules in a drop of liquid. A given nucleon collides frequently with other nucleons in the nuclear interior, its mean free path as it moves about being substantially less than the nuclear radius.

The collective model permits us to correlate many facts about nuclear masses and binding energies; it is useful (as you will see later) in explaining nuclear fission. It is also useful for understanding a large class of nuclear reactions.

Consider, for example, a generalized nuclear reaction of the form

$$X + a \rightarrow C \rightarrow Y + b. \qquad (42\text{-}34)$$

We imagine that projectile a enters target nucleus X, forming a **compound nucleus** C and conveying to it a certain amount of excitation energy. The projectile, perhaps a neutron, is at once caught up by the random motions that characterize the nuclear interior. It quickly loses its identity—so to speak—and the excitation energy it carried into the nucleus is quickly shared with all the other nucleons in C.

The quasi-stable state represented by C in Eq. 42-34 may have a mean life of 10^{-16} s before it decays to Y and b. By nuclear standards, this is a very long time, being about one million times longer than the time required for a nucleon with a few million electron-volts of energy to travel across a nucleus.

The central feature of this compound-nucleus concept is that the formation of the compound nucleus and its eventual decay are totally independent events. At the time of its decay, the compound nucleus has "forgotten" how it was formed. Hence, its mode of decay is not influenced by its mode of formation. As an example, Fig. 42-14 shows three possible ways in which the compound nucleus ^{20}Ne might be formed and three in which it might decay. Any of the three formation modes can lead to any of the three decay modes.

The Independent Particle Model

In the collective model, we assume that the nucleons move around at random and bump into one another frequently. The *independent particle model,* however, is based on just the opposite assumption—namely, that each nucleon remains in a well-defined quantum state within the nucleus and makes hardly any collisions at all! The nucleus, unlike the atom, has no fixed center of charge; we assume in this model that each nucleon moves in a potential well that is determined by the smeared-out (time-averaged) motions of all the other nucleons.

A nucleon in a nucleus, like an electron in an atom, has a set of quantum numbers that defines its state of motion. Also, nucleons obey the Pauli exclusion principle, just as electrons do; that is, no two nucleons in a nucleus may occupy the same quantum state at the same time. In this regard, the neutrons and the protons are treated separately, each particle type with its own set of quantum states.

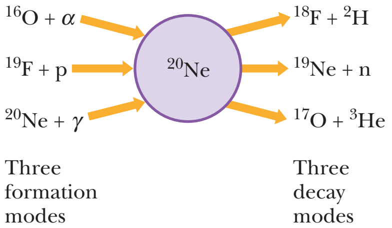


Figure 42-14 The formation modes and the decay modes of the compound nucleus ^{20}Ne.

The fact that nucleons obey the Pauli exclusion principle helps us to understand the relative stability of nucleon states. If two nucleons within the nucleus are to collide, the energy of each of them after the collision must correspond to the energy of an *unoccupied* state. If no such state is available, the collision simply cannot occur. Thus, any given nucleon experiencing repeated "frustrated collision opportunities" will maintain its state of motion long enough to give meaning to the statement that it exists in a quantum state with a well-defined energy.

In the atomic realm, the repetitions of physical and chemical properties that we find in the periodic table are associated with a property of atomic electrons—namely, they arrange themselves in shells that have a special stability when fully occupied. We can take the atomic numbers of the noble gases,

$$2,\ 10,\ 18,\ 36,\ 54,\ 86, \ldots,$$

as *magic electron numbers* that mark the completion (or closure) of such shells.

Nuclei also show such closed-shell effects, associated with certain **magic nucleon numbers:**

$$2,\ 8,\ 20,\ 28, 50, 82, 126, \ldots.$$

Any nuclide whose proton number Z or neutron number N has one of these values turns out to have a special stability that may be made apparent in a variety of ways.

Examples of "magic" nuclides are ^{18}O ($Z = 8$), ^{40}Ca ($Z = 20, N = 20$), ^{92}Mo ($N = 50$), and ^{208}Pb ($Z = 82, N = 126$). Both ^{40}Ca and ^{208}Pb are said to be "doubly magic" because they contain both filled shells of protons *and* filled shells of neutrons.

The magic number 2 shows up in the exceptional stability of the alpha particle (^{4}He), which, with $Z = N = 2$, is doubly magic. For example, on the binding energy curve of Fig. 42-7, the binding energy per nucleon for this nuclide stands well above those of its periodic-table neighbors hydrogen, lithium, and beryllium. The neutrons and protons making up the alpha particle are so tightly bound to one another, in fact, that it is impossible to add another proton or neutron to it; there is no stable nuclide with $A = 5$.

The central idea of a closed shell is that a single particle outside a closed shell can be relatively easily removed, but considerably more energy must be expended to remove a particle from the shell itself. The sodium atom, for example, has one (valence) electron outside a closed electron shell. Only about 5 eV is required to strip the valence electron away from a sodium atom; however, to remove a *second* electron (which must be plucked out of a closed shell) requires 22 eV. As a nuclear case, consider ^{121}Sb ($Z = 51$), which contains a single proton outside a closed shell of 50 protons. To remove this lone proton requires 5.8 MeV; to remove a *second* proton, however, requires an energy of 11 MeV. There is much additional experimental evidence that the nucleons in a nucleus form closed shells and that these shells exhibit stable properties.

We have seen that quantum theory can account beautifully for the magic electron numbers—that is, for the populations of the subshells into which atomic electrons are grouped. It turns out that, under certain assumptions, quantum theory can account equally well for the magic nucleon numbers! The 1963 Nobel Prize in physics was, in fact, awarded to Maria Mayer and Hans Jensen "for their discoveries concerning nuclear shell structure."

A Combined Model

Consider a nucleus in which a small number of neutrons (or protons) exist outside a core of closed shells that contains magic numbers of neutrons or protons. The outside nucleons occupy quantized states in a potential well established by the central core, thus preserving the central feature of the independent-particle model. These outside nucleons also interact with the core, deforming it and setting up "tidal wave" motions of rotation or vibration within it. These collective motions of the core preserve the central feature of the collective model. Such a model of nuclear structure thus succeeds in combining the seemingly irreconcilable points of view of the collective and independent-particle models. It has been remarkably successful in explaining observed nuclear properties.

Sample Problem 42.09 Lifetime of a compound nucleus made by neutron capture

Consider the neutron capture reaction

$$^{109}\text{Ag} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{110}\text{Ag} \rightarrow {}^{110}\text{Ag} + \gamma, \tag{42-35}$$

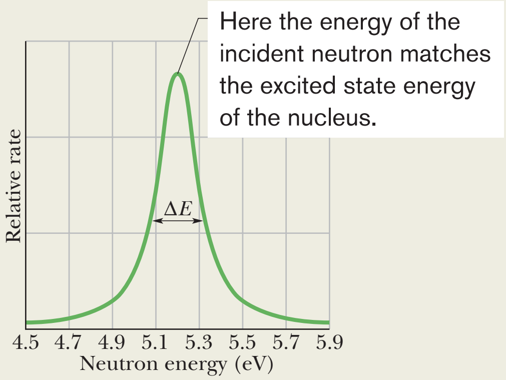
in which a compound nucleus (^{110}Ag) is formed. Figure 42-15 shows the relative rate at which such events take place, plotted against the energy of the incoming neutron. Find the mean lifetime of this compound nucleus by using the uncertainty principle in the form

$$\Delta E \cdot \Delta t \approx \hbar. \tag{42-36}$$

Here ΔE is a measure of the uncertainty with which the energy of a state can be defined. The quantity Δt is a measure of the time available to measure this energy. In fact, here Δt is just t_{avg}, the average life of the compound nucleus before it decays to its ground state.

Reasoning: We see that the relative reaction rate peaks sharply at a neutron energy of about 5.2 eV. This suggests that we are dealing with a single excited energy level of the compound nucleus ^{110}Ag. When the available energy (of the incoming neutron) just matches the energy of this level above the ^{110}Ag ground state, we have "resonance" and the reaction of Eq. 42-35 really "goes."

However, the resonance peak is not infinitely sharp but has an approximate half-width (ΔE in the figure) of about 0.20 eV. We can account for this resonance-peak width by saying that the excited level is not sharply defined in energy but has an energy uncertainty ΔE of about 0.20 eV.



Here the energy of the incident neutron matches the excited state energy of the nucleus.

Figure 42-15 A plot of the relative number of reaction events of the type described by Eq. 42-35 as a function of the energy of the incident neutron. The half-width ΔE of the resonance peak is about 0.20 eV.

Calculation: Substituting that uncertainty of 0.20 eV into Eq. 42-36 gives us

$$\Delta t = t_{\text{avg}} \approx \frac{\hbar}{\Delta E} \approx \frac{(4.14 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{eV}\cdot\text{s})/2\pi}{0.20\ \text{eV}}$$

$$\approx 3 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{s}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

This is several hundred times greater than the time a 5.2 eV neutron takes to cross the diameter of a ^{109}Ag nucleus. Therefore, the neutron is spending this time of 3×10^{-15} s *as part of* the nucleus.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Review & Summary

The Nuclides Approximately 2000 **nuclides** are known to exist. Each is characterized by an **atomic number** Z (the number of protons), a **neutron number** N, and a **mass number** A (the total number of **nucleons**—protons and neutrons). Thus, $A = Z + N$. Nuclides with the same atomic number but different neutron numbers are **isotopes** of one another. Nuclei have a mean radius r given by

$$r = r_0 A^{1/3}, \tag{42-3}$$

where $r_0 \approx 1.2$ fm.

Mass and Binding Energy Atomic masses are often reported in terms of *mass excess*

$$\Delta = M - A \quad \text{(mass excess)}, \tag{42-6}$$

where M is the actual mass of an atom in atomic mass units and A is the mass number for that atom's nucleus. The **binding energy** of a nucleus is the difference

$$\Delta E_{\text{be}} = \Sigma(mc^2) - Mc^2 \quad \text{(binding energy)}, \tag{42-7}$$

where $\Sigma(mc^2)$ is the total mass energy of the *individual* protons and neutrons. The **binding energy per nucleon** is

$$\Delta E_{\text{ben}} = \frac{\Delta E_{\text{be}}}{A} \quad \text{(binding energy per nucleon).} \qquad (42\text{-}8)$$

Mass–Energy Exchanges The energy equivalent of one mass unit (u) is 931.494 013 MeV. The binding energy curve shows that middle-mass nuclides are the most stable and that energy can be released both by fission of high-mass nuclei and by fusion of low-mass nuclei.

The Nuclear Force Nuclei are held together by an attractive force acting among the nucleons, part of the **strong force** acting between the quarks that make up the nucleons.

Radioactive Decay Most known nuclides are radioactive; they spontaneously decay at a rate R $(= -dN/dt)$ that is proportional to the number N of radioactive atoms present, the proportionality constant being the **disintegration constant** λ. This leads to the law of exponential decay:

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}, \qquad R = \lambda N = R_0 e^{-\lambda t} \quad \text{(radioactive decay).} \qquad (42\text{-}15, 42\text{-}17, 42\text{-}16)$$

The **half-life** $T_{1/2} = (\ln 2)/\lambda$ of a radioactive nuclide is the time required for the decay rate R (or the number N) in a sample to drop to half its initial value.

Alpha Decay Some nuclides decay by emitting an alpha particle (a helium nucleus, ^{4}He). Such decay is inhibited by a potential energy barrier that cannot be penetrated according to classical physics but is subject to tunneling according to quantum physics. The barrier penetrability, and thus the half-life for alpha decay, is very sensitive to the energy of the emitted alpha particle.

Beta Decay In **beta decay** either an electron or a positron is emitted by a nucleus, along with a neutrino. The emitted particles share the available disintegration energy. The electrons and positrons emitted in beta decay have a continuous spectrum of energies from near zero up to a limit K_{max} $(= Q = -\Delta m\, c^2)$.

Radioactive Dating Naturally occurring radioactive nuclides provide a means for estimating the dates of historic and prehistoric events. For example, the ages of organic materials can often be found by measuring their ^{14}C content; rock samples can be dated using the radioactive isotope ^{40}K.

Radiation Dosage Three units are used to describe exposure to ionizing radiation. The **becquerel** (1 Bq = 1 decay per second) measures the **activity** of a source. The amount of energy actually absorbed is measured in **grays,** with 1 Gy corresponding to 1 J/kg. The estimated biological effect of the absorbed energy is measured in **sieverts;** a dose equivalent of 1 Sv causes the same biological effect regardless of the radiation type by which it was acquired.

Nuclear Models The **collective** model of nuclear structure assumes that nucleons collide constantly with one another and that relatively long-lived **compound nuclei** are formed when a projectile is captured. The formation and eventual decay of a compound nucleus are totally independent events.

The **independent particle** model of nuclear structure assumes that each nucleon moves, essentially without collisions, in a quantized state within the nucleus. The model predicts nucleon levels and **magic nucleon numbers** (2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82, and 126) associated with closed shells of nucleons; nuclides with any of these numbers of neutrons or protons are particularly stable.

The **combined** model, in which extra nucleons occupy quantized states outside a central core of closed shells, is highly successful in predicting many nuclear properties.

Questions

1 The radionuclide ^{196}Ir decays by emitting an electron. (a) Into which square in Fig. 42-6 is it transformed? (b) Do further decays then occur?

2 Is the mass excess of an alpha particle (use a straightedge on Fig. 42-13) greater than or less than the particle's total binding energy (use the binding energy per nucleon from Fig. 42-7)?

3 At $t = 0$, a sample of radionuclide A has the same decay rate as a sample of radionuclide B has at $t = 30$ min. The disintegration constants are λ_A and λ_B, with $\lambda_A < \lambda_B$. Will the two samples ever have (simultaneously) the same decay rate? (*Hint:* Sketch a graph of their activities.)

4 A certain nuclide is said to be particularly stable. Does its binding energy per nucleon lie slightly above or slightly below the binding energy curve of Fig. 42-7?

5 Suppose the alpha particle in a Rutherford scattering experiment is replaced with a proton of the same initial kinetic energy and also headed directly toward the nucleus of the gold atom. (a) Will the distance from the center of the nucleus at which the proton stops be greater than, less than, or the same as that of the alpha particle? (b) If, instead, we switch the target to a nucleus with a larger value of Z, is the stopping distance of the alpha particle greater than, less than, or the same as with the gold target?

6 Figure 42-16 gives the activities of three radioactive samples versus time. Rank the samples according to their (a) half-life and (b) disintegration constant, greatest first. (*Hint:* For (a), use a straightedge on the graph.)

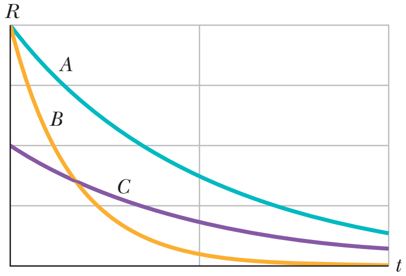


Figure 42-16 Question 6.

7 The nuclide ^{244}Pu ($Z = 94$) is an alpha-emitter. Into which of the following nuclides does it decay: ^{240}Np ($Z = 93$), ^{240}U ($Z = 92$), ^{248}Cm ($Z = 96$), or ^{244}Am ($Z = 95$)?

8 The radionuclide ^{49}Sc has a half-life of 57.0 min. At $t = 0$, the counting rate of a sample of it is 6000 counts/min above the general background activity, which is 30 counts/min. Without computation, determine whether the counting rate of the sample will be about equal to the background rate in 3 h, 7 h, 10 h, or a time much longer than 10 h.

9 At $t = 0$ we begin to observe two identical radioactive nuclei that have a half-life of 5 min. At $t = 1$ min, one of the nuclei decays. Does that event increase or decrease the chance that the second nucleus will decay in the next 4 min, or is there no effect on the second nucleus? (Are the events cause and effect, or random?)

10 Figure 42-17 shows the curve for the binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben} versus mass number A. Three isotopes are indicated. Rank them according to the energy required to remove a nucleon from the isotope, greatest first.

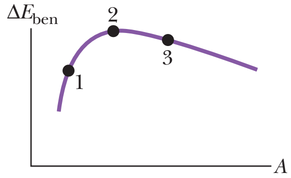


Figure 42-17 Question 10.

11 At $t = 0$, a sample of radionuclide A has twice the decay rate as a sample of radionuclide B. The disintegration constants are λ_A and λ_B, with $\lambda_A > \lambda_B$. Will the two samples ever have (simultaneously) the same decay rate?

12 Figure 42-18 is a plot of mass number A versus charge number Z. The location of a certain nucleus is represented by a dot. Which of the arrows extending from the dot would best represent the transition were the nucleus to undergo (a) a β^- decay and (b) an α decay?

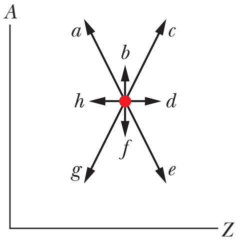


Figure 42-18 Question 12.

13 (a) Which of the following nuclides are magic: ^{122}Sn, ^{132}Sn, ^{98}Cd, ^{198}Au, ^{208}Pb? (b) Which, if any, are doubly magic?

14 If the mass of a radioactive sample is doubled, do (a) the activity of the sample and (b) the disintegration constant of the sample increase, decrease, or remain the same?

15 The magic nucleon numbers for nuclei are given in Module 42-8 as 2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82, and 126. Are nuclides magic (that is, especially stable) when (a) only the mass number A, (b) only the atomic number Z, (c) only the neutron number N, or (d) either Z or N (or both) is equal to one of these numbers? Pick all correct phrases.

Problems

GO Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign

SSM Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual

• – ••• Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty

Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com

WWW Worked-out solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

ILW Interactive solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 42-1 Discovering the Nucleus

•1 A ^{7}Li nucleus with a kinetic energy of 3.00 MeV is sent toward a ^{232}Th nucleus. What is the least center-to-center separation between the two nuclei, assuming that the (more massive) ^{232}Th nucleus does not move?

•2 Calculate the distance of closest approach for a head-on collision between a 5.30 MeV alpha particle and a copper nucleus.

••3 A 10.2 MeV Li nucleus is shot directly at the center of a Ds nucleus. At what center-to-center distance does the Li momentarily stop, assuming the Ds does not move?

••4 GO In a Rutherford scattering experiment, assume that an incident alpha particle (radius 1.80 fm) is headed directly toward a target gold nucleus (radius 6.23 fm). What energy must the alpha particle have to just barely "touch" the gold nucleus?

••5 GO When an alpha particle collides elastically with a nucleus, the nucleus recoils. Suppose a 5.00 MeV alpha particle has a head-on elastic collision with a gold nucleus that is initially at rest. What is the kinetic energy of (a) the recoiling nucleus and (b) the rebounding alpha particle?

Module 42-2 Some Nuclear Properties

•6 The strong neutron excess (defined as $N - Z$) of high-mass nuclei is illustrated by noting that most high-mass nuclides could never fission into two stable nuclei without neutrons being left over. For example, consider the spontaneous fission of a ^{235}U nucleus into two stable *daughter nuclei* with atomic numbers 39 and 53. From Appendix F, determine the name of the (a) first and (b) second daughter nucleus. From Fig. 42-5, approximately how many neutrons are in the (c) first and (d) second? (e) Approximately how many neutrons are left over?

•7 What is the nuclear mass density ρ_m of (a) the fairly low-mass nuclide ^{55}Mn and (b) the fairly high-mass nuclide ^{209}Bi? (c) Compare the two answers, with an explanation. What is the nuclear charge density ρ_q of (d) ^{55}Mn and (e) ^{209}Bi? (f) Compare the two answers, with an explanation.

•8 (a) Show that the mass M of an atom is given approximately by $M_{\text{app}} = Am_{\text{p}}$, where A is the mass number and m_{p} is the proton mass. For (b) ^{1}H, (c) ^{31}P, (d) ^{120}Sn, (e) ^{197}Au, and (f) ^{239}Pu, use Table 42-1 to find the percentage deviation between M_{app} and M:

$$\text{percentage deviation} = \frac{M_{\text{app}} - M}{M}\,100.$$

(g) Is a value of M_{app} accurate enough to be used in a calculation of a nuclear binding energy?

•9 The nuclide ^{14}C contains (a) how many protons and (b) how many neutrons?

•10 What is the mass excess Δ_1 of ^{1}H (actual mass is 1.007 825 u) in (a) atomic mass units and (b) MeV/c^2? What is the mass excess Δ_{n} of a neutron (actual mass is 1.008 665 u) in (c) atomic mass units and (d) MeV/c^2? What is the mass excess Δ_{120} of ^{120}Sn (actual mass is 119.902 197 u) in (e) atomic mass units and (f) MeV/c^2?

•11 SSM Nuclear radii may be measured by scattering high-energy (high speed) electrons from nuclei. (a) What is the de Broglie wavelength for 200 MeV electrons? (b) Are these electrons suitable probes for this purpose?

•12 The electric potential energy of a uniform sphere of charge q and radius r is given by

$$U = \frac{3q^2}{20\pi\varepsilon_0 r}.$$

(a) Does the energy represent a tendency for the sphere to bind together or blow apart? The nuclide ^{239}Pu is spherical with radius 6.64 fm. For this nuclide, what are (b) the electric potential energy U according to the equation, (c) the electric potential energy per proton, and (d) the electric potential energy per nucleon? The binding energy per nucleon is 7.56 MeV. (e) Why is the nuclide bound so well when the answers to (c) and (d) are large and positive?

•13 A neutron star is a stellar object whose density is about that of nuclear matter, 2×10^{17} kg/m^3. Suppose that the Sun were to collapse and become such a star without losing any of its present mass. What would be its radius?

••14 **GO** What is the binding energy per nucleon of the americium isotope $^{244}_{95}$Am? Here are some atomic masses and the neutron mass.

$^{244}_{95}$Am	244.064 279 u	^{1}H	1.007 825 u
n	1.008 665 u		

••15 (a) Show that the energy associated with the strong force between nucleons in a nucleus is proportional to A, the mass number of the nucleus in question. (b) Show that the energy associated with the Coulomb force between protons in a nucleus is proportional to $Z(Z - 1)$. (c) Show that, as we move to larger and larger nuclei (see Fig. 42-5), the importance of the Coulomb force increases more rapidly than does that of the strong force.

••16 **GO** What is the binding energy per nucleon of the europium isotope $^{152}_{63}$Eu? Here are some atomic masses and the neutron mass.

$^{152}_{63}$Eu	151.921 742 u	^{1}H	1.007 825 u
n	1.008 665 u		

••17 Because the neutron has no charge, its mass must be found in some way other than by using a mass spectrometer. When a neutron and a proton meet (assume both to be almost stationary), they combine and form a deuteron, emitting a gamma ray whose energy is 2.2233 MeV. The masses of the proton and the deuteron are 1.007 276 467 u and 2.013 553 212 u, respectively. Find the mass of the neutron from these data.

••18 **GO** What is the binding energy per nucleon of the rutherfordium isotope $^{259}_{104}$Rf? Here are some atomic masses and the neutron mass.

$^{259}_{104}$Rf	259.105 63 u	^{1}H	1.007 825 u
n	1.008 665 u		

••19 A periodic table might list the average atomic mass of magnesium as being 24.312 u, which is the result of *weighting* the atomic masses of the magnesium isotopes according to their natural abundances on Earth. The three isotopes and their masses are ^{24}Mg (23.985 04 u), ^{25}Mg (24.985 84 u), and ^{26}Mg (25.982 59 u). The natural abundance of ^{24}Mg is 78.99% by mass (that is, 78.99% of the mass of a naturally occurring sample of magnesium is due to the presence of ^{24}Mg). What is the abundance of (a) ^{25}Mg and (b) ^{26}Mg?

••20 What is the binding energy per nucleon of ^{262}Bh? The mass of the atom is 262.1231 u.

••21 **SSM** **WWW** (a) Show that the total binding energy E_{be} of a given nuclide is

$$E_{\text{be}} = Z\Delta_{\text{H}} + N\Delta_{\text{n}} - \Delta,$$

where Δ_{H} is the mass excess of ^{1}H, Δ_{n} is the mass excess of a neutron, and Δ is the mass excess of the given nuclide. (b) Using this method, calculate the binding energy per nucleon for ^{197}Au. Compare your result with the value listed in Table 42-1. The needed mass excesses, rounded to three significant figures, are $\Delta_{\text{H}} = +7.29$ MeV, $\Delta_{\text{n}} = +8.07$ MeV, and $\Delta_{197} = -31.2$ MeV. Note the economy of calculation that results when mass excesses are used in place of the actual masses.

••22 **GO** An α particle (^{4}He nucleus) is to be taken apart in the following steps. Give the energy (work) required for each step: (a) remove a proton, (b) remove a neutron, and (c) separate the remaining proton and neutron. For an α particle, what are (d) the total binding energy and (e) the binding energy per nucleon? (f) Does either match an answer to (a), (b), or (c)? Here are some atomic masses and the neutron mass.

^{4}He	4.002 60 u	^{2}H	2.014 10 u
^{3}H	3.016 05 u	^{1}H	1.007 83 u
n	1.008 67 u		

••23 **SSM** Verify the binding energy per nucleon given in Table 42-1 for the plutonium isotope ^{239}Pu. The mass of the neutral atom is 239.052 16 u.

••24 A penny has a mass of 3.0 g. Calculate the energy that would be required to separate all the neutrons and protons in this coin from one another. For simplicity, assume that the penny is made entirely of ^{63}Cu atoms (of mass 62.929 60 u). The masses of the proton-plus-electron and the neutron are 1.007 83 u and 1.008 66 u, respectively.

Module 42-3 Radioactive Decay

•25 Cancer cells are more vulnerable to x and gamma radiation than are healthy cells. In the past, the standard source for radiation therapy was radioactive ^{60}Co, which decays, with a half-life of 5.27 y, into an excited nuclear state of ^{60}Ni. That nickel isotope then immediately emits two gamma-ray photons, each with an approximate energy of 1.2 MeV. How many radioactive ^{60}Co nuclei are present in a 6000 Ci source of the type used in hospitals? (Energetic particles from linear accelerators are now used in radiation therapy.)

•26 The half-life of a radioactive isotope is 140 d. How many days would it take for the decay rate of a sample of this isotope to fall to one-fourth of its initial value?

•27 A radioactive nuclide has a half-life of 30.0 y. What fraction of an initially pure sample of this nuclide will remain undecayed at the end of (a) 60.0 y and (b) 90.0 y?

•28 The plutonium isotope ^{239}Pu is produced as a by-product in nuclear reactors and hence is accumulating in our environment. It is radioactive, decaying with a half-life of 2.41×10^4 y. (a) How many nuclei of Pu constitute a chemically lethal dose of 2.00 mg? (b) What is the decay rate of this amount?

•29 **SSM** **WWW** A radioactive isotope of mercury, ^{197}Hg, decays to gold, ^{197}Au, with a disintegration constant of 0.0108 h^{-1}. (a) Calculate the half-life of the ^{197}Hg. What fraction of a sample will remain at the end of (b) three half-lives and (c) 10.0 days?

•30 The half-life of a particular radioactive isotope is 6.5 h. If there are initially 48×10^{19} atoms of this isotope, how many remain at the end of 26 h?

•31 Consider an initially pure 3.4 g sample of ^{67}Ga, an isotope that has a half-life of 78 h. (a) What is its initial decay rate? (b) What is its decay rate 48 h later?

•32 When aboveground nuclear tests were conducted, the explosions shot radioactive dust into the upper atmosphere. Global air circulations then spread the dust worldwide before it settled out on ground and water. One such test was conducted in October 1976. What fraction of the ^{90}Sr produced by that explosion still existed in October 2006? The half-life of ^{90}Sr is 29 y.

••33 The air in some caves includes a significant amount of radon gas, which can lead to lung cancer if breathed over a prolonged time. In British caves, the air in the cave with the greatest amount of the gas has an activity per volume of 1.55×10^5 Bq/m^3. Suppose that you spend two full days exploring (and sleeping in) that cave. Approximately how many ^{222}Rn atoms would you take in and out of your lungs during your two-day stay? The radionuclide ^{222}Rn in radon gas has a half-life of 3.82 days. You need to estimate your lung capacity and average breathing rate.

••34 Calculate the mass of a sample of (initially pure) ^{40}K that has an initial decay rate of 1.70×10^5 disintegrations/s. The isotope has a half-life of 1.28×10^9 y.

••35 SSM A certain radionuclide is being manufactured in a cyclotron at a constant rate R. It is also decaying with disintegration constant λ. Assume that the production process has been going on for a time that is much longer than the half-life of the radionuclide. (a) Show that the number of radioactive nuclei present after such time remains constant and is given by $N = R/\lambda$. (b) Now show that this result holds no matter how many radioactive nuclei were present initially. The nuclide is said to be in *secular equilibrium* with its source; in this state its decay rate is just equal to its production rate.

••36 Plutonium isotope ^{239}Pu decays by alpha decay with a half-life of 24 100 y. How many milligrams of helium are produced by an initially pure 12.0 g sample of ^{239}Pu at the end of 20 000 y? (Consider only the helium produced directly by the plutonium and not by any by-products of the decay process.)

••37 The radionuclide ^{64}Cu has a half-life of 12.7 h. If a sample contains 5.50 g of initially pure ^{64}Cu at $t = 0$, how much of it will decay between $t = 14.0$ h and $t = 16.0$ h?

••38 A dose of 8.60 μCi of a radioactive isotope is injected into a patient. The isotope has a half-life of 3.0 h. How many of the isotope parents are injected?

••39 The radionuclide ^{56}Mn has a half-life of 2.58 h and is produced in a cyclotron by bombarding a manganese target with deuterons. The target contains only the stable manganese isotope ^{55}Mn, and the manganese–deuteron reaction that produces ^{56}Mn is

$$^{55}\text{Mn} + \text{d} \rightarrow {}^{56}\text{Mn} + \text{p}.$$

If the bombardment lasts much longer than the half-life of ^{56}Mn, the activity of the ^{56}Mn produced in the target reaches a final value of 8.88×10^{10} Bq. (a) At what rate is ^{56}Mn being produced? (b) How many ^{56}Mn nuclei are then in the target? (c) What is their total mass?

••40 A source contains two phosphorus radionuclides, ^{32}P ($T_{1/2}$ = 14.3 d) and ^{33}P ($T_{1/2}$ = 25.3 d). Initially, 10.0% of the decays come from ^{33}P. How long must one wait until 90.0% do so?

••41 A 1.00 g sample of samarium emits alpha particles at a rate of 120 particles/s. The responsible isotope is ^{147}Sm, whose natural abundance in bulk samarium is 15.0%. Calculate the half-life.

••42 What is the activity of a 20 ng sample of ^{92}Kr, which has a half-life of 1.84 s?

••43 GO A radioactive sample intended for irradiation of a hospital patient is prepared at a nearby laboratory. The sample has a half-life of 83.61 h. What should its initial activity be if its activity is to be 7.4×10^8 Bq when it is used to irradiate the patient 24 h later?

••44 GO Figure 42-19 shows the decay of parents in a radioactive sample. The axes are scaled by $N_s = 2.00 \times 10^6$ and $t_s = 10.0$ s. What is the activity of the sample at $t = 27.0$ s?

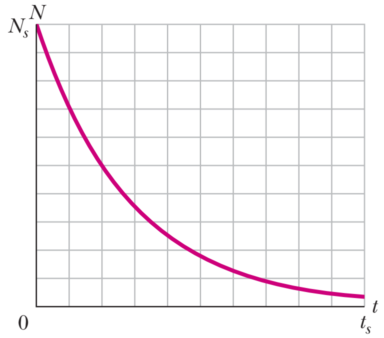


Figure 42-19 Problem 44.

••45 In 1992, Swiss police arrested two men who were attempting to smuggle osmium out of Eastern Europe for a clandestine sale. However, by error, the smugglers had picked up ^{137}Cs. Reportedly, each smuggler was carrying a 1.0 g sample of ^{137}Cs *in a pocket*! In (a) bequerels and (b) curies, what was the activity of each sample? The isotope ^{137}Cs has a half-life of 30.2 y. (The activities of radioisotopes commonly used in hospitals range up to a few millicuries.)

••46 The radioactive nuclide ^{99}Tc can be injected into a patient's bloodstream in order to monitor the blood flow, measure the blood volume, or find a tumor, among other goals. The nuclide is produced in a hospital by a "cow" containing ^{99}Mo, a radioactive nuclide that decays to ^{99}Tc with a half-life of 67 h. Once a day, the cow is "milked" for its ^{99}Tc, which is produced in an excited state by the ^{99}Mo; the ^{99}Tc de-excites to its lowest energy state by emitting a gamma-ray photon, which is recorded by detectors placed around the patient. The de-excitation has a half-life of 6.0 h. (a) By what process does ^{99}Mo decay to ^{99}Tc? (b) If a patient is injected with an 8.2×10^7 Bq sample of ^{99}Tc, how many gamma-ray photons are initially produced within the patient each second? (c) If the emission rate of gamma-ray photons from a small tumor that has collected ^{99}Tc is 38 per second at a certain time, how many excited-state ^{99}Tc are located in the tumor at that time?

••47 SSM After long effort, in 1902 Marie and Pierre Curie succeeded in separating from uranium ore the first substantial quantity of radium, one decigram of pure RaCl$_2$. The radium was the radioactive isotope ^{226}Ra, which has a half-life of 1600 y. (a) How many radium nuclei had the Curies isolated? (b) What was the decay rate of their sample, in disintegrations per second?

Module 42-4 Alpha Decay

•48 How much energy is released when a ^{238}U nucleus decays by emitting (a) an alpha particle and (b) a sequence of neutron, proton, neutron, proton? (c) Convince yourself both by reasoned argument and by direct calculation that the difference between these two numbers is just the total binding energy of the alpha particle. (d) Find that binding energy. Some needed atomic and particle masses are

^{238}U	238.050 79 u	^{234}Th	234.043 63 u
^{237}U	237.048 73 u	^{4}He	4.002 60 u
^{236}Pa	236.048 91 u	^{1}H	1.007 83 u
^{235}Pa	235.045 44 u	n	1.008 66 u

•49 **SSM** Generally, more massive nuclides tend to be more unstable to alpha decay. For example, the most stable isotope of uranium, ^{238}U, has an alpha decay half-life of 4.5×10^9 y. The most stable isotope of plutonium is ^{244}Pu with an 8.0×10^7 y half-life, and for curium we have ^{248}Cm and 3.4×10^5 y. When half of an original sample of ^{238}U has decayed, what fraction of the original sample of (a) plutonium and (b) curium is left?

••50 Large radionuclides emit an alpha particle rather than other combinations of nucleons because the alpha particle has such a stable, tightly bound structure. To confirm this statement, calculate the disintegration energies for these hypothetical decay processes and discuss the meaning of your findings:

(a) $^{235}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{232}\text{Th} + {}^{3}\text{He}$, (b) $^{235}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{231}\text{Th} + {}^{4}\text{He}$,
(c) $^{235}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{230}\text{Th} + {}^{5}\text{He}$.

The needed atomic masses are

^{232}Th	232.0381 u	^{3}He	3.0160 u
^{231}Th	231.0363 u	^{4}He	4.0026 u
^{230}Th	230.0331 u	^{5}He	5.0122 u
^{235}U	235.0429 u		

••51 A ^{238}U nucleus emits a 4.196 MeV alpha particle. Calculate the disintegration energy Q for this process, taking the recoil energy of the residual ^{234}Th nucleus into account.

••52 Under certain rare circumstances, a nucleus can decay by emitting a particle more massive than an alpha particle. Consider the decays

$$^{223}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{209}\text{Pb} + {}^{14}\text{C} \qquad \text{and} \qquad {}^{223}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{219}\text{Rn} + {}^{4}\text{He}.$$

Calculate the Q value for the (a) first and (b) second decay and determine that both are energetically possible. (c) The Coulomb barrier height for alpha-particle emission is 30.0 MeV. What is the barrier height for ^{14}C emission? (Be careful about the nuclear radii.) The needed atomic masses are

^{223}Ra	223.018 50 u	^{14}C	14.003 24 u
^{209}Pb	208.981 07 u	^{4}He	4.002 60 u
^{219}Rn	219.009 48 u		

Module 42-5 Beta Decay

•53 **SSM** The cesium isotope ^{137}Cs is present in the fallout from aboveground detonations of nuclear bombs. Because it decays with a slow (30.2 y) half-life into ^{137}Ba, releasing considerable energy in the process, it is of environmental concern. The atomic masses of the Cs and Ba are 136.9071 and 136.9058 u, respectively; calculate the total energy released in such a decay.

•54 Some radionuclides decay by capturing one of their own atomic electrons, a K-shell electron, say. An example is

$$^{49}\text{V} + \text{e}^- \rightarrow {}^{49}\text{Ti} + \nu, \qquad T_{1/2} = 331 \text{ d}.$$

Show that the disintegration energy Q for this process is given by

$$Q = (m_\text{V} - m_\text{Ti})c^2 - E_K,$$

where m_V and m_Ti are the atomic masses of ^{49}V and ^{49}Ti, respectively, and E_K is the binding energy of the vanadium K-shell electron. (*Hint:* Put $\mathbf{m}_\text{V}$ and $\mathbf{m}_\text{Ti}$ as the corresponding nuclear masses and then add in enough electrons to use the atomic masses.)

•55 A free neutron decays according to Eq. 42-26. If the neutron–hydrogen atom mass difference is 840 μu, what is the maximum kinetic energy K_max possible for the electron produced in a neutron decay?

•56 An electron is emitted from a middle-mass nuclide ($A = 150$, say) with a kinetic energy of 1.0 MeV. (a) What is its de Broglie wavelength? (b) Calculate the radius of the emitting nucleus. (c) Can such an electron be confined as a standing wave in a "box" of such dimensions? (d) Can you use these numbers to disprove the (abandoned) argument that electrons actually exist in nuclei?

••57 GO The radionuclide ^{11}C decays according to

$$^{11}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{11}\text{B} + \text{e}^+ + \nu, \qquad T_{1/2} = 20.3 \text{ min}.$$

The maximum energy of the emitted positrons is 0.960 MeV. (a) Show that the disintegration energy Q for this process is given by

$$Q = (m_\text{C} - m_\text{B} - 2m_\text{e})c^2,$$

where m_C and m_B are the atomic masses of ^{11}C and ^{11}B, respectively, and m_e is the mass of a positron. (b) Given the mass values $m_\text{C} = 11.011\,434$ u, $m_\text{B} = 11.009\,305$ u, and $m_\text{e} = 0.000\,548\,6$ u, calculate Q and compare it with the maximum energy of the emitted positron given above. (*Hint:* Let $\mathbf{m}_\text{C}$ and $\mathbf{m}_\text{B}$ be the nuclear masses and then add in enough electrons to use the atomic masses.)

••58 Two radioactive materials that alpha decay, ^{238}U and ^{232}Th, and one that beta decays, ^{40}K, are sufficiently abundant in granite to contribute significantly to the heating of Earth through the decay energy produced. The alpha-decay isotopes give rise to decay chains that stop when stable lead isotopes are formed. The isotope ^{40}K has a single beta decay. (Assume this is the only possible decay of that isotope.) Here is the information:

Parent	Decay Mode	Half-Life (y)	Stable End Point	Q (MeV)	f (ppm)
^{238}U	α	4.47×10^9	^{206}Pb	51.7	4
^{232}Th	α	1.41×10^{10}	^{208}Pb	42.7	13
^{40}K	β	1.28×10^9	^{40}Ca	1.31	4

In the table Q is the *total* energy released in the decay of one parent nucleus to the *final* stable end point and f is the abundance of the isotope in kilograms per kilogram of granite; ppm means parts per million. (a) Show that these materials produce energy as heat at the rate of 1.0×10^{-9} W for each kilogram of granite. (b) Assuming that there is 2.7×10^{22} kg of granite in a 20-km-thick spherical shell at the surface of Earth, estimate the power of this decay process over all of Earth. Compare this power with the total solar power intercepted by Earth, 1.7×10^{17} W.

•••59 **SSM** **WWW** The radionuclide ^{32}P decays to ^{32}S as described by Eq. 42-24. In a particular decay event, a 1.71 MeV electron is emitted, the maximum possible value. What is the kinetic energy of the recoiling ^{32}S atom in this event? (*Hint:* For the electron it is necessary to use the relativistic expressions for kinetic energy and linear momentum. The ^{32}S atom is nonrelativistic.)

Module 42-6 Radioactive Dating

•60 A 5.00 g charcoal sample from an ancient fire pit has a ^{14}C activity of 63.0 disintegrations/min. A living tree has a ^{14}C activity of 15.3 disintegrations/min per 1.00 g. The half-life of ^{14}C is 5730 y. How old is the charcoal sample?

•61 The isotope ^{238}U decays to ^{206}Pb with a half-life of 4.47×10^9 y. Although the decay occurs in many individual steps, the first step has by far the longest half-life; therefore, one can often consider the decay to go directly to lead. That is,

$$^{238}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{206}\text{Pb} + \text{various decay products.}$$

A rock is found to contain 4.20 mg of ^{238}U and 2.135 mg of ^{206}Pb. Assume that the rock contained no lead at formation, so all the lead now present arose from the decay of uranium. How many atoms of (a) ^{238}U and (b) ^{206}Pb does the rock now contain? (c) How many atoms of ^{238}U did the rock contain at formation? (d) What is the age of the rock?

••62 A particular rock is thought to be 260 million years old. If it contains 3.70 mg of ^{238}U, how much ^{206}Pb should it contain? See Problem 61.

••63 GO A rock recovered from far underground is found to contain 0.86 mg of ^{238}U, 0.15 mg of ^{206}Pb, and 1.6 mg of ^{40}Ar. How much ^{40}K will it likely contain? Assume that ^{40}K decays to only ^{40}Ar with a half-life of 1.25×10^9 y. Also assume that ^{238}U has a half-life of 4.47×10^9 y.

•••64 GO The isotope ^{40}K can decay to either ^{40}Ca or ^{40}Ar; assume both have a half-life of 1.26×10^9 y. The ratio of the Ca produced to the Ar produced is $8.54/1 = 8.54$. A sample originally had only ^{40}K. It now has equal amounts of ^{40}K and ^{40}Ar; that is, the ratio of K to Ar is $1/1 = 1$. How old is the sample? (*Hint:* Work this like other radioactive-dating problems, except that this decay has two products.)

Module 42-7 Measuring Radiation Dosage

•65 SSM The nuclide ^{198}Au, with a half-life of 2.70 d, is used in cancer therapy. What mass of this nuclide is required to produce an activity of 250 Ci?

•66 A radiation detector records 8700 counts in 1.00 min. Assuming that the detector records all decays, what is the activity of the radiation source in (a) becquerels and (b) curies?

•67 An organic sample of mass 4.00 kg absorbs 2.00 mJ via slow neutron radiation (RBE = 5). What is the dose equivalent (mSv)?

••68 A 75 kg person receives a whole-body radiation dose of 2.4×10^{-4} Gy, delivered by alpha particles for which the RBE factor is 12. Calculate (a) the absorbed energy in joules and the dose equivalent in (b) sieverts and (c) rem.

••69 An 85 kg worker at a breeder reactor plant accidentally ingests 2.5 mg of ^{239}Pu dust. This isotope has a half-life of 24 100 y, decaying by alpha decay. The energy of the emitted alpha particles is 5.2 MeV, with an RBE factor of 13. Assume that the plutonium resides in the worker's body for 12 h (it is eliminated naturally by the digestive system rather than being absorbed by any of the internal organs) and that 95% of the emitted alpha particles are stopped within the body. Calculate (a) the number of plutonium atoms ingested, (b) the number that decay during the 12 h, (c) the energy absorbed by the body, (d) the resulting physical dose in grays, and (e) the dose equivalent in sieverts.

Module 42-8 Nuclear Models

•70 A typical kinetic energy for a nucleon in a middle-mass nucleus may be taken as 5.00 MeV. To what effective nuclear temperature does this correspond, based on the assumptions of the collective model of nuclear structure?

•71 A measurement of the energy E of an intermediate nucleus must be made within the mean lifetime Δt of the nucleus and necessarily carries an uncertainty ΔE according to the uncertainty principle

$$\Delta E \cdot \Delta t = \hbar.$$

(a) What is the uncertainty ΔE in the energy for an intermediate nucleus if the nucleus has a mean lifetime of 10^{-22} s? (b) Is the nucleus a compound nucleus?

•72 In the following list of nuclides, identify (a) those with filled nucleon shells, (b) those with one nucleon outside a filled shell, and (c) those with one vacancy in an otherwise filled shell: ^{13}C, ^{18}O, ^{40}K, ^{49}Ti, ^{60}Ni, ^{91}Zr, ^{92}Mo, ^{121}Sb, ^{143}Nd, ^{144}Sm, ^{205}Tl, and ^{207}Pb.

••73 SSM Consider the three formation processes shown for the compound nucleus ^{20}Ne in Fig. 42-14. Here are some of the atomic and particle masses:

^{20}Ne	19.992 44 u	α	4.002 60 u
^{19}F	18.998 40 u	p	1.007 83 u
^{16}O	15.994 91 u		

What energy must (a) the alpha particle, (b) the proton, and (c) the γ-ray photon have to provide 25.0 MeV of excitation energy to the compound nucleus?

Additional Problems

74 GO In a certain rock, the ratio of lead atoms to uranium atoms is 0.300. Assume that uranium has a half-life of 4.47×10^9 y and that the rock had no lead atoms when it formed. How old is the rock?

75 SSM A certain stable nuclide, after absorbing a neutron, emits an electron, and the new nuclide splits spontaneously into two alpha particles. Identify the nuclide.

76 A typical chest x-ray radiation dose is 250 μSv, delivered by x rays with an RBE factor of 0.85. Assuming that the mass of the exposed tissue is one-half the patient's mass of 88 kg, calculate the energy absorbed in joules.

77 SSM How many years are needed to reduce the activity of ^{14}C to 0.020 of its original activity? The half-life of ^{14}C is 5730 y.

78 GO Radioactive element *AA* can decay to either element *BB* or element *CC*. The decay depends on chance, but the ratio of the resulting number of *BB* atoms to the resulting number of *CC* atoms is always 2/1. The decay has a half-life of 8.00 days. We start with a sample of pure *AA*. How long must we wait until the number of *CC* atoms is 1.50 times the number of *AA* atoms?

79 GO SSM One of the dangers of radioactive fallout from a nuclear bomb is its ^{90}Sr, which decays with a 29-year half-life. Because it has chemical properties much like those of calcium, the strontium, if ingested by a cow, becomes concentrated in the cow's milk. Some of the ^{90}Sr ends up in the bones of whoever drinks the milk. The energetic electrons emitted in the beta decay of ^{90}Sr damage the bone marrow and thus impair the production of red blood cells. A 1 megaton bomb produces approximately 400 g of ^{90}Sr. If the fallout spreads uniformly over a 2000 km^2 area, what ground area would hold an amount of radioactivity equal to the "allowed" limit for one person, which is 74 000 counts/s?

80 Because of the 1986 explosion and fire in a reactor at the Chernobyl nuclear power plant in northern Ukraine, part of Ukraine is contaminated with ^{137}Cs, which undergoes beta-minus decay with a half-life of 30.2 y. In 1996, the total activity of this contamination over an area of 2.6×10^5 km^2 was estimated to be 1×10^{16} Bq. Assume that the ^{137}Cs is uniformly spread over that area and that the beta-decay electrons travel either directly upward or directly downward. How many beta-decay electrons would you intercept were you to lie on the ground in that area for 1 h (a) in 1996 and (b) today? (You need to estimate your cross-sectional area that intercepts those electrons.)

81 Figure 42-20 shows part of the decay scheme of ^{237}Np on a plot of mass number A versus proton number Z; five lines that represent either alpha decay or beta-minus decay connect dots that represent isotopes. What is the isotope at the end of the five decays (as marked with a question mark in Fig. 42-20)?

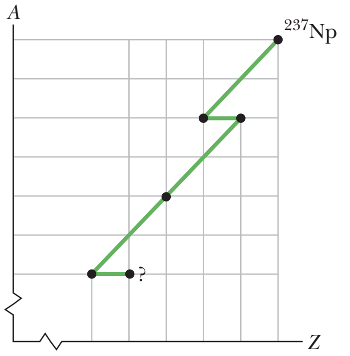


Figure 42-20 Problem 81.

82 After a brief neutron irradiation of silver, two isotopes are present: ^{108}Ag ($T_{1/2} = 2.42$ min) with an initial decay rate of 3.1×10^5/s, and ^{110}Ag ($T_{1/2} = 24.6$ s) with an initial decay rate of 4.1×10^6/s. Make a semilog plot similar to Fig. 42-9 showing the total combined decay rate of the two isotopes as a function of time from $t = 0$ until $t = 10$ min. We used Fig. 42-9 to illustrate the extraction of the half-life for simple (one isotope) decays. Given only your plot of total decay rate for the two-isotope system here, suggest a way to analyze it in order to find the half-lives of both isotopes.

83 Because a nucleon is confined to a nucleus, we can take the uncertainty in its position to be approximately the nuclear radius r. Use the uncertainty principle to determine the uncertainty Δp in the linear momentum of the nucleon. Using the approximation $p \approx \Delta p$ and the fact that the nucleon is nonrelativistic, calculate the kinetic energy of the nucleon in a nucleus with $A = 100$.

84 A radium source contains 1.00 mg of ^{226}Ra, which decays with a half-life of 1600 y to produce ^{222}Rn, a noble gas. This radon isotope in turn decays by alpha emission with a half-life of 3.82 d. If this process continues for a time much longer than the half-life of ^{222}Rn, the ^{222}Rn decay rate reaches a limiting value that matches the rate at which ^{222}Rn is being produced, which is approximately constant because of the relatively long half-life of ^{226}Ra. For the source under this limiting condition, what are (a) the activity of ^{226}Ra, (b) the activity of ^{222}Rn, and (c) the total mass of ^{222}Rn?

85 Make a nuclidic chart similar to Fig. 42-6 for the 25 nuclides $^{118-122}$Te, $^{117-121}$Sb, $^{116-120}$Sn, $^{115-119}$In, and $^{114-118}$Cd. Draw in and label (a) all isobaric (constant A) lines and (b) all lines of constant neutron excess, defined as $N - Z$.

86 GO A projectile alpha particle is headed directly toward a target aluminum nucleus. Both objects are assumed to be spheres. What energy is required of the alpha particle if it is to momentarily stop just as its "surface" touches the "surface" of the aluminum nucleus? Assume that the target nucleus remains stationary.

87 Consider a ^{238}U nucleus to be made up of an alpha particle (^{4}He) and a residual nucleus (^{234}Th). Plot the electrostatic potential energy $U(r)$, where r is the distance between these particles. Cover the approximate range 10 fm $< r <$ 100 fm and compare your plot with that of Fig. 42-10.

88 Characteristic nuclear time is a useful but loosely defined quantity, taken to be the time required for a nucleon with a few million electron-volts of kinetic energy to travel a distance equal to the diameter of a middle-mass nuclide. What is the order of magnitude of this quantity? Consider 5 MeV neutrons traversing a nuclear diameter of ^{197}Au; use Eq. 42-3.

89 What is the likely mass number of a spherical nucleus with a radius of 3.6 fm as measured by electron-scattering methods?

90 Using a nuclidic chart, write the symbols for (a) all stable isotopes with $Z = 60$, (b) all radioactive nuclides with $N = 60$, and (c) all nuclides with $A = 60$.

91 If the unit for atomic mass were defined so that the mass of ^{1}H were exactly 1.000 000 u, what would be the mass of (a) ^{12}C (actual mass 12.000 000 u) and (b) ^{238}U (actual mass 238.050 785 u)?

92 High-mass radionuclides, which may be either alpha or beta emitters, belong to one of four decay chains, depending on whether their mass number A is of the form $4n$, $4n + 1$, $4n + 2$, or $4n + 3$, where n is a positive integer. (a) Justify this statement and show that if a nuclide belongs to one of these families, all its decay products belong to the same family. Classify the following nuclides as to family: (b) ^{235}U, (c) ^{236}U, (d) ^{238}U, (e) ^{239}Pu, (f) ^{240}Pu, (g) ^{245}Cm, (h) ^{246}Cm, (i) ^{249}Cf, and (j) ^{253}Fm.

93 Find the disintegration energy Q for the decay of ^{49}V by K-electron capture (see Problem 54). The needed data are $m_V = 48.948\,52$ u, $m_{Ti} = 48.947\,87$ u, and $E_K = 5.47$ keV.

94 Locate the nuclides displayed in Table 42-1 on the nuclidic chart of Fig. 42-5. Verify that they lie in the stability zone.

95 The radionuclide ^{32}P ($T_{1/2} = 14.28$ d) is often used as a tracer to follow the course of biochemical reactions involving phosphorus. (a) If the counting rate in a particular experimental setup is initially 3050 counts/s, how much time will the rate take to fall to 170 counts/s? (b) A solution containing ^{32}P is fed to the root system of an experimental tomato plant, and the ^{32}P activity in a leaf is measured 3.48 days later. By what factor must this reading be multiplied to correct for the decay that has occurred since the experiment began?

96 At the end of World War II, Dutch authorities arrested Dutch artist Hans van Meegeren for treason because, during the war, he had sold a masterpiece painting to the Nazi Hermann Goering. The painting, *Christ and His Disciples at Emmaus* by Dutch master Johannes Vermeer (1632–1675), had been discovered in 1937 by van Meegeren, after it had been lost for almost 300 years. Soon after the discovery, art experts proclaimed that *Emmaus* was possibly the best Vermeer ever seen. Selling such a Dutch national treasure to the enemy was unthinkable treason.

However, shortly after being imprisoned, van Meegeren suddenly announced that he, not Vermeer, had painted *Emmaus*. He explained that he had carefully mimicked Vermeer's style, using a 300-year-old canvas and Vermeer's choice of pigments; he had then signed Vermeer's name to the work and baked the painting to give it an authentically old look.

Was van Meegeren lying to avoid a conviction of treason, hoping to be convicted of only the lesser crime of fraud? To art experts, *Emmaus* certainly looked like a Vermeer but, at the time of van Meegeren's trial in 1947, there was no scientific way to answer the question. However, in 1968 Bernard Keisch of Carnegie-Mellon University was able to answer the question with newly developed techniques of radioactive analysis.

Specifically, he analyzed a small sample of white lead-bearing pigment removed from *Emmaus*. This pigment is refined from lead ore, in which the lead is produced by a long radioactive decay series that starts with unstable ^{238}U and ends with stable ^{206}Pb. To follow the spirit of Keisch's analysis, focus on the following abbreviated portion of that decay series, in which intermediate, relatively short-lived radionuclides have been omitted:

$$^{230}\text{Th} \xrightarrow[75.4\text{ ky}]{} {}^{226}\text{Ra} \xrightarrow[1.60\text{ ky}]{} {}^{210}\text{Pb} \xrightarrow[22.6\text{ ky}]{} {}^{206}\text{Pb}.$$

The longer and more important half-lives in this portion of the decay series are indicated.

(a) Show that in a sample of lead ore, the rate at which the number of ^{210}Pb nuclei changes is given by

$$\frac{dN_{210}}{dt} = \lambda_{226}N_{226} - \lambda_{210}N_{210},$$

where N_{210} and N_{226} are the numbers of ^{210}Pb nuclei and ^{226}Ra nuclei in the sample and λ_{210} and λ_{226} are the corresponding disintegration constants.

Because the decay series has been active for billions of years and because the half-life of ^{210}Pb is much less than that of ^{226}Ra, the nuclides ^{226}Ra and ^{210}Pb are in *equilibrium*; that is, the numbers of these nuclides (and thus their concentrations) in the sample do not change. (b) What is the ratio R_{226}/R_{210} of the activities of these nuclides in the sample of lead ore? (c) What is the ratio N_{226}/N_{210} of their numbers?

When lead pigment is refined from the ore, most of the ^{226}Ra is eliminated. Assume that only 1.00% remains. Just after the pigment is produced, what are the ratios (d) R_{226}/R_{210} and (e) N_{226}/N_{210}?

Keisch realized that with time the ratio R_{226}/R_{210} of the pigment would gradually change from the value in freshly refined pigment back to the value in the ore, as equilibrium between the ^{210}Pb and the remaining ^{226}Ra is established in the pigment. If *Emmaus* were painted by Vermeer and the sample of pigment taken from it were 300 years old when examined in 1968, the ratio would be close to the answer of (b). If *Emmaus* were painted by van Meegeren in the 1930s and the sample were only about 30 years old, the ratio would be close to the answer of (d). Keisch found a ratio of 0.09. (f) Is *Emmaus* a Vermeer?

97 From data presented in the first few paragraphs of Module 42-3, find (a) the disintegration constant λ and (b) the half-life of ^{238}U.

CHAPTER 43

Energy from the Nucleus

43-1 NUCLEAR FISSION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.01 Distinguish atomic and nuclear burning, noting that in both processes energy is produced because of a reduction of mass.

43.02 Define the fission process.

43.03 Describe the process of a thermal neutron causing a ^{235}U nucleus to undergo fission, and explain the role of the intermediate compound nucleus.

43.04 For the absorption of a thermal neutron, calculate the change in the system's mass and the energy put into the resulting oscillation of the intermediate compound nucleus.

43.05 For a given fission process, calculate the Q value in terms of the binding energy per nucleon.

43.06 Explain the Bohr–Wheeler model for nuclear fission, including the energy barrier.

43.07 Explain why thermal neutrons cannot cause ^{238}U to undergo fission.

43.08 Identify the approximate amount of energy (MeV) in the fission of any high-mass nucleus to two middle-mass nuclei.

43.09 Relate the rate at which nuclei fission and the rate at which energy is released.

Key Ideas

- Nuclear processes are about a million times more effective, per unit mass, than chemical processes in transforming mass into other forms of energy.
- If a thermal neutron is captured by a ^{235}U nucleus, the resulting ^{236}U can undergo fission, producing two intermediate-mass nuclei and one or more neutrons.
- The energy released in such a fission event is $Q \approx 200\ \mathrm{MeV}$.
- Fission can be understood in terms of the collective model, in which a nucleus is likened to a charged liquid drop carrying a certain excitation energy.
- A potential barrier must be tunneled through if fission is to occur. Fissionability depends on the relationship between the barrier height E_b and the excitation energy E_n transferred to the nucleus in the neutron capture.

What Is Physics?

Let's now turn to a central concern of physics and certain types of engineering: Can we get useful energy from nuclear sources, as people have done for thousands of years from atomic sources by burning materials like wood and coal? As you already know, the answer is yes, but there are major differences between the two energy sources. When we get energy from wood and coal by burning them, we are tinkering with atoms of carbon and oxygen, rearranging their outer *electrons* into more stable combinations. When we get energy from uranium in a nuclear reactor, we are again burning a fuel, but now we are tinkering with the uranium nucleus, rearranging its *nucleons* into more stable combinations.

Electrons are held in atoms by the electromagnetic Coulomb force, and it takes only a few electron-volts to pull one of them out. On the other hand, nucleons are held in nuclei by the strong force, and it takes a few *million* electron-volts to pull one of *them* out. This factor of a few million is reflected in the fact that we can extract a few million times more energy from a kilogram of uranium than we can from a kilogram of coal.

Table 43-1 **Energy Released by 1 kg of Matter**

Form of Matter	Process	Time[a]
Water	A 50 m waterfall	5 s
Coal	Burning	8 h
Enriched UO_2	Fission in a reactor	690 y
^{235}U	Complete fission	3×10^4 y
Hot deuterium gas	Complete fusion	3×10^4 y
Matter and antimatter	Complete annihilation	3×10^7 y

[a] This column shows the time interval for which the generated energy could power a 100 W lightbulb.

In both atomic and nuclear burning, the release of energy is accompanied by a decrease in mass, according to the equation $Q = -\Delta m\, c^2$. The central difference between burning uranium and burning coal is that, in the former case, a much larger fraction of the available mass (again, by a factor of a few million) is consumed.

The different processes that can be used for atomic or nuclear burning provide different levels of power, or rates at which the energy is delivered. In the nuclear case, we can burn a kilogram of uranium explosively in a bomb or slowly in a power reactor. In the atomic case, we might consider exploding a stick of dynamite or digesting a jelly doughnut.

Table 43-1 shows how much energy can be extracted from 1 kg of matter by doing various things to it. Instead of reporting the energy directly, the table shows how long the extracted energy could operate a 100 W lightbulb. Only processes in the first three rows of the table have actually been carried out; the remaining three represent theoretical limits that may not be attainable in practice. The bottom row, the total mutual annihilation of matter and antimatter, is an ultimate energy production goal. In that process, *all* the mass energy is transferred to other forms of energy.

The comparisons of Table 43-1 are computed on a per-unit-mass basis. Kilogram for kilogram, you get several million times more energy from uranium than you do from coal or from falling water. On the other hand, there is a lot of coal in Earth's crust, and water is easily backed up behind a dam.

Nuclear Fission: The Basic Process

In 1932 English physicist James Chadwick discovered the neutron. A few years later Enrico Fermi in Rome found that when various elements are bombarded by neutrons, new radioactive elements are produced. Fermi had predicted that the neutron, being uncharged, would be a useful nuclear projectile; unlike the proton or the alpha particle, it experiences no repulsive Coulomb force when it nears a nuclear surface. Even *thermal neutrons,* which are slowly moving neutrons in thermal equilibrium with the surrounding matter at room temperature, with a kinetic energy of only about 0.04 eV, are useful projectiles in nuclear studies.

In the late 1930s physicist Lise Meitner and chemists Otto Hahn and Fritz Strassmann, working in Berlin and following up on the work of Fermi and his co-workers, bombarded solutions of uranium salts with such thermal neutrons. They found that after the bombardment a number of new radionuclides were present. In 1939 one of the radionuclides produced in this way was positively identified, by repeated tests, as barium. But how, Hahn and Strassmann wondered, could this middle-mass element ($Z = 56$) be produced by bombarding uranium ($Z = 92$) with neutrons?

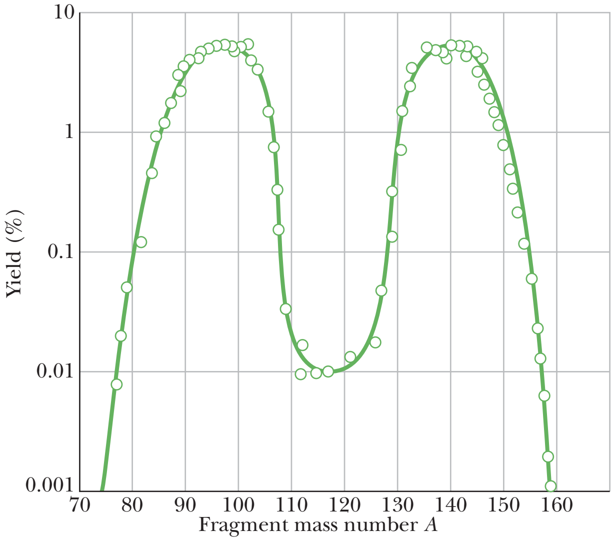


Figure 43-1 The distribution by mass number of the fragments that are found when many fission events of ^{235}U are examined. Note that the vertical scale is logarithmic.

The puzzle was solved within a few weeks by Meitner and her nephew Otto Frisch. They suggested the mechanism by which a uranium nucleus, having absorbed a thermal neutron, could split, with the release of energy, into two roughly equal parts, one of which might well be barium. Frisch named the process **fission.**

Meitner's central role in the discovery of fission was not fully recognized until recent historical research brought it to light. She did not share in the Nobel Prize in chemistry that was awarded to Otto Hahn in 1944. However, in 1997 Meitner was (finally) honored by having an element named after her: meitnerium (symbol Mt, $Z = 109$).

A Closer Look at Fission

Figure 43-1 shows the distribution by mass number of the fragments produced when ^{235}U is bombarded with thermal neutrons. The most probable mass numbers, occurring in about 7% of the events, are centered around $A \approx 95$ and $A \approx 140$. Curiously, the "double-peaked" character of Fig. 43-1 is still not understood.

In a typical ^{235}U fission event, a ^{235}U nucleus absorbs a thermal neutron, producing a compound nucleus ^{236}U in a highly excited state. It is *this* nucleus that actually undergoes fission, splitting into two fragments. These fragments—between them—rapidly emit two neutrons, leaving (in a typical case) ^{140}Xe ($Z = 54$) and ^{94}Sr ($Z = 38$) as fission fragments. Thus, the stepwise fission equation for this event is

$$^{235}\mathrm{U} + \mathrm{n} \rightarrow {}^{236}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{140}\mathrm{Xe} + {}^{94}\mathrm{Sr} + 2\mathrm{n}. \tag{43-1}$$

Note that during the formation and fission of the compound nucleus, there is conservation of the number of protons and of the number of neutrons involved in the process (and thus conservation of their total number and the net charge).

In Eq. 43-1, the fragments ^{140}Xe and ^{94}Sr are both highly unstable, undergoing beta decay (with the conversion of a neutron to a proton and the emission of an electron and a neutrino) until each reaches a stable end product. For xenon, the decay chain is

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c} & {}^{140}\mathrm{Xe} \rightarrow & {}^{140}\mathrm{Cs} \rightarrow & {}^{140}\mathrm{Ba} \rightarrow & {}^{140}\mathrm{La} \rightarrow & {}^{140}\mathrm{Ce} \\ T_{1/2} & 14\ \mathrm{s} & 64\ \mathrm{s} & 13\ \mathrm{d} & 40\ \mathrm{h} & \text{Stable} \\ \hline Z & 54 & 55 & 56 & 57 & 58 \end{array} \tag{43-2}$$

For strontium, it is

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} & {}^{94}\text{Sr} \;\rightarrow & {}^{94}\text{Y} \;\rightarrow & {}^{94}\text{Zr} \\ T_{1/2} & 75\text{ s} & 19\text{ min} & \text{Stable} \\ \hline Z & 38 & 39 & 40 \end{array} \tag{43-3}$$

As we should expect from Module 42-5, the mass numbers (140 and 94) of the fragments remain unchanged during these beta-decay processes and the atomic numbers (initially 54 and 38) increase by unity at each step.

Inspection of the stability band on the nuclidic chart of Fig. 42-5 shows why the fission fragments are unstable. The nuclide ${}^{236}\text{U}$, which is the fissioning nucleus in the reaction of Eq. 43-1, has 92 protons and $236 - 92$, or 144, neutrons, for a neutron/proton ratio of about 1.6. The primary fragments formed immediately after the fission reaction have about this same neutron/proton ratio. However, stable nuclides in the middle-mass region have smaller neutron/proton ratios, in the range of 1.3 to 1.4. The primary fragments are thus *neutron rich* (they have too many neutrons) and will eject a few neutrons, two in the case of the reaction of Eq. 43-1. The fragments that remain are still too neutron rich to be stable. Beta decay offers a mechanism for getting rid of the excess neutrons—namely, by changing them into protons within the nucleus.

We can estimate the energy released by the fission of a high-mass nuclide by examining the total binding energy per nucleon ΔE_{ben} before and after the fission. The idea is that fission can occur because the total mass energy will decrease; that is, ΔE_{ben} will *increase* so that the products of the fission are *more* tightly bound. Thus, the energy Q released by the fission is

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix}\text{total final}\\ \text{binding energy}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{initial}\\ \text{binding energy}\end{pmatrix}. \tag{43-4}$$

For our estimate, let us assume that fission transforms an initial high-mass nucleus to two middle-mass nuclei with the same number of nucleons. Then we have

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix}\text{final}\\ \Delta E_{\text{ben}}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{final number}\\ \text{of nucleons}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{initial}\\ \Delta E_{\text{ben}}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{initial number}\\ \text{of nucleons}\end{pmatrix}. \tag{43-5}$$

From Fig. 42-7, we see that for a high-mass nuclide ($A \approx 240$), the binding energy per nucleon is about 7.6 MeV/nucleon. For middle-mass nuclides ($A \approx 120$), it is about 8.5 MeV/nucleon. Thus, the energy released by fission of a high-mass nuclide to two middle-mass nuclides is

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \left(8.5\,\frac{\text{MeV}}{\text{nucleon}}\right)(2\text{ nuclei})\left(120\,\frac{\text{nucleons}}{\text{nucleus}}\right) \\ &\quad - \left(7.6\,\frac{\text{MeV}}{\text{nucleon}}\right)(240\text{ nucleons}) \approx 200\text{ MeV}. \end{aligned} \tag{43-6}$$

Checkpoint 1

A generic fission event is

$${}^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow X + Y + 2\text{n}.$$

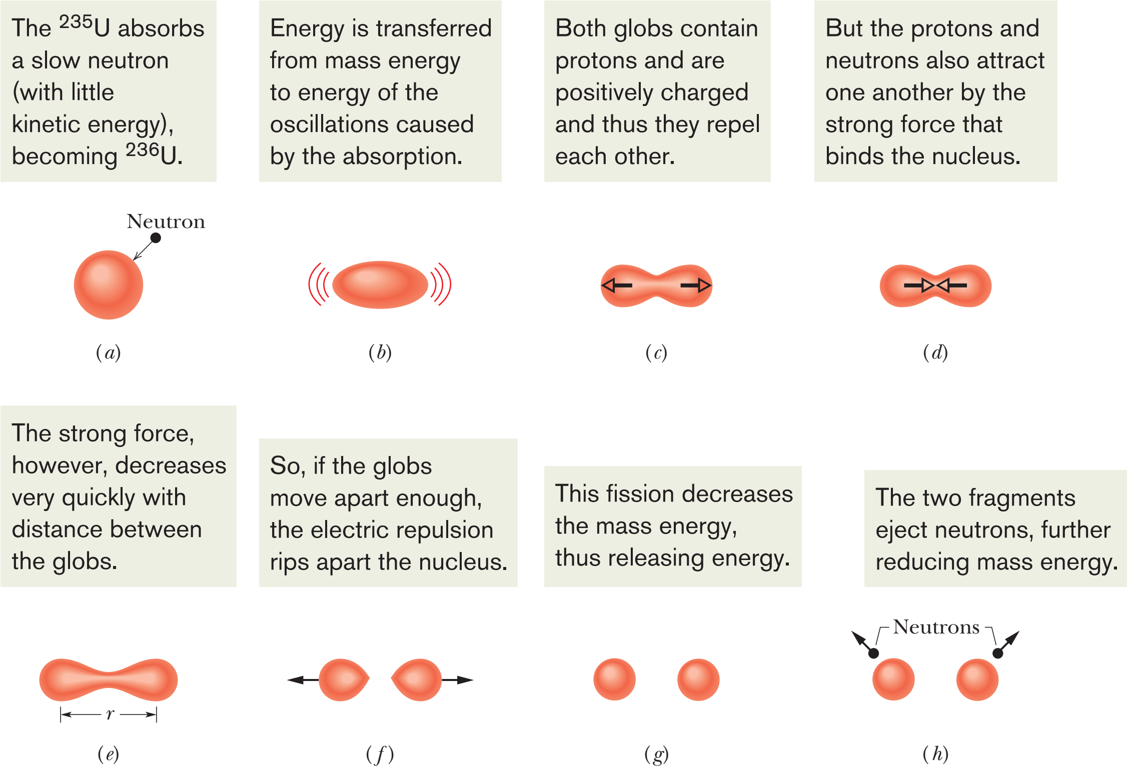
Which of the following pairs *cannot* represent X and Y: (a) ${}^{141}\text{Xe}$ and ${}^{93}\text{Sr}$; (b) ${}^{139}\text{Cs}$ and ${}^{95}\text{Rb}$; (c) ${}^{156}\text{Nd}$ and ${}^{79}\text{Ge}$; (d) ${}^{121}\text{In}$ and ${}^{113}\text{Ru}$?

A Model for Nuclear Fission

Soon after the discovery of fission, Niels Bohr and John Wheeler used the collective model of the nucleus (Module 42-8), based on the analogy between a nucleus and a charged liquid drop, to explain the main nuclear features. Figure 43-2 suggests how the fission process proceeds from this point of view. When a high-mass nucleus—let us say ^{235}U—absorbs a slow (thermal) neutron, as in Fig. 43-2*a*, that neutron falls into the potential well associated with the strong forces that act in the nuclear interior. The neutron's potential energy is then transformed into internal excitation energy of the nucleus, as Fig. 43-2*b* suggests. The amount of excitation energy that a slow neutron carries into a nucleus is equal to the binding energy E_n of the neutron in that nucleus, which is the change in mass energy of the neutron–nucleus system due to the neutron's capture.

Figures 43-2*c* and *d* show that the nucleus, behaving like an energetically oscillating charged liquid drop, will sooner or later develop a short "neck" and will begin to separate into two charged "globs." Two competing forces then act on the globs: Because they are positively charged, the electric force attempts to separate them. Because they hold protons and neutrons, the strong force attempts to pull them together. If the electric repulsion drives them far enough apart to break the neck, the two fragments, each still carrying some residual excitation energy, will fly apart (Figs. 43-2*e* and *f*). Fission has occurred.

This model gave a good qualitative picture of the fission process. What remained to be seen, however, was whether it could answer a hard question: Why are some high-mass nuclides (^{235}U and ^{239}Pu, say) readily fissionable by thermal neutrons when other, equally massive nuclides (^{238}U and ^{243}Am, say) are not?


The ^{236}U absorbs a slow neutron (with little kinetic energy), becoming ^{236}U.

Energy is transferred from mass energy to energy of the oscillations caused by the absorption.

Both globs contain protons and are positively charged and thus they repel each other.

But the protons and neutrons also attract one another by the strong force that binds the nucleus.

The strong force, however, decreases very quickly with distance between the globs.

So, if the globs move apart enough, the electric repulsion rips apart the nucleus.

This fission decreases the mass energy, thus releasing energy.

The two fragments eject neutrons, further reducing mass energy.

Figure 43-2 The stages of a typical fission process, according to the collective model of Bohr and Wheeler.

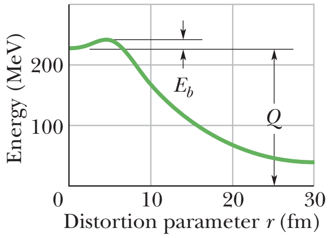


Figure 43-3 The potential energy at various stages in the fission process, as predicted from the collective model of Bohr and Wheeler. The Q of the reaction (about 200 MeV) and the fission barrier height E_b are both indicated.

E_b is an energy barrier that must be overcome.

Q is the energy that would then be released.

Bohr and Wheeler were able to answer this question. Figure 43-3 shows a graph of the potential energy of the fissioning nucleus at various stages, derived from their model for the fission process. This energy is plotted against the *distortion parameter r*, which is a rough measure of the extent to which the oscillating nucleus departs from a spherical shape. When the fragments are far apart, this parameter is simply the distance between their centers (Fig. 43-2*e*).

The energy difference between the initial state ($r = 0$) and the final state ($r = \infty$) of the fissioning nucleus—that is, the disintegration energy Q—is labeled in Fig. 43-3. The central feature of that figure, however, is that the potential energy curve passes through a maximum at a certain value of r. Thus, there is a *potential barrier* of height E_b that must be surmounted (or tunneled through) before fission can occur. This reminds us of alpha decay (Fig. 42-10), which is also a process that is inhibited by a potential barrier.

We see then that fission will occur only if the absorbed neutron provides an excitation energy E_n great enough to overcome the barrier. This energy E_n need not be *quite* as great as the barrier height E_b because of the possibility of quantum-physics tunneling.

Table 43-2 shows, for four high-mass nuclides, this test of whether capture of a thermal neutron can cause fissioning. For each nuclide, the table shows both the barrier height E_b of the nucleus that is formed by the neutron capture and the excitation energy E_n due to the capture. The values of E_b are calculated from the theory of Bohr and Wheeler. The values of E_n are calculated from the change in mass energy due to the neutron capture.

For an example of the calculation of E_n, we can go to the first line in the table, which represents the neutron capture process

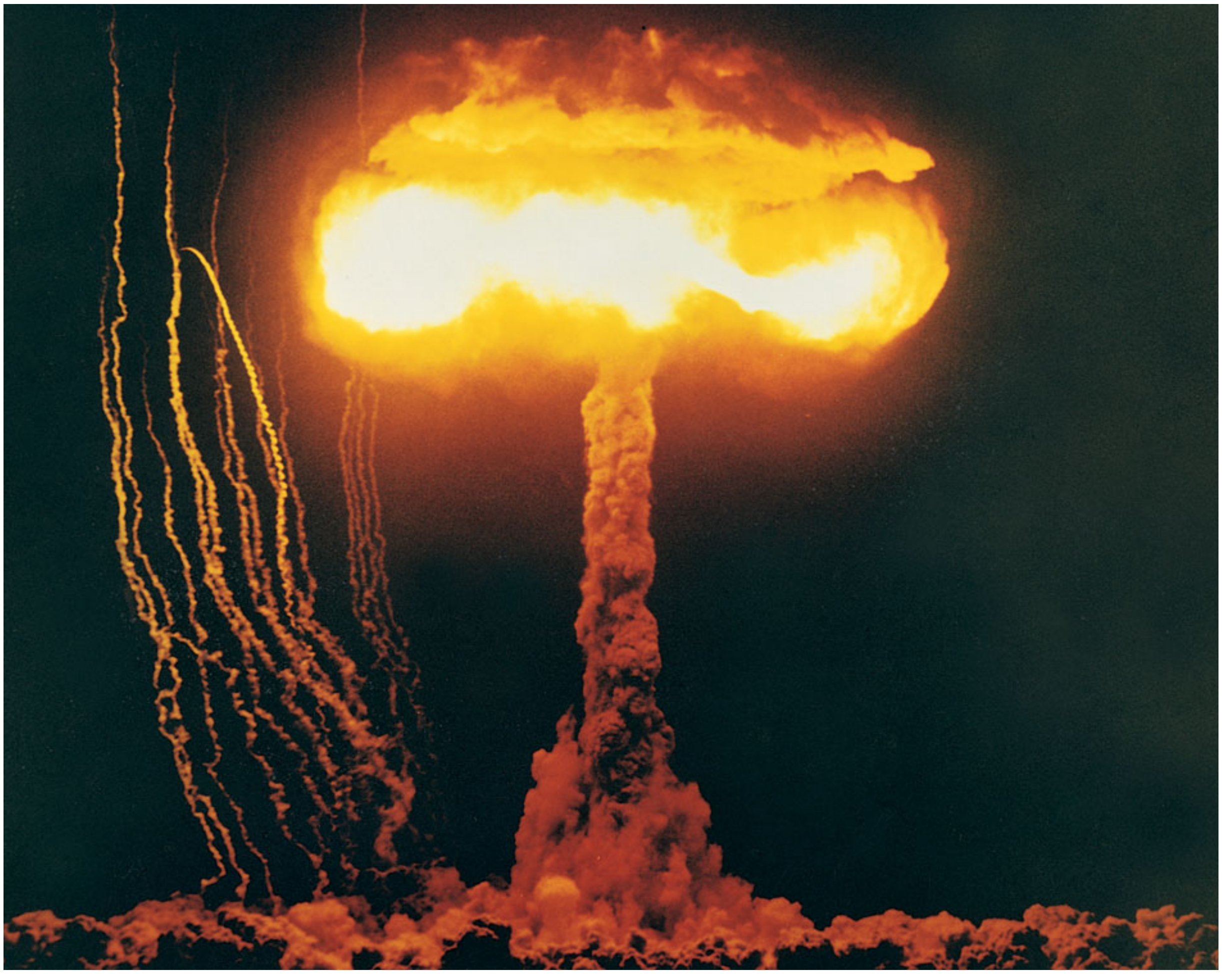
$$^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{236}\text{U}.$$

The masses involved are 235.043 922 u for ^{235}U, 1.008 665 u for the neutron, and 236.045 562 u for ^{236}U. It is easy to show that, because of the neutron capture, the mass decreases by 7.025×10^{-3} u. Thus, energy is transferred from mass energy to excitation energy E_n. Multiplying the change in mass by c^2 (= 931.494 013 MeV/u) gives us $E_n = 6.5$ MeV, which is listed on the first line of the table.

The first and third results in Table 43-2 are historically profound because they are the reasons the two atomic bombs used in World War II contained ^{235}U (first bomb) and ^{239}Pu (second bomb). That is, for ^{235}U and ^{239}Pu, $E_n > E_b$. This means that fission by absorption of a thermal neutron is predicted to occur for these nuclides. For the other two nuclides in Table 43-2 (^{238}U and ^{243}Am), we have $E_n < E_b$; thus,

Table 43-2 **Test of the Fissionability of Four Nuclides**

Target Nuclide	Nuclide Being Fissioned	E_n (MeV)	E_b (MeV)	Fission by Thermal Neutrons?
^{235}U	^{236}U	6.5	5.2	Yes
^{238}U	^{239}U	4.8	5.7	No
^{239}Pu	^{240}Pu	6.4	4.8	Yes
^{243}Am	^{244}Am	5.5	5.8	No



Courtesy U.S. Department of Energy

Figure 43-4 This image has transfixed the world since World War II. When Robert Oppenheimer, the head of the scientific team that developed the atomic bomb, witnessed the first atomic explosion, he quoted from a sacred Hindu text: "Now I am become Death, the destroyer of worlds."

there is not enough energy from a thermal neutron for the excited nucleus to surmount the barrier or to tunnel through it effectively. Instead of fissioning, the nucleus gets rid of its excitation energy by emitting a gamma-ray photon.

The nuclides ^{238}U and ^{243}Am *can* be made to fission, however, if they absorb a substantially energetic (rather than a thermal) neutron. A ^{238}U nucleus, for example, might fission if it happens to absorb a neutron of at least 1.3 MeV in a so-called *fast fission* process ("fast" because the neutron is fast).

The two atomic bombs used in World War II depended on the ability of thermal neutrons to cause many high-mass nuclides in the cores of the bombs to fission nearly all at once. The process is initiated by a neutron emitter such as beryllium. After its emitted thermal neutrons cause the fission of the first set of ^{235}U, each fission releases more thermal neutrons, which cause more ^{235}U to fission and release thermal neutrons. This **chain reaction** would rapidly spread through the ^{235}U in the bomb, resulting in an explosive and devastating output of energy. Researchers knew that ^{235}U would work, but they had refined only enough for one bomb from uranium ore, which consists mainly of ^{238}U, which thermal neutrons will not fission. As the first bomb was being deployed, a ^{239}Pu bomb was tested successfully in New Mexico (Fig. 43-4), so the next deployed bomb contained ^{239}Pu rather than ^{235}U.

Sample Problem 43.01 Q value in a fission of uranium-235

Find the disintegration energy Q for the fission event of Eq. 43-1, taking into account the decay of the fission fragments as displayed in Eqs. 43-2 and 43-3. Some needed atomic and particle masses are

^{235}U	235.0439 u	^{140}Ce	139.9054 u
n	1.008 66 u	^{94}Zr	93.9063 u

KEY IDEAS

(1) The disintegration energy Q is the energy transferred from mass energy to kinetic energy of the decay products. (2) $Q = -\Delta m\, c^2$, where Δm is the change in mass.

Calculations: Because we are to include the decay of the fission fragments, we combine Eqs. 43-1, 43-2, and 43-3 to write the overall transformation as

$$^{235}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{140}\text{Ce} + {}^{94}\text{Zr} + \text{n}. \qquad (43\text{-}7)$$

Only the single neutron appears here because the initiating neutron on the left side of Eq. 43-1 cancels one of the two neutrons on the right of that equation. The mass difference for the reaction of Eq. 43-7 is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &= (139.9054\text{ u} + 93.9063\text{ u} + 1.008\,66\text{ u})\\ &\quad - (235.0439\text{ u})\\ &= -0.223\,54\text{ u},\end{aligned}$$

and the corresponding disintegration energy is

$$\begin{aligned}Q &= -\Delta m\, c^2 = -(-0.223\,54\text{ u})(931.494\,013\text{ MeV/u})\\ &= 208\text{ MeV}, \qquad \text{(Answer)}\end{aligned}$$

which is in good agreement with our estimate of Eq. 43-6.

If the fission event takes place in a bulk solid, most of this disintegration energy, which first goes into kinetic energy of the decay products, appears eventually as an increase in the internal energy of that body, revealing itself as a rise in temperature. Five or six percent or so of the disintegration energy, however, is associated with neutrinos that are emitted during the beta decay of the primary fission fragments. This energy is carried out of the system and is lost.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

43-2 THE NUCLEAR REACTOR

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.10 Define chain reaction.

43.11 Explain the neutron leakage problem, the neutron energy problem, and the neutron capture problem.

43.12 Identify the multiplication factor and apply it to relate the number of neutrons and power output after a given number of cycles to the initial number of neutrons and power output.

43.13 Distinguish subcritical, critical, and supercritical.

43.14 Describe the control over the response time.

43.15 Give a general description of a complete generation.

Key Idea

- A nuclear reactor uses a controlled chain reaction of fission events to generate electrical power.

The Nuclear Reactor

For large-scale energy release due to fission, one fission event must trigger others, so that the process spreads throughout the nuclear fuel like flame through a log. The fact that more neutrons are produced in fission than are consumed raises the possibility of just such a chain reaction, with each neutron that is produced potentially triggering another fission. The reaction can be either rapid (as in a nuclear bomb) or controlled (as in a nuclear reactor).

Suppose that we wish to design a reactor based on the fission of ^{235}U by thermal neutrons. Natural uranium contains 0.7% of this isotope, the remaining 99.3% being ^{238}U, which is not fissionable by thermal neutrons. Let us give ourselves an edge by artificially *enriching* the uranium fuel so that it contains perhaps 3% ^{235}U. Three difficulties still stand in the way of a working reactor.

1. *The Neutron Leakage Problem.* Some of the neutrons produced by fission will leak out of the reactor and so not be part of the chain reaction. Leakage is a surface effect; its magnitude is proportional to the square of a typical reactor dimension (the surface area of a cube of edge length a is $6a^2$). Neutron production, however, occurs throughout the volume of the fuel and is thus proportional to the cube of a typical dimension (the volume of the same cube is a^3). We can make the fraction of neutrons lost by leakage as small as we wish by making the reactor core large enough, thereby reducing the surface-to-volume ratio ($= 6/a$ for a cube).
2. *The Neutron Energy Problem.* The neutrons produced by fission are fast, with kinetic energies of about 2 MeV. However, fission is induced most effectively by thermal neutrons. The fast neutrons can be slowed down by mixing the uranium fuel with a substance—called a **moderator**—that has two properties: It is effective in slowing down neutrons via elastic collisions, and it does not remove neutrons from the core by absorbing them so that they do not result in fission. Most power reactors in North America use water as a moderator; the hydrogen nuclei (protons) in the water are the effective component. We saw in Chapter 9 that if a moving particle has a head-on elastic collision with a stationary particle, the moving particle loses *all* its kinetic energy if the two particles have the same mass. Thus, protons form an effective moderator because they have approximately the same mass as the fast neutrons whose speed we wish to reduce.
3. *The Neutron Capture Problem.* As the fast (2 MeV) neutrons generated by fission are slowed down in the moderator to thermal energies (about 0.04 eV), they must pass through a critical energy interval (from 1 to 100 eV) in which they are particularly susceptible to nonfission capture by ^{238}U nuclei. Such *resonance capture,* which results in the emission of a gamma ray, removes the neutron from the fission chain. To minimize such nonfission capture, the uranium fuel and the moderator are not intimately mixed but rather are placed in different regions of the reactor volume.

   In a typical reactor, the uranium fuel is in the form of uranium oxide pellets, which are inserted end to end into long, hollow metal tubes. The liquid moderator surrounds bundles of these **fuel rods,** forming the reactor **core.** This geometric arrangement increases the probability that a fast neutron, produced in a fuel rod, will find itself in the moderator when it passes through the critical energy interval. Once the neutron has reached thermal energies, it may *still* be captured in ways that do not result in fission (called *thermal capture*). However, it is much more likely that the thermal neutron will wander back into a fuel rod and produce a fission event.

Figure 43-5 shows the neutron balance in a typical power reactor operating at constant power. Let us trace a sample of 1000 thermal neutrons through one complete cycle, or *generation,* in the reactor core. They produce 1330 neutrons by fission in the ^{235}U fuel and 40 neutrons by fast fission in ^{238}U, which gives 370 neutrons more than the original 1000, all of them fast.

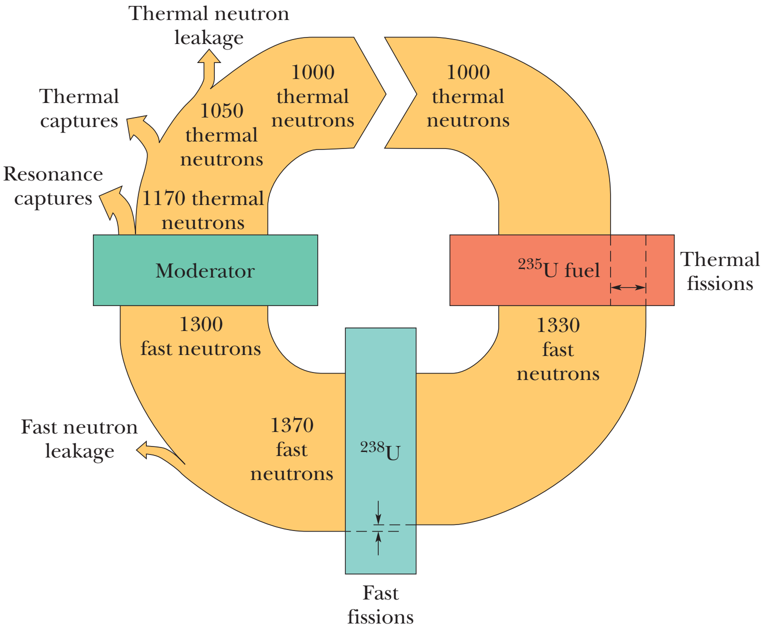


Figure 43-5 Neutron bookkeeping in a reactor. A generation of 1000 thermal neutrons interacts with the ^{235}U fuel, the ^{238}U matrix, and the moderator. They produce 1370 neutrons by fission, but 370 of these are lost by nonfission capture or by leakage, meaning that 1000 thermal neutrons are left to form the next generation. The figure is drawn for a reactor running at a steady power level.

When the reactor is operating at a steady power level, exactly the same number of neutrons (370) is then lost by leakage from the core and by nonfission capture, leaving 1000 thermal neutrons to start the next generation. In this cycle, of course, each of the 370 neutrons produced by fission events represents a deposit of energy in the reactor core, heating up the core.

The *multiplication factor* k—an important reactor parameter—is the ratio of the number of neutrons present at the conclusion of a particular generation to the number present at the beginning of that generation. In Fig. 43-5, the multiplication factor is 1000/1000, or exactly unity. For $k = 1$, the operation of the reactor is said to be exactly *critical,* which is what we wish it to be for steady-power operation. Reactors are actually designed so that they are inherently *supercritical* ($k > 1$); the multiplication factor is then adjusted to critical operation ($k = 1$) by inserting **control rods** into the reactor core. These rods, containing a material such as cadmium that absorbs neutrons readily, can be inserted farther to reduce the operating power level and withdrawn to increase the power level or to compensate for the tendency of reactors to go *subcritical* as (neutron-absorbing) fission products build up in the core during continued operation.

If you pulled out one of the control rods rapidly, how fast would the reactor power level increase? This *response time* is controlled by the fascinating circumstance that a small fraction of the neutrons generated by fission do not escape promptly from the newly formed fission fragments but are emitted from these fragments later, as the fragments decay by beta emission. Of the 370 "new" neutrons produced in Fig. 43-5, for example, perhaps 16 are delayed, being emitted from fragments following beta decays whose half-lives range from 0.2 to 55 s. These delayed neutrons are few in number, but they serve the essential purpose of slowing the reactor response time to match practical mechanical reaction times.

Figure 43-6 shows the broad outlines of an electrical power plant based on a *pressurized-water reactor* (PWR), a type in common use in North America. In such a reactor, water is used both as the moderator and as the heat transfer medium. In the *primary loop,* water is circulated through the reactor vessel and

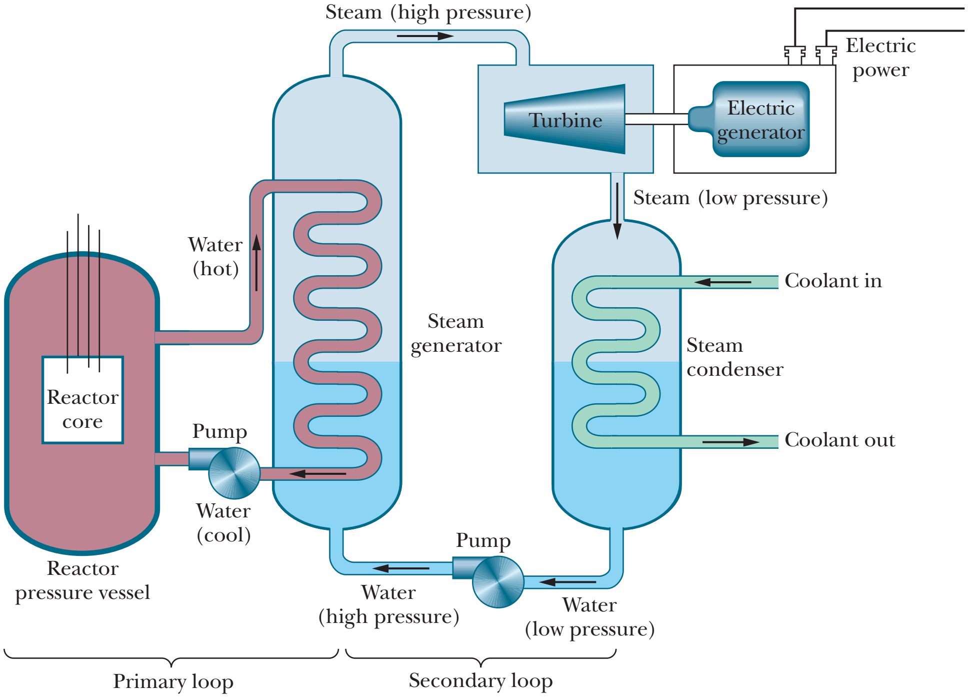


Figure 43-6 A simplified layout of a nuclear power plant, based on a pressurized-water reactor. Many features are omitted—among them the arrangement for cooling the reactor core in case of an emergency.

transfers energy at high temperature and pressure (possibly 600 K and 150 atm) from the hot reactor core to the steam generator, which is part of the *secondary loop.* In the steam generator, evaporation provides high-pressure steam to operate the turbine that drives the electric generator. To complete the secondary loop, low-pressure steam from the turbine is cooled and condensed to water and forced back into the steam generator by a pump. To give some idea of scale, a typical reactor vessel for a 1000 MW (electric) plant may be 12 m high and weigh 4 MN. Water flows through the primary loop at a rate of about 1 ML/min.

An unavoidable feature of reactor operation is the accumulation of radioactive wastes, including both fission products and heavy *transuranic* nuclides such as plutonium and americium. One measure of their radioactivity is the rate at which they release energy in thermal form. Figure 43-7 shows the thermal power generated by such wastes from one year's operation of a typical large nuclear plant. Note that both scales are logarithmic. Most "spent" fuel rods from power reactor operation are stored on site, immersed in water; permanent secure storage facilities for reactor waste have yet to be completed. Much weapons-derived radioactive waste accumulated during World War II and in subsequent years is also still in on-site storage.

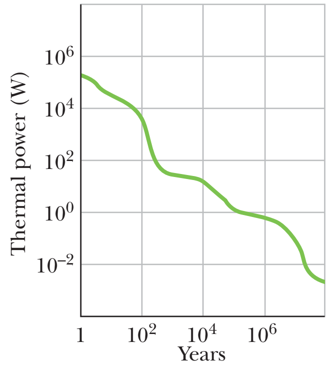


Figure 43-7 The thermal power released by the radioactive wastes from one year's operation of a typical large nuclear power plant, shown as a function of time. The curve is the superposition of the effects of many radionuclides, with a wide variety of half-lives. Note that both scales are logarithmic.

Sample Problem 43.02 Nuclear reactor: efficiency, fission rate, consumption rate

A large electric generating station is powered by a pressurized-water nuclear reactor. The thermal power produced in the reactor core is 3400 MW, and 1100 MW of electricity is generated by the station. The *fuel charge* is 8.60×10^4 kg of uranium, in the form of uranium oxide, distributed among 5.70×10^4 fuel rods. The uranium is enriched to 3.0% ^{235}U.

(a) What is the station's efficiency?

KEY IDEA

The efficiency for this power plant or any other energy device is given by this: Efficiency is the ratio of the output power (rate at which useful energy is provided) to the input power (rate at which energy must be supplied).

Calculation: Here the efficiency (eff) is

$$\text{eff} = \frac{\text{useful output}}{\text{energy input}} = \frac{1100\text{ MW (electric)}}{3400\text{ MW (thermal)}}$$
$$= 0.32, \text{ or } 32\%. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

The efficiency—as for all power plants—is controlled by the second law of thermodynamics. To run this plant, energy at the rate of 3400 MW − 1100 MW, or 2300 MW, must be discharged as thermal energy to the environment.

(b) At what rate R do fission events occur in the reactor core?

KEY IDEAS

1. The fission events provide the input power P of 3400 MW ($= 3.4 \times 10^9$ J/s).
2. From Eq. 43-6, the energy Q released by each event is about 200 MeV.

Calculation: For steady-state operation (P is constant), we find

$$R = \frac{P}{Q} = \left(\frac{3.4 \times 10^9\text{ J/s}}{200\text{ MeV/fission}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ MeV}}{1.60 \times 10^{-13}\text{ J}}\right)$$
$$= 1.06 \times 10^{20}\text{ fissions/s}$$
$$\approx 1.1 \times 10^{20}\text{ fissions/s.} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(c) At what rate (in kilograms per day) is the ^{235}U fuel disappearing? Assume conditions at start-up.

KEY IDEA

^{235}U disappears due to two processes: (1) the fission process with the rate calculated in part (b) and (2) the nonfission capture of neutrons at about one-fourth that rate.

Calculations: The total rate at which the number of atoms of ^{235}U decreases is

$$(1 + 0.25)(1.06 \times 10^{20}\text{ atoms/s}) = 1.33 \times 10^{20}\text{ atoms/s.}$$

We want the corresponding decrease in the mass of the ^{235}U fuel. We start with the mass of each ^{235}U atom. We cannot use the molar mass for uranium listed in Appendix F because that molar mass is for ^{238}U, the most common uranium isotope. Instead, we shall assume that the mass of each ^{235}U atom in atomic mass units is equal to the mass number A. Thus, the mass of each ^{235}U atom is 235 u ($= 3.90 \times 10^{-25}$ kg). Then the rate at which the ^{235}U fuel disappears is

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = (1.33 \times 10^{20}\text{ atoms/s})(3.90 \times 10^{-25}\text{ kg/atom})$$
$$= 5.19 \times 10^{-5}\text{ kg/s} \approx 4.5\text{ kg/d.} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(d) At this rate of fuel consumption, how long would the fuel supply of ^{235}U last?

Calculation: At start-up, we know that the total mass of ^{235}U is 3.0% of the 8.60×10^4 kg of uranium oxide. So, the time T required to consume this total mass of ^{235}U at the steady rate of 4.5 kg/d is

$$T = \frac{(0.030)(8.60 \times 10^4 \text{ kg})}{4.5 \text{ kg/d}} \approx 570 \text{ d.} \quad \text{(Answer)}$$

In practice, the fuel rods must be replaced (usually in batches) before their ^{235}U content is entirely consumed.

(e) At what rate is mass being converted to other forms of energy by the fission of ^{235}U in the reactor core?

KEY IDEA

The conversion of mass energy to other forms of energy is linked only to the fissioning that produces the input power (3400 MW) and not to the nonfission capture of neutrons (although both these processes affect the rate at which ^{235}U is consumed).

Calculation: From Einstein's relation $E = mc^2$, we can write

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \frac{dE/dt}{c^2} = \frac{3.4 \times 10^9 \text{ W}}{(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2} \qquad (43\text{-}8)$$

$$= 3.8 \times 10^{-8} \text{ kg/s} = 3.3 \text{ g/d.} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

We see that the mass conversion rate is about the mass of one common coin per day, considerably less (by about three orders of magnitude) than the fuel consumption rate calculated in (c).

43-3 A NATURAL NUCLEAR REACTOR

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.16 Describe the evidence that a natural nuclear reactor operated in Gabon, West Africa, about 2 billion years ago.

43.17 Explain why a deposit of uranium ore could go critical in the past but not today.

Key Idea

- A natural nuclear reactor occurred in West Africa about two billion years ago.

A Natural Nuclear Reactor

On December 2, 1942, when their reactor first became operational (Fig. 43-8), Enrico Fermi and his associates had every right to assume that they had put into operation the first fission reactor that had ever existed on this planet. About 30 years later it was discovered that, if they did in fact think that, they were wrong.

Some two billion years ago, in a uranium deposit recently mined in Gabon, West Africa, a natural fission reactor apparently went into operation and ran for perhaps several hundred thousand years before shutting down. We can test whether this could actually have happened by considering two questions:

1. *Was There Enough Fuel?* The fuel for a uranium-based fission reactor must be the easily fissionable isotope ^{235}U, which, as noted earlier, constitutes only 0.72% of natural uranium. This isotopic ratio has been measured for terrestrial samples, in Moon rocks, and in meteorites; in all cases the abundance values are the same. The clue to the discovery in West Africa was that the uranium in that deposit was deficient in ^{235}U, some samples having abundances as low as 0.44%. Investigation led to the speculation that this deficit in ^{235}U could be accounted for if, at some earlier time, the ^{235}U was partially consumed by the operation of a natural fission reactor.

   The serious problem remains that, with an isotopic abundance of only 0.72%, a reactor can be assembled (as Fermi and his team learned) only after thoughtful design and with scrupulous attention to detail. There seems no chance that a nuclear reactor could go critical "naturally."

However, things were different in the distant past. Both ^{235}U and ^{238}U are radioactive, with half-lives of 7.04×10^8 y and 44.7×10^8 y, respectively. Thus, the half-life of the readily fissionable ^{235}U is about 6.4 times shorter than that of ^{238}U. Because ^{235}U decays faster, there was more of it, relative to ^{238}U, in the past. Two billion years ago, in fact, this abundance was not 0.72%, as it is now, but 3.8%. This abundance happens to be just about the abundance to which natural uranium is artificially enriched to serve as fuel in modern power reactors.

With this readily fissionable fuel available, the presence of a natural reactor (provided certain other conditions are met) is less surprising. The fuel was there. Two billion years ago, incidentally, the highest order of life-form to have evolved was the blue-green alga.

2. *What Is the Evidence?* The mere depletion of ^{235}U in an ore deposit does not prove the existence of a natural fission reactor. One looks for more convincing evidence.

If there was a reactor, there must now be fission products. Of the 30 or so elements whose stable isotopes are produced in a reactor, some must still remain. Study of their isotopic abundances could provide the evidence we need.

Of the several elements investigated, the case of neodymium is spectacularly convincing. Figure 43-9*a* shows the isotopic abundances of the seven stable neodymium isotopes as they are normally found in nature. Figure 43-9*b* shows these abundances as they appear among the ultimate stable fission products of the fission of ^{235}U. The clear differences are not surprising, considering the totally different origins of the two sets of isotopes. Note particularly that ^{142}Nd, the dominant isotope in the natural element, is absent from the fission products.

The big question is: What do the neodymium isotopes found in the uranium ore body in West Africa look like? If a natural reactor operated there, we would expect to find isotopes from *both* sources (that is, natural isotopes as well as fission-produced isotopes). Figure 43-9*c* shows the abundances after dual-source and other corrections have been made to the data. Comparison of Figs. 43-9*b* and *c* indicates that there was indeed a natural fission reactor at work.

Gary Sheehan, *Birth of the Atomic Age*, 1957. Reproduced courtesy Chicago Historical Society.

Figure 43-8 A painting of the first nuclear reactor, assembled during World War II on a squash court at the University of Chicago by a team headed by Enrico Fermi. This reactor was built of lumps of uranium embedded in blocks of graphite.

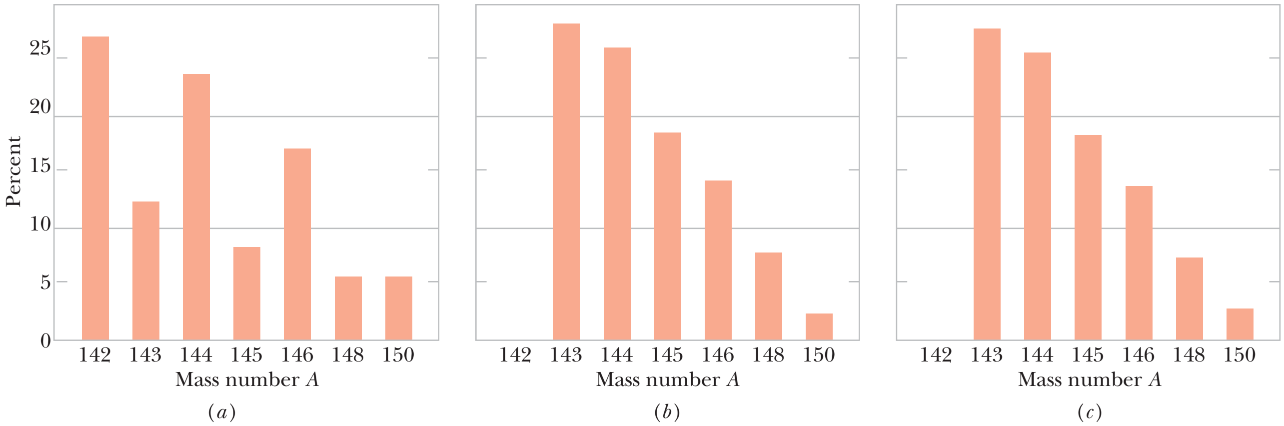


Figure 43-9 The distribution by mass number of the isotopes of neodymium as they occur in (*a*) natural terrestrial deposits of the ores of this element and (*b*) the spent fuel of a power reactor. (*c*) The distribution (after several corrections) found for neodymium from the uranium mine in Gabon, West Africa. Note that (*b*) and (*c*) are virtually identical and are quite different from (*a*).

43-4 THERMONUCLEAR FUSION: THE BASIC PROCESS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.18 Define thermonuclear fusion, explaining why the nuclei must be at a high temperature to fuse.

43.19 For nuclei, apply the relationship between their kinetic energy and their temperature.

43.20 Explain the two reasons why fusion of two nuclei can occur even when the kinetic energy associated with their most probable speed is insufficient to overcome their energy barrier.

Key Ideas

- The release of energy by fusion of two light nuclei is inhibited by their mutual Coulomb barrier (due to the electric repulsion between the two collections of protons).
- Fusion can occur in bulk matter only if the temperature is high enough (that is, if the particle energy is high enough) for appreciable barrier tunneling to occur.

Thermonuclear Fusion: The Basic Process

The binding energy curve of Fig. 42-7 shows that energy can be released if two light nuclei combine to form a single larger nucleus, a process called nuclear **fusion.** That process is hindered by the Coulomb repulsion that acts to prevent the two positively charged particles from getting close enough to be within range of their attractive nuclear forces and thus "fusing." The range of the nuclear force is short, hardly beyond the nuclear "surface," but the range of the repulsive Coulomb force is long and that force thus forms an energy barrier. The height of this *Coulomb barrier* depends on the charges and the radii of the two interacting nuclei. For two protons ($Z = 1$), the barrier height is 400 keV. For more highly charged particles, of course, the barrier is correspondingly higher.

To generate useful amounts of energy, nuclear fusion must occur in bulk matter. The best hope for bringing this about is to raise the temperature of the material until the particles have enough energy—due to their thermal motions alone—to penetrate the Coulomb barrier. We call this process **thermonuclear fusion.**

In thermonuclear studies, temperatures are reported in terms of the kinetic energy K of interacting particles via the relation

$$K = kT, \tag{43-9}$$

in which K is the kinetic energy corresponding to the *most probable speed* of the interacting particles, k is the Boltzmann constant, and the temperature T is in kelvins. Thus, rather than saying, "The temperature at the center of the Sun is 1.5×10^7 K," it is more common to say, "The temperature at the center of the Sun is 1.3 keV."

Room temperature corresponds to $K \approx 0.03$ eV; a particle with only this amount of energy could not hope to overcome a barrier as high as, say, 400 keV. Even at the center of the Sun, where $kT = 1.3$ keV, the outlook for thermonuclear fusion does not seem promising at first glance. Yet we know that thermonuclear fusion not only occurs in the core of the Sun but is the dominant feature of that body and of all other stars.

The puzzle is solved when we realize two facts: (1) The energy calculated with Eq. 43-9 is that of the particles with the *most probable* speed, as defined in Module 19-6; there is a long tail of particles with much higher speeds and, correspondingly, much higher energies. (2) The barrier heights that we have calculated represent the *peaks* of the barriers. Barrier tunneling can occur at energies considerably below those peaks, as we saw with alpha decay in Module 42-4.

Figure 43-10 sums things up. The curve marked $n(K)$ in this figure is a Maxwell distribution curve for the protons in the Sun's core, drawn to correspond to the Sun's central temperature. This curve differs from the Maxwell distribution curve given in Fig. 19-8 in that here the curve is drawn in terms of energy and not of speed. Specifically, for any kinetic energy K, the expression $n(K)\,dK$ gives the probability that a proton will have a kinetic energy lying between the values K and $K + dK$. The value of kT in the core of the Sun is indicated by the vertical line in the figure; note that many of the Sun's core protons have energies greater than this value.

The curve marked $p(K)$ in Fig. 43-10 is the probability of barrier penetration by two colliding protons. The two curves in Fig. 43-10 suggest that there is a particular proton energy at which proton–proton fusion events occur at a maximum rate. At energies much above this value, the barrier is transparent enough but too few protons have these energies, and so the fusion reaction cannot be sustained. At energies much below this value, plenty of protons have these energies but the Coulomb barrier is too formidable.

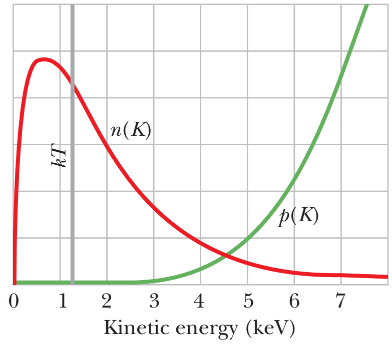


Figure 43-10 The curve marked $n(K)$ gives the number density per unit energy for protons at the center of the Sun. The curve marked $p(K)$ gives the probability of barrier penetration (and hence fusion) for proton–proton collisions at the Sun's core temperature. The vertical line marks the value of kT at this temperature. Note that the two curves are drawn to (separate) arbitrary vertical scales.

Checkpoint 2

Which of these potential fusion reactions will *not* result in the net release of energy: (a) ^{6}Li + ^{6}Li, (b) ^{4}He + ^{4}He, (c) ^{12}C + ^{12}C, (d) ^{20}Ne + ^{20}Ne, (e) ^{35}Cl + ^{35}Cl, and (f) ^{14}N + ^{35}Cl? (*Hint:* Consult the curve of Fig. 42-7.)

Sample Problem 43.03 Fusion in a gas of protons, and the required temperature

Assume a proton is a sphere of radius $R \approx 1$ fm. Two protons are fired at each other with the same kinetic energy K.

(a) What must K be if the particles are brought to rest by their mutual Coulomb repulsion when they are just "touching" each other? We can take this value of K as a representative measure of the height of the Coulomb barrier.

KEY IDEAS

The mechanical energy E of the two-proton system is conserved as the protons move toward each other and momentarily stop. In particular, the initial mechanical energy E_i is equal to the mechanical energy E_f when they stop. The initial energy E_i consists only of the total kinetic energy $2K$ of the two protons. When the protons stop, energy E_f consists only of the electric potential energy U of the system, as given by Eq. 24-46 ($U = q_1q_2/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r$).

Calculations: Here the distance r between the protons when they stop is their center-to-center distance $2R$, and their charges q_1 and q_2 are both e. Then we can write the conservation of energy $E_i = E_f$ as

$$2K = \frac{1}{4\pi\varepsilon_0}\,\frac{e^2}{2R}.$$

This yields, with known values,

$$\begin{aligned} K &= \frac{e^2}{16\pi\varepsilon_0 R} \\ &= \frac{(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \mathrm{C})^2}{(16\pi)(8.85 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{F/m})(1 \times 10^{-15}\ \mathrm{m})} \\ &= 5.75 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{J} = 360\ \mathrm{keV} \approx 400\ \mathrm{keV}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

(b) At what temperature would a proton in a gas of protons have the average kinetic energy calculated in (a) and thus have energy equal to the height of the Coulomb barrier?

KEY IDEA

If we treat the proton gas as an ideal gas, then from Eq. 19-24, the average energy of the protons is $K_{\mathrm{avg}} = \frac{3}{2}kT$, where k is the Boltzmann constant.

Calculation: Solving that equation for T and using the result of (a) yield

$$\begin{aligned} T = \frac{2K_{\mathrm{avg}}}{3k} &= \frac{(2)(5.75 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{J})}{(3)(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \mathrm{J/K})} \\ &\approx 3 \times 10^{9}\ \mathrm{K}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

The temperature of the core of the Sun is only about 1.5×10^{7} K; thus fusion in the Sun's core must involve protons whose energies are *far* above the average energy.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

43-5 THERMONUCLEAR FUSION IN THE SUN AND OTHER STARS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.21 Explain the proton–proton cycle for the Sun.

43.22 Explain the stages after the Sun has consumed its hydrogen.

43.23 Explain the probable source of the elements that are more massive than hydrogen and helium.

Key Ideas

- The Sun's energy arises mainly from the thermonuclear burning of hydrogen to form helium by the proton–proton cycle.
- Elements up to $A \approx 56$ (the peak of the binding energy curve) can be built up by other fusion processes once the hydrogen fuel supply of a star has been exhausted.

Thermonuclear Fusion in the Sun and Other Stars

The Sun has been radiating energy at the rate of 3.9×10^{26} W for several billion years. Where does all this energy come from? It does not come from chemical burning. (Even if the Sun were made of coal and had its own oxygen, burning the coal would last only 1000 y.) It also does not come from the Sun shrinking, transferring gravitational potential energy to thermal energy. (Its lifetime would be short by a factor of at least 500.) That leaves only thermonuclear fusion. The Sun, as you will see, burns not coal but hydrogen, and in a nuclear furnace, not an atomic or chemical one.

The fusion reaction in the Sun is a multistep process in which hydrogen is burned to form helium, hydrogen being the "fuel" and helium the "ashes." Figure 43-11 shows the **proton–proton** (p-p) **cycle** by which this occurs.

The p-p cycle starts with the collision of two protons (^{1}H + ^{1}H) to form a deuteron (^{2}H), with the simultaneous creation of a positron (e^+) and a neutrino (ν). The positron immediately annihilates with any nearby electron (e^-), their mass energy appearing as two gamma-ray photons (γ) as in Module 21-3.

A pair of such events is shown in the top row of Fig. 43-11. These events are actually extremely rare. In fact, only once in about 10^{26} proton–proton collisions is a deuteron formed; in the vast majority of cases, the two protons simply rebound elastically from each other. It is the slowness of this "bottleneck" process that regulates the rate of energy production and keeps the Sun from exploding. In spite of this slowness, there are so very many protons in the huge and dense volume of the Sun's core that deuterium is produced in just this way at the rate of 10^{12} kg/s.

Once a deuteron has been produced, it quickly collides with another proton and forms a ^{3}He nucleus, as the middle row of Fig. 43-11 shows. Two such ^{3}He nuclei may eventually (within 10^5 y; there is plenty of time) find each other, forming an alpha particle (^{4}He) and two protons, as the bottom row in the figure shows.

Overall, we see from Fig. 43-11 that the p-p cycle amounts to the combination of four protons and two electrons to form an alpha particle, two neutrinos, and

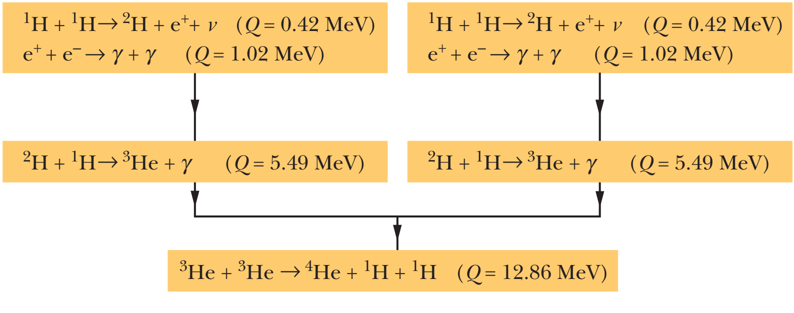


Figure 43-11 The proton–proton mechanism that accounts for energy production in the Sun. In this process, protons fuse to form an alpha particle (^{4}He), with a net energy release of 26.7 MeV for each event.

six gamma-ray photons. That is,

$$4\,{}^1\text{H} + 2\text{e}^- \rightarrow {}^4\text{He} + 2\nu + 6\gamma. \tag{43-10}$$

Let us now add two electrons to each side of Eq. 43-10, obtaining

$$(4\,{}^1\text{H} + 4\text{e}^-) \rightarrow ({}^4\text{He} + 2\text{e}^-) + 2\nu + 6\gamma. \tag{43-11}$$

The quantities in the two sets of parentheses then represent *atoms* (not bare nuclei) of hydrogen and of helium. That allows us to compute the energy release in the overall reaction of Eq. 43-10 (and Eq. 43-11) as

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= -\Delta m\, c^2 \\ &= -[4.002\,603\text{ u} - (4)(1.007\,825\text{ u})][931.5\text{ MeV/u}] \\ &= 26.7\text{ MeV}, \end{aligned}$$

in which 4.002 603 u is the mass of a helium atom and 1.007 825 u is the mass of a hydrogen atom. Neutrinos have a negligibly small mass, and gamma-ray photons have no mass; thus, they do not enter into the calculation of the disintegration energy.

This same value of Q follows (as it must) from adding up the Q values for the separate steps of the proton–proton cycle in Fig. 43-11. Thus,

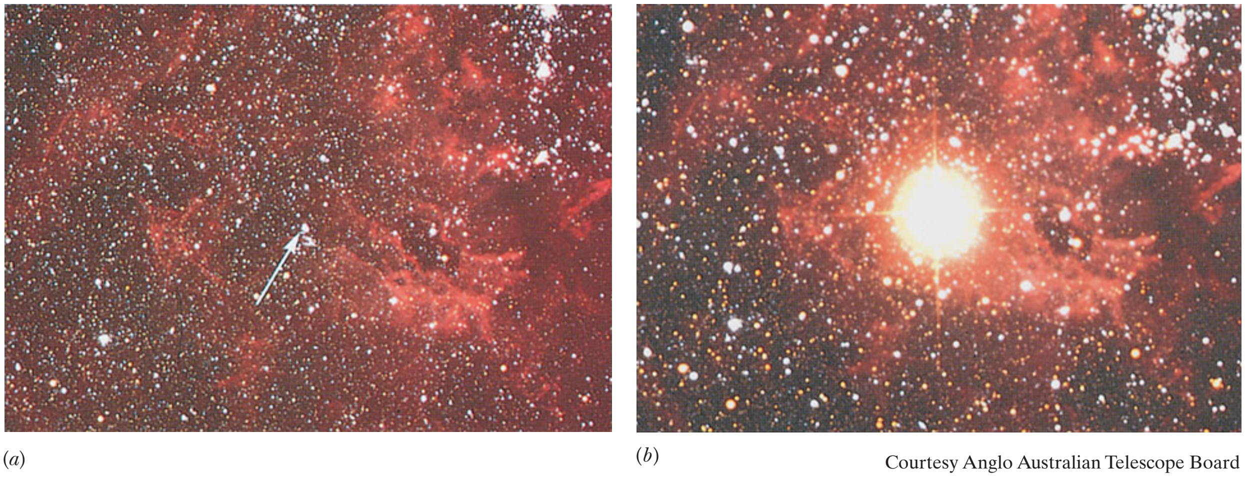
$$\begin{aligned} Q &= (2)(0.42\text{ MeV}) + (2)(1.02\text{ MeV}) + (2)(5.49\text{ MeV}) + 12.86\text{ MeV} \\ &= 26.7\text{ MeV}. \end{aligned}$$

About 0.5 MeV of this energy is carried out of the Sun by the two neutrinos indicated in Eqs. 43-10 and 43-11; the rest (= 26.2 MeV) is deposited in the core of the Sun as thermal energy. That thermal energy is then gradually transported to the Sun's surface, where it is radiated away from the Sun as electromagnetic waves, including visible light.

Hydrogen burning has been going on in the Sun for about 5×10^9 y, and calculations show that there is enough hydrogen left to keep the Sun going for about the same length of time into the future. In 5 billion years, however, the Sun's core, which by that time will be largely helium, will begin to cool and the Sun will start to collapse under its own gravity. This will raise the core temperature and cause the outer envelope to expand, turning the Sun into what is called a *red giant.*

If the core temperature increases to about 10^8 K again, energy can be produced through fusion once more—this time by burning helium to make carbon. As a star evolves further and becomes still hotter, other elements can be formed by other fusion reactions. However, elements more massive than those near the peak of the binding energy curve of Fig. 42-7 cannot be produced by further fusion processes.

Elements with mass numbers beyond the peak are thought to be formed by neutron capture during cataclysmic stellar explosions that we call *supernovas* (Fig. 43-12).



(*a*) (*b*)

Courtesy Anglo Australian Telescope Board

Figure 43-12 (*a*) The star known as Sanduleak, as it appeared until 1987. (*b*) We then began to intercept light from the star's supernova, designated SN1987a; the explosion was 100 million times brighter than our Sun and could be seen with the unaided eye even through it was outside our Galaxy.

In such an event the outer shell of the star is blown outward into space, where it mixes with the tenuous medium that fills the space between the stars. It is from this medium, continually enriched by debris from stellar explosions, that new stars form, by condensation under the influence of the gravitational force.

The abundance on Earth of elements heavier than hydrogen and helium suggests that our solar system has condensed out of interstellar material that contained the remnants of such explosions. Thus, all the elements around us—including those in our own bodies—were manufactured in the interiors of stars that no longer exist. As one scientist put it: "In truth, we are the children of the stars."

Sample Problem 43.04 Consumption rate of hydrogen in the Sun

At what rate dm/dt is hydrogen being consumed in the core of the Sun by the p-p cycle of Fig. 43-11?

KEY IDEA

The rate dE/dt at which energy is produced by hydrogen (proton) consumption within the Sun is equal to the rate P at which energy is radiated by the Sun:

$$P = \frac{dE}{dt}.$$

Calculations: To bring the mass consumption rate dm/dt into the power equation, we can rewrite it as

$$P = \frac{dE}{dt} = \frac{dE}{dm}\frac{dm}{dt} \approx \frac{\Delta E}{\Delta m}\frac{dm}{dt}, \tag{43-12}$$

where ΔE is the energy produced when protons of mass Δm are consumed. From our discussion in this module, we know that 26.2 MeV ($= 4.20 \times 10^{-12}$ J) of thermal energy is produced when four protons are consumed. That is, $\Delta E = 4.20 \times 10^{-12}$ J for a mass consumption of $\Delta m = 4(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})$. Substituting these data into Eq. 43-12 and using the power P of the Sun given in Appendix C, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dm}{dt} &= \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta E}P = \frac{4(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})}{4.20 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{J}}(3.90 \times 10^{26}\ \text{W}) \\ &= 6.2 \times 10^{11}\ \text{kg/s}. \qquad \text{(Answer)} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, a huge amount of hydrogen is consumed by the Sun every second. However, you need not worry too much about the Sun running out of hydrogen, because its mass of 2×10^{30} kg will keep it burning for a long, long time.

WileyPLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

43-6 CONTROLLED THERMONUCLEAR FUSION

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

43.24 Give the three requirements for a thermonuclear reactor.
43.25 Define Lawson's criterion.
43.26 Give general descriptions of the magnetic confinement approach and the inertial confinement approach.

Key Ideas

- Controlled thermonuclear fusion for energy generation has not yet been achieved. The d-d and d-t reactions are the most promising mechanisms.
- A successful fusion reactor must satisfy Lawson's criterion,
$$n\tau > 10^{20}\ \text{s/m}^3,$$
and must have a suitably high plasma temperature T.
- In a tokamak, the plasma is confined by a magnetic field.
- In laser fusion, inertial confinement is used.

Controlled Thermonuclear Fusion

The first thermonuclear reaction on Earth occurred at Eniwetok Atoll on November 1, 1952, when the United States exploded a fusion device, generating an energy release equivalent to 10 million tons of TNT. The high temperatures and densities needed to initiate the reaction were provided by using a fission bomb as a trigger.

A sustained and controllable source of fusion power—a fusion reactor as part of, say, an electric generating plant—is considerably more difficult to achieve. That goal is nonetheless being pursued vigorously in many countries around the world, because many people look to the fusion reactor as the power source of the future, at least for the generation of electricity.

The p-p scheme displayed in Fig. 43-11 is not suitable for an Earth-bound fusion reactor because it is hopelessly slow. The process succeeds in the Sun only because of the enormous density of protons in the center of the Sun. The most attractive reactions for terrestrial use appear to be two deuteron–deuteron (d-d) reactions,

$$^{2}\mathrm{H} + {}^{2}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\mathrm{He} + \mathrm{n} \qquad (Q = +3.27\ \mathrm{MeV}), \tag{43-13}$$

$$^{2}\mathrm{H} + {}^{2}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\mathrm{H} + {}^{1}\mathrm{H} \qquad (Q = +4.03\ \mathrm{MeV}), \tag{43-14}$$

and the deuteron–triton (d-t) reaction

$$^{2}\mathrm{H} + {}^{3}\mathrm{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\mathrm{He} + \mathrm{n} \qquad (Q = +17.59\ \mathrm{MeV}). \tag{43-15}$$

(The nucleus of the hydrogen isotope $^{3}\mathrm{H}$ (tritium) is called the *triton* and has a half-life of 12.3 y.) Deuterium, the source of deuterons for these reactions, has an isotopic abundance of only 1 part in 6700 but is available in unlimited quantities as a component of seawater. Proponents of power from the nucleus have described our ultimate power choice—after we have burned up all our fossil fuels—as either "burning rocks" (fission of uranium extracted from ores) or "burning water" (fusion of deuterium extracted from water).

There are three requirements for a successful thermonuclear reactor:

1. *A High Particle Density n.* The number density of interacting particles (the number of, say, deuterons per unit volume) must be great enough to ensure that the d-d collision rate is high enough. At the high temperatures required, the deuterium would be completely ionized, forming an electrically neutral **plasma** (ionized gas) of deuterons and electrons.
2. *A High Plasma Temperature T.* The plasma must be hot. Otherwise the colliding deuterons will not be energetic enough to penetrate the Coulomb barrier that tends to keep them apart. A plasma ion temperature of 35 keV, corresponding to 4×10^{8} K, has been achieved in the laboratory. This is about 30 times higher than the Sun's central temperature.
3. *A Long Confinement Time τ.* A major problem is containing the hot plasma long enough to maintain it at a density and a temperature sufficiently high to ensure the fusion of enough of the fuel. Because it is clear that no solid container can withstand the high temperatures that are necessary, clever confining techniques are called for; we shall shortly discuss two of them.

It can be shown that, for the successful operation of a thermonuclear reactor using the d-t reaction, it is necessary to have

$$n\tau > 10^{20}\ \mathrm{s/m^{3}}. \tag{43-16}$$

This condition, known as **Lawson's criterion,** tells us that we have a choice between confining a lot of particles for a short time or fewer particles for a longer time. Also, the plasma temperature must be high enough.

Two approaches to controlled nuclear power generation are currently under study. Although neither approach has yet been successful, both are being pursued because of their promise and because of the potential importance of controlled fusion to solving the world's energy problems.

Magnetic Confinement

One avenue to controlled fusion is to contain the fusing material in a very strong magnetic field—hence the name **magnetic confinement.** In one version of this approach, a suitably shaped magnetic field is used to confine the hot plasma in an evacuated doughnut-shaped chamber called a **tokamak** (the name is an abbreviation consisting of parts of three Russian words). The magnetic forces acting on

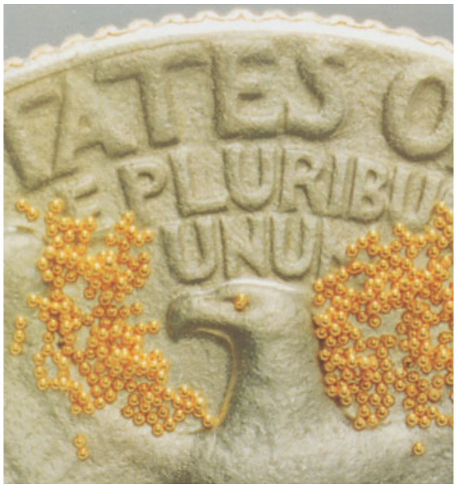


Figure 43-13 The small spheres on the quarter are deuterium–tritium fuel pellets, designed to be used in a laser fusion chamber.

Courtesy Los Alamos National Laboratory, New Mexico

the charged particles that make up the hot plasma keep the plasma from touching the walls of the chamber.

The plasma is heated by inducing a current in it and by bombarding it with an externally accelerated beam of particles. The first goal of this approach is to achieve **breakeven,** which occurs when the Lawson criterion is met or exceeded. The ultimate goal is **ignition,** which corresponds to a self-sustaining thermonuclear reaction and a net generation of energy.

Inertial Confinement

A second approach, called **inertial confinement,** involves "zapping" a solid fuel pellet from all sides with intense laser beams, evaporating some material from the surface of the pellet. This boiled-off material causes an inward-moving shock wave that compresses the core of the pellet, increasing both its particle density and its temperature. The process is called inertial confinement because (a) the fuel is *confined* to the pellet and (b) the particles do not escape from the heated pellet during the very short zapping interval because of their *inertia* (their mass).

Laser fusion, using the inertial confinement approach, is being investigated in many laboratories in the United States and elsewhere. At the Lawrence Livermore Laboratory, for example, deuterium–tritium fuel pellets, each smaller than a grain of sand (Fig. 43-13), are to be zapped by 10 synchronized high-power laser pulses symmetrically arranged around the pellet. The laser pulses are designed to deliver, in total, some 200 kJ of energy to each fuel pellet in less than a nanosecond. This is a delivered power of about 2×10^{14} W during the pulse, which is roughly 100 times the total installed (sustained) electrical power generating capacity of the world!

Sample Problem 43.05 Laser fusion: number of particles and Lawson's criterion

Suppose a fuel pellet in a laser fusion device contains equal numbers of deuterium and tritium atoms (and no other material). The density $d = 200\ \text{kg/m}^3$ of the pellet is increased by a factor of 10^3 by the action of the laser pulses.

(a) How many particles per unit volume (both deuterons and tritons) does the pellet contain in its compressed state? The molar mass M_d of deuterium atoms is 2.0×10^{-3} kg/mol, and the molar mass M_t of tritium atoms is 3.0×10^{-3} kg/mol.

KEY IDEA

For a system consisting of only one type of particle, we can write the (mass) density (the mass per unit volume) of the system in terms of the particle masses and number density (the number of particles per unit volume):

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{density,}\\ \text{kg/m}^3\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{number density,}\\ \text{m}^{-3}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{particle mass,}\\ \text{kg}\end{pmatrix}. \qquad (43\text{-}17)$$

Let n be the total number of particles per unit volume in the compressed pellet. Then, because we know that the device contains equal numbers of deuterium and tritium atoms, the number of deuterium atoms per unit volume is $n/2$, and the number of tritium atoms per unit volume is also $n/2$.

Calculations: We can extend Eq. 43-17 to the system consisting of the two types of particles by writing the density d^* of the compressed pellet as the sum of the individual densities:

$$d^* = \frac{n}{2} m_d + \frac{n}{2} m_t, \tag{43-18}$$

where m_d and m_t are the masses of a deuterium atom and a tritium atom, respectively. We can replace those masses with the given molar masses by substituting

$$m_d = \frac{M_d}{N_A} \quad \text{and} \quad m_t = \frac{M_t}{N_A},$$

where N_A is Avogadro's number. After making those replacements and substituting $1000d$ for the compressed density d^*, we solve Eq. 43-18 for the particle number density n to obtain

$$n = \frac{2000 d N_A}{M_d + M_t},$$

which gives us

$$n = \frac{(2000)(200 \text{ kg/m}^3)(6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1})}{2.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/mol} + 3.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/mol}}$$

$$= 4.8 \times 10^{31} \text{ m}^{-3}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

(b) According to Lawson's criterion, how long must the pellet maintain this particle density if breakeven operation is to take place at a suitably high temperature?

KEY IDEA

If breakeven operation is to occur, the compressed density must be maintained for a time period τ given by Eq. 43-16 ($n\tau > 10^{20}$ s/m^3).

Calculation: We can now write

$$\tau > \frac{10^{20} \text{ s/m}^3}{4.8 \times 10^{31} \text{ m}^{-3}} \approx 10^{-12} \text{ s}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

Review & Summary

Energy from the Nucleus Nuclear processes are about a million times more effective, per unit mass, than chemical processes in transforming mass into other forms of energy.

Nuclear Fission Equation 43-1 shows a **fission** of ^{236}U induced by thermal neutrons bombarding ^{235}U. Equations 43-2 and 43-3 show the beta-decay chains of the primary fragments. The energy released in such a fission event is $Q \approx 200$ MeV.

Fission can be understood in terms of the collective model, in which a nucleus is likened to a charged liquid drop carrying a certain excitation energy. A potential barrier must be tunneled through if fission is to occur. The ability of a nucleus to undergo fission depends on the relationship between the barrier height E_b and the excitation energy E_n.

The neutrons released during fission make possible a fission **chain reaction.** Figure 43-5 shows the neutron balance for one cycle of a typical reactor. Figure 43-6 suggests the layout of a complete nuclear power plant.

Nuclear Fusion The release of energy by the **fusion** of two light nuclei is inhibited by their mutual Coulomb barrier (due to the electric repulsion between the two collections of protons). Fusion can occur in bulk matter only if the temperature is high enough (that is, if the particle energy is high enough) for appreciable barrier tunneling to occur.

The Sun's energy arises mainly from the thermonuclear burning of hydrogen to form helium by the **proton–proton cycle** outlined in Fig. 43-11. Elements up to $A \approx 56$ (the peak of the binding energy curve) can be built up by other fusion processes once the hydrogen fuel supply of a star has been exhausted. Fusion of more massive elements requires an input of energy and thus cannot be the source of a star's energy output.

Controlled Fusion Controlled **thermonuclear fusion** for energy generation has not yet been achieved. The d-d and d-t reactions are the most promising mechanisms. A successful fusion reactor must satisfy **Lawson's criterion,**

$$n\tau > 10^{20} \text{ s/m}^3, \tag{43-16}$$

and must have a suitably high plasma temperature T.

In a **tokamak** the plasma is confined by a magnetic field. In **laser fusion** inertial confinement is used.

Questions

1 In the fission process

$$^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{132}\text{Sn} + {}^{\square}_{\square}\square + 3\text{n},$$

what number goes in (a) the elevated box (the superscript) and (b) the descended box (the value of Z)?

2 If a fusion process requires an absorption of energy, does the average binding energy per nucleon increase or decrease?

3 Suppose a ^{238}U nucleus "swallows" a neutron and then decays not by fission but by beta-minus decay, in which it emits an electron and a neutrino. Which nuclide remains after this decay: ^{239}Pu, ^{238}Np, ^{239}Np, or ^{238}Pa?

4 Do the initial fragments formed by fission have more protons than neutrons, more neutrons than protons, or about the same number of each?

5 For the fission reaction

$$^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow \text{X} + \text{Y} + 2\text{n},$$

rank the following possibilities for X (or Y), most likely first: ^{152}Nd, ^{140}I, ^{128}In, ^{115}Pd, ^{105}Mo. (*Hint:* See Fig. 43-1.)

6 To make the newly discovered, very large elements of the periodic table, researchers shoot a medium-size nucleus at a large nucleus. Sometimes a projectile nucleus and a target nucleus fuse to form one of the very large elements. In such a fusion, is the mass of the product greater than or less than the sum of the masses of the projectile and target nuclei?

7 If we split a nucleus into two smaller nuclei, with a release of energy, has the average binding energy per nucleon increased or decreased?

8 Which of these elements is *not* "cooked up" by thermonuclear fusion processes in stellar interiors: carbon, silicon, chromium, bromine?

9 Lawson's criterion for the d-t reaction (Eq. 43-16) is $n\tau > 10^{20}$ s/m^3. For the d-d reaction, do you expect the number on the right-hand side to be the same, smaller, or larger?

10 About 2% of the energy generated in the Sun's core by the p-p reaction is carried out of the Sun by neutrinos. Is the energy associated with this neutrino flux equal to, greater than, or less than the energy radiated from the Sun's surface as electromagnetic radiation?

11 A nuclear reactor is operating at a certain power level, with its multiplication factor k adjusted to unity. If the control rods are used to reduce the power output of the reactor to 25% of its former value, is the multiplication factor now a little less than unity, substantially less than unity, or still equal to unity?

12 Pick the most likely member of each pair to be one of the initial fragments formed by a fission event: (a) ^{93}Sr or ^{93}Ru, (b) ^{140}Gd or ^{140}I, (c) ^{155}Nd or ^{155}Lu. (*Hint:* See Fig. 42-5 and the periodic table, and consider the neutron abundance.)

Problems

GO	Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM	Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
• – •••	Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
✈	Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com
WWW	Worked-out solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
ILW	Interactive solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday

Module 43-1 Nuclear Fission

•1 The isotope ^{235}U decays by alpha emission with a half-life of 7.0×10^8 y. It also decays (rarely) by spontaneous fission, and if the alpha decay did not occur, its half-life due to spontaneous fission alone would be 3.0×10^{17} y. (a) At what rate do spontaneous fission decays occur in 1.0 g of ^{235}U? (b) How many ^{235}U alpha-decay events are there for every spontaneous fission event?

•2 The nuclide ^{238}Np requires 4.2 MeV for fission. To remove a neutron from this nuclide requires an energy expenditure of 5.0 MeV. Is ^{237}Np fissionable by thermal neutrons?

•3 GO A thermal neutron (with approximately zero kinetic energy) is absorbed by a ^{238}U nucleus. How much energy is transferred from mass energy to the resulting oscillation of the nucleus? Here are some atomic masses and the neutron mass.

^{237}U	237.048 723 u	^{238}U	238.050 782 u
^{239}U	239.054 287 u	^{240}U	240.056 585 u
n	1.008 664 u		

•4 The fission properties of the plutonium isotope ^{239}Pu are very similar to those of ^{235}U. The average energy released per fission is 180 MeV. How much energy, in MeV, is released if all the atoms in 1.00 kg of pure ^{239}Pu undergo fission?

•5 During the Cold War, the Premier of the Soviet Union threatened the United States with 2.0 megaton ^{239}Pu warheads. (Each would have yielded the equivalent of an explosion of 2.0 megatons of TNT, where 1 megaton of TNT releases 2.6×10^{28} MeV of energy.) If the plutonium that actually fissioned had been 8.00% of the total mass of the plutonium in such a warhead, what was that total mass?

•6 (a)–(d) Complete the following table, which refers to the generalized fission reaction $^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow \text{X} + \text{Y} + b\text{n}$.

X	Y	b
^{140}Xe	(a)	1
^{139}I	(b)	2
(c)	^{100}Zr	2
^{141}Cs	^{92}Rb	(d)

•7 At what rate must ^{235}U nuclei undergo fission by neutron bombardment to generate energy at the rate of 1.0 W? Assume that $Q = 200$ MeV.

•8 (a) Calculate the disintegration energy Q for the fission of the molybdenum isotope ^{98}Mo into two equal parts. The masses you will need are 97.905 41 u for ^{98}Mo and 48.950 02 u for ^{49}Sc. (b) If Q turns out to be positive, discuss why this process does not occur spontaneously.

•9 (a) How many atoms are contained in 1.0 kg of pure ^{235}U? (b) How much energy, in joules, is released by the complete fissioning of 1.0 kg of ^{235}U? Assume $Q = 200$ MeV. (c) For how long would this energy light a 100 W lamp?

•10 GO Calculate the energy released in the fission reaction

$$^{235}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{141}\text{Cs} + {}^{93}\text{Rb} + 2\text{n}.$$

Here are some atomic and particle masses.

^{235}U	235.043 92 u	^{93}Rb	92.921 57 u
^{141}Cs	140.919 63 u	n	1.008 66 u

•11 GO Calculate the disintegration energy Q for the fission of ^{52}Cr into two equal fragments. The masses you will need are

^{52}Cr	51.940 51 u	^{26}Mg	25.982 59 u.

••12 GO Consider the fission of ^{238}U by fast neutrons. In one fission event, no neutrons are emitted and the final stable end products, after the beta decay of the primary fission fragments, are ^{140}Ce and ^{99}Ru. (a) What is the total of the beta-decay events in the two beta-decay chains? (b) Calculate Q for this fission process. The relevant atomic and particle masses are

^{238}U	238.050 79 u	^{140}Ce	139.905 43 u
n	1.008 66 u	^{99}Ru	98.905 94 u

••13 GO Assume that immediately after the fission of ^{236}U according to Eq. 43-1, the resulting ^{140}Xe and ^{94}Sr nuclei are just touching at their surfaces. (a) Assuming the nuclei to be spherical, calculate the electric potential energy associated with the repulsion between the two fragments. (*Hint:* Use Eq. 42-3 to calculate the radii of the fragments.) (b) Compare this energy with the energy released in a typical fission event.

••14 A ^{236}U nucleus undergoes fission and breaks into two middle-mass fragments, ^{140}Xe and ^{96}Sr. (a) By what percentage does the surface area of the fission products differ from that of the original ^{236}U nucleus? (b) By what percentage does the volume change? (c) By what percentage does the electric potential energy change? The electric potential energy of a uniformly charged sphere of radius r and charge Q is given by

$$U = \frac{3}{5}\left(\frac{Q^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 r}\right).$$

••15 SSM A 66 kiloton atomic bomb is fueled with pure ^{235}U (Fig. 43-14), 4.0% of which actually undergoes fission. (a) What is the mass of the uranium in the bomb? (It is not 66 kilotons—that is the amount of released energy specified in terms of the mass of TNT required to produce the same amount of energy.) (b) How many primary fission fragments are produced? (c) How many fission neutrons generated are released to the environment? (On average, each fission produces 2.5 neutrons.)

Courtesy Martin Marietta Energy Systems/U.S. Department of Energy

Figure 43-14 Problem 15. A “button” of ^{235}U ready to be recast and machined for a warhead.

••16 In an atomic bomb, energy release is due to the uncontrolled fission of plutonium ^{239}Pu (or ^{235}U). The bomb’s rating is the magnitude of the released energy, specified in terms of the mass of TNT required to produce the same energy release. One megaton of TNT releases 2.6×10^{28} MeV of energy. (a) Calculate the rating, in tons of TNT, of an atomic bomb containing 95.0 kg of ^{239}Pu, of which 2.5 kg actually undergoes fission. (See Problem 4.) (b) Why is the other 92.5 kg of ^{239}Pu needed if it does not fission?

••17 SSM WWW In a particular fission event in which ^{235}U is fissioned by slow neutrons, no neutron is emitted and one of the primary fission fragments is ^{83}Ge. (a) What is the other fragment? The disintegration energy is $Q = 170$ MeV. How much of this energy goes to (b) the ^{83}Ge fragment and (c) the other fragment? Just after the fission, what is the speed of (d) the ^{83}Ge fragment and (e) the other fragment?

Module 43-2 The Nuclear Reactor

•18 A 200 MW fission reactor consumes half its fuel in 3.00 y. How much ^{235}U did it contain initially? Assume that all the energy generated arises from the fission of ^{235}U and that this nuclide is consumed only by the fission process.

••19 The neutron generation time t_{gen} in a reactor is the average time needed for a fast neutron emitted in one fission event to be slowed to thermal energies by the moderator and then initiate another fission event. Suppose the power output of a reactor at time $t = 0$ is P_0. Show that the power output a time t later is $P(t)$, where $P(t) = P_0 k^{t/t_{gen}}$ and k is the multiplication factor. For constant power output, $k = 1$.

••20 A reactor operates at 400 MW with a neutron generation time (see Problem 19) of 30.0 ms. If its power increases for 5.00 min with a multiplication factor of 1.0003, what is the power output at the end of the 5.00 min?

••21 The thermal energy generated when radiation from radionuclides is absorbed in matter can serve as the basis for a small power source for use in satellites, remote weather stations, and other isolated locations. Such radionuclides are manufactured in abundance in nuclear reactors and may be separated chemically from the spent fuel. One suitable radionuclide is ^{238}Pu ($T_{1/2} = 87.7$ y), which is an alpha emitter with $Q = 5.50$ MeV. At what rate is thermal energy generated in 1.00 kg of this material?

••22 The neutron generation time t_{gen} (see Problem 19) in a particular reactor is 1.0 ms. If the reactor is operating at a power level of 500 MW, about how many free neutrons are present in the reactor at any moment?

••23 SSM WWW The neutron generation time (see Problem 19) of a particular reactor is 1.3 ms. The reactor is generating energy at the rate of 1200.0 MW. To perform certain maintenance checks, the power level must temporarily be reduced to 350.00 MW. It is desired that the transition to the reduced power level take 2.6000 s. To what (constant) value should the multiplication factor be set to effect the transition in the desired time?

••24 (See Problem 21.) Among the many fission products that may be extracted chemically from the spent fuel of a nuclear reactor is ^{90}Sr ($T_{1/2} = 29$ y). This isotope is produced in typical large reactors at the rate of about 18 kg/y. By its radioactivity, the isotope generates thermal energy at the rate of 0.93 W/g. (a) Calculate the effective disintegration energy Q_{eff} associated with the decay of a ^{90}Sr nucleus. (This energy Q_{eff} includes contributions from the decay of the ^{90}Sr daughter products in its decay chain but not from neutrinos, which escape totally from the sample.) (b) It is desired to construct a power source generating 150 W (electric power) to use in operating electronic equipment in an underwater acoustic beacon. If the power source is based on the thermal energy generated by ^{90}Sr and if the efficiency of the thermal–electric conversion process is 5.0%, how much ^{90}Sr is needed?

••25 SSM (a) A neutron of mass m_n and kinetic energy K makes a head-on elastic collision with a stationary atom of mass m. Show that the fractional kinetic energy loss of the neutron is given by

$$\frac{\Delta K}{K} = \frac{4m_n m}{(m + m_n)^2}.$$

Find $\Delta K/K$ for each of the following acting as the stationary atom: (b) hydrogen, (c) deuterium, (d) carbon, and (e) lead. (f) If $K = 1.00$ MeV initially, how many such head-on collisions would it take to reduce the neutron's kinetic energy to a thermal value (0.025 eV) if the stationary atoms it collides with are deuterium, a commonly used moderator? (In actual moderators, most collisions are not head-on.)

Module 43-3 A Natural Nuclear Reactor

•26 How long ago was the ratio ^{235}U/^{238}U in natural uranium deposits equal to 0.15?

•27 The natural fission reactor discussed in Module 43-3 is estimated to have generated 15 gigawatt-years of energy during its lifetime. (a) If the reactor lasted for 200 000 y, at what average power level did it operate? (b) How many kilograms of ^{235}U did it consume during its lifetime?

••28 Some uranium samples from the natural reactor site described in Module 43-3 were found to be slightly *enriched* in ^{235}U, rather than depleted. Account for this in terms of neutron absorption by the abundant isotope ^{238}U and the subsequent beta and alpha decay of its products.

••29 SSM The uranium ore mined today contains only 0.72% of fissionable ^{235}U, too little to make reactor fuel for thermal-neutron fission. For this reason, the mined ore must be enriched with ^{235}U. Both ^{235}U ($T_{1/2} = 7.0 \times 10^8$ y) and ^{238}U ($T_{1/2} = 4.5 \times 10^9$ y) are radioactive. How far back in time would natural uranium ore have been a practical reactor fuel, with a ^{235}U/^{238}U ratio of 3.0%?

Module 43-4 Thermonuclear Fusion: The Basic Process

•30 Verify that the fusion of 1.0 kg of deuterium by the reaction

$$^2\text{H} + {}^2\text{H} \rightarrow {}^3\text{He} + \text{n} \qquad (Q = +3.27\ \text{MeV})$$

could keep a 100 W lamp burning for 2.5×10^4 y.

•31 SSM Calculate the height of the Coulomb barrier for the head-on collision of two deuterons, with effective radius 2.1 fm.

••32 For overcoming the Coulomb barrier for fusion, methods other than heating the fusible material have been suggested. For example, if you were to use two particle accelerators to accelerate two beams of deuterons directly toward each other so as to collide head-on, (a) what voltage would each accelerator require in order for the colliding deuterons to overcome the Coulomb barrier? (b) Why do you suppose this method is not presently used?

••33 Calculate the Coulomb barrier height for two ^{7}Li nuclei that are fired at each other with the same initial kinetic energy K. (*Hint:* Use Eq. 42-3 to calculate the radii of the nuclei.)

••34 In Fig. 43-10, the equation for $n(K)$, the number density per unit energy for particles, is

$$n(K) = 1.13n \frac{K^{1/2}}{(kT)^{3/2}} e^{-K/kT},$$

where n is the total particle number density. At the center of the Sun, the temperature is 1.50×10^7 K and the average proton energy K_{avg} is 1.94 keV. Find the ratio of the proton number density at 5.00 keV to the number density at the average proton energy.

Module 43-5 Thermonuclear Fusion in the Sun and Other Stars

•35 Assume that the protons in a hot ball of protons each have a kinetic energy equal to kT, where k is the Boltzmann constant and T is the absolute temperature. If $T = 1 \times 10^7$ K, what (approximately) is the least separation any two protons can have?

•36 GO What is the Q of the following fusion process?

$$^2\text{H}_1 + {}^1\text{H}_1 \rightarrow {}^3\text{He}_2 + \text{photon}$$

Here are some atomic masses.

^{2}H$_1$	2.014 102 u	^{1}H$_1$	1.007 825 u
^{3}He$_2$	3.016 029 u		

•37 The Sun has mass 2.0×10^{30} kg and radiates energy at the rate 3.9×10^{26} W. (a) At what rate is its mass changing? (b) What fraction of its original mass has it lost in this way since it began to burn hydrogen, about 4.5×10^9 y ago?

•38 We have seen that Q for the overall proton–proton fusion cycle is 26.7 MeV. How can you relate this number to the Q values for the reactions that make up this cycle, as displayed in Fig. 43-11?

•39 GO Show that the energy released when three alpha particles fuse to form ^{12}C is 7.27 MeV. The atomic mass of ^{4}He is 4.0026 u, and that of ^{12}C is 12.0000 u.

••40 Calculate and compare the energy released by (a) the fusion of 1.0 kg of hydrogen deep within the Sun and (b) the fission of 1.0 kg of ^{235}U in a fission reactor.

••41 GO A star converts all its hydrogen to helium, achieving a 100% helium composition. Next it converts the helium to carbon via the triple-alpha process,

$$^4\text{He} + {}^4\text{He} + {}^4\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{12}\text{C} + 7.27\ \text{MeV}.$$

The mass of the star is 4.6×10^{32} kg, and it generates energy at the rate of 5.3×10^{30} W. How long will it take to convert all the helium to carbon at this rate?

••42 Verify the three Q values reported for the reactions given in Fig. 43-11. The needed atomic and particle masses are

^{1}H	1.007 825 u	^{4}He	4.002 603 u
^{2}H	2.014 102 u	e$^{\pm}$	0.000 548 6 u
^{3}He	3.016 029 u		

(*Hint:* Distinguish carefully between atomic and nuclear masses, and take the positrons properly into account.)

••43 Figure 43-15 shows an early proposal for a hydrogen bomb. The fusion fuel is deuterium, ^{2}H. The high temperature and particle density needed for fusion are provided by an atomic bomb "trig-

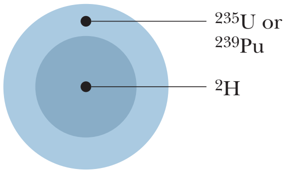


Figure 43-15 Problem 43.

ger” that involves a ^{235}U or ^{239}Pu fission fuel arranged to impress an imploding, compressive shock wave on the deuterium. The fusion reaction is

$$5\,{}^{2}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}\text{He} + {}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{1}\text{H} + 2\text{n}.$$

(a) Calculate Q for the fusion reaction. For needed atomic masses, see Problem 42. (b) Calculate the rating (see Problem 16) of the fusion part of the bomb if it contains 500 kg of deuterium, 30.0% of which undergoes fusion.

••44 Assume that the core of the Sun has one-eighth of the Sun’s mass and is compressed within a sphere whose radius is one-fourth of the solar radius. Assume further that the composition of the core is 35% hydrogen by mass and that essentially all the Sun’s energy is generated there. If the Sun continues to burn hydrogen at the current rate of 6.2×10^{11} kg/s, how long will it be before the hydrogen is entirely consumed? The Sun’s mass is 2.0×10^{30} kg.

••45 (a) Calculate the rate at which the Sun generates neutrinos. Assume that energy production is entirely by the proton–proton fusion cycle. (b) At what rate do solar neutrinos reach Earth?

••46 In certain stars the *carbon cycle* is more effective than the proton–proton cycle in generating energy. This carbon cycle is

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{12}\text{C} + {}^{1}\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^{13}\text{N} + \gamma, & Q_1 &= 1.95\ \text{MeV},\\
{}^{13}\text{N} &\rightarrow {}^{13}\text{C} + e^{+} + \nu, & Q_2 &= 1.19,\\
{}^{13}\text{C} + {}^{1}\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^{14}\text{N} + \gamma, & Q_3 &= 7.55,\\
{}^{14}\text{N} + {}^{1}\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^{15}\text{O} + \gamma, & Q_4 &= 7.30,\\
{}^{15}\text{O} &\rightarrow {}^{15}\text{N} + e^{+} + \nu, & Q_5 &= 1.73,\\
{}^{15}\text{N} + {}^{1}\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^{12}\text{C} + {}^{4}\text{He}, & Q_6 &= 4.97.
\end{aligned}$$

(a) Show that this cycle is exactly equivalent in its overall effects to the proton–proton cycle of Fig. 43-11. (b) Verify that the two cycles, as expected, have the same Q value.

••47 SSM WWW Coal burns according to the reaction $C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$. The heat of combustion is 3.3×10^{7} J/kg of atomic carbon consumed. (a) Express this in terms of energy per carbon atom. (b) Express it in terms of energy per kilogram of the initial reactants, carbon and oxygen. (c) Suppose that the Sun (mass = 2.0×10^{30} kg) were made of carbon and oxygen in combustible proportions and that it continued to radiate energy at its present rate of 3.9×10^{26} W. How long would the Sun last?

Module 43-6 Controlled Thermonuclear Fusion

•48 Verify the Q values reported in Eqs. 43-13, 43-14, and 43-15. The needed masses are

^{1}H	1.007 825 u	^{4}He	4.002 603 u
^{2}H	2.014 102 u	n	1.008 665 u
^{3}H	3.016 049 u		

••49 Roughly 0.0150% of the mass of ordinary water is due to “heavy water,” in which one of the two hydrogens in an H_2O molecule is replaced with deuterium, ^{2}H. How much average fusion power could be obtained if we “burned” all the ^{2}H in 1.00 liter of water in 1.00 day by somehow causing the deuterium to fuse via the reaction $^{2}H + {}^{2}H \rightarrow {}^{3}He + n$?

Additional Problems

50 The effective Q for the proton–proton cycle of Fig. 43-11 is 26.2 MeV. (a) Express this as energy per kilogram of hydrogen consumed. (b) The power of the Sun is 3.9×10^{26} W. If its energy derives from the proton–proton cycle, at what rate is it losing hydrogen? (c) At what rate is it losing mass? (d) Account for the difference in the results for (b) and (c). (e) The mass of the Sun is 2.0×10^{30} kg. If it loses mass at the constant rate calculated in (c), how long will it take to lose 0.10% of its mass?

51 Many fear that nuclear power reactor technology will increase the likelihood of nuclear war because reactors can be used not only to produce electrical energy but also, as a by-product through neutron capture with inexpensive ^{238}U, to make ^{239}Pu, which is a “fuel” for nuclear bombs. What simple series of reactions involving neutron capture and beta decay would yield this plutonium isotope?

52 In the deuteron–triton fusion reaction of Eq. 43-15, what is the kinetic energy of (a) the alpha particle and (b) the neutron? Neglect the relatively small kinetic energies of the two combining particles.

53 Verify that, as stated in Module 43-1, neutrons in equilibrium with matter at room temperature, 300 K, have an average kinetic energy of about 0.04 eV.

54 Verify that, as reported in Table 43-1, fissioning of the ^{235}U in 1.0 kg of UO_2 (enriched so that ^{235}U is 3.0% of the total uranium) could keep a 100 W lamp burning for 690 y.

55 At the center of the Sun, the density of the gas is 1.5×10^{5} kg/m^3 and the composition is essentially 35% hydrogen by mass and 65% helium by mass. (a) What is the number density of protons there? (b) What is the ratio of that proton density to the density of particles in an ideal gas at standard temperature (0°C) and pressure (1.01×10^{5} Pa)?

56 Expressions for the Maxwell speed distribution for molecules in a gas are given in Chapter 19. (a) Show that the *most probable energy* is given by

$$K_p = \tfrac{1}{2}kT.$$

Verify this result with the energy distribution curve of Fig. 43-10, for which $T = 1.5 \times 10^{7}$ K. (b) Show that the *most probable speed* is given by

$$v_p = \sqrt{\frac{2kT}{m}}.$$

Find its value for protons at $T = 1.5 \times 10^{7}$ K. (c) Show that the *energy corresponding to the most probable speed* (which is not the same as the most probable energy) is

$$K_{v,p} = kT.$$

Locate this quantity on the curve of Fig. 43-10.

57 The uncompressed radius of the fuel pellet of Sample Problem 43.05 is 20 μm. Suppose that the compressed fuel pellet “burns” with an efficiency of 10%—that is, only 10% of the deuterons and 10% of the tritons participate in the fusion reaction of Eq. 43-15. (a) How much energy is released in each such microexplosion of a pellet? (b) To how much TNT is each such pellet equivalent? The heat of combustion of TNT is 4.6 MJ/kg. (c) If a fusion reactor is constructed on the basis of 100 microexplosions per second, what power would be generated? (Part of this power would be used to operate the lasers.)

58 Assume that a plasma temperature of 1×10^{8} K is reached in a laser-fusion device. (a) What is the most probable speed of a deuteron at that temperature? (b) How far would such a deuteron move in a confinement time of 1×10^{-12} s?

CHAPTER 44

Quarks, Leptons, and the Big Bang

44-1 GENERAL PROPERTIES OF ELEMENTARY PARTICLES

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

44.01 Identify that a great many different elementary particles exist or can be created and that nearly all of them are unstable.

44.02 For the decay of an unstable particle, apply the same decay equations as used for the radioactive decay of nuclei.

44.03 Identify spin as the intrinsic angular momentum of a particle.

44.04 Distinguish fermions from bosons, and identify which are required to obey the Pauli exclusion principle.

44.05 Distinguish leptons and hadrons, and then identify the two types of hadrons.

44.06 Distinguish particle from antiparticle, and identify that if they meet, they undergo annihilation and are transformed into photons or into other elementary particles.

44.07 Distinguish the strong force and the weak force.

44.08 To see if a given process for elementary particles is physically possible, apply the conservation laws for charge, linear momentum, spin angular momentum, and energy (including mass energy).

Key Ideas

- The term fundamental particles refers to the basic building blocks of matter. We can divide the particles into several broad categories.
- The terms particles and antiparticles originally referred to common particles (such as the electrons, protons, and neutrons in your body) and their antiparticle counterparts (the positrons, antiprotons, and antineutrons), but for most of the rarely detected particles, the distinction between particles and antiparticles is made largely to be consistent with experimental results.
- Fermions (such as the particles in your body) obey the Pauli exclusion principle; bosons do not.

What Is Physics?

Physicists often refer to the theories of relativity and quantum physics as "modern physics," to distinguish them from the theories of Newtonian mechanics and Maxwellian electromagnetism, which are lumped together as "classical physics." As the years go by, the word "modern" seems less and less appropriate for theories whose foundations were laid down in the opening years of the 20th century. After all, Einstein published his paper on the photoelectric effect and his first paper on special relativity in 1905, Bohr published his quantum model of the hydrogen atom in 1913, and Schrödinger published his matter wave equation in 1926. Nevertheless, the label of "modern physics" hangs on.

In this closing chapter we consider two lines of investigation that are truly "modern" but at the same time have the most ancient of roots. They center around two deceptively simple questions:

What is the universe made of?

How did the universe come to be the way it is?

Progress in answering these questions has been rapid in the last few decades.

Many new insights are based on experiments carried out with large particle accelerators. However, as they bang particles together at higher and higher energies using larger and larger accelerators, physicists come to realize that no conceivable Earth-bound accelerator can generate particles with energies great enough to test the ultimate theories of physics. There has been only one source of particles with these energies, and that was the universe itself within the first millisecond of its existence.

In this chapter you will encounter a host of new terms and a veritable flood of particles with names that you should not try to remember. If you are temporarily bewildered, you are sharing the bewilderment of the physicists who lived through these developments and who at times saw nothing but increasing complexity with little hope of understanding. If you stick with it, however, you will come to share the excitement physicists felt as marvelous new accelerators poured out new results, as the theorists put forth ideas each more daring than the last, and as clarity finally sprang from obscurity. The main message of this book is that, although we know a lot about the physics of the world, grand mysteries remain.

Particles, Particles, Particles

In the 1930s, there were many scientists who thought that the problem of the ultimate structure of matter was well on the way to being solved. The atom could be understood in terms of only three particles—the electron, the proton, and the neutron. Quantum physics accounted well for the structure of the atom and for radioactive alpha decay. The neutrino had been postulated and, although not yet observed, had been incorporated by Enrico Fermi into a successful theory of beta decay. There was hope that quantum theory applied to protons and neutrons would soon account for the structure of the nucleus. What else was there?

The euphoria did not last. The end of that same decade saw the beginning of a period of discovery of new particles that continues to this day. The new particles have names and symbols such as *muon* (μ), *pion* (π), *kaon* (K), and *sigma* (Σ). All the new particles are unstable; that is, they spontaneously transform into other types of particles according to the same functions of time that apply to unstable nuclei. Thus, if N_0 particles of any one type are present in a sample at time $t = 0$, the number N of those particles present at some later time t is given by Eq. 42-15,

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t}, \tag{44-1}$$

the rate of decay R, from an initial value of R_0, is given by Eq. 42-16,

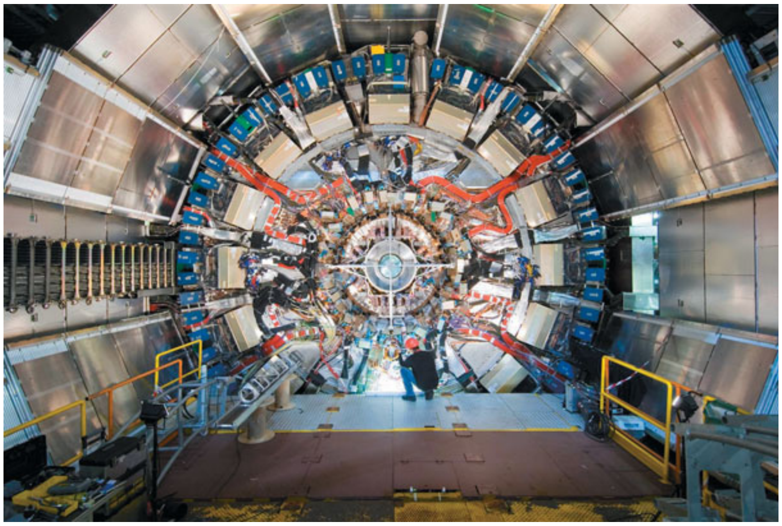
$$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t}, \tag{44-2}$$

and the half-life $T_{1/2}$, decay constant λ, and mean life τ are related by Eq. 42-18,

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \tau \ln 2. \tag{44-3}$$

The half-lives of the new particles range from about 10^{-6} s to 10^{-23} s. Indeed, some of the particles last so briefly that they cannot be detected directly but can only be inferred from indirect evidence.

These new particles have been commonly produced in head-on collisions between protons or electrons accelerated to high energies in accelerators at places like Brookhaven National Laboratory (on Long Island, New York), Fermilab (near Chicago), CERN (near Geneva, Switzerland), SLAC (at Stanford University in California), and DESY (near Hamburg, Germany). They have been discovered with particle detectors that have grown in sophistication until they rival the size and complexity of entire accelerators of only a few decades ago.



© CERN Geneva

One of the detectors at the Large Hadron Collider at CERN, where the Standard Model of the elementary particles is being put to the test.

Today there are several hundred known particles. Naming them has strained the resources of the Greek alphabet, and most are known only by an assigned number in a periodically issued compilation. To make sense of this array of particles, we look for simple physical criteria by which we can place the particles in categories. The result is known as the **Standard Model** of particles. Although this model is continuously challenged by theorists, it remains our best scheme of understanding all the particles discovered to date.

To explore the Standard Model, we make the following three rough cuts among the known particles: fermion or boson, hadron or lepton, particle or antiparticle? Let's now look at the categories one by one.

Fermion or Boson?

All particles have an intrinsic angular momentum called **spin,** as we discussed for electrons, protons, and neutrons in Module 32-5. Generalizing the notation of that section, we can write the component of spin $\vec{S}$ in any direction (assume the component to be along a z axis) as

$$S_z = m_s\hbar \qquad \text{for } m_s = s, s-1, \ldots, -s, \tag{44-4}$$

in which $\hbar$ is $h/2\pi$, m_s is the *spin magnetic quantum number,* and s is the *spin quantum number.* This last can have either positive half-integer values $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \ldots)$ or nonnegative integer values $(0, 1, 2, \ldots)$. For example, an electron has the value $s = \frac{1}{2}$. Hence the spin of an electron (measured along any direction, such as the z direction) can have the values

$$S_z = \tfrac{1}{2}\hbar \quad \text{(spin up)}$$

or

$$S_z = -\tfrac{1}{2}\hbar \quad \text{(spin down)}.$$

Confusingly, the term *spin* is used in two ways: It properly means a particle's intrinsic angular momentum $\vec{S}$, but it is often used loosely to mean the particle's spin quantum number s. In the latter case, for example, an electron is said to be a spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particle.

Particles with half-integer spin quantum numbers (like electrons) are called **fermions,** after Fermi, who (simultaneously with Paul Dirac) discovered the statistical laws that govern their behavior. Like electrons, protons and neutrons also have $s = \frac{1}{2}$ and are fermions.

Particles with zero or integer spin quantum numbers are called **bosons,** after Indian physicist Satyendra Nath Bose, who (simultaneously with Albert Einstein) discovered the governing statistical laws for *those* particles. Photons, which have $s = 1$, are bosons; you will soon meet other particles in this class.

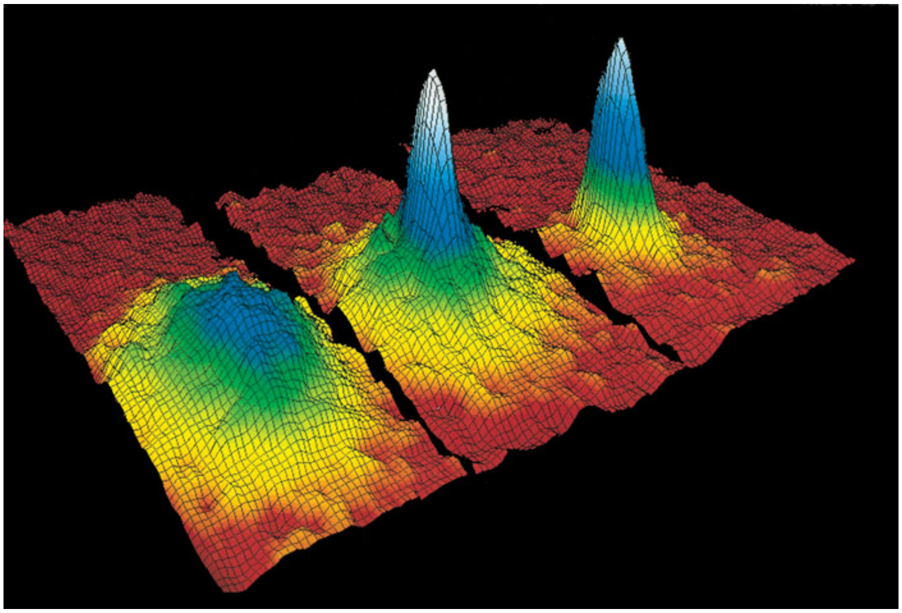
This may seem a trivial way to classify particles, but it is very important for this reason:

> Fermions obey the Pauli exclusion principle, which asserts that only a single particle can be assigned to a given quantum state. Bosons *do not* obey this principle. Any number of bosons can occupy a given quantum state.

We saw how important the Pauli exclusion principle is when we "built up" the atoms by assigning (spin-$\frac{1}{2}$) electrons to individual quantum states. Using that principle led to a full accounting of the structure and properties of atoms of different types and of solids such as metals and semiconductors.

Because bosons do *not* obey the Pauli principle, those particles tend to pile up in the quantum state of lowest energy. In 1995 a group in Boulder, Colorado, succeeded in producing a condensate of about 2000 rubidium-87 atoms—they are bosons—in a single quantum state of approximately zero energy.

For this to happen, the rubidium has to be a vapor with a temperature so low and a density so great that the de Broglie wavelengths of the individual atoms are greater than the average separation between the atoms. When this condition is met, the wave functions of the individual atoms overlap and the entire assembly becomes a single quantum system (one big atom) called a *Bose–Einstein condensate.* Figure 44-1 shows that, as the temperature of the rubidium vapor is lowered to about 1.70×10^{-7} K, the atoms do indeed "collapse" into a single sharply defined state corresponding to approximately zero speed.



Courtesy Michael Mathews

(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 44-1 Three plots of the particle speed distribution in a vapor of rubidium-87 atoms. The temperature of the vapor is successively reduced from plot (*a*) to plot (*c*). Plot (*c*) shows a sharp peak centered around zero speed; that is, all the atoms are in the same quantum state. The achievement of such a Bose–Einstein condensate, often called the Holy Grail of atomic physics, was finally recorded in 1995.

Hadron or Lepton?

We can also classify particles in terms of the four fundamental forces that act on them. The *gravitational force* acts on *all* particles, but its effects at the level of subatomic particles are so weak that we need not consider that force (at least not in today's research). The *electromagnetic force* acts on all *electrically charged* particles; its effects are well known, and we can take them into account when we need to; we largely ignore this force in this chapter.

We are left with the *strong force,* which is the force that binds nucleons together, and the *weak force,* which is involved in beta decay and similar processes. The weak force acts on all particles, the strong force only on some.

We can, then, roughly classify particles on the basis of whether the strong force acts on them. Particles on which the strong force acts are called **hadrons.** Particles on which the strong force does *not* act, leaving the weak force and the electromagnetic force as the dominant forces, are called **leptons.** Protons, neutrons, and pions are hadrons; electrons and neutrinos are leptons.

We can make a further distinction among the hadrons because some of them are bosons (we call them **mesons**); the pion is an example. The other hadrons are fermions (we call them **baryons**); the proton is an example.

Particle or Antiparticle?

In 1928 Dirac predicted that the electron e^- should have a positively charged counterpart of the same mass and spin. The counterpart, the *positron* e^+, was discovered in cosmic radiation in 1932 by Carl Anderson. Physicists then gradually realized that *every* particle has a corresponding **antiparticle.** The members of such pairs have the same mass and spin but opposite signs of electric charge (if they are charged) and opposite signs of quantum numbers that we have not yet discussed.

At first, *particle* was used to refer to the common particles such as electrons, protons, and neutrons, and *antiparticle* referred to their rarely detected counterparts. Later, for the less common particles, the assignment of *particle* and *antiparticle* was made so as to be consistent with certain conservation laws that we shall discuss later in this chapter. (Confusingly, both particles and antiparticles are sometimes called particles when no distinction is needed.) We often, but not always, represent an antiparticle by putting a bar over the symbol for the particle. Thus, p is the symbol for the proton, and $\bar{p}$ (pronounced "p bar") is the symbol for the antiproton.

Annihilation. When a particle meets its antiparticle, the two can *annihilate* each other. That is, the particle and antiparticle disappear and their combined energies reappear in other forms. For an electron annihilating with a positron, this energy reappears as two gamma-ray photons:

$$e^- + e^+ \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma. \tag{44-5}$$

If the electron and positron are stationary when they annihilate, their total energy is their total mass energy, and that energy is then shared equally by the two photons. To conserve momentum and because photons cannot be stationary, the photons fly off in opposite directions.

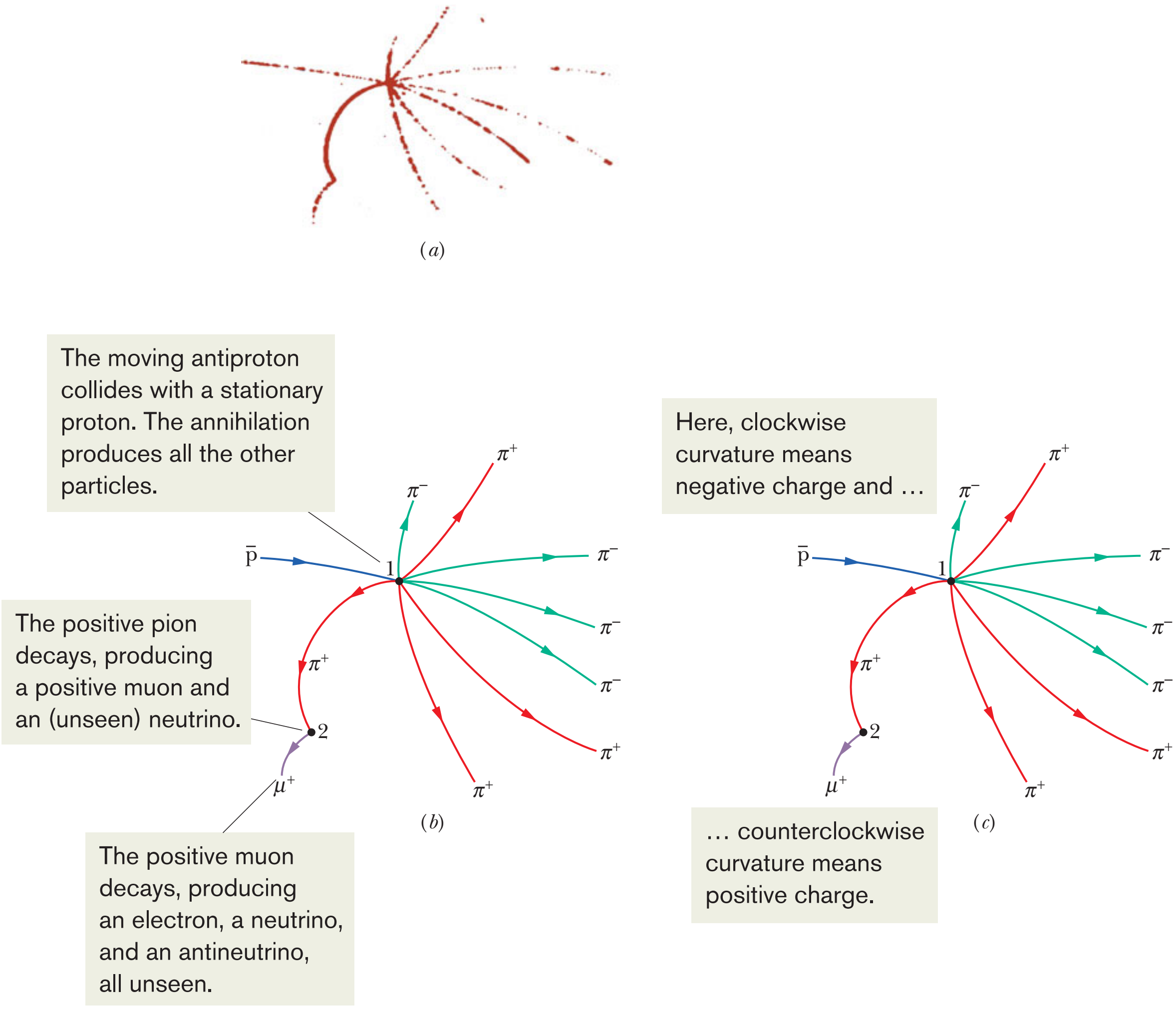
Antihydrogen atoms (each with an antiproton and positron instead of a proton and electron in a hydrogen atom) are now being manufactured and studied at CERN. The Standard Model predicts that a transition in an antihydrogen atom (say, between the first excited state and the ground state) is identical to the same transition in a hydrogen atom. Thus, any difference in the transitions would clearly signal that the Standard Model is erroneous; no difference has yet been spotted.

An assembly of antiparticles, such as an antihydrogen atom, is often called *antimatter* to distinguish it from an assembly of common particles (*matter*). (The terms can easily be confusing when the word "matter" is used to describe anything that has mass.) We can speculate that future scientists and engineers may construct objects of antimatter. However, no evidence suggests that nature has already done this on an astronomical scale because all stars and galaxies appear to consist largely of matter and not antimatter. This is a perplexing observation because it means that when the universe began, some feature biased the conditions toward matter and away from antimatter. (For example, electrons are common but positrons are not.) This bias is still not well understood.

An Interlude

Before pressing on with the task of classifying the particles, let us step aside for a moment and capture some of the spirit of particle research by analyzing a typical particle event—namely, that shown in the bubble-chamber photograph of Fig. 44-2*a*.

The tracks in this figure consist of bubbles formed along the paths of electrically charged particles as they move through a chamber filled with liquid hydrogen. We can identify the particle that makes a particular track by—among other means—measuring the relative spacing between the bubbles. The chamber lies in a uniform magnetic field that deflects the tracks of positively



The moving antiproton collides with a stationary proton. The annihilation produces all the other particles.

The positive pion decays, producing a positive muon and an (unseen) neutrino.

The positive muon decays, producing an electron, a neutrino, and an antineutrino, all unseen.

Here, clockwise curvature means negative charge and …

… counterclockwise curvature means positive charge.

Part (*a*): Courtesy Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory

Figure 44-2 (*a*) A bubble-chamber photograph of a series of events initiated by an antiproton that enters the chamber from the left. (*b*) The tracks redrawn and labeled for clarity. (*c*) The tracks are curved because a magnetic field present in the chamber exerts a deflecting force on each moving charged particle.

Table 44-1 **The Particles or Antiparticles Involved in the Event of Fig. 44-2**

Particle	Symbol	Charge q	Mass (MeV/c^2)	Spin Quantum Number s	Identity	Mean Life (s)	Antiparticle
Neutrino	ν	0	$\approx 1 \times 10^{-7}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	Lepton	Stable	$\bar{\nu}$
Electron	e^-	-1	0.511	$\frac{1}{2}$	Lepton	Stable	e^+
Muon	μ^-	-1	105.7	$\frac{1}{2}$	Lepton	2.2×10^{-6}	μ^+
Pion	π^+	$+1$	139.6	0	Meson	2.6×10^{-8}	π^-
Proton	p	$+1$	938.3	$\frac{1}{2}$	Baryon	Stable	$\bar{p}$

charged particles counterclockwise and the tracks of negatively charged particles clockwise. By measuring the radius of curvature of a track, we can calculate the momentum of the particle that made it. Table 44-1 shows some properties of the particles and antiparticles that participated in the event of Fig. 44-2*a*, including those that did not make tracks. Following common practice, we express the masses of the particles listed in Table 44-1—and in all other tables in this chapter—in the unit MeV/c^2. The reason for this notation is that the rest energy of a particle is needed more often than its mass. Thus, the mass of a proton is shown in Table 44-1 to be 938.3 MeV/c^2. To find the proton's rest energy, multiply this mass by c^2 to obtain 938.3 MeV.

The general tools used for the analysis of photographs like Fig. 44-2*a* are the laws of conservation of energy, linear momentum, angular momentum, and electric charge, along with other conservation laws that we have not yet discussed. Figure 44-2*a* is actually one of a stereo pair of photographs so that, in practice, these analyses are carried out in three dimensions.

The event of Fig. 44-2*a* is triggered by an energetic antiproton ($\bar{p}$) that, generated in an accelerator at the Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, enters the chamber from the left. There are three separate subevents; one occurs at point 1 in Fig. 44-2*b*, the second occurs at point 2, and the third occurs out of the frame of the figure. Let's examine each:

1. *Proton–Antiproton Annihilation.* At point 1 in Fig. 44-2*b*, the initiating antiproton (blue track) slams into a proton of the liquid hydrogen in the chamber, and the result is mutual annihilation. We can tell that annihilation occurred while the incoming antiproton was in flight because most of the particles generated in the encounter move in the forward direction—that is, toward the right in Fig. 44-2. From the principle of conservation of linear momentum, the incoming antiproton must have had a forward momentum when it underwent annihilation. Further, because the particles are charged and moving through a magnetic field, the curvature of the paths reveal whether the particles are negatively charged (like the incident antiproton) or positively charged (Fig. 44-2*c*).

The total energy involved in the collision of the antiproton and the proton is the sum of the antiproton's kinetic energy and the two (identical) rest energies of those two particles (2 × 938.3 MeV, or 1876.6 MeV). This is enough energy to create a number of lighter particles and give them kinetic energy. In this case, the annihilation produces four positive pions (red tracks in Fig. 44-2*b*) and four negative pions (green tracks). (For simplicity, we assume that no gamma-ray photons, which would leave no tracks because they lack electric charge, are produced.) Thus we conclude that the annihilation process is

$$p + \bar{p} \rightarrow 4\pi^+ + 4\pi^-. \tag{44-6}$$

We see from Table 44-1 that the positive pions (π^+) are *particles* and the negative pions (π^-) are *antiparticles*. The reaction of Eq. 44-6 is a *strong interac-*

tion (it involves the strong force) because all the particles involved are hadrons.

Let us check whether electric charge is conserved in the reaction. To do so, we can write the electric charge of a particle as qe, in which q is a **charge quantum number.** Then determining whether electric charge is conserved in a process amounts to determining whether the initial net charge quantum number is equal to the final net charge quantum number. In the process of Eq. 44-6, the initial net charge number is $1 + (-1)$, or 0, and the final net charge number is $4(1) + 4(-1)$, or 0. Thus, charge *is* conserved.

For the energy balance, note from above that the energy available from the p-p̄ annihilation process is at least the sum of the proton and antiproton rest energies, 1876.6 MeV. The rest energy of a pion is 139.6 MeV, which means the rest energies of the eight pions amount to 8×139.6 MeV, or 1116.8 MeV. This leaves at least about 760 MeV to distribute among the eight pions as kinetic energy. Thus, the requirement of energy conservation is easily met.

2. *Pion Decay.* Pions are unstable particles and decay with a mean lifetime of 2.6×10^{-8} s. At point 2 in Fig. 44-2*b*, one of the positive pions comes to rest in the chamber and decays spontaneously into an antimuon μ^+ (purple track) and a neutrino ν:

$$\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu. \tag{44-7}$$

The neutrino, being uncharged, leaves no track. Both the antimuon and the neutrino are leptons; that is, they are particles on which the strong force does not act. Thus, the decay process of Eq. 44-7, which is governed by the weak force, is described as a *weak interaction.*

Let's consider the energies in the decay. From Table 44-1, the rest energy of an antimuon is 105.7 MeV and the rest energy of a neutrino is approximately 0. Because the pion is at rest when it decays, its energy is just its rest energy, 139.6 MeV. Thus, an energy of 139.6 MeV − 105.7 MeV, or 33.9 MeV, is available to share between the antimuon and the neutrino as kinetic energy.

Let us check whether spin angular momentum is conserved in the process of Eq. 44-7. This amounts to determining whether the net component S_z of spin angular momentum along some arbitrary z axis can be conserved by the process. The spin quantum numbers s of the particles in the process are 0 for the pion π^+ and $\frac{1}{2}$ for both the antimuon μ^+ and the neutrino ν. Thus, for π^+, the component S_z must be $0\hbar$, and for μ^+ and ν, it can be either $+\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ or $-\frac{1}{2}\hbar$.

The net component S_z is conserved by the process of Eq. 44-7 if there is *any* way in which the initial S_z $(= 0\hbar)$ can be equal to the final net S_z. We see that if one of the products, either μ^+ or ν, has $S_z = +\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ and the other has $S_z = -\frac{1}{2}\hbar$, then their final net value is $0\hbar$. Thus, because S_z can be conserved, the decay process of Eq. 44-7 *can* occur.

From Eq. 44-7, we also see that the net charge is conserved by the process: before the process the net charge quantum number is +1, and after the process it is $+1 + 0 = +1$.

3. *Muon Decay.* Muons (whether μ^- or μ^+) are also unstable, decaying with a mean life of 2.2×10^{-6} s. Although the decay products are not shown in Fig. 44-2, the antimuon produced in the reaction of Eq. 44-7 comes to rest and decays spontaneously according to

$$\mu^+ \rightarrow e^+ + \nu + \bar{\nu}. \tag{44-8}$$

The rest energy of the antimuon is 105.7 MeV, and that of the positron is only 0.511 MeV, leaving 105.2 MeV to be shared as kinetic energy among the three particles produced in the decay process of Eq. 44-8.

You may wonder: Why *two* neutrinos in Eq. 44-8? Why not just one, as in the pion decay in Eq. 44-7? One answer is that the spin quantum numbers of the antimuon, the positron, and the neutrino are each $\frac{1}{2}$; with only one neutrino, the net component S_z of spin angular momentum could not be conserved in the antimuon decay of Eq. 44-8. In Module 44-2 we shall discuss another reason.

Sample Problem 44.01 Momentum and kinetic energy in a pion decay

A stationary positive pion can decay according to

$$\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu.$$

What is the kinetic energy of the antimuon μ^+? What is the kinetic energy of the neutrino?

KEY IDEA

The pion decay process must conserve both total energy and total linear momentum.

Energy conservation: Let us first write the conservation of total energy (rest energy mc^2 plus kinetic energy K) for the decay process as

$$m_\pi c^2 + K_\pi = m_\mu c^2 + K_\mu + m_\nu c^2 + K_\nu.$$

Because the pion was stationary, its kinetic energy K_π is zero. Then, using the masses listed for m_π, m_μ, and m_ν in Table 44-1, we find

$$\begin{aligned} K_\mu + K_\nu &= m_\pi c^2 - m_\mu c^2 - m_\nu c^2 \\ &= 139.6\text{ MeV} - 105.7\text{ MeV} - 0 \\ &= 33.9\text{ MeV}, \end{aligned} \tag{44-9}$$

where we have approximated m_ν as zero.

Momentum conservation: We cannot solve Eq. 44-9 for either K_μ or K_ν separately, and so let us next apply the principle of conservation of linear momentum to the decay process. Because the pion is stationary when it decays, that principle requires that the muon and neutrino move in opposite directions after the decay. Assume that their motion is along an axis. Then, for components along that axis, we can write the conservation of linear momentum for the decay as

$$p_\pi = p_\mu + p_\nu,$$

which, with $p_\pi = 0$, gives us

$$p_\mu = -p_\nu. \tag{44-10}$$

Relating p and K: We want to relate these momenta p_μ and $-p_\nu$ to the kinetic energies K_μ and K_ν so that we can solve for the kinetic energies. Because we have no reason to believe that classical physics can be applied, we use Eq. 37-54, the momentum–kinetic energy relation from special relativity:

$$(pc)^2 = K^2 + 2Kmc^2. \tag{44-11}$$

From Eq. 44-10, we know that

$$(p_\mu c)^2 = (p_\nu c)^2. \tag{44-12}$$

Substituting from Eq. 44-11 for each side of Eq. 44-12 yields

$$K_\mu^2 + 2K_\mu m_\mu c^2 = K_\nu^2 + 2K_\nu m_\nu c^2.$$

Approximating the neutrino mass to be $m_\nu = 0$, substituting $K_\nu = 33.9\text{ MeV} - K_\mu$ from Eq. 44-9, and then solving for K_μ, we find

$$\begin{aligned} K_\mu &= \frac{(33.9\text{ MeV})^2}{(2)(33.9\text{ MeV} + m_\mu c^2)} \\ &= \frac{(33.9\text{ MeV})^2}{(2)(33.9\text{ MeV} + 105.7\text{ MeV})} \\ &= 4.12\text{ MeV}. \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

The kinetic energy of the neutrino is then, from Eq. 44-9,

$$\begin{aligned} K_\nu &= 33.9\text{ MeV} - K_\mu = 33.9\text{ MeV} - 4.12\text{ MeV} \\ &= 29.8\text{ MeV}. \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

We see that, although the magnitudes of the momenta of the two recoiling particles are the same, the neutrino gets the larger share (88%) of the kinetic energy.

Sample Problem 44.02 Q in a proton-pion reaction

The protons in the material filling a bubble chamber are bombarded with a beam of high-energy antiparticles known as negative pions. At collision points, a proton and a pion transform into a negative kaon and a positive sigma in this reaction:

$$\pi^- + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{K}^- + \Sigma^+.$$

The rest energies of these particles are

π^-	139.6 MeV	K^-	493.7 MeV
p	938.3 MeV	Σ^+	1189.4 MeV

What is the Q of the reaction?

KEY IDEA

The Q of a reaction is

$$Q = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{initial total}\\ \text{mass energy}\end{array}\right) - \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{final total}\\ \text{mass energy}\end{array}\right).$$

Calculation: For the given reaction, we find

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= (m_\pi c^2 + m_\mathrm{p} c^2) - (m_\mathrm{K} c^2 + m_\Sigma c^2) \\ &= (139.6\text{ MeV} + 938.3\text{ MeV}) \\ &\quad -(493.7\text{ MeV} + 1189.4\text{ MeV}) \\ &= -605\text{ MeV}. \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

The minus sign means that the reaction is *endothermic;* that is, the incoming pion (π^-) must have a kinetic energy greater than a certain threshold value if the reaction is to occur. The threshold energy is actually greater than 605 MeV because linear momentum must be conserved. (The incoming pion has momentum.) This means that the kaon (K^-) and the sigma (Σ^+) not only must be created but also must be given some kinetic energy. A relativistic calculation whose details are beyond our scope shows that the threshold energy for the reaction is 907 MeV.

44-2 LEPTONS, HADRONS, AND STRANGENESS

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

44.09 Identify that there are six leptons (with an antiparticle each) in three families, with a different type of neutrino in each family.

44.10 To see if a given process for elementary particles is physically possible, determine whether it conserves lepton number and whether it conserves the individual family lepton numbers.

44.11 Identify that there is a quantum number called baryon number associated with the baryons.

44.12 To see if a given process for elementary particles is physically possible, determine whether the process conserves baryon number.

44.13 Identify that there is a quantum number called strangeness associated with some of the baryons and mesons.

44.14 Identify that strangeness must be conserved in an interaction involving the strong force, but this conservation law can be broken for other interactions.

44.15 Describe the eightfold-way patterns.

Key Ideas

- We can classify particles and their antiparticles into two main types: leptons and hadrons. The latter consists of mesons and baryons.
- Three of the leptons (the electron, muon, and tau) have electric charge equal to $-1e$. There are also three uncharged neutrinos (also leptons), one corresponding to each of the charged leptons. The antiparticles for the charged leptons have positive charge.
- To explain the possible and impossible reactions of these particles, each is assigned a lepton quantum number, which must be conserved in a reaction.
- The leptons have half-integer spin quantum numbers and are thus fermions, which obey the Pauli exclusion principle.
- Baryons, including protons and neutrons, are hadrons with half-integer spin quantum numbers and thus are also fermions.
- Mesons are hadrons with integer spin quantum numbers and thus are bosons, which do not obey the Pauli exclusion principle.
- To explain the possible and impossible reactions of these particles, baryons are assigned a baryon quantum number, which must be conserved in a reaction.
- Baryons are also assigned a strangeness quantum number, but it is conserved only in reactions involving the strong force.

The Leptons

In this module, we discuss some of the particles of one of our classification schemes: lepton or hadron. We begin with the leptons, those particles on which the strong force does *not* act. So far, we have encountered the familiar electron and the neutrino that accompanies it in beta decay. The muon, whose decay is described in Eq. 44-8, is another member of this family. Physicists gradually learned that the neutrino that appears in Eq. 44-7, associated with the production of a muon, is *not the same particle* as the neutrino produced in beta decay, associated with the appearance of an electron. We call the former the **muon neutrino** (symbol ν_μ) and the latter the **electron neutrino** (symbol ν_e) when it is necessary to distinguish between them.

Table 44-2 The Leptons[a]

Family	Particle	Symbol	Mass (MeV/c^2)	Charge q	Antiparticle
Electron	Electron	e^-	0.511	-1	e^+
	Electron neutrino[b]	ν_e	$\approx 1 \times 10^{-7}$	0	$\bar{\nu}_e$
Muon	Muon	μ^-	105.7	-1	μ^+
	Muon neutrino[b]	ν_μ	$\approx 1 \times 10^{-7}$	0	$\bar{\nu}_\mu$
Tau	Tau	τ^-	1777	-1	τ^+
	Tau neutrino[b]	ν_τ	$\approx 1 \times 10^{-7}$	0	$\bar{\nu}_\tau$

[a] All leptons have spin quantum numbers of $\frac{1}{2}$ and are thus fermions.

[b] The neutrino masses have not been well determined. Also, because of neutrino oscillations, we might not be able to associate a particular mass with a particular neutrino.

These two types of neutrino are known to be different particles because, if a beam of muon neutrinos (produced from pion decay as in Eq. 44-7) strikes a solid target, *only muons*—and never electrons—are produced. On the other hand, if electron neutrinos (produced by the beta decay of fission products in a nuclear reactor) strike a solid target, *only electrons*—and never muons—are produced.

Another lepton, the **tau,** was discovered at SLAC in 1975; its discoverer, Martin Perl, shared the 1995 Nobel Prize in physics. The tau has its own associated neutrino, different still from the other two. Table 44-2 lists all the leptons (both particles and antiparticles); all have a spin quantum number s of $\frac{1}{2}$.

There are reasons for dividing the leptons into three families, each consisting of a particle (electron, muon, or tau), its associated neutrino, and the corresponding antiparticles. Furthermore, there are reasons to believe that there are *only* the three families of leptons shown in Table 44-2. Leptons have no internal structure and no measurable dimensions; they are believed to be truly pointlike fundamental particles when they interact with other particles or with electromagnetic waves.

The Conservation of Lepton Number

According to experiment, particle interactions involving leptons obey a conservation law for a quantum number called the **lepton number** L. Each (normal) particle in Table 44-2 is assigned $L = +1$, and each antiparticle is assigned $L = -1$. All other particles, which are not leptons, are assigned $L = 0$. Also according to experiment,

In all particle interactions, the net lepton number is conserved.

This experimental fact is called the law of **conservation of lepton number.** We do not know *why* the law must be obeyed; we only know that this conservation law is part of the way our universe works.

There are actually three types of lepton number, one for each lepton family: the electron lepton number L_e, the muon lepton number L_μ, and the tau lepton number L_τ. In nearly all observed interactions, these three quantum numbers are separately conserved. An important exception involves the neutrinos. For reasons that we cannot explore here, the fact that neutrinos are not massless means that they can "oscillate" between different types as they travel long distances. Such oscillations were proposed to explain why only about a third of the expected number of electron neutrinos arrive at Earth from the proton-proton fusion mechanism in the Sun (Fig. 43-11). The rest change on the way. The oscillations, then, mean that the individual family lepton numbers are not conserved for neutrinos. In this book we shall not consider such violations and shall always conserve the individual family lepton numbers.

Let's illustrate such conservation by reconsidering the antimuon decay process shown in Eq. 44-8, which we now write more fully as

$$\mu^+ \rightarrow e^+ + \nu_e + \bar{\nu}_\mu. \tag{44-13}$$

Consider this first in terms of the muon family of leptons. The μ^+ is an antiparticle (see Table 44-2) and thus has the muon lepton number $L_\mu = -1$. The two particles e^+ and ν_e do not belong to the muon family and thus have $L_\mu = 0$. This leaves $\bar{\nu}_\mu$ on the right which, being an antiparticle, also has the muon lepton number $L_\mu = -1$. Thus, both sides of Eq. 44-13 have the same net muon lepton number—namely, $L_\mu = -1$; if they did not, the μ^+ would not decay by this process.

No members of the electron family appear on the left in Eq. 44-13; so there the net electron lepton number must be $L_e = 0$. On the right side of Eq. 44-13, the positron, being an antiparticle (again see Table 44-2), has the electron lepton number $L_e = -1$. The electron neutrino ν_e, being a particle, has the electron number $L_e = +1$. Thus, the net electron lepton number for these two particles on the right in Eq. 44-13 is also zero; the electron lepton number is also conserved in the process.

Because no members of the tau family appear on either side of Eq. 44-13, we must have $L_\tau = 0$ on each side. Thus, each of the lepton quantum numbers L_μ, L_e, and L_τ remains unchanged during the decay process of Eq. 44-13, their constant values being -1, 0, and 0, respectively.

☑ Checkpoint 1

(a) The π^+ meson decays by the process $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu$. To what lepton family does the neutrino ν belong? (b) Is this neutrino a particle or an antiparticle? (c) What is its lepton number?

The Hadrons

We are now ready to consider hadrons (baryons and mesons), those particles whose interactions are governed by the strong force. We start by adding another conservation law to our list: conservation of baryon number.

To develop this conservation law, let us consider the proton decay process

$$p \rightarrow e^+ + \nu_e. \tag{44-14}$$

This process *never* happens. We should be glad that it does not because otherwise all protons in the universe would gradually change into positrons, with disastrous consequences for us. Yet this decay process does not violate the conservation laws involving energy, linear momentum, or lepton number.

We account for the apparent stability of the proton—and for the absence of many other processes that might otherwise occur—by introducing a new quantum number, the **baryon number** B, and a new conservation law, the **conservation of baryon number:**

> To every baryon we assign $B = +1$. To every antibaryon we assign $B = -1$. To all particles of other types we assign $B = 0$. A particle process cannot occur if it changes the net baryon number.

In the process of Eq. 44-14, the proton has a baryon number of $B = +1$ and the positron and neutrino both have a baryon number of $B = 0$. Thus, the process does not conserve baryon number and cannot occur.

Checkpoint 2

This mode of decay for a neutron is *not* observed:

$$n \rightarrow p + e^-.$$

Which of the following conservation laws does this process violate: (a) energy, (b) angular momentum, (c) linear momentum, (d) charge, (e) lepton number, (f) baryon number? The masses are $m_n = 939.6\ \text{MeV}/c^2$, $m_p = 938.3\ \text{MeV}/c^2$, and $m_e = 0.511\ \text{MeV}/c^2$.

Still Another Conservation Law

Particles have intrinsic properties in addition to the ones we have listed so far: mass, charge, spin, lepton number, and baryon number. The first of these additional properties was discovered when researchers observed that certain new particles, such as the kaon (K) and the sigma (Σ), always seemed to be produced in pairs. It seemed impossible to produce only one of them at a time. Thus, if a beam of energetic pions interacts with the protons in a bubble chamber, the reaction

$$\pi^+ + p \rightarrow K^+ + \Sigma^+ \tag{44-15}$$

often occurs. The reaction

$$\pi^+ + p \rightarrow \pi^+ + \Sigma^+, \tag{44-16}$$

which violates no conservation law known in the early days of particle physics, never occurs.

It was eventually proposed (by Murray Gell-Mann in the United States and independently by K. Nishijima in Japan) that certain particles possess a new property, called **strangeness,** with its own quantum number S and its own conservation law. (Be careful not to confuse the symbol S here with the symbol for spin.) The name *strangeness* arises from the fact that, before the identities of these particles were pinned down, they were known as "strange particles," and the label stuck.

The proton, neutron, and pion have $S = 0$; that is, they are not "strange." It was proposed, however, that the K^+ particle has strangeness $S = +1$ and that Σ^+ has $S = -1$. In the reaction of Eq. 44-15, the net strangeness is initially zero and finally zero; thus, the reaction conserves strangeness. However, in the reaction shown in Eq. 44-16, the final net strangeness is -1; thus, that reaction does not conserve strangeness and cannot occur. Apparently, then, we must add one more conservation law to our list—the **conservation of strangeness:**

Strangeness is conserved in interactions involving the strong force.

Strange particles are produced only (rapidly) by strong interactions and only in pairs with a net strangeness of zero. They then decay (slowly) through weak interactions without conserving strangeness.

It may seem heavy-handed to invent a new property of particles just to account for a little puzzle like that posed by Eqs. 44-15 and 44-16. However, strangeness soon solved many other puzzles. Still, do not be misled by the whimsical name. Strangeness is no more mysterious a property of particles than is charge. Both are properties that particles may (or may not) have; each is described by an appropriate quantum number. Each obeys a conservation law. Still other properties of particles have been discovered and given even more whimsical names, such as *charm* and *bottomness,* but all are perfectly legitimate properties. Let us see, as an example, how the new property of strangeness "earns its keep" by leading us to uncover important regularities in the properties of the particles.

Table 44-3 Eight Spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ Baryons

Particle	Symbol	Mass (MeV/c^2)	Quantum Numbers	
			Charge q	Strangeness S
Proton	p	938.3	+1	0
Neutron	n	939.6	0	0
Lambda	Λ^0	1115.6	0	−1
Sigma	Σ^+	1189.4	+1	−1
Sigma	Σ^0	1192.5	0	−1
Sigma	Σ^-	1197.3	−1	−1
Xi	Ξ^0	1314.9	0	−2
Xi	Ξ^-	1321.3	−1	−2

Table 44-4 Nine Spin-Zero Mesons[a]

Particle	Symbol	Mass (MeV/c^2)	Quantum Numbers	
			Charge q	Strangeness S
Pion	π^0	135.0	0	0
Pion	π^+	139.6	+1	0
Pion	π^-	139.6	−1	0
Kaon	K^+	493.7	+1	+1
Kaon	K^-	493.7	−1	−1
Kaon	K^0	497.7	0	+1
Kaon	$\overline{K}^0$	497.7	0	−1
Eta	η	547.5	0	0
Eta prime	η'	957.8	0	0

[a] All mesons are bosons, having spins of 0, 1, 2, ... The ones listed here all have a spin of 0.

The Eightfold Way

There are eight baryons—the neutron and the proton among them—that have a spin quantum number of $\frac{1}{2}$. Table 44-3 shows some of their other properties. Figure 44-3*a* shows the fascinating pattern that emerges if we plot the strangeness of these baryons against their charge quantum number, using a sloping axis for the charge quantum numbers. Six of the eight form a hexagon with the two remaining baryons at its center.

Let us turn now from the hadrons called baryons to the hadrons called mesons. Nine with a spin of zero are listed in Table 44-4. If we plot them on a sloping strangeness–charge diagram, as in Fig. 44-3*b*, the same fascinating pattern emerges! These and related plots, called the **eightfold way** patterns,* were proposed independently in 1961 by Murray Gell-Mann at the California Institute of Technology and by Yuval Ne'eman at Imperial College, London. The two patterns of Fig. 44-3 are representative of a larger number of symmetrical patterns in which groups of baryons and mesons can be displayed.

The symmetry of the eightfold way pattern for the spin-$\frac{3}{2}$ baryons (not shown here) calls for ten particles arranged in a pattern like that of the tenpins in a bowling alley. However, when the pattern was first proposed, only nine such particles were known; the "headpin" was missing. In 1962, guided by theory and the symmetry of the pattern, Gell-Mann made a prediction in which he essentially said:

> *There exists a spin-$\frac{3}{2}$ baryon with a charge of −1, a strangeness of −3, and a rest energy of about 1680 MeV. If you look for this omega minus particle (as I propose to call it), I think you will find it.*

A team of physicists headed by Nicholas Samios of the Brookhaven National Laboratory took up the challenge and found the "missing" particle, confirming all its predicted properties. Nothing beats prompt experimental confirmation for building confidence in a theory!

The eightfold way patterns bear the same relationship to particle physics that the periodic table does to chemistry. In each case, there is a pattern of organization in which vacancies (missing particles or missing elements) stick out like sore thumbs, guiding experimenters in their searches. In the case of the periodic table, its very existence strongly suggests that the atoms of the elements are not fundamental particles but have an underlying structure.

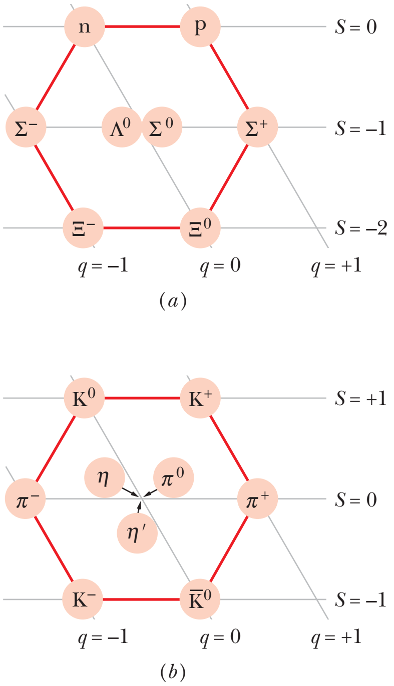


Figure 44-3 (*a*) The eightfold way pattern for the eight spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ baryons listed in Table 44-3. The particles are represented as disks on a strangeness–charge plot, using a sloping axis for the charge quantum number. (*b*) A similar pattern for the nine spin-zero mesons listed in Table 44-4.

---

*The name is a borrowing from Eastern mysticism. The "eight" refers to the eight quantum numbers (only a few of which we have defined here) that are involved in the symmetry-based theory that predicts the existence of the patterns.

Similarly, the eightfold way patterns strongly suggest that the mesons and the baryons must have an underlying structure, in terms of which their properties can be understood. That structure can be explained in terms of the *quark model,* which we now discuss.

Sample Problem 44.03 Proton decay: conservation of quantum numbers, energy, and momentum

Determine whether a stationary proton can decay according to the scheme

$$\mathrm{p} \rightarrow \pi^0 + \pi^+.$$

Properties of the proton and the π^+ pion are listed in Table 44-1. The π^0 pion has zero charge, zero spin, and a mass energy of 135.0 MeV.

KEY IDEA

We need to see whether the proposed decay violates any of the conservation laws we have discussed.

Electric charge: We see that the net charge quantum number is initially +1 and finally 0 + 1, or +1. Thus, charge is conserved by the decay. Lepton number is also conserved, because none of the three particles is a lepton and thus each lepton number is zero.

Linear momentum: Because the proton is stationary, with zero linear momentum, the two pions must merely move in opposite directions with equal magnitudes of linear momentum (so that their total linear momentum is also zero) to conserve linear momentum. The fact that linear momentum *can* be conserved means that the process does not violate the conservation of linear momentum.

Energy: Is there energy for the decay? Because the proton is stationary, that question amounts to asking whether the proton's mass energy is sufficient to produce the mass energies and kinetic energies of the pions. To answer, we evaluate the Q of the decay:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \begin{pmatrix}\text{initial total}\\ \text{mass energy}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{final total}\\ \text{mass energy}\end{pmatrix} \\ &= m_\mathrm{p}c^2 - (m_0c^2 + m_+c^2) \\ &= 938.3\ \mathrm{MeV} - (135.0\ \mathrm{MeV} + 139.6\ \mathrm{MeV}) \\ &= 663.7\ \mathrm{MeV}. \end{aligned}$$

The fact that Q is positive indicates that the initial mass energy exceeds the final mass energy. Thus, the proton *does* have enough mass energy to create the pair of pions.

Spin: Is spin angular momentum conserved by the decay? This amounts to determining whether the net component S_z of spin angular momentum along some arbitrary z axis can be conserved by the decay. The spin quantum numbers s of the particles in the process are $\frac{1}{2}$ for the proton and 0 for both pions. Thus, for the proton the component S_z can be either $+\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ or $-\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ and for each pion it is $0\hbar$. We see that there is no way that S_z can be conserved. Hence, spin angular momentum is not conserved, and the proposed decay of the proton cannot occur.

Baryon number: The decay also violates the conservation of baryon number: The proton has a baryon number of $B = +1$, and both pions have a baryon number of $B = 0$. Thus, nonconservation of baryon number is another reason the proposed decay cannot occur.

Sample Problem 44.04 Xi-minus decay: conservation of quantum numbers

A particle called xi-minus and having the symbol Ξ^- decays as follows:

$$\Xi^- \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^-.$$

The Λ^0 particle (called lambda-zero) and the π^- particle are both unstable. The following decay processes occur in *cascade* until only relatively stable products remain:

$$\Lambda^0 \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \pi^- \qquad \pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}_\mu$$
$$\mu^- \rightarrow \mathrm{e}^- + \nu_\mu + \bar{\nu}_\mathrm{e}.$$

(a) Is the Ξ^- particle a lepton or a hadron? If the latter, is it a baryon or a meson?

KEY IDEAS

(1) Only three families of leptons exist (Table 44-2) and none include the Ξ^- particle. Thus, the Ξ^- must be a hadron. (2) To answer the second question we need to determine the baryon number of the Ξ^- particle. If it is +1 or −1, then the Ξ^- is a baryon. If, instead, it is 0, then the Ξ^- is a meson.

Baryon number: To see, let us write the overall decay scheme, from the initial Ξ^- to the final relatively stable products, as

$$\Xi^- \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + 2(\mathrm{e}^- + \bar{\nu}_\mathrm{e}) + 2(\nu_\mu + \bar{\nu}_\mu). \qquad (44\text{-}17)$$

On the right side, the proton has a baryon number of +1 and each electron and neutrino has a baryon number of 0. Thus, the net baryon number of the right side is +1. That must then be the baryon number of the lone Ξ^- particle on the left side. We conclude that the Ξ^- particle is a baryon.

(b) Does the decay process conserve the three lepton numbers?

KEY IDEA

Any process must separately conserve the net lepton number for each lepton family of Table 44-2.

Lepton number: Let us first consider the electron lepton number L_e, which is +1 for the electron e^-, −1 for the antielectron neutrino $\bar{\nu}_e$, and 0 for the other particles in the overall decay of Eq. 44-17. We see that the net L_e is 0 before the decay and $2[+1 + (-1)] + 2(0 + 0) = 0$ after the decay. Thus, the net electron lepton number *is* conserved. You can similarly show that the net muon lepton number and the net tau lepton number are also conserved.

(c) What can you say about the spin of the Ξ^- particle?

KEY IDEA

The overall decay scheme of Eq. 44-17 must conserve the net spin component S_z.

Spin: We can determine the spin component S_z of the Ξ^- particle on the left side of Eq. 44-17 by considering the S_z components of the nine particles on the right side. All nine of those particles are spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particles and thus can have S_z of either $+\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ or $-\frac{1}{2}\hbar$. No matter how we choose between those two possible values of S_z, the net S_z for those nine particles must be a *half-integer* times $\hbar$. Thus, the Ξ^- particle must have S_z of a *half-integer* times $\hbar$, and that means that its spin quantum number s must be a half-integer. (It is $\frac{1}{2}$.)

44-3 QUARKS AND MESSENGER PARTICLES

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

44.16 Identify that there are six quarks (with an antiparticle for each).

44.17 Identify that baryons contain three quarks (or antiquarks) and mesons contain a quark and an antiquark, and that many of these hadrons are excited states of the basic quark combinations.

44.18 For a given hadron, identify the quarks it contains, and vice versa.

44.19 Identify virtual particles.

44.20 Apply the relationship between the violation of energy by a virtual particle and the time interval allowed for that violation (an uncertainty principle written in terms of energy).

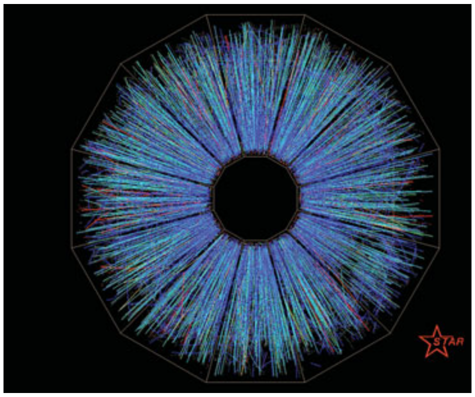
44.21 Identify the messenger particles for electromagnetic interactions, weak interactions, and strong interactions.

Key Ideas

- The six quarks (up, down, strange, charm, bottom, and top, in order of increasing mass) each have baryon number $+\frac{1}{3}$ and charge equal to either $+\frac{2}{3}$ or $-\frac{1}{3}$. The strange quark has strangeness −1, whereas the others all have strangeness 0. These four algebraic signs are reversed for the antiquarks.
- Leptons do not contain quarks and have no internal structure. Mesons contain one quark and one antiquark. Baryons contain three quarks or antiquarks. The quantum numbers of the quarks and antiquarks are assigned to be consistent with the quantum numbers of the mesons and baryons.
- Particles with electric charge interact through the electromagnetic force by exchanging virtual photons.
- Leptons can also interact with each other and with quarks through the weak force, via massive W and Z particles as messengers.
- Quarks primarily interact with each other through the color force, via gluons.
- The electromagnetic and weak forces are different manifestations of the same force, called the electroweak force.

The Quark Model

In 1964 Gell-Mann and George Zweig independently pointed out that the eightfold way patterns can be understood in a simple way if the mesons and the baryons are built up out of subunits that Gell-Mann called **quarks.** We deal first with three of them, called the *up quark* (symbol u), the *down quark* (symbol d), and the *strange quark* (symbol s). The names of the quarks, along with those assigned to three other quarks that we shall meet later, have no meaning other than



Courtesy Brookhaven National Laboratory

The violent head-on collision of two 30 GeV beams of gold atoms in the RHIC accelerator at the Brookhaven National Laboratory. In the moment of collision, a gas of individual quarks and gluons was created.

Table 44-5 The Quarks[a]

			Quantum Numbers			
Particle	Symbol	Mass (MeV/c^2)	Charge q	Strangeness S	Baryon Number B	Antiparticle
Up	u	5	$+\frac{2}{3}$	0	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{u}$
Down	d	10	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{d}$
Charm	c	1500	$+\frac{2}{3}$	0	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{c}$
Strange	s	200	$-\frac{1}{3}$	-1	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{s}$
Top	t	175 000	$+\frac{2}{3}$	0	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{t}$
Bottom	b	4300	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	$+\frac{1}{3}$	$\bar{b}$

[a] All quarks (including antiquarks) have spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and thus are fermions. The quantum numbers q, S, and B for each antiquark are the negatives of those for the corresponding quark.

as convenient labels. Collectively, these names are called the *quark flavors.* We could just as well call them vanilla, chocolate, and strawberry instead of up, down, and strange. Some properties of the quarks are displayed in Table 44-5.

The fractional charge quantum numbers of the quarks may jar you a little. However, withhold judgment until you see how neatly these fractional charges account for the observed integer charges of the mesons and the baryons. In all normal situations, whether here on Earth or in an astronomical process, quarks are always bound up together in twos or threes (and perhaps more) for reasons that are still not well understood. Such requirements are our normal rule for quark combinations.

An exciting exception to the normal rule occurred in experiments at the RHIC particle collider at the Brookhaven National Laboratory. At the spot where two high-energy beams of gold nuclei collided head-on, the kinetic energy of the particles was so large that it matched the kinetic energy of particles that were present soon after the beginning of the universe (as we discuss in Module 44-4). The protons and neutrons of the gold nuclei were ripped apart to form a momentary gas of individual quarks. (The gas also contained gluons, the particles that normally hold quarks together.) These experiments at RHIC may be the first time that quarks have been set free of one another since the universe began.

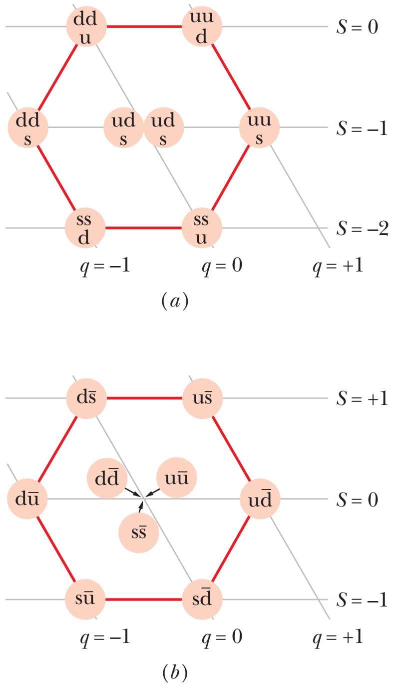


Figure 44-4 (*a*) The quark compositions of the eight spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ baryons plotted in Fig. 44-3*a*. (Although the two central baryons share the same quark structure, they are different particles. The sigma is an excited state of the lambda, decaying into the lambda by emission of a gamma-ray photon.) (*b*) The quark compositions of the nine spin-zero mesons plotted in Fig. 44-3*b*.

Quarks and Baryons

Each baryon is a combination of three quarks; some of the combinations are given in Fig. 44-4*a*. With regard to baryon number, we see that any three quarks (each with $B = +\frac{1}{3}$) yield a proper baryon (with $B = +1$).

Charges also work out, as we can see from three examples. The proton has a quark composition of uud, and so its charge quantum number is

$$q(\text{uud}) = \tfrac{2}{3} + \tfrac{2}{3} + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) = +1.$$

The neutron has a quark composition of udd, and its charge quantum number is therefore

$$q(\text{udd}) = \tfrac{2}{3} + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) = 0.$$

The Σ^- (sigma-minus) particle has a quark composition of dds, and its charge quantum number is therefore

$$q(\text{dds}) = -\tfrac{1}{3} + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) = -1.$$

The strangeness quantum numbers work out as well. You can check this by using Table 44-3 for the Σ^- strangeness number and Table 44-5 for the strangeness numbers of the dds quarks.

Note, however, that the mass of a proton, neutron, Σ^-, or any other baryon is *not* the sum of the masses of the constituent quarks. For example, the total mass of the three quarks in a proton is only 20 MeV/c^2, woefully less than the proton's mass of 938.3 MeV/c^2. Nearly all of the proton's mass is due to the internal energies of (1) the quark motion and (2) the fields that bind the quarks together. (Recall that mass is related to energy via Einstein's equation, which we can write as $m = E/c^2$.) Thus, because most of your mass is due to the protons and neutrons in your body, your mass (and therefore your weight on a bathroom scale) is primarily a measure of the energies of the quark motion and the quark-binding fields within you.

Quarks and Mesons

Mesons are quark–antiquark pairs; some of their compositions are given in Fig. 44-4*b*. The quark–antiquark model is consistent with the fact that mesons are not baryons; that is, mesons have a baryon number $B = 0$. The baryon number for a quark is $+\frac{1}{3}$ and for an antiquark is $-\frac{1}{3}$; thus, the combination of baryon numbers in a meson is zero.

Consider the meson π^+, which consists of an up quark u and an antidown quark $\bar{\text{d}}$. We see from Table 44-5 that the charge quantum number of the up quark is $+\frac{2}{3}$ and that of the antidown quark is $+\frac{1}{3}$ (the sign is opposite that of the down quark). This adds nicely to a charge quantum number of +1 for the π^+ meson; that is,

$$q(\text{u}\bar{\text{d}}) = \tfrac{2}{3} + \tfrac{1}{3} = +1.$$

All the charge and strangeness quantum numbers of Fig. 44-4*b* agree with those of Table 44-4 and Fig. 44-3*b*. Convince yourself that all possible up, down, and strange quark–antiquark combinations are used. Everything fits.

Checkpoint 3

Is a combination of a down quark (d) and an antiup quark ($\bar{\text{u}}$) called (a) a π^0 meson, (b) a proton, (c) a π^- meson, (d) a π^+ meson, or (e) a neutron?

A New Look at Beta Decay

Let us see how beta decay appears from the quark point of view. In Eq. 42-24, we presented a typical example of this process:

$$^{32}\text{P} \rightarrow {}^{32}\text{S} + \text{e}^- + \nu.$$

After the neutron was discovered and Fermi had worked out his theory of beta decay, physicists came to view the fundamental beta-decay process as the changing of a neutron into a proton inside the nucleus, according to the scheme

$$\text{n} \rightarrow \text{p} + \text{e}^- + \bar{\nu}_\text{e},$$

in which the neutrino is identified more completely. Today we look deeper and see that a neutron (udd) can change into a proton (uud) by changing a down quark into an up quark. We now view the fundamental beta-decay process as

$$\text{d} \rightarrow \text{u} + \text{e}^- + \bar{\nu}_\text{e}.$$

Thus, as we come to know more and more about the fundamental nature of matter, we can examine familiar processes at deeper and deeper levels. We see too that the quark model not only helps us to understand the structure of particles but also clarifies their interactions.

Still More Quarks

There are other particles and other eightfold way patterns that we have not discussed. To account for them, it turns out that we need to postulate three more quarks, the *charm quark* c, the *top quark* t, and the *bottom quark* b. Thus, a total of six quarks exist, as listed in Table 44-5.

Note that three quarks are exceptionally massive, the most massive of them (top) being almost 190 times more massive than a proton. To generate particles that contain such quarks, with such large mass energies, we must go to higher and higher energies, which is the reason that these three quarks were not discovered earlier.

The first particle containing a charm quark to be observed was the J/ψ meson, whose quark structure is $c\bar{c}$. It was discovered simultaneously and independently in 1974 by groups headed by Samuel Ting at the Brookhaven National Laboratory and Burton Richter at Stanford University.

The top quark defied all efforts to generate it in the laboratory until 1995, when its existence was finally demonstrated in the Tevatron, a large particle accelerator at Fermilab. In this accelerator, protons and antiprotons, each with an energy of 0.9 TeV ($= 9 \times 10^{11}$ eV), were made to collide at the centers of two large particle detectors. In a very few cases, the colliding particles generated a top–antitop ($t\bar{t}$) quark pair, which *very* quickly decays into particles that can be detected and thus can be used to infer the existence of the top–antitop pair.

Look back for a moment at Table 44-5 (the quark family) and Table 44-2 (the lepton family) and notice the neat symmetry of these two "six-packs" of particles, each dividing naturally into three corresponding two-particle families. In terms of what we know today, the quarks and the leptons seem to be truly fundamental particles having no internal structure.

Sample Problem 44.05 Quark composition of a xi-minus particle

The Ξ^- (xi-minus) particle is a baryon with a spin quantum number s of $\frac{1}{2}$, a charge quantum number q of -1, and a strangeness quantum number S of -2. Also, it does not contain a bottom quark. What combination of quarks makes up Ξ^-?

Reasoning: Because the Ξ^- is a baryon, it must consist of three quarks (not two as for a meson).

Let us next consider the strangeness $S = -2$ of the Ξ^-. Only the strange quark s and the antistrange quark $\bar{s}$ have nonzero values of strangeness (see Table 44-5). Further, because only the strange quark s has a *negative* value of strangeness, Ξ^- must contain that quark. In fact, for Ξ^- to have a strangeness of -2, it must contain two strange quarks.

To determine the third quark, call it x, we can consider the other known properties of Ξ^-. Its charge quantum number q is -1, and the charge quantum number q of each strange quark is $-\frac{1}{3}$. Thus, the third quark x must have a charge quantum number of $-\frac{1}{3}$, so that we can have

$$\begin{aligned} q(\Xi^-) &= q(\text{ssx}) \\ &= -\tfrac{1}{3} + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) + (-\tfrac{1}{3}) = -1. \end{aligned}$$

Besides the strange quark, the only quarks with $q = -\frac{1}{3}$ are the down quark d and bottom quark b. Because the problem statement ruled out a bottom quark, the third quark must be a down quark. This conclusion is also consistent with the baryon quantum numbers:

$$\begin{aligned} B(\Xi^-) &= B(\text{ssd}) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{3} + \tfrac{1}{3} + \tfrac{1}{3} = +1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the quark composition of the Ξ^- particle is ssd.

WILEY PLUS Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

The Basic Forces and Messenger Particles

We turn now from cataloging the particles to considering the forces between them.

The Electromagnetic Force

At the atomic level, we say that two electrons exert electromagnetic forces on each other according to Coulomb's law. At a deeper level, this interaction is described by a highly successful theory called **quantum electrodynamics** (QED). From this point of view, we say that each electron senses the presence of the other by exchanging photons with it.

We cannot detect these photons because they are emitted by one electron and absorbed by the other a very short time later. Because of their undetectable existence, we call them **virtual photons.** Because they communicate between the two interacting charged particles, we sometimes call these photons *messenger particles.*

If a stationary electron emits a photon and remains itself unchanged, energy is not conserved. The principle of conservation of energy is saved, however, by an uncertainty principle written in the form

$$\Delta E \cdot \Delta t \approx \hbar. \tag{44-18}$$

Here we interpret this relation to mean that you can "overdraw" an amount of energy ΔE, violating conservation of energy, *provided* you "return" it within an interval Δt given by $\hbar/\Delta E$ so that the violation cannot be detected. The virtual photons do just that. When, say, electron A emits a virtual photon, the overdraw in energy is quickly set right when that electron receives a virtual photon from electron B, and the violation is hidden by the inherent uncertainty.

The Weak Force

A theory of the weak force, which acts on all particles, was developed by analogy with the theory of the electromagnetic force. The messenger particles that transmit the weak force between particles, however, are not (massless) photons but massive particles, identified by the symbols W and Z. The theory was so successful that it revealed the electromagnetic force and the weak force as being different aspects of a single **electroweak force.** This accomplishment is a logical extension of the work of Maxwell, who revealed the electric and magnetic forces as being different aspects of a single *electromagnetic* force.

The electroweak theory was specific in predicting the properties of the messenger particles. In addition to the massless photon, the messenger of the electromagnetic interactions, the theory gives us three messengers for the weak interactions:

Particle	Charge	Mass
W	$\pm e$	80.4 GeV/c^2
Z	0	91.2 GeV/c^2

Recall that the proton mass is only 0.938 GeV/c^2; these are massive particles! The 1979 Nobel Prize in physics was awarded to Sheldon Glashow, Steven Weinberg, and Abdus Salam for their electroweak theory. The theory was confirmed in 1983 by Carlo Rubbia and his group at CERN, and the 1984 Nobel Prize in physics went to Rubbia and Simon van der Meer for this brilliant experimental work.

Some notion of the complexity of particle physics in this day and age can be found by looking at an earlier particle physics experiment that led to the Nobel Prize in physics—the discovery of the neutron. This vitally important discovery was a "tabletop" experiment, employing particles emitted by naturally occurring radioactive materials as projectiles; it was reported in 1932 under the title "Possible Existence of a Neutron," the single author being James Chadwick.

The discovery of the W and Z messenger particles in 1983, by contrast, was carried out at a large particle accelerator, about 7 km in circumference and operating in the range of several hundred billion electron-volts. The principal particle detector alone weighed 20 MN. The experiment employed more than 130 physicists from 12 institutions in 8 countries, along with a large support staff.

The Strong Force

A theory of the strong force—that is, the force that acts between quarks to bind hadrons together—has also been developed. The messenger particles in this case are called **gluons** and, like the photon, they are predicted to be massless. The theory assumes that each "flavor" of quark comes in three varieties that, for convenience, have been labeled *red, yellow,* and *blue.* Thus, there are three up quarks, one of each color, and so on. The antiquarks also come in three colors, which we call *antired, antiyellow,* and *antiblue.* You must not think that quarks are actually colored, like tiny jelly beans. The names are labels of convenience, but (for once) they do have a certain formal justification, as you will see.

The force acting between quarks is called a **color force** and the underlying theory, by analogy with quantum electrodynamics (QED), is called **quantum chromodynamics** (QCD). Apparently, quarks can be assembled only in combinations that are *color-neutral.*

There are two ways to bring about color neutrality. In the theory of actual colors, red + yellow + blue yields white, which is color-neutral, and we use the same scheme in dealing with quarks. Thus we can assemble three quarks to form a baryon, provided one is a yellow quark, one is a red quark, and one is a blue quark. Antired + antiyellow + antiblue is also white, so that we can assemble three antiquarks (of the proper anticolors) to form an antibaryon. Finally, red + antired, or yellow + antiyellow, or blue + antiblue also yields white. Thus, we can assemble a quark–antiquark combination to form a meson. The color-neutral rule does not permit any other combination of quarks, and none are observed.

The color force not only acts to bind together quarks as baryons and mesons, but it also acts between such particles, in which case it has traditionally been called the strong force. Hence, not only does the color force bind together quarks to form protons and neutrons, but it also binds together the protons and neutrons to form nuclei.

The Higgs Field and Particle

The Standard Model of the fundamental particles consists of the theory for the electroweak interactions and the theory for the strong interactions. A key success in the model has been to demonstrate the existence of the four messenger particles in the electroweak interactions: the photon, and the Z and W particles. However, a key puzzle has involved the masses of those particles. Why is the photon massless while the Z and W particles are extremely massive?

In the 1960s, Peter Higgs and, independently, Robert Brout and François Englert suggested that the mass discrepancy is due to a field (now called the *Higgs field*) that permeates all of space and thus is a property of the vacuum. Without this field, the four messenger particles would be massless and indistinguishable—they would be *symmetric*. The Brout–Englert–Higgs theory demonstrates how the field breaks that symmetry, producing the electroweak messengers with one being massless. It also explains why all other particles, except for the gluon, have mass. The quantum of that field is the **Higgs boson**. Because of its pivotal role for all particles and because the theory behind its existence is compelling (even beautiful), intense searches for the Higgs boson were conducted on the Tevatron at Brookhaven and the Large Hadron Collider at CERN. In 2012, tantalizing experimental evidence was announced for the Higgs boson, at a mass of 125 GeV/c^2.

Einstein's Dream

The unification of the fundamental forces of nature into a single force—which occupied Einstein's attention for much of his later life—is very much a current focus of research. We have seen that the weak force has been successfully combined with electromagnetism so that they may be jointly viewed as aspects of a single *electroweak force.* Theories that attempt to add the strong force to this combination—called *grand unification theories* (GUTs)—are being pursued actively. Theories that seek to complete the job by adding gravity—sometimes called *theories of everything* (TOE)—are at a speculative stage at this time. *String theory* (in which particles are tiny oscillating loops) is one approach.

44-4 COSMOLOGY

Learning Objectives

After reading this module, you should be able to . . .

44.22 Identify that the universe (all of spacetime) began with the big bang and has been expanding ever since.

44.23 Identify that all distant galaxies (and thus their stars, black holes, etc.), in all directions, are receding from us because of the expansion.

44.24 Apply Hubble's law to relate the recession speed v of a distant galaxy, its distance r from us, and the Hubble constant H.

44.25 Apply the Doppler equation for the red shift of light to relate the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$, the recession speed v, and the proper wavelength λ_0 of the emission.

44.26 Approximate the age of the universe using the Hubble constant.

44.27 Identify the cosmic background radiation and explain the importance of its detection.

44.28 Explain the evidence for the dark matter that apparently surrounds every galaxy.

44.29 Discuss the various stages of the universe from very soon after the big bang until atoms began to form.

44.30 Identify that the expansion of the universe is being accelerated by some unknown property dubbed dark energy.

44.31 Identify that the total energy of baryonic matter (protons and neutrons) is only a small part of the total energy of the universe.

Key Ideas

- The universe is expanding, which means that empty space is continuously appearing between us and any distant galaxy.
- The rate v at which a distance to a distant galaxy is increasing (the galaxy appears to be moving at speed v) is given by the Hubble law:

$$v = Hr,$$

where r is the current distance to the galaxy and H is the Hubble constant, which we take to be

$$H = 71.0 \text{ km/s} \cdot \text{Mpc} = 21.8 \text{ mm/s} \cdot \text{ly}.$$

- The expansion causes a red shift in the light we receive from distant galaxies. We can assume that the wavelength shift $\Delta\lambda$ is given (approximately) by the Doppler shift equation for light discussed in Module 37-5:

$$v = \frac{|\Delta\lambda|}{\lambda_0} c,$$

where λ_0 is the proper wavelength as measured in the frame of the light source (the galaxy).

- The expansion described by Hubble's law and the presence of ubiquitous background microwave radiation reveal that the universe began in a "big bang" 13.7 billion years ago.
- The rate of expansion is increasing due to a mysterious property of the vacuum called dark energy.
- Much of the energy of the universe is hidden in dark matter that apparently interacts with normal (baryonic) matter through the gravitational force.

A Pause for Reflection

Let us put what you have just learned in perspective. If all we are interested in is the structure of the world around us, we can get along nicely with the electron, the neutrino, the neutron, and the proton. As someone has said, we can operate "Spaceship Earth" quite well with just these particles. We can see a few of the more exotic particles by looking for them in the cosmic rays; however, to see most of them, we must build massive accelerators and look for them at great effort and expense.

The reason we must go to such effort is that—measured in energy terms—we live in a world of very low temperatures. Even at the center of the Sun, the value of kT is only about 1 keV. To produce the exotic particles, we must be able to accelerate protons or electrons to energies in the GeV and TeV range and higher.

Once upon a time the temperature everywhere *was* high enough to provide such energies. That time of extremely high temperatures occurred in the **big bang** beginning of the universe, when the universe (and both space and time) came into existence. Thus, one reason scientists study particles at high energies is to understand what the universe was like just after it began.

As we shall discuss shortly, *all* of space within the universe was initially tiny in extent, and the temperature of the particles within that space was incredibly high. With time, however, the universe expanded and cooled to lower temperatures, eventually to the size and temperature we see today.

Actually, the phrase "we see today" is complicated: When we look out into space, we are actually looking back in time because the light from the stars and galaxies has taken a long time to reach us. The most distant objects that we can detect are **quasars** (*qua*si*s*tell*ar* objects), which are the extremely bright cores of galaxies that are as much as 13×10^9 ly from us. Each such core contains a gigantic black hole; as material (gas and even stars) is pulled into one of those black holes, the material heats up and radiates a tremendous amount of light, enough for us to detect in spite of the huge distance. We therefore "see" a quasar not as it looks today but rather as it once was, when that light began its journey to us billions of years ago.

The Universe Is Expanding

As we saw in Module 37-5, it is possible to measure the relative speeds at which galaxies are approaching us or receding from us by measuring the shifts in the wavelength of the light they emit. If we look only at distant galaxies, beyond our immediate galactic neighbors, we find an astonishing fact: They are *all* moving away (receding) from us! In 1929 Edwin P. Hubble connected the recession speed v of a galaxy and its distance r from us—they are directly proportional:

$$v = Hr \quad \text{(Hubble's law),} \tag{44-19}$$

in which H is called the **Hubble constant.** The value of H is usually measured in the unit kilometers per second-megaparsec (km/s·Mpc), where the megaparsec is a length unit commonly used in astrophysics and astronomy:

$$1 \text{ Mpc} = 3.084 \times 10^{19} \text{ km} = 3.260 \times 10^6 \text{ ly}. \tag{44-20}$$

The Hubble constant H has not had the same value since the universe began. Determining its current value is extremely difficult because doing so involves measurements of very distant galaxies. However, the Hubble constant is now known to be

$$H = 71.0 \text{ km/s} \cdot \text{Mpc} = 21.8 \text{ mm/s} \cdot \text{ly}. \tag{44-21}$$

We interpret the recession of the galaxies to mean that the universe is expanding, much as the raisins in what is to be a loaf of raisin bread grow farther apart as the dough expands. Observers on all other galaxies would find that distant galaxies were rushing away from them also, in accordance with Hubble's law. In keeping with our analogy, we can say that no raisin (galaxy) has a unique or preferred view.

Hubble's law is consistent with the hypothesis that the universe began with the big bang and has been expanding ever since. If we assume that the rate of expansion has been constant (that is, the value of H has been constant), then we can estimate the age T of the universe by using Eq. 44-19. Let us also assume that since the big bang, any given part of the universe (say, a galaxy) has been receding from our location at a speed v given by Eq. 44-19. Then the time required for the given part to recede a distance r is

$$T = \frac{r}{v} = \frac{r}{Hr} = \frac{1}{H} \quad \text{(estimated age of universe).} \tag{44-22}$$

For the value of H in Eq. 44-21, T works out to be 13.8×10^9 y. Much more sophisticated studies of the expansion of the universe put T at 13.7×10^9 y.

Sample Problem 44.06 Using Hubble's law to relate distance and recessional speed

The wavelength shift in the light from a particular quasar indicates that the quasar has a recessional speed of 2.8×10^8 m/s (which is 93% of the speed of light). Approximately how far from us is the quasar?

KEY IDEA

We assume that the distance and speed are related by Hubble's law.

Calculation: From Eqs. 44-19 and 44-21, we find

$$r = \frac{v}{H} = \frac{2.8 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{21.8\ \text{mm/s}\cdot\text{ly}}(1000\ \text{mm/m})$$

$$= 12.8 \times 10^9\ \text{ly}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

This is only an approximation because the quasar has not always been receding from our location at the same speed v; that is, H has not had its current value throughout the time during which the universe has been expanding.

Sample Problem 44.07 Using Hubble's law to relate distance and Doppler shift

A particular emission line detected in the light from a galaxy has a detected wavelength $\lambda_{\text{det}} = 1.1\lambda$, where λ is the proper wavelength of the line. What is the galaxy's distance from us?

KEY IDEAS

(1) We assume that Hubble's law ($v = Hr$) applies to the recession of the galaxy. (2) We also assume that the astronomical Doppler shift of Eq. 37-36 ($v = c|\Delta\lambda|/\lambda$, for $v \ll c$) applies to the shift in wavelength due to the recession.

Calculations: We can then set the right side of these two equations equal to each other to write

$$Hr = \frac{c\,|\Delta\lambda|}{\lambda}, \tag{44-23}$$

which leads us to

$$r = \frac{c\,|\Delta\lambda|}{H\lambda}. \tag{44-24}$$

In this equation,

$$\Delta\lambda = \lambda_{\text{det}} - \lambda = 1.1\lambda - \lambda = 0.1\lambda.$$

Substituting this into Eq. 44-24 then gives us

$$r = \frac{c(0.1\lambda)}{H\lambda} = \frac{0.1c}{H}$$

$$= \frac{(0.1)(3.0 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})}{21.8\ \text{mm/s}\cdot\text{ly}}(1000\ \text{mm/m})$$

$$= 1.4 \times 10^9\ \text{ly}. \qquad \text{(Answer)}$$

Additional examples, video, and practice available at *WileyPLUS*

The Cosmic Background Radiation

In 1965 Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson, of what was then the Bell Telephone Laboratories, were testing a sensitive microwave receiver used for communications research. They discovered a faint background "hiss" that remained unchanged in intensity no matter where their antenna was pointed. It soon became clear that Penzias and Wilson were observing a **cosmic background radiation,** generated in the early universe and filling all space almost uniformly. Currently this radiation has a maximum intensity at a wavelength of 1.1 mm, which lies in the microwave region of electromagnetic radiation (or light, for short). The wavelength distribution of this radiation matches the wavelength distribution of light that would be emitted by a laboratory enclosure with walls at a temperature of 2.7 K. Thus, for the cosmic background radiation, we say that the enclosure is the entire universe and that the universe is at an (average) temperature of 2.7 K. For their discovery of the cosmic background radiation, Penzias and Wilson were awarded the 1978 Nobel Prize in physics.

The cosmic background radiation is now known to be light that has been in flight across the universe since shortly after the universe began billions of years ago. When the universe was even younger, light could scarcely go any significant distance without being scattered by all the individual, high-speed particles along its path. If a light ray started from, say, point A, it would be scattered in so many directions that if you could have intercepted part of it, you would have not been

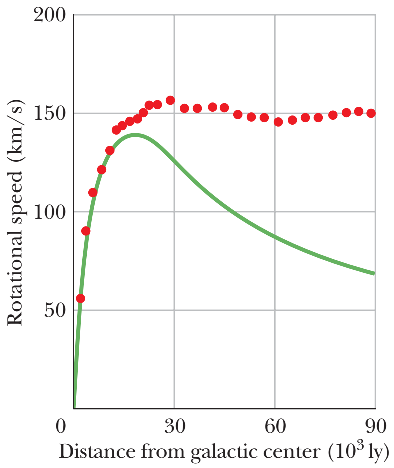


Figure 44-5 The rotational speed of stars in a typical galaxy as a function of their distance from the galactic center. The theoretical solid curve shows that if a galaxy contained only the mass that is visible, the observed rotational speed would drop off with distance at large distances. The dots are the experimental data, which show that the rotational speed is approximately constant at large distances.

able to tell that it originated at point A. However, after the particles began to form atoms, the scattering of light greatly decreased. A light ray from point A might then be able to travel for billions of years without being scattered. This light is the cosmic background radiation.

As soon as the nature of the radiation was recognized, researchers wondered, "Can we use this incoming radiation to distinguish the points at which it originated, so that we then can produce an image of the early universe, back when atoms first formed and light scattering largely ceased?" The answer is yes, and that image is coming up in a moment.

Dark Matter

At the Kitt Peak National Observatory in Arizona, Vera Rubin and her co-worker Kent Ford measured the rotational rates of a number of distant galaxies. They did so by measuring the Doppler shifts of bright clusters of stars located within each galaxy at various distances from the galactic center. As Fig. 44-5 shows, their results were surprising: The orbital speed of stars at the outer visible edge of the galaxy is about the same as that of stars close to the galactic center.

As the solid curve in Fig. 44-5 attests, that is not what we would expect to find if all the mass of the galaxy were represented by visible light. Nor is the pattern found by Rubin and Ford what we find in the solar system. For example, the orbital speed of Pluto (the "planet" most distant from the Sun) is only about one-tenth that of Mercury (the planet closest to the Sun).

The only explanation for the findings of Rubin and Ford that is consistent with Newtonian mechanics is that a typical galaxy contains much more matter than what we can actually see. In fact, the visible portion of a galaxy represents only about 5 to 10% of the total mass of the galaxy. In addition to these studies of galactic rotation, many other observations lead to the conclusion that the universe abounds in matter that we cannot see. This unseen matter is called **dark matter** because either it does not emit light or its light emission is too dim for us to detect.

Normal matter (such as stars, planets, dust, and molecules) is often called **baryonic matter** because its mass is primarily due to the combined mass of the protons and neutrons (baryons) it contains. (The much smaller mass of the electrons is neglected.) Some of the normal matter, such as burned-out stars and dim interstellar gas, is part of the dark matter in a galaxy.

However, according to various calculations, this dark normal matter is only a small part of the total dark matter. The rest is called **nonbaryonic dark matter** because it does not contain protons and neutrons. We know of only one member of this type of dark matter—the neutrinos. Although the mass of a neutrino is very small relative to the mass of a proton or neutron, the number of neutrinos in a galaxy is huge and thus the total mass of the neutrinos is large. Nevertheless, calculations indicate that not even the total mass of the neutrinos is enough to account for the total mass of the nonbaryonic dark matter. In spite of over a hundred years in which elementary particles have been detected and studied, the particles that make up the rest of this type of dark matter are undetected and their nature is unknown. Because we have no experience with them, they must interact only gravitationally with the common particles.

The Big Bang

In 1985, a physicist remarked at a scientific meeting:

> *It is as certain that the universe started with a big bang about 15 billion years ago as it is that the Earth goes around the Sun.*

This strong statement suggests the level of confidence in which the big bang theory, first advanced by Belgian physicist Georges Lemaître, is held by those who study these matters. However, you must not imagine that the big bang was like the explosion of some gigantic firecracker and that, in principle at least, you could have stood to one side and watched. There was no "one side" because the big bang represents the beginning of spacetime itself. From the point of view of our present universe, there is no position in space to which you can point and say, "The big bang happened there." It happened everywhere.

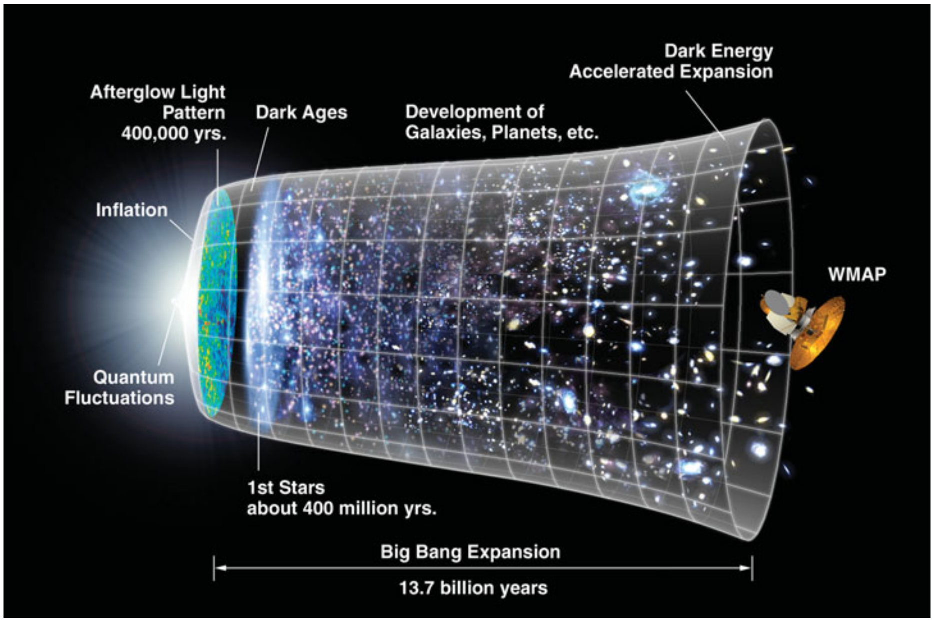
Moreover, there was no "before the big bang," because time *began* with that creation event. In this context, the word "before" loses its meaning. We can, however, conjecture about what went on during succeeding intervals of time after the big bang (Fig. 44-6).

$t \approx 10^{-43}$ s. This is the earliest time at which we can say anything meaningful about the development of the universe. It is at this moment that the concepts of space and time come to have their present meanings and the laws of physics as we know them become applicable. At this instant, the entire universe (that is, the *entire* spatial extent of the universe) is much smaller than a proton and its temperature is about 10^{32} K. Quantum fluctuations in the fabric of spacetime are the seeds that will eventually lead to the formation of galaxies, clusters of galaxies, and superclusters of galaxies.

$t \approx 10^{-34}$ s. By this moment the universe has undergone a tremendously rapid inflation, increasing in size by a factor of about 10^{30}, causing the formation of matter in a distribution set by the initial quantum fluctuations. The universe has become a hot soup of photons, quarks, and leptons at a temperature of about 10^{27} K, which is too hot for protons and neutrons to form.

$t \approx 10^{-4}$ s. Quarks can now combine to form protons and neutrons and their antiparticles. The universe has now cooled to such an extent by continued (but much slower) expansion that photons lack the energy needed to break up these new particles. Particles of matter and antimatter collide and annihilate each other. There is a slight excess of matter, which, failing to find annihilation partners, survives to form the world of matter that we know today.

$t \approx 1$ min. The universe has now cooled enough so that protons and neutrons, in colliding, can stick together to form the low-mass nuclei ^{2}H, ^{3}He, ^{4}He, and ^{7}Li. The predicted relative abundances of these nuclides are just what we observe in the universe today. Also, there is plenty of radiation present at $t \approx 1$ min,



Courtesy NASA

Figure 44-6 An illustration of the universe from the initial quantum fluctuations just after $t = 0$ (at the left) to the current accelerated expansion, 13.7×10^9 y later (at the right). Don't take the illustration literally—there is *no* such "external view" of the universe because there is *no* exterior to the universe.

but this light cannot travel far before it interacts with a nucleus. Thus the universe is opaque.

$t \approx$ 379 000 y. The temperature has now fallen to 2970 K, and electrons can stick to bare nuclei when the two collide, forming atoms. Because light does not interact appreciably with (uncharged) particles, such as neutral atoms, the light is now free to travel great distances. This radiation forms the cosmic background radiation that we discussed earlier. Atoms of hydrogen and helium, under the influence of gravity, begin to clump together, eventually starting the formation of galaxies and stars, but until then, the universe is relatively dark (Fig. 44-6).

Early measurements suggested that the cosmic background radiation is uniform in all directions, implying that 379 000 y after the big bang all matter in the universe was uniformly distributed. This finding was most puzzling because matter in the present universe is not uniformly distributed, but instead is collected in galaxies, clusters of galaxies, and superclusters of galactic clusters. There are also vast *voids* in which there is relatively little matter, and there are regions so crowded with matter that they are called *walls.* If the big bang theory of the beginning of the universe is even approximately correct, the seeds for this nonuniform distribution of matter must have been in place before the universe was 379 000 y old and now should show up as a nonuniform distribution of the microwave background radiation.

In 1992, measurements made by NASA's Cosmic Background Explorer (COBE) satellite revealed that the background radiation is, in fact, not perfectly uniform. In 2003, measurements by NASA's Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe (WMAP) greatly increased our resolution of this nonuniformity. The resulting image (Fig. 44-7) is effectively a color-coded photograph of the universe when it was only 379 000 y old. As you can see from the variations in the colors, large-scale collecting of matter had already begun. Thus, the big bang theory and the theory of inflation at $t \approx 10^{-34}$ s are on the right track.

The Accelerated Expansion of the Universe

Recall from Module 13-8 the statement that mass causes curvature of space. Now that we have seen that mass is a form of energy, as given by Einstein's equa-

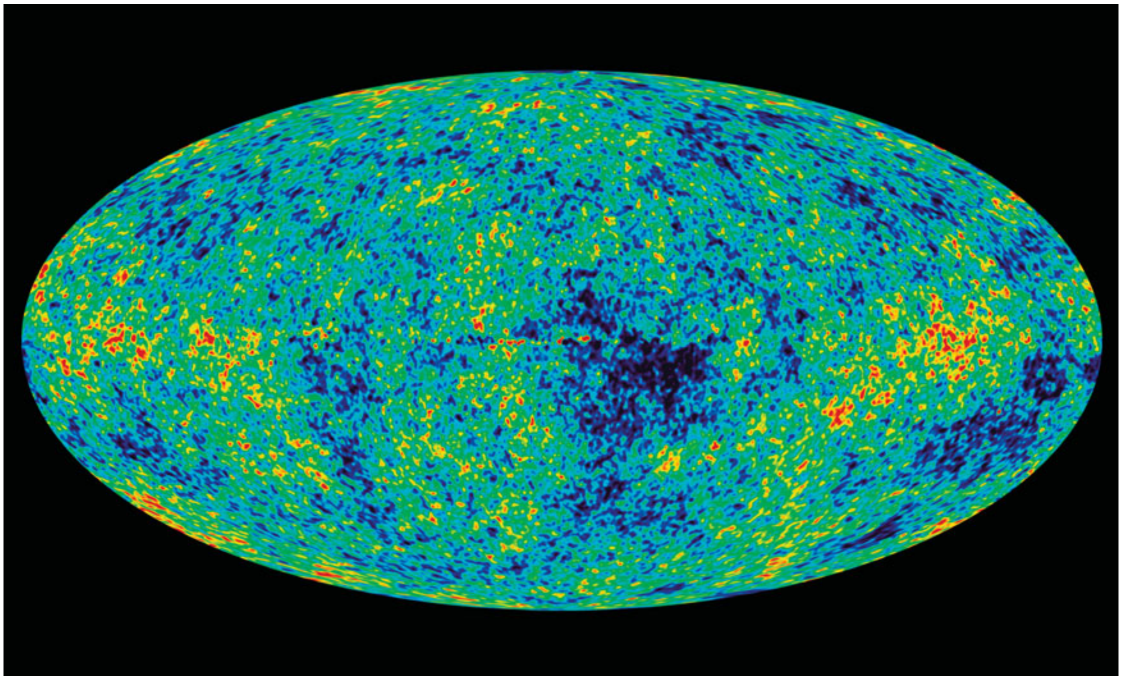


Figure 44-7 This color-coded image is effectively a photograph of the universe when it was only 379 000 y old, which was about 13.7×10^9 y ago. This is what you would have seen then as you looked away in all directions (the view has been condensed to this oval). Patches of light from collections of atoms stretch across the "sky," but galaxies, stars, and planets have not yet formed.

Courtesy WMAP Science Team/NASA

tion $E = mc^2$, we can generalize the statement: energy can cause curvature of space. This certainly happens to the space around the energy packed into a black hole and, more weakly, to the space around any other astronomical body, but is the space of the universe as a whole curved by the energy the universe contains?

The question was answered first by the 1992 COBE measurements of the cosmic background radiation. It was then answered more definitively by the 2003 WMAP measurements that produced the image in Fig. 44-7. The spots we see in that image are the original sources of the cosmic background radiation, and the angular distribution of the spots reveals the curvature of the universe through which the light has to travel to reach us. If adjacent spots subtend either more than 1° (Fig. 44-8*a*) or less than 1° (Fig. 44-8*b*) in the detector's view (or our view) into the universe, then the universe is curved. Analysis of the spot distribution in the WMAP image shows that the spots subtend about 1° (Fig. 44-8*c*), which means that the universe is *flat* (having no curvature). Thus, the initial curvature the universe presumably had when it began must have been flattened out by the rapid inflation the universe underwent at $t \approx 10^{-34}$ s.

This flatness poses a very difficult problem for physicists because it requires that the universe contain a certain amount of energy (as mass or otherwise). The trouble is that all estimations of the amount of energy in the universe (both in known forms and in the form of the unknown type of dark matter) fall dramatically short of the required amount.

One theory proposed about this missing energy gave it the gothic name of *dark energy* and predicted that it has the strange property of causing the expansion of the universe to accelerate. Until 1998, determining whether the expansion is, in fact, accelerating was very difficult because it requires measuring distances to very distant astronomical bodies where the acceleration might show up.

In 1998, however, advances in astronomical technology allowed astronomers to detect a certain type of supernovae at very great distances. More important, the astronomers could measure the duration of the burst of light from such a supernova. The duration reveals the brightness of the supernova that would be seen by an observer near the supernova. By measuring the brightness of the supernova as seen from Earth, astronomers could then determine the distance to the supernova. From the redshift of the light from the galaxy containing the supernova, astronomers could also determine how fast the galaxy is receding from us. Combining all this information, they could then calculate the expansion rate of the universe. The conclusion is that the expansion is indeed accelerating as predicted by the theory of dark energy (Fig. 44-6). However, we have no clue as to what this dark energy is.

Figure 44-9 gives our current state of knowledge about the energy in the universe. About 4% is associated with baryonic matter, which we understand fairly well. About 23% is associated with nonbaryonic dark matter, about which we have a few clues that might be fruitful. The rest, a whopping 73%, is associated with dark energy, about which we are clueless. There have been times in the history of physics, even in the 1990s, when pontiffs proclaimed that physics was nearly complete, that only details were left. In fact, we are nowhere near the end.

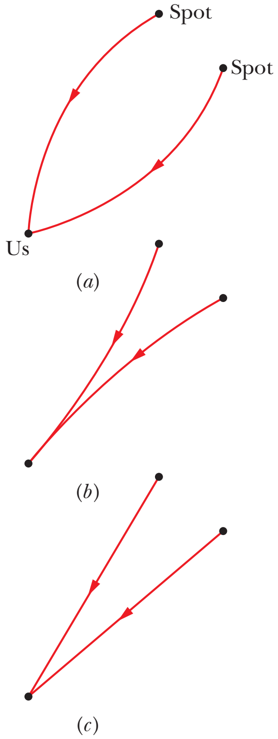


Figure 44-8 Light rays from two adjacent spots in our view of the cosmic background radiation would reach us at an angle (*a*) greater than 1° or (*b*) less than 1° if the space along the light-ray paths through the universe were curved. (*c*) An angle of 1° means that the space is not curved.

A Summing Up

In this closing paragraph, let's consider where we are headed as we accumulate knowledge about the universe more and more rapidly. What we have found is marvelous and profound, but it is also humbling in that each new step seems to reveal more clearly our own relative insignificance in the grand scheme of things. Thus, in roughly chronological order, we humans have come to realize that

Our Earth is not the center of the solar system.

Our Sun is but one star among many in our galaxy.

Our galaxy is but one of many, and our Sun is an insignificant star in it.

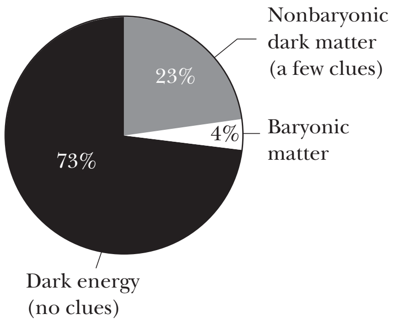


Figure 44-9 The distribution of energy (including mass) in the universe.

- Our Earth has existed for perhaps only a third of the age of the universe and will surely disappear when our Sun burns up its fuel and becomes a red giant.
- Our species has inhabited Earth for less than a million years—a blink in cosmological time.

Although our position in the universe may be insignificant, the laws of physics that we have discovered (uncovered?) seem to hold throughout the universe and—as far as we know—have held since the universe began and will continue to hold for all future time. At least, there is no evidence that other laws hold in other parts of the universe. Thus, until someone complains, we are entitled to stamp the laws of physics "Discovered on Earth." Much remains to be discovered. In the words of writer Eden Phillpotts, "*The universe is full of magical things, patiently waiting for our wits to grow sharper.*" That declaration allows us to answer one last time the question "What is physics?" that we have explored repeatedly in this book. Physics is the gateway to those magical things.

Review & Summary

Leptons and Quarks Current research supports the view that all matter is made of six kinds of **leptons** (Table 44-2), six kinds of **quarks** (Table 44-5), and 12 **antiparticles,** one corresponding to each lepton and each quark. All these particles have spin quantum numbers equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ and are thus **fermions** (particles with half-integer spin quantum numbers).

The Interactions Particles with electric charge interact through the electromagnetic force by exchanging **virtual photons.** Leptons can also interact with each other and with quarks through the **weak force,** via massive W and Z particles as messengers. In addition, quarks interact with each other through the **color force.** The electromagnetic and weak forces are different manifestations of the same force, called the **electroweak force.**

Leptons Three of the leptons (the **electron, muon,** and **tau**) have electric charge equal to $-1e$. There are also three uncharged **neutrinos** (also leptons), one corresponding to each of the charged leptons. The antiparticles for the charged leptons have positive charge.

Quarks The six quarks (up, down, strange, charm, bottom, and top, in order of increasing mass) each have baryon number $+\frac{1}{3}$ and charge equal to either $+\frac{2}{3}e$ or $-\frac{1}{3}e$. The strange quark has strangeness -1, whereas the others all have strangeness 0. These four algebraic signs are reversed for the antiquarks.

Hadrons: Baryons and Mesons Quarks combine into strongly interacting particles called **hadrons. Baryons** are hadrons with half-integer spin quantum numbers ($\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{3}{2}$). **Mesons** are hadrons with integer spin quantum numbers (0 or 1) and thus are **bosons.** Baryons are fermions. Mesons have baryon number equal to zero; baryons have baryon number equal to $+1$ or -1. **Quantum chromodynamics** predicts that the possible combinations of quarks are either a quark with an antiquark, three quarks, or three antiquarks (this prediction is consistent with experiment).

Expansion of the Universe Current evidence strongly suggests that the universe is expanding, with the distant galaxies moving away from us at a rate v given by **Hubble's law:**

$$v = Hr \quad \text{(Hubble's law).} \tag{44-19}$$

Here we take H, the **Hubble constant,** to have the value

$$H = 71.0 \text{ km/s} \cdot \text{Mpc} = 21.8 \text{ mm/s} \cdot \text{ly}. \tag{44-21}$$

The expansion described by Hubble's law and the presence of ubiquitous background microwave radiation reveal that the universe began in a "big bang" 13.7 billion years ago.

Questions

1 An electron cannot decay into two neutrinos. Which of the following conservation laws would be violated if it did: (a) energy, (b) angular momentum, (c) charge, (d) lepton number, (e) linear momentum, (f) baryon number?

2 Which of the eight pions in Fig. 44-2*b* has the least kinetic energy?

3 Figure 44-10 shows the paths of two particles circling in a uniform magnetic field. The particles have the same magnitude of charge but opposite signs. (a) Which path corresponds to the more massive particle? (b) If the magnetic field is directed into the plane of the page, is the more massive particle positively or negatively charged?

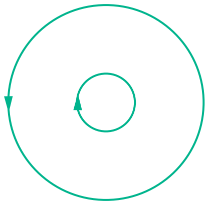


Figure 44-10 Question 3.

4 A proton has enough mass energy to decay into a shower made up of electrons, neutrinos, and their antiparticles. Which of the following conservation laws would necessarily be violated if it did: electron lepton number or baryon number?

5 A proton cannot decay into a neutron and a neutrino. Which of the following conservation laws would be violated if it did: (a) energy (assume the proton is stationary), (b) angular momentum, (c) charge, (d) lepton number, (e) linear momentum, (f) baryon number?

6 Does the proposed decay $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + K^-$ conserve (a) electric charge, (b) spin angular momentum, and (c) strangeness? (d) If the original particle is stationary, is there enough energy to create the decay products?

7 Not only particles such as electrons and protons but also entire atoms can be classified as fermions or bosons, depending on whether their overall spin quantum numbers are, respectively, half-integral or integral. Consider the helium isotopes ^{3}He and ^{4}He. Which of the following statements is correct? (a) Both are fermions. (b) Both are bosons. (c) ^{4}He is a fermion, and ^{3}He is a boson. (d) ^{3}He is a fermion, and ^{4}He is a boson. (The two helium electrons form a closed shell and play no role in this determination.)

8 Three cosmologists have each plotted a line on the Hubble-like graph of Fig. 44-11. If we calculate the corresponding age of the universe from the three plots, rank the plots according to that age, greatest first.

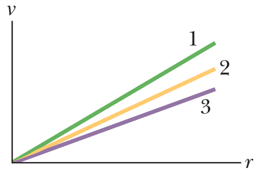


Figure 44-11 Question 8.

9 A Σ^+ particle has these quantum numbers: strangeness $S = -1$, charge $q = +1$, and spin $s = \frac{1}{2}$. Which of the following quark combinations produces it: (a) dds, (b) $s\bar{s}$, (c) uus, (d) ssu, or (e) $uu\bar{s}$?

10 As we have seen, the π^- meson has the quark structure $d\bar{u}$. Which of the following conservation laws would be violated if a π^- were formed, instead, from a d quark and a u quark: (a) energy, (b) angular momentum, (c) charge, (d) lepton number, (e) linear momentum, (f) baryon number?

11 Consider the neutrino whose symbol is $\bar{\nu}_\tau$. (a) Is it a quark, a lepton, a meson, or a baryon? (b) Is it a particle or an antiparticle? (c) Is it a boson or a fermion? (d) Is it stable against spontaneous decay?

Problems

GO	Tutoring problem available (at instructor's discretion) in *WileyPLUS* and WebAssign
SSM	Worked-out solution available in Student Solutions Manual
WWW	Worked-out solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
• – •••	Number of dots indicates level of problem difficulty
ILW	Interactive solution is at http://www.wiley.com/college/halliday
✈	Additional information available in *The Flying Circus of Physics* and at flyingcircusofphysics.com

Module 44-1 General Properties of Elementary Particles

•1 A positively charged pion decays by Eq. 44-7: $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu$. What must be the decay scheme of the negatively charged pion? (*Hint:* The π^- is the antiparticle of the π^+.)

•2 Certain theories predict that the proton is unstable, with a half-life of about 10^{32} years. Assuming that this is true, calculate the number of proton decays you would expect to occur in one year in the water of an Olympic-sized swimming pool holding 4.32×10^5 L of water.

•3 GO An electron and a positron undergo pair annihilation (Eq. 44-5). If they had approximately zero kinetic energy before the annihilation, what is the wavelength of each γ produced by the annihilation?

•4 A neutral pion initially at rest decays into two gamma rays: $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$. Calculate the wavelength of the gamma rays. Why must they have the same wavelength?

•5 An electron and a positron are separated by distance r. Find the ratio of the gravitational force to the electric force between them. From the result, what can you conclude concerning the forces acting between particles detected in a bubble chamber? (Should gravitational interactions be considered?)

••6 (a) A stationary particle 1 decays into particles 2 and 3, which move off with equal but oppositely directed momenta. Show that the kinetic energy K_2 of particle 2 is given by

$$K_2 = \frac{1}{2E_1}[(E_1 - E_2)^2 - E_3^2],$$

where E_1, E_2, and E_3 are the rest energies of the particles. (b) A stationary positive pion π^+ (rest energy 139.6 MeV) can decay to an antimuon μ^+ (rest energy 105.7 MeV) and a neutrino ν (rest energy approximately 0). What is the resulting kinetic energy of the antimuon?

••7 The rest energy of many short-lived particles cannot be measured directly but must be inferred from the measured momenta and known rest energies of the decay products. Consider the ρ^0 meson, which decays by the reaction $\rho^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^-$. Calculate the rest energy of the ρ^0 meson given that the oppositely directed momenta of the created pions each have magnitude 358.3 MeV/c. See Table 44-4 for the rest energies of the pions.

••8 GO A positive tau (τ^+, rest energy = 1777 MeV) is moving with 2200 MeV of kinetic energy in a circular path perpendicular to a uniform 1.20 T magnetic field. (a) Calculate the momentum of the tau in kilogram-meters per second. Relativistic effects must be considered. (b) Find the radius of the circular path.

••9 GO Observations of neutrinos emitted by the supernova SN1987a (Fig. 43-12*b*) place an upper limit of 20 eV on the rest energy of the electron neutrino. If the rest energy of the electron neutrino were, in fact, 20 eV, what would be the speed difference between light and a 1.5 MeV electron neutrino?

••10 GO A neutral pion has a rest energy of 135 MeV and a mean life of 8.3×10^{-17} s. If it is produced with an initial kinetic energy of 80 MeV and decays after one mean lifetime, what is the longest possible track this particle could leave in a bubble chamber? Use relativistic time dilation.

Module 44-2 Leptons, Hadrons, and Strangeness

•11 SSM WWW Which conservation law is violated in each of these proposed decays? Assume that the initial particle is stationary and the decay products have zero orbital angular momentum. (a) $\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \nu_\mu$; (b) $\mu^- \rightarrow e^+ + \nu_e + \bar{\nu}_\mu$; (c) $\mu^+ \rightarrow \pi^+ + \nu_\mu$.

•12 The A_2^+ particle and its products decay according to the scheme

$$\begin{array}{ll} A_2^+ \rightarrow \rho^0 + \pi^+, & \mu^+ \rightarrow e^+ + \nu + \bar{\nu}, \\ \rho^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^-, & \pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}, \\ \pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu, & \mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \nu + \bar{\nu}. \end{array}$$

(a) What are the final stable decay products? From the evidence, (b) is the A_2^+ particle a fermion or a boson and (c) is it a meson or a baryon? (d) What is its baryon number?

•13 Show that if, instead of plotting strangeness S versus charge q

for the spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ baryons in Fig. 44-3*a* and for the spin-zero mesons in Fig. 44-3*b*, we plot the quantity $Y = B + S$ versus the quantity $T_z = q - \frac{1}{2}(B + S)$, we get the hexagonal patterns without using sloping axes. (The quantity Y is called *hypercharge,* and T_z is related to a quantity called *isospin.*)

•14 Calculate the disintegration energy of the reactions (a) $\pi^+ + p \rightarrow \Sigma^+ + K^+$ and (b) $K^- + p \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^0$.

•15 Which conservation law is violated in each of these proposed reactions and decays? (Assume that the products have zero orbital angular momentum.) (a) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + K^-$; (b) $\Omega^- \rightarrow \Sigma^- + \pi^0$ ($S = -3, q = -1, m = 1672$ MeV/c^2, and $m_s = \frac{3}{2}$ for Ω^-); (c) $K^- + p \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^+$.

•16 Does the proposed reaction

$$p + \bar{p} \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \Sigma^+ + e^-$$

conserve (a) charge, (b) baryon number, (c) electron lepton number, (d) spin angular momentum, (e) strangeness, and (f) muon lepton number?

•17 Does the proposed decay process

$$\Xi^- \rightarrow \pi^- + n + K^- + p$$

conserve (a) charge, (b) baryon number, (c) spin angular momentum, and (d) strangeness?

•18 By examining strangeness, determine which of the following decays or reactions proceed via the strong interaction: (a) $K^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^-$; (b) $\Lambda^0 + p \rightarrow \Sigma^+ + n$; (c) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^-$; (d) $K^- + p \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^0$.

•19 The reaction $\pi^+ + p \rightarrow p + p + \bar{n}$ proceeds via the strong interaction. By applying the conservation laws, deduce the (a) charge quantum number, (b) baryon number, and (c) strangeness of the antineutron.

•20 There are 10 baryons with spin $\frac{3}{2}$. Their symbols and quantum numbers for charge q and strangeness S are as follows:

	q	S		q	S
Δ^-	−1	0	Σ^{*0}	0	−1
Δ^0	0	0	Σ^{*+}	+1	−1
Δ^+	+1	0	Ξ^{*-}	−1	−2
Δ^{++}	+2	0	Ξ^{*0}	0	−2
Σ^{*-}	−1	−1	Ω^-	−1	−3

Make a charge–strangeness plot for these baryons, using the sloping coordinate system of Fig. 44-3. Compare your plot with this figure.

••21 Use the conservation laws and Tables 44-3 and 44-4 to identify particle x in each of the following reactions, which proceed by means of the strong interaction: (a) $p + p \rightarrow p + \Lambda^0 + x$; (b) $p + \bar{p} \rightarrow n + x$; (c) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow \Xi^0 + K^0 + x$.

••22 GO A 220 MeV Σ^- particle decays: $\Sigma^- \rightarrow \pi^- + n$. Calculate the total kinetic energy of the decay products.

••23 GO Consider the decay $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^-$ with the Λ^0 at rest. (a) Calculate the disintegration energy. What is the kinetic energy of (b) the proton and (c) the pion? (*Hint:* See Problem 6.)

••24 The spin-$\frac{3}{2}$ Σ^{*0} baryon (see table in Problem 24) has a rest energy of 1385 MeV (with an intrinsic uncertainty ignored here); the spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ Σ^0 baryon has a rest energy of 1192.5 MeV. If each of these particles has a kinetic energy of 1000 MeV, (a) which is moving faster and (b) by how much?

Module 44-3 Quarks and Messenger Particles

•25 The quark makeups of the proton and neutron are uud and udd, respectively. What are the quark makeups of (a) the antiproton and (b) the antineutron?

•26 From Tables 44-3 and 44-5, determine the identity of the baryon formed from quarks (a) ddu, (b) uus, and (c) ssd. Check your answers against the baryon octet shown in Fig. 44-3*a*.

•27 What is the quark makeup of $\overline{K}^0$?

•28 What quark combination is needed to form (a) Λ^0 and (b) Ξ^0?

•29 Which hadron in Tables 44-3 and 44-4 corresponds to the quark bundles (a) ssu and (b) dds?

•30 SSM WWW Using the up, down, and strange quarks only, construct, if possible, a baryon (a) with $q = +1$ and strangeness $S = -2$ and (b) with $q = +2$ and strangeness $S = 0$.

Module 44-4 Cosmology

•31 In the laboratory, one of the lines of sodium is emitted at a wavelength of 590.0 nm. In the light from a particular galaxy, however, this line is seen at a wavelength of 602.0 nm. Calculate the distance to the galaxy, assuming that Hubble's law holds and that the Doppler shift of Eq. 37-36 applies.

•32 Because of the cosmological expansion, a particular emission from a distant galaxy has a wavelength that is 2.00 times the wavelength that emission would have in a laboratory. Assuming that Hubble's law holds and that we can apply Doppler-shift calculations, what was the distance (ly) to that galaxy when the light was emitted?

•33 What is the observed wavelength of the 656.3 nm (first Balmer) line of hydrogen emitted by a galaxy at a distance of 2.40×10^8 ly? Assume that the Doppler shift of Eq. 37-36 and Hubble's law apply.

•34 An object is 1.5×10^4 ly from us and does not have any motion relative to us except for the motion due to the expansion of the universe. If the space between us and it expands according to Hubble's law, with $H = 21.8$ mm/s · ly, (a) how much extra distance (meters) will be between us and the object by this time next year and (b) what is the speed of the object away from us?

•35 If Hubble's law can be extrapolated to very large distances, at what distance would the apparent recessional speed become equal to the speed of light?

•36 What would the mass of the Sun have to be if Pluto (the outermost "planet" most of the time) were to have the same orbital speed that Mercury (the innermost planet) has now? Use data from Appendix C, express your answer in terms of the Sun's current mass M_S, and assume circular orbits.

•37 The wavelength at which a thermal radiator at temperature T radiates electromagnetic waves most intensely is given by Wien's law: $\lambda_{\max} = (2898\ \mu\text{m} \cdot \text{K})/T$. (a) Show that the energy E of a photon corresponding to that wavelength can be computed from

$$E = (4.28 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{MeV/K})T.$$

(b) At what minimum temperature can this photon create an electron–positron pair (as discussed in Module 21-3)?

•38 Use Wien's law (see Problem 37) to answer the following questions: (a) The cosmic background radiation peaks in intensity at a wavelength of 1.1 mm. To what temperature does this correspond? (b) About 379 000 y after the big bang, the universe became transparent to electromagnetic radiation. Its temperature then was

2970 K. What was the wavelength at which the background radiation was then most intense?

••39 Will the universe continue to expand forever? To attack this question, assume that the theory of dark energy is in error and that the recessional speed v of a galaxy a distance r from us is determined only by the gravitational interaction of the matter that lies inside a sphere of radius r centered on us. If the total mass inside this sphere is M, the escape speed v_e from the sphere is $v_e = \sqrt{2GM/r}$ (Eq. 13-28). (a) Show that to prevent unlimited expansion, the average density ρ inside the sphere must be at least equal to

$$\rho = \frac{3H^2}{8\pi G}.$$

(b) Evaluate this "critical density" numerically; express your answer in terms of hydrogen atoms per cubic meter. Measurements of the actual density are difficult and are complicated by the presence of dark matter.

••40 Because the apparent recessional speeds of galaxies and quasars at great distances are close to the speed of light, the relativistic Doppler shift formula (Eq. 37-31) must be used. The shift is reported as fractional red shift $z = \Delta\lambda/\lambda_0$. (a) Show that, in terms of z, the recessional speed parameter $\beta = v/c$ is given by

$$\beta = \frac{z^2 + 2z}{z^2 + 2z + 2}.$$

(b) A quasar detected in 1987 has $z = 4.43$. Calculate its speed parameter. (c) Find the distance to the quasar, assuming that Hubble's law is valid to these distances.

••41 GO An electron jumps from $n = 3$ to $n = 2$ in a hydrogen atom in a distant galaxy, emitting light. If we detect that light at a wavelength of 3.00 mm, by what multiplication factor has the wavelength, and thus the universe, expanded since the light was emitted?

••42 Due to the presence everywhere of the cosmic background radiation, the minimum possible temperature of a gas in interstellar or intergalactic space is not 0 K but 2.7 K. This implies that a significant fraction of the molecules in space that can be in a low-level excited state may, in fact, be so. Subsequent de-excitation would lead to the emission of radiation that could be detected. Consider a (hypothetical) molecule with just one possible excited state. (a) What would the excitation energy have to be for 25% of the molecules to be in the excited state? (*Hint:* See Eq. 40-29.) (b) What would be the wavelength of the photon emitted in a transition back to the ground state?

••43 SSM Suppose that the radius of the Sun were increased to 5.90×10^{12} m (the average radius of the orbit of Pluto), that the density of this expanded Sun were uniform, and that the planets revolved within this tenuous object. (a) Calculate Earth's orbital speed in this new configuration. (b) What is the ratio of the orbital speed calculated in (a) to Earth's present orbital speed of 29.8 km/s? Assume that the radius of Earth's orbit remains unchanged. (c) What would be Earth's new period of revolution? (The Sun's mass remains unchanged.)

••44 Suppose that the matter (stars, gas, dust) of a particular galaxy, of total mass M, is distributed uniformly throughout a sphere of radius R. A star of mass m is revolving about the center of the galaxy in a circular orbit of radius $r < R$. (a) Show that the orbital speed v of the star is given by

$$v = r\sqrt{GM/R^3},$$

and therefore that the star's period T of revolution is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{R^3/GM},$$

independent of r. Ignore any resistive forces. (b) Next suppose that the galaxy's mass is concentrated near the galactic center, within a sphere of radius less than r. What expression then gives the star's orbital period?

Additional Problems

45 SSM There is no known meson with charge quantum number $q = +1$ and strangeness $S = -1$ or with $q = -1$ and $S = +1$. Explain why in terms of the quark model.

46 Figure 44-12 is a hypothetical plot of the recessional speeds v of galaxies against their distance r from us; the best-fit straight line through the data points is shown. From this plot determine the age of the universe, assuming that Hubble's law holds and that Hubble's constant has always had the same value.

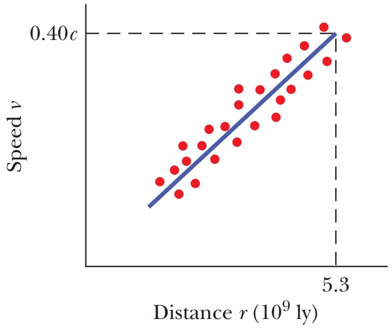


Figure 44-12 Problem 46.

47 SSM How much energy would be released if Earth were annihilated by collision with an anti-Earth?

48 *A particle game.* Figure 44-13 is a sketch of the tracks made by particles in a *fictional* cloud chamber experiment (with a uniform magnetic field directed perpendicular to the page), and Table 44-6 gives *fictional* quantum numbers associated with the particles making the tracks. Particle A entered the chamber at the lower left, leaving track 1 and decaying into three particles. Then the particle creating track 6 decayed into three other particles, and the particle creating

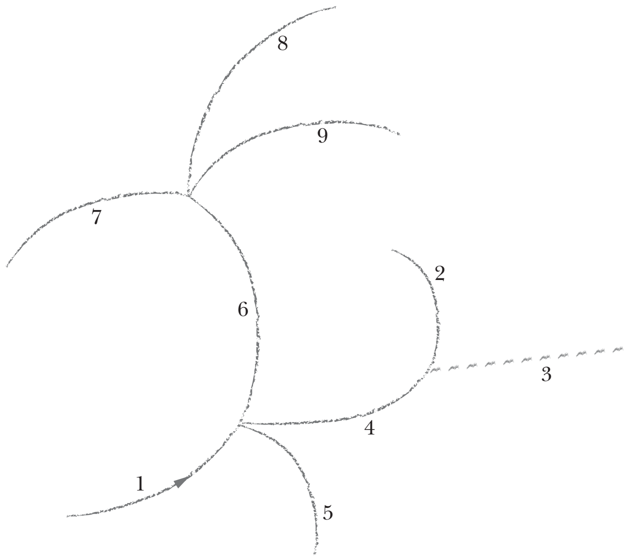


Figure 44-13 Problem 48.

Table 44-6 **Problem 44-48**

Particle	Charge	Whimsy	Seriousness	Cuteness
A	1	1	−2	−2
B	0	4	3	0
C	1	2	−3	−1
D	−1	−1	0	1
E	−1	0	−4	−2
F	1	0	0	0
G	−1	−1	1	−1
H	3	3	1	0
I	0	6	4	6
J	1	−6	−4	−6

track 4 decayed into two other particles, one of which was electrically uncharged—the path of that uncharged particle is represented by the dashed straight line because, being electrically neutral, it would not actually leave a track in a cloud chamber. The particle that created track 8 is known to have a seriousness quantum number of zero.

By conserving the fictional quantum numbers at each decay point and by noting the directions of curvature of the tracks, identify which particle goes with track (a) 1, (b) 2, (c) 3, (d) 4, (e) 5, (f) 6, (g) 7, (h) 8, and (i) 9. One of the listed particles is not formed; the others appear only once each.

49 Figure 44-14 shows part of the experimental arrangement in which antiprotons were discovered in the 1950s. A beam of 6.2 GeV protons emerged from a particle accelerator and collided with nuclei in a copper target. According to theoretical predictions at the time, collisions between protons in the beam and the protons and neutrons in those nuclei should produce antiprotons via the reactions

$$\mathrm{p} + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{p} + \bar{\mathrm{p}}$$

and

$$\mathrm{p} + \mathrm{n} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{n} + \mathrm{p} + \bar{\mathrm{p}}.$$

However, even if these reactions did occur, they would be rare compared to the reactions

$$\mathrm{p} + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{p} + \pi^+ + \pi^-$$

and

$$\mathrm{p} + \mathrm{n} \rightarrow \mathrm{p} + \mathrm{n} + \pi^+ + \pi^-.$$

Thus, most of the particles produced by the collisions between the 6.2 GeV protons and the copper target were pions.

To prove that antiprotons exist and were produced by some limited number of the collisions, particles leaving the target were sent into a series of magnetic fields and detectors as shown in Fig. 44-14. The first magnetic field (M1) curved the path of any charged particle passing through it; moreover, the field was arranged so that the only particles that emerged from it to reach the second magnetic field (Q1) had to be negatively charged (either a $\bar{\mathrm{p}}$ or a π^-) and have a momentum of 1.19 GeV/*c*. Field Q1 was a special type of magnetic field (a *quadrapole field*) that focused the particles reaching it into a beam, allowing them to pass through a hole in thick shielding to a *scintillation counter* S1. The passage of a charged particle through the counter triggered a signal, with each signal indicating the passage of either a 1.19 GeV/*c* π^- or (presumably) a 1.19 GeV/*c* $\bar{\mathrm{p}}$.

After being refocused by magnetic field Q2, the particles were directed by magnetic field M2 through a second scintillation counter S2 and then through two *Cerenkov counters* C1 and C2. These latter detectors can be manufactured so that they send a signal only when the particle passing through them is moving with a speed that falls within a certain range. In the experiment, a particle with a speed greater than 0.79*c* would trigger C1 and a particle with a speed between 0.75*c* and 0.78*c* would trigger C2.

There were then two ways to distinguish the predicted rare antiprotons from the abundant negative pions. Both ways involved the fact that the speed of a 1.19 GeV/*c* $\bar{\mathrm{p}}$ differs from that of a 1.19 GeV/*c* π^-: (1) According to calculations, a $\bar{\mathrm{p}}$ would trigger one of the Cerenkov counters and a π^- would trigger the other. (2) The time interval Δt between signals from S1 and S2, which were separated by 12 m, would have one value for a $\bar{\mathrm{p}}$ and another value for a π^-. Thus, if the correct Cerenkov counter were triggered and the time interval Δt had the correct value, the experiment would prove the existence of antiprotons.

What is the speed of (a) an antiproton with a momentum of 1.19 GeV/*c* and (b) a negative pion with that same momentum? (The speed of an antiproton through the Cerenkov detectors would actually be slightly less than calculated here because the antiproton would lose a little energy within the detectors.) Which Cerenkov detector was triggered by (c) an antiproton and (d) a negative pion? What time interval Δt indicated the passage of (e) an antiproton and (f) a negative pion? [Problem adapted from O. Chamberlain, E. Segrè, C. Wiegand, and T. Ypsilantis, "Observation of Antiprotons," *Physical Review,* Vol. 100, pp. 947–950 (1955).]

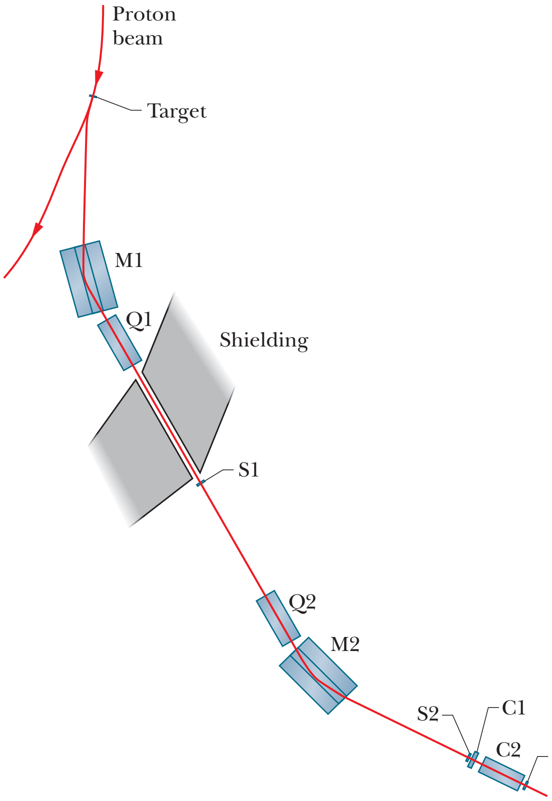


Figure 44-14 Problem 49.

50 Verify that the hypothetical proton decay scheme in Eq. 44-14 does not violate the conservation law of (a) charge, (b) energy, and (c) linear momentum. (d) How about angular momentum?

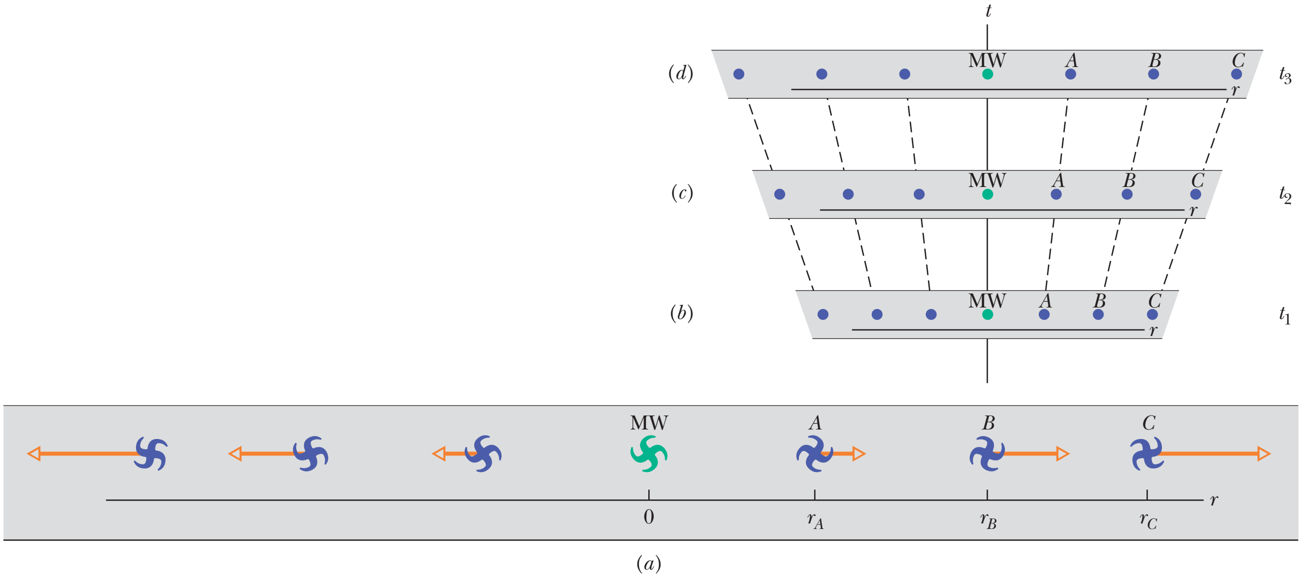


Figure 44-15 Problem 51.

51 **SSM** *Cosmological red shift*. The expansion of the universe is often represented with a drawing like Fig. 44-15*a*. In that figure, we are located at the symbol labeled MW (for the Milky Way galaxy), at the origin of an r axis that extends radially away from us in any direction. Other, very distant galaxies are also represented. Superimposed on their symbols are their velocity vectors as inferred from the red shift of the light reaching us from the galaxies. In accord with Hubble's law, the speed of each galaxy is proportional to its distance from us. Such drawings can be misleading because they imply (1) that the red shifts are due to the motions of galaxies relative to us, as they rush away from us through static (stationary) space, and (2) that we are at the center of all this motion.

Actually, the expansion of the universe and the increased separation of the galaxies are due not to an outward rush of the galaxies into pre-existing space but to an expansion of space itself throughout the universe. *Space is dynamic, not static*.

Figures 44-15*b*, *c*, and *d* show a different way of representing the universe and its expansion. Each part of the figure gives part of a one-dimensional section of the universe (along an r axis); the other two spatial dimensions of the universe are not shown. Each of the three parts of the figure shows the Milky Way and six other galaxies (represented by dots); the parts are positioned along a time axis, with time increasing upward. In part *b*, at the earliest time of the three parts, the Milky Way and the six other galaxies are represented as being relatively close to one another. As time progresses upward in the figures, space expands, causing the galaxies to move apart. Note that the figure parts are drawn relative to the Milky Way, and from that observation point all the other galaxies move away because of the expansion. However, there is nothing special about the Milky Way—the galaxies also move away from any other observation point we might have chosen.

Figures 44-16*a* and *b* focus on just the Milky Way galaxy and one of the other galaxies, galaxy A, at two particular times during the expansion. In part *a*, galaxy A is a distance r from the Milky Way and is emitting a light wave of wavelength λ. In part *b*, after a time interval Δt, that light wave is being detected at Earth. Let us represent the universe's expansion rate per unit length of space with α, which we assume to be constant during time interval Δt. Then during Δt, every unit length of space (say, every meter) expands by an amount $\alpha\ \Delta t$; hence, a distance r expands by $r\alpha\ \Delta t$. The light wave of Figs. 44.16*a* and *b* travels at speed c from galaxy A to Earth. (a) Show that

$$\Delta t = \frac{r}{c - r\alpha}.$$

The detected wavelength λ' of the light is greater than the emitted wavelength λ because space expanded during time interval Δt. This increase in wavelength is called the **cosmological red shift;** it is not a Doppler effect. (b) Show that the change in wavelength $\Delta\lambda\ (=\lambda' - \lambda)$ is given by

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda} = \frac{r\alpha}{c - r\alpha}.$$

(c) Expand the right side of this equation using the binomial expansion (given in Appendix E). (d) If you retain only the first term

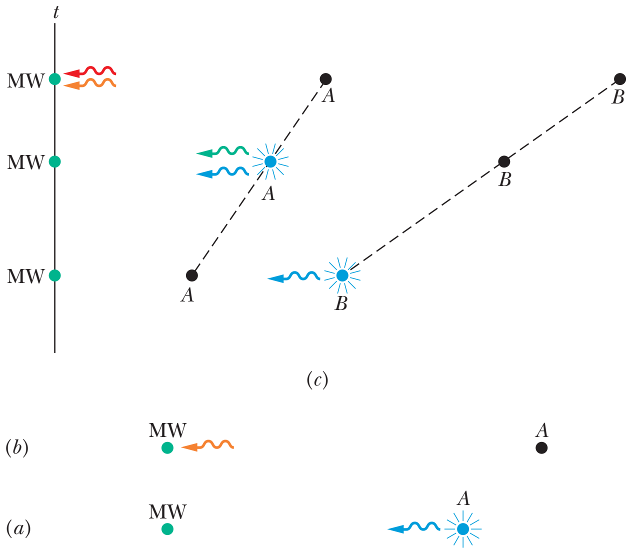


Figure 44-16 Problem 51.

of the expansion, what is the resulting equation for $\Delta\lambda/\lambda$?

If, instead, we assume that Fig. 44-15*a* applies and that $\Delta\lambda$ is due to a Doppler effect, then from Eq. 37-36 we have

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda} = \frac{v}{c},$$

where v is the radial velocity of galaxy A relative to Earth. (e) Using Hubble's law, compare this Doppler-effect result with the cosmological-expansion result of (d) and find a value for α. From this analysis you can see that the two results, derived with very different models about the red shift of the light we detect from distant galaxies, are compatible.

Suppose that the light we detect from galaxy A has a red shift of $\Delta\lambda/\lambda = 0.050$ and that the expansion rate of the universe has been constant at the current value given in the chapter. (f) Using the result of (b), find the distance between the galaxy and Earth when the light was emitted. Next, determine how long ago the light was emitted by the galaxy (g) by using the result of (a) and (h) by assuming that the red shift is a Doppler effect. (*Hint*: For (h), the time is just the distance at the time of emission divided by the speed of light, because if the red shift is just a Doppler effect, the distance does not change during the light's travel to us. Here the two models about the red shift of the light differ in their results.) (i) At the time of detection, what is the distance between Earth and galaxy A? (We make the assumption that galaxy A still exists; if it ceased to exist, humans would not know about its death until the last light emitted by the galaxy reached Earth.)

Now suppose that the light we detect from galaxy B (Fig. 44-16*c*) has a red shift of $\Delta\lambda/\lambda = 0.080$. (j) Using the result of (b), find the distance between galaxy B and Earth when the light was emitted. (k) Using the result of (a), find how long ago the light was emitted by galaxy B. (l) When the light that we detect from galaxy A was emitted, what was the distance between galaxy A and galaxy B?

52 Calculate the difference in mass, in kilograms, between the muon and pion of Sample Problem 44.01.

53 What is the quark formation that makes up (a) the xi-minus particle and (b) the anti-xi-minus particle? The particles have no charm, bottom, or top.

54 An electron and a positron, each with a kinetic energy of 2.500 MeV, annihilate, creating two photons that travel away in opposite directions. What is the frequency of each photon?

APPENDIX A

THE INTERNATIONAL SYSTEM OF UNITS (SI)*

Table 1 **The SI Base Units**

Quantity	Name	Symbol	Definition
length	meter	m	"... the length of the path traveled by light in vacuum in 1/299,792,458 of a second." (1983)
mass	kilogram	kg	"... this prototype [a certain platinum–iridium cylinder] shall henceforth be considered to be the unit of mass." (1889)
time	second	s	"... the duration of 9,192,631,770 periods of the radiation corresponding to the transition between the two hyperfine levels of the ground state of the cesium-133 atom." (1967)
electric current	ampere	A	"... that constant current which, if maintained in two straight parallel conductors of infinite length, of negligible circular cross section, and placed 1 meter apart in vacuum, would produce between these conductors a force equal to 2×10^{-7} newton per meter of length." (1946)
thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	K	"... the fraction 1/273.16 of the thermodynamic temperature of the triple point of water." (1967)
amount of substance	mole	mol	"... the amount of substance of a system which contains as many elementary entities as there are atoms in 0.012 kilogram of carbon-12." (1971)
luminous intensity	candela	cd	"... the luminous intensity, in a given direction, of a source that emits monochromatic radiation of frequency 540×10^{12} hertz and that has a radiant intensity in that direction of 1/683 watt per steradian." (1979)

---

*Adapted from "The International System of Units (SI)," National Bureau of Standards Special Publication 330, 1972 edition. The definitions above were adopted by the General Conference of Weights and Measures, an international body, on the dates shown. In this book we do not use the candela.

Table 2 **Some SI Derived Units**

Quantity	Name of Unit	Symbol	
area	square meter	$\mathrm{m^2}$	
volume	cubic meter	$\mathrm{m^3}$	
frequency	hertz	Hz	$\mathrm{s^{-1}}$
mass density (density)	kilogram per cubic meter	$\mathrm{kg/m^3}$	
speed, velocity	meter per second	m/s	
angular velocity	radian per second	rad/s	
acceleration	meter per second per second	$\mathrm{m/s^2}$	
angular acceleration	radian per second per second	$\mathrm{rad/s^2}$	
force	newton	N	$\mathrm{kg \cdot m/s^2}$
pressure	pascal	Pa	$\mathrm{N/m^2}$
work, energy, quantity of heat	joule	J	$\mathrm{N \cdot m}$
power	watt	W	J/s
quantity of electric charge	coulomb	C	$\mathrm{A \cdot s}$
potential difference, electromotive force	volt	V	W/A
electric field strength	volt per meter (or newton per coulomb)	V/m	N/C
electric resistance	ohm	Ω	V/A
capacitance	farad	F	$\mathrm{A \cdot s/V}$
magnetic flux	weber	Wb	$\mathrm{V \cdot s}$
inductance	henry	H	$\mathrm{V \cdot s/A}$
magnetic flux density	tesla	T	$\mathrm{Wb/m^2}$
magnetic field strength	ampere per meter	A/m	
entropy	joule per kelvin	J/K	
specific heat	joule per kilogram kelvin	$\mathrm{J/(kg \cdot K)}$	
thermal conductivity	watt per meter kelvin	$\mathrm{W/(m \cdot K)}$	
radiant intensity	watt per steradian	W/sr	

Table 3 **The SI Supplementary Units**

Quantity	Name of Unit	Symbol
plane angle	radian	rad
solid angle	steradian	sr

APPENDIX B

SOME FUNDAMENTAL CONSTANTS OF PHYSICS*

			Best (1998) Value	
Constant	Symbol	Computational Value	Value[a]	Uncertainty[b]
Speed of light in a vacuum	c	3.00×10^{8} m/s	2.997 924 58	exact
Elementary charge	e	1.60×10^{-19} C	1.602 176 487	0.025
Gravitational constant	G	6.67×10^{-11} $\text{m}^3/\text{s}^2 \cdot \text{kg}$	6.674 28	100
Universal gas constant	R	8.31 $\text{J/mol} \cdot \text{K}$	8.314 472	1.7
Avogadro constant	N_A	6.02×10^{23} mol^{-1}	6.022 141 79	0.050
Boltzmann constant	k	1.38×10^{-23} J/K	1.380 650 4	1.7
Stefan–Boltzmann constant	σ	5.67×10^{-8} $\text{W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4$	5.670 400	7.0
Molar volume of ideal gas at STP[d]	V_m	2.27×10^{-2} m^3/mol	2.271 098 1	1.7
Permittivity constant	ϵ_0	8.85×10^{-12} F/m	8.854 187 817 62	exact
Permeability constant	μ_0	1.26×10^{-6} H/m	1.256 637 061 43	exact
Planck constant	h	6.63×10^{-34} $\text{J} \cdot \text{s}$	6.626 068 96	0.050
Electron mass[c]	m_e	9.11×10^{-31} kg	9.109 382 15	0.050
		5.49×10^{-4} u	5.485 799 094 3	4.2×10^{-4}
Proton mass[c]	m_p	1.67×10^{-27} kg	1.672 621 637	0.050
		1.0073 u	1.007 276 466 77	1.0×10^{-4}
Ratio of proton mass to electron mass	m_p/m_e	1840	1836.152 672 47	4.3×10^{-4}
Electron charge-to-mass ratio	e/m_e	1.76×10^{11} C/kg	1.758 820 150	0.025
Neutron mass[c]	m_n	1.68×10^{-27} kg	1.674 927 211	0.050
		1.0087 u	1.008 664 915 97	4.3×10^{-4}
Hydrogen atom mass[c]	$m_{^1\text{H}}$	1.0078 u	1.007 825 031 6	0.0005
Deuterium atom mass[c]	$m_{^2\text{H}}$	2.0136 u	2.013 553 212 724	3.9×10^{-5}
Helium atom mass[c]	$m_{^4\text{He}}$	4.0026 u	4.002 603 2	0.067
Muon mass	m_μ	1.88×10^{-28} kg	1.883 531 30	0.056
Electron magnetic moment	μ_e	9.28×10^{-24} J/T	9.284 763 77	0.025
Proton magnetic moment	μ_p	1.41×10^{-26} J/T	1.410 606 662	0.026
Bohr magneton	μ_B	9.27×10^{-24} J/T	9.274 009 15	0.025
Nuclear magneton	μ_N	5.05×10^{-27} J/T	5.050 783 24	0.025
Bohr radius	a	5.29×10^{-11} m	5.291 772 085 9	6.8×10^{-4}
Rydberg constant	R	1.10×10^{7} m^{-1}	1.097 373 156 852 7	6.6×10^{-6}
Electron Compton wavelength	λ_C	2.43×10^{-12} m	2.426 310 217 5	0.0014

[a] Values given in this column should be given the same unit and power of 10 as the computational value.

[b] Parts per million.

[c] Masses given in u are in unified atomic mass units, where 1 u = $1.660\,538\,782 \times 10^{-27}$ kg.

[d] STP means standard temperature and pressure: 0°C and 1.0 atm (0.1 MPa).

---

*The values in this table were selected from the 1998 CODATA recommended values (www.physics.nist.gov).

APPENDIX C

SOME ASTRONOMICAL DATA

Some Distances from Earth

To the Moon*	3.82×10^{8} m	To the center of our galaxy	2.2×10^{20} m
To the Sun*	1.50×10^{11} m	To the Andromeda Galaxy	2.1×10^{22} m
To the nearest star (Proxima Centauri)	4.04×10^{16} m	To the edge of the observable universe	$\sim 10^{26}$ m

*Mean distance.

The Sun, Earth, and the Moon

Property	Unit	Sun	Earth	Moon
Mass	kg	1.99×10^{30}	5.98×10^{24}	7.36×10^{22}
Mean radius	m	6.96×10^{8}	6.37×10^{6}	1.74×10^{6}
Mean density	kg/m^3	1410	5520	3340
Free-fall acceleration at the surface	m/s^2	274	9.81	1.67
Escape velocity	km/s	618	11.2	2.38
Period of rotation[a]	—	37 d at poles[b] 26 d at equator[b]	23 h 56 min	27.3 d
Radiation power[c]	W	3.90×10^{26}		

[a] Measured with respect to the distant stars.

[b] The Sun, a ball of gas, does not rotate as a rigid body.

[c] Just outside Earth's atmosphere solar energy is received, assuming normal incidence, at the rate of 1340 W/m^2.

Some Properties of the Planets

	Mercury	Venus	Earth	Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus	Neptune	Pluto[d]
Mean distance from Sun, 10^6 km	57.9	108	150	228	778	1430	2870	4500	5900
Period of revolution, y	0.241	0.615	1.00	1.88	11.9	29.5	84.0	165	248
Period of rotation,[a] d	58.7	−243[b]	0.997	1.03	0.409	0.426	−0.451[b]	0.658	6.39
Orbital speed, km/s	47.9	35.0	29.8	24.1	13.1	9.64	6.81	5.43	4.74
Inclination of axis to orbit	<28°	≈3°	23.4°	25.0°	3.08°	26.7°	97.9°	29.6°	57.5°
Inclination of orbit to Earth's orbit	7.00°	3.39°		1.85°	1.30°	2.49°	0.77°	1.77°	17.2°
Eccentricity of orbit	0.206	0.0068	0.0167	0.0934	0.0485	0.0556	0.0472	0.0086	0.250
Equatorial diameter, km	4880	12 100	12 800	6790	143 000	120 000	51 800	49 500	2300
Mass (Earth = 1)	0.0558	0.815	1.000	0.107	318	95.1	14.5	17.2	0.002
Density (water = 1)	5.60	5.20	5.52	3.95	1.31	0.704	1.21	1.67	2.03
Surface value of g,[c] m/s^2	3.78	8.60	9.78	3.72	22.9	9.05	7.77	11.0	0.5
Escape velocity,[c] km/s	4.3	10.3	11.2	5.0	59.5	35.6	21.2	23.6	1.3
Known satellites	0	0	1	2	67 + ring	62 + rings	27 + rings	13 + rings	4

[a] Measured with respect to the distant stars.

[b] Venus and Uranus rotate opposite their orbital motion.

[c] Gravitational acceleration measured at the planet's equator.

[d] Pluto is now classified as a dwarf planet.

APPENDIX D

CONVERSION FACTORS

Conversion factors may be read directly from these tables. For example, 1 degree = 2.778×10^{-3} revolutions, so $16.7° = 16.7 \times 2.778 \times 10^{-3}$ rev. The SI units are fully capitalized. Adapted in part from G. Shortley and D. Williams, *Elements of Physics,* 1971, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Plane Angle

	°	′	″	RADIAN	rev
1 degree =	1	60	3600	1.745×10^{-2}	2.778×10^{-3}
1 minute =	1.667×10^{-2}	1	60	2.909×10^{-4}	4.630×10^{-5}
1 second =	2.778×10^{-4}	1.667×10^{-2}	1	4.848×10^{-6}	7.716×10^{-7}
1 RADIAN =	57.30	3438	2.063×10^{5}	1	0.1592
1 revolution =	360	2.16×10^{4}	1.296×10^{6}	6.283	1

Solid Angle

1 sphere = 4π steradians = 12.57 steradians

Length

	cm	METER	km	in.	ft	mi
1 centimeter =	1	10^{-2}	10^{-5}	0.3937	3.281×10^{-2}	6.214×10^{-6}
1 METER =	100	1	10^{-3}	39.37	3.281	6.214×10^{-4}
1 kilometer =	10^{5}	1000	1	3.937×10^{4}	3281	0.6214
1 inch =	2.540	2.540×10^{-2}	2.540×10^{-5}	1	8.333×10^{-2}	1.578×10^{-5}
1 foot =	30.48	0.3048	3.048×10^{-4}	12	1	1.894×10^{-4}
1 mile =	1.609×10^{5}	1609	1.609	6.336×10^{4}	5280	1

1 angström = 10^{-10} m
1 nautical mile = 1852 m
= 1.151 miles = 6076 ft

1 fermi = 10^{-15} m
1 light-year = 9.461×10^{12} km
1 parsec = 3.084×10^{13} km

1 fathom = 6 ft
1 Bohr radius = 5.292×10^{-11} m
1 yard = 3 ft

1 rod = 16.5 ft
1 mil = 10^{-3} in.
1 nm = 10^{-9} m

Area

	METER²	cm²	ft²	in.²
1 SQUARE METER =	1	10^{4}	10.76	1550
1 square centimeter =	10^{-4}	1	1.076×10^{-3}	0.1550
1 square foot =	9.290×10^{-2}	929.0	1	144
1 square inch =	6.452×10^{-4}	6.452	6.944×10^{-3}	1

1 square mile = 2.788×10^{7} ft² = 640 acres
1 barn = 10^{-28} m²

1 acre = 43 560 ft²
1 hectare = 10^{4} m² = 2.471 acres

Volume

	METER^3	cm^3	L	ft^3	in.^{3}
1 CUBIC METER =	1	10^6	1000	35.31	6.102×10^4
1 cubic centimeter =	10^{-6}	1	1.000×10^{-3}	3.531×10^{-5}	6.102×10^{-2}
1 liter =	1.000×10^{-3}	1000	1	3.531×10^{-2}	61.02
1 cubic foot =	2.832×10^{-2}	2.832×10^4	28.32	1	1728
1 cubic inch =	1.639×10^{-5}	16.39	1.639×10^{-2}	5.787×10^{-4}	1

1 U.S. fluid gallon = 4 U.S. fluid quarts = 8 U.S. pints = 128 U.S. fluid ounces = 231 in.^{3}
1 British imperial gallon = 277.4 in.^{3} = 1.201 U.S. fluid gallons

Mass

Quantities in the colored areas are not mass units but are often used as such. For example, when we write 1 kg "=" 2.205 lb, this means that a kilogram is a *mass* that *weighs* 2.205 pounds at a location where g has the standard value of 9.80665 m/s^2.

	g	KILOGRAM	slug	u	oz	lb	ton
1 gram =	1	0.001	6.852×10^{-5}	6.022×10^{23}	3.527×10^{-2}	2.205×10^{-3}	1.102×10^{-6}
1 KILOGRAM =	1000	1	6.852×10^{-2}	6.022×10^{26}	35.27	2.205	1.102×10^{-3}
1 slug =	1.459×10^4	14.59	1	8.786×10^{27}	514.8	32.17	1.609×10^{-2}
1 atomic mass unit =	1.661×10^{-24}	1.661×10^{-27}	1.138×10^{-28}	1	5.857×10^{-26}	3.662×10^{-27}	1.830×10^{-30}
1 ounce =	28.35	2.835×10^{-2}	1.943×10^{-3}	1.718×10^{25}	1	6.250×10^{-2}	3.125×10^{-5}
1 pound =	453.6	0.4536	3.108×10^{-2}	2.732×10^{26}	16	1	0.0005
1 ton =	9.072×10^5	907.2	62.16	5.463×10^{29}	3.2×10^4	2000	1

1 metric ton = 1000 kg

Density

Quantities in the colored areas are weight densities and, as such, are dimensionally different from mass densities. See the note for the mass table.

	slug/ft^3	KILOGRAM/ METER^3	g/cm^3	lb/ft^3	lb/in.^{3}
1 slug per foot^3 =	1	515.4	0.5154	32.17	1.862×10^{-2}
1 KILOGRAM per METER^3 =	1.940×10^{-3}	1	0.001	6.243×10^{-2}	3.613×10^{-5}
1 gram per centimeter^3 =	1.940	1000	1	62.43	3.613×10^{-2}
1 pound per foot^3 =	3.108×10^{-2}	16.02	16.02×10^{-2}	1	5.787×10^{-4}
1 pound per inch^3 =	53.71	2.768×10^4	27.68	1728	1

Time

	y	d	h	min	SECOND
1 year =	1	365.25	8.766×10^3	5.259×10^5	3.156×10^7
1 day =	2.738×10^{-3}	1	24	1440	8.640×10^4
1 hour =	1.141×10^{-4}	4.167×10^{-2}	1	60	3600
1 minute =	1.901×10^{-6}	6.944×10^{-4}	1.667×10^{-2}	1	60
1 SECOND =	3.169×10^{-8}	1.157×10^{-5}	2.778×10^{-4}	1.667×10^{-2}	1

Speed

	ft/s	km/h	METER/SECOND	mi/h	cm/s
1 foot per second =	1	1.097	0.3048	0.6818	30.48
1 kilometer per hour =	0.9113	1	0.2778	0.6214	27.78
1 METER per SECOND =	3.281	3.6	1	2.237	100
1 mile per hour =	1.467	1.609	0.4470	1	44.70
1 centimeter per second =	3.281×10^{-2}	3.6×10^{-2}	0.01	2.237×10^{-2}	1

1 knot = 1 nautical mi/h = 1.688 ft/s   1 mi/min = 88.00 ft/s = 60.00 mi/h

Force

Force units in the colored areas are now little used. To clarify: 1 gram-force (= 1 gf) is the force of gravity that would act on an object whose mass is 1 gram at a location where *g* has the standard value of 9.80665 m/s^2.

	dyne	NEWTON	lb	pdl	gf	kgf
1 dyne =	1	10^{-5}	2.248×10^{-6}	7.233×10^{-5}	1.020×10^{-3}	1.020×10^{-6}
1 NEWTON =	10^{5}	1	0.2248	7.233	102.0	0.1020
1 pound =	4.448×10^{5}	4.448	1	32.17	453.6	0.4536
1 poundal =	1.383×10^{4}	0.1383	3.108×10^{-2}	1	14.10	1.410×10^{2}
1 gram-force =	980.7	9.807×10^{-3}	2.205×10^{-3}	7.093×10^{-2}	1	0.001
1 kilogram-force =	9.807×10^{5}	9.807	2.205	70.93	1000	1

1 ton = 2000 lb

Pressure

	atm	dyne/cm^2	inch of water	cm Hg	PASCAL	lb/in.^{2}	lb/ft^2
1 atmosphere =	1	1.013×10^{6}	406.8	76	1.013×10^{5}	14.70	2116
1 dyne per centimeter^2 =	9.869×10^{-7}	1	4.015×10^{-4}	7.501×10^{-5}	0.1	1.405×10^{-5}	2.089×10^{-3}
1 inch of water[a] at 4°C =	2.458×10^{-3}	2491	1	0.1868	249.1	3.613×10^{-2}	5.202
1 centimeter of mercury[a] at 0°C =	1.316×10^{-2}	1.333×10^{4}	5.353	1	1333	0.1934	27.85
1 PASCAL =	9.869×10^{-6}	10	4.015×10^{-3}	7.501×10^{-4}	1	1.450×10^{-4}	2.089×10^{-2}
1 pound per inch^2 =	6.805×10^{-2}	6.895×10^{4}	27.68	5.171	6.895×10^{3}	1	144
1 pound per foot^2 =	4.725×10^{-4}	478.8	0.1922	3.591×10^{-2}	47.88	6.944×10^{-3}	1

[a] Where the acceleration of gravity has the standard value of 9.80665 m/s^2.

1 bar = 10^6 dyne/cm^2 = 0.1 MPa   1 millibar = 10^3 dyne/cm^2 = 10^2 Pa   1 torr = 1 mm Hg

Energy, Work, Heat

Quantities in the colored areas are not energy units but are included for convenience. They arise from the relativistic mass–energy equivalence formula $E = mc^2$ and represent the energy released if a kilogram or unified atomic mass unit (u) is completely converted to energy (bottom two rows) or the mass that would be completely converted to one unit of energy (rightmost two columns).

	Btu	erg	ft · lb	hp · h	JOULE	cal	kW · h	eV	MeV	kg	u
1 British thermal unit =	1	1.055×10^{10}	777.9	3.929×10^{-4}	1055	252.0	2.930×10^{-4}	6.585×10^{21}	6.585×10^{15}	1.174×10^{-14}	7.070×10^{12}
1 erg =	9.481×10^{-11}	1	7.376×10^{-8}	3.725×10^{-14}	10^{-7}	2.389×10^{-8}	2.778×10^{-14}	6.242×10^{11}	6.242×10^{5}	1.113×10^{-24}	670.2
1 foot-pound =	1.285×10^{-3}	1.356×10^{7}	1	5.051×10^{-7}	1.356	0.3238	3.766×10^{-7}	8.464×10^{18}	8.464×10^{12}	1.509×10^{-17}	9.037×10^{9}
1 horsepower-hour =	2545	2.685×10^{13}	1.980×10^{6}	1	2.685×10^{6}	6.413×10^{5}	0.7457	1.676×10^{25}	1.676×10^{19}	2.988×10^{-11}	1.799×10^{16}
1 JOULE =	9.481×10^{-4}	10^{7}	0.7376	3.725×10^{-7}	1	0.2389	2.778×10^{-7}	6.242×10^{18}	6.242×10^{12}	1.113×10^{-17}	6.702×10^{9}
1 calorie =	3.968×10^{-3}	4.1868×10^{7}	3.088	1.560×10^{-6}	4.1868	1	1.163×10^{-6}	2.613×10^{19}	2.613×10^{13}	4.660×10^{-17}	2.806×10^{10}
1 kilowatt-hour =	3413	3.600×10^{13}	2.655×10^{6}	1.341	3.600×10^{6}	8.600×10^{5}	1	2.247×10^{25}	2.247×10^{19}	4.007×10^{-11}	2.413×10^{16}
1 electron-volt =	1.519×10^{-22}	1.602×10^{-12}	1.182×10^{-19}	5.967×10^{-26}	1.602×10^{-19}	3.827×10^{-20}	4.450×10^{-26}	1	10^{-6}	1.783×10^{-36}	1.074×10^{-9}
1 million electron-volts =	1.519×10^{-16}	1.602×10^{-6}	1.182×10^{-13}	5.967×10^{-20}	1.602×10^{-13}	3.827×10^{-14}	4.450×10^{-20}	10^{-6}	1	1.783×10^{-30}	1.074×10^{-3}
1 kilogram =	8.521×10^{13}	8.987×10^{23}	6.629×10^{16}	3.348×10^{10}	8.987×10^{16}	2.146×10^{16}	2.497×10^{10}	5.610×10^{35}	5.610×10^{29}	1	6.022×10^{26}
1 unified atomic mass unit =	1.415×10^{-13}	1.492×10^{-3}	1.101×10^{-10}	5.559×10^{-17}	1.492×10^{-10}	3.564×10^{-11}	4.146×10^{-17}	9.320×10^{8}	932.0	1.661×10^{-27}	1

Power

	Btu/h	ft · lb/s	hp	cal/s	kW	WATT
1 British thermal unit per hour =	1	0.2161	3.929×10^{-4}	6.998×10^{-2}	2.930×10^{-4}	0.2930
1 foot-pound per second =	4.628	1	1.818×10^{-3}	0.3239	1.356×10^{-3}	1.356
1 horsepower =	2545	550	1	178.1	0.7457	745.7
1 calorie per second =	14.29	3.088	5.615×10^{-3}	1	4.186×10^{-3}	4.186
1 kilowatt =	3413	737.6	1.341	238.9	1	1000
1 WATT =	3.413	0.7376	1.341×10^{-3}	0.2389	0.001	1

Magnetic Field

	gauss	TESLA	milligauss
1 gauss =	1	10^{-4}	1000
1 TESLA =	10^{4}	1	10^{7}
1 milligauss =	0.001	10^{-7}	1

1 tesla = 1 weber/meter^2

Magnetic Flux

	maxwell	WEBER
1 maxwell =	1	10^{-8}
1 WEBER =	10^{8}	1

APPENDIX E

MATHEMATICAL FORMULAS

Geometry

Circle of radius r: circumference $= 2\pi r$; area $= \pi r^2$.

Sphere of radius r: area $= 4\pi r^2$; volume $= \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$.

Right circular cylinder of radius r and height h:
area $= 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$; volume $= \pi r^2 h$.

Triangle of base a and altitude h: area $= \frac{1}{2}ah$.

Quadratic Formula

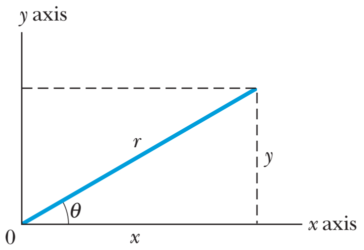
If $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, then $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$.

Trigonometric Functions of Angle θ

$$\sin\theta = \frac{y}{r} \qquad \cos\theta = \frac{x}{r}$$

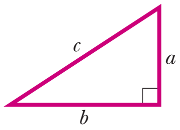
$$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x} \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{x}{y}$$

$$\sec\theta = \frac{r}{x} \qquad \csc\theta = \frac{r}{y}$$



Pythagorean Theorem

In this right triangle,
$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$



Triangles

Angles are A, B, C

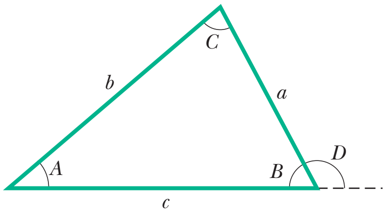
Opposite sides are a, b, c

Angles $A + B + C = 180°$

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C$

Exterior angle $D = A + C$



Mathematical Signs and Symbols

$=$ equals

$\approx$ equals approximately

$\sim$ is the order of magnitude of

$\neq$ is not equal to

$\equiv$ is identical to, is defined as

$>$ is greater than ($\gg$ is much greater than)

$<$ is less than ($\ll$ is much less than)

$\geq$ is greater than or equal to (or, is no less than)

$\leq$ is less than or equal to (or, is no more than)

$\pm$ plus or minus

$\propto$ is proportional to

Σ the sum of

x_{avg} the average value of x

Trigonometric Identities

$\sin(90° - \theta) = \cos\theta$

$\cos(90° - \theta) = \sin\theta$

$\sin\theta/\cos\theta = \tan\theta$

$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$

$\sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta = 1$

$\csc^2\theta - \cot^2\theta = 1$

$\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta$

$\cos 2\theta = \cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta = 2\cos^2\theta - 1 = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta$

$\sin(\alpha \pm \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta \pm \cos\alpha\sin\beta$

$\cos(\alpha \pm \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta \mp \sin\alpha\sin\beta$

$$\tan(\alpha \pm \beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha \pm \tan\beta}{1 \mp \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$$

$\sin\alpha \pm \sin\beta = 2\sin\frac{1}{2}(\alpha \pm \beta)\cos\frac{1}{2}(\alpha \mp \beta)$

$\cos\alpha + \cos\beta = 2\cos\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)\cos\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)$

$\cos\alpha - \cos\beta = -2\sin\frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)\sin\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)$

Binomial Theorem

$$(1 + x)^n = 1 + \frac{nx}{1!} + \frac{n(n-1)x^2}{2!} + \cdots \qquad (x^2 < 1)$$

Exponential Expansion

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

Logarithmic Expansion

$$\ln(1+x) = x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}x^3 - \cdots \qquad (|x| < 1)$$

Trigonometric Expansions (θ in radians)

$$\sin\theta = \theta - \frac{\theta^3}{3!} + \frac{\theta^5}{5!} - \cdots$$

$$\cos\theta = 1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2!} + \frac{\theta^4}{4!} - \cdots$$

$$\tan\theta = \theta + \frac{\theta^3}{3} + \frac{2\theta^5}{15} + \cdots$$

Cramer's Rule

Two simultaneous equations in unknowns x and y,

$$a_1x + b_1y = c_1 \quad \text{and} \quad a_2x + b_2y = c_2,$$

have the solutions

$$x = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} c_1 & b_1 \\ c_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{c_1b_2 - c_2b_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

and

$$y = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}} = \frac{a_1c_2 - a_2c_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}.$$

Products of Vectors

Let $\hat{\mathrm{i}}$, $\hat{\mathrm{j}}$, and $\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ be unit vectors in the x, y, and z directions. Then

$$\hat{\mathrm{i}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{i}} = \hat{\mathrm{j}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{j}} = \hat{\mathrm{k}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{k}} = 1, \qquad \hat{\mathrm{i}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{j}} = \hat{\mathrm{j}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{k}} = \hat{\mathrm{k}}\cdot\hat{\mathrm{i}} = 0,$$

$$\hat{\mathrm{i}}\times\hat{\mathrm{i}} = \hat{\mathrm{j}}\times\hat{\mathrm{j}} = \hat{\mathrm{k}}\times\hat{\mathrm{k}} = 0,$$

$$\hat{\mathrm{i}}\times\hat{\mathrm{j}} = \hat{\mathrm{k}}, \qquad \hat{\mathrm{j}}\times\hat{\mathrm{k}} = \hat{\mathrm{i}}, \qquad \hat{\mathrm{k}}\times\hat{\mathrm{i}} = \hat{\mathrm{j}}$$

Any vector $\vec{a}$ with components a_x, a_y, and a_z along the x, y, and z axes can be written as

$$\vec{a} = a_x\hat{\mathrm{i}} + a_y\hat{\mathrm{j}} + a_z\hat{\mathrm{k}}.$$

Let $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$, and $\vec{c}$ be arbitrary vectors with magnitudes a, b, and c. Then

$$\vec{a}\times(\vec{b}+\vec{c}) = (\vec{a}\times\vec{b}) + (\vec{a}\times\vec{c})$$

$$(s\vec{a})\times\vec{b} = \vec{a}\times(s\vec{b}) = s(\vec{a}\times\vec{b}) \qquad (s = \text{a scalar}).$$

Let θ be the smaller of the two angles between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$. Then

$$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} = \vec{b}\cdot\vec{a} = a_xb_x + a_yb_y + a_zb_z = ab\cos\theta$$

$$\vec{a}\times\vec{b} = -\vec{b}\times\vec{a} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{\mathrm{i}} & \hat{\mathrm{j}} & \hat{\mathrm{k}} \\ a_x & a_y & a_z \\ b_x & b_y & b_z \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \hat{\mathrm{i}}\begin{vmatrix} a_y & a_z \\ b_y & b_z \end{vmatrix} - \hat{\mathrm{j}}\begin{vmatrix} a_x & a_z \\ b_x & b_z \end{vmatrix} + \hat{\mathrm{k}}\begin{vmatrix} a_x & a_y \\ b_x & b_y \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a_yb_z - b_ya_z)\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (a_zb_x - b_za_x)\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (a_xb_y - b_xa_y)\hat{\mathrm{k}}$$

$$|\vec{a}\times\vec{b}| = ab\sin\theta$$

$$\vec{a}\cdot(\vec{b}\times\vec{c}) = \vec{b}\cdot(\vec{c}\times\vec{a}) = \vec{c}\cdot(\vec{a}\times\vec{b})$$

$$\vec{a}\times(\vec{b}\times\vec{c}) = (\vec{a}\cdot\vec{c})\vec{b} - (\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b})\vec{c}$$

Derivatives and Integrals

In what follows, the letters u and v stand for any functions of x, and a and m are constants. To each of the indefinite integrals should be added an arbitrary constant of integration. The *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (CRC Press Inc.) gives a more extensive tabulation.

1. $\dfrac{dx}{dx} = 1$

2. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(au) = a\dfrac{du}{dx}$

3. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(u + v) = \dfrac{du}{dx} + \dfrac{dv}{dx}$

4. $\dfrac{d}{dx}x^m = mx^{m-1}$

5. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\ln x = \dfrac{1}{x}$

6. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(uv) = u\dfrac{dv}{dx} + v\dfrac{du}{dx}$

7. $\dfrac{d}{dx}e^x = e^x$

8. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sin x = \cos x$

9. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\cos x = -\sin x$

10. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\tan x = \sec^2 x$

11. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\cot x = -\csc^2 x$

12. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sec x = \tan x \sec x$

13. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\csc x = -\cot x \csc x$

14. $\dfrac{d}{dx}e^u = e^u\dfrac{du}{dx}$

15. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sin u = \cos u\dfrac{du}{dx}$

16. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\cos u = -\sin u\dfrac{du}{dx}$

1. $\displaystyle\int dx = x$

2. $\displaystyle\int au\,dx = a\int u\,dx$

3. $\displaystyle\int (u + v)\,dx = \int u\,dx + \int v\,dx$

4. $\displaystyle\int x^m\,dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} \quad (m \neq -1)$

5. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x} = \ln|x|$

6. $\displaystyle\int u\frac{dv}{dx}\,dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}\,dx$

7. $\displaystyle\int e^x\,dx = e^x$

8. $\displaystyle\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x$

9. $\displaystyle\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x$

10. $\displaystyle\int \tan x\,dx = \ln|\sec x|$

11. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x$

12. $\displaystyle\int e^{-ax}\,dx = -\frac{1}{a}e^{-ax}$

13. $\displaystyle\int xe^{-ax}\,dx = -\frac{1}{a^2}(ax + 1)\,e^{-ax}$

14. $\displaystyle\int x^2e^{-ax}\,dx = -\frac{1}{a^3}(a^2x^2 + 2ax + 2)e^{-ax}$

15. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty x^n e^{-ax}\,dx = \frac{n!}{a^{n+1}}$

16. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty x^{2n}e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{1\cdot3\cdot5\cdots(2n-1)}{2^{n+1}a^n}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}$

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2})$

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x\,dx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} = -\frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}}$

19. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{x}{a^2(x^2 + a^2)^{1/2}}$

20. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty x^{2n+1}\,e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{n!}{2a^{n+1}} \quad (a > 0)$

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x\,dx}{x + d} = x - d\ln(x + d)$

APPENDIX F

PROPERTIES OF THE ELEMENTS

All physical properties are for a pressure of 1 atm unless otherwise specified.

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number Z	Molar Mass, g/mol	Density, g/cm^3 at 20°C	Melting Point, °C	Boiling Point, °C	Specific Heat, J/(g·°C) at 25°C
Actinium	Ac	89	(227)	10.06	1323	(3473)	0.092
Aluminum	Al	13	26.9815	2.699	660	2450	0.900
Americium	Am	95	(243)	13.67	1541	—	—
Antimony	Sb	51	121.75	6.691	630.5	1380	0.205
Argon	Ar	18	39.948	1.6626×10^{-3}	-189.4	-185.8	0.523
Arsenic	As	33	74.9216	5.78	817 (28 atm)	613	0.331
Astatine	At	85	(210)	—	(302)	—	—
Barium	Ba	56	137.34	3.594	729	1640	0.205
Berkelium	Bk	97	(247)	14.79	—	—	—
Beryllium	Be	4	9.0122	1.848	1287	2770	1.83
Bismuth	Bi	83	208.980	9.747	271.37	1560	0.122
Bohrium	Bh	107	262.12	—	—	—	—
Boron	B	5	10.811	2.34	2030	—	1.11
Bromine	Br	35	79.909	3.12 (liquid)	-7.2	58	0.293
Cadmium	Cd	48	112.40	8.65	321.03	765	0.226
Calcium	Ca	20	40.08	1.55	838	1440	0.624
Californium	Cf	98	(251)	—	—	—	—
Carbon	C	6	12.01115	2.26	3727	4830	0.691
Cerium	Ce	58	140.12	6.768	804	3470	0.188
Cesium	Cs	55	132.905	1.873	28.40	690	0.243
Chlorine	Cl	17	35.453	3.214×10^{-3} (0°C)	-101	-34.7	0.486
Chromium	Cr	24	51.996	7.19	1857	2665	0.448
Cobalt	Co	27	58.9332	8.85	1495	2900	0.423
Copernicium	Cn	112	(285)	—	—	—	—
Copper	Cu	29	63.54	8.96	1083.40	2595	0.385
Curium	Cm	96	(247)	13.3	—	—	—
Darmstadtium	Ds	110	(271)	—	—	—	—
Dubnium	Db	105	262.114	—	—	—	—
Dysprosium	Dy	66	162.50	8.55	1409	2330	0.172
Einsteinium	Es	99	(254)	—	—	—	—
Erbium	Er	68	167.26	9.15	1522	2630	0.167
Europium	Eu	63	151.96	5.243	817	1490	0.163
Fermium	Fm	100	(237)	—	—	—	—
Flerovium*	Fl	114	(289)	—	—	—	—
Fluorine	F	9	18.9984	1.696×10^{-3} (0°C)	-219.6	-188.2	0.753
Francium	Fr	87	(223)	—	(27)	—	—
Gadolinium	Gd	64	157.25	7.90	1312	2730	0.234
Gallium	Ga	31	69.72	5.907	29.75	2237	0.377
Germanium	Ge	32	72.59	5.323	937.25	2830	0.322
Gold	Au	79	196.967	19.32	1064.43	2970	0.131

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number Z	Molar Mass, g/mol	Density, g/cm^3 at 20°C	Melting Point, °C	Boiling Point, °C	Specific Heat, J/(g·°C) at 25°C
Hafnium	Hf	72	178.49	13.31	2227	5400	0.144
Hassium	Hs	108	(265)	—	—	—	—
Helium	He	2	4.0026	0.1664×10^{-3}	−269.7	−268.9	5.23
Holmium	Ho	67	164.930	8.79	1470	2330	0.165
Hydrogen	H	1	1.00797	0.08375×10^{-3}	−259.19	−252.7	14.4
Indium	In	49	114.82	7.31	156.634	2000	0.233
Iodine	I	53	126.9044	4.93	113.7	183	0.218
Iridium	Ir	77	192.2	22.5	2447	(5300)	0.130
Iron	Fe	26	55.847	7.874	1536.5	3000	0.447
Krypton	Kr	36	83.80	3.488×10^{-3}	−157.37	−152	0.247
Lanthanum	La	57	138.91	6.189	920	3470	0.195
Lawrencium	Lr	103	(257)	—	—	—	—
Lead	Pb	82	207.19	11.35	327.45	1725	0.129
Lithium	Li	3	6.939	0.534	180.55	1300	3.58
Livermorium*	Lv	116	(293)	—	—	—	—
Lutetium	Lu	71	174.97	9.849	1663	1930	0.155
Magnesium	Mg	12	24.312	1.738	650	1107	1.03
Manganese	Mn	25	54.9380	7.44	1244	2150	0.481
Meitnerium	Mt	109	(266)	—	—	—	—
Mendelevium	Md	101	(256)	—	—	—	—
Mercury	Hg	80	200.59	13.55	−38.87	357	0.138
Molybdenum	Mo	42	95.94	10.22	2617	5560	0.251
Neodymium	Nd	60	144.24	7.007	1016	3180	0.188
Neon	Ne	10	20.183	0.8387×10^{-3}	−248.597	−246.0	1.03
Neptunium	Np	93	(237)	20.25	637	—	1.26
Nickel	Ni	28	58.71	8.902	1453	2730	0.444
Niobium	Nb	41	92.906	8.57	2468	4927	0.264
Nitrogen	N	7	14.0067	1.1649×10^{-3}	−210	−195.8	1.03
Nobelium	No	102	(255)	—	—	—	—
Osmium	Os	76	190.2	22.59	3027	5500	0.130
Oxygen	O	8	15.9994	1.3318×10^{-3}	−218.80	−183.0	0.913
Palladium	Pd	46	106.4	12.02	1552	3980	0.243
Phosphorus	P	15	30.9738	1.83	44.25	280	0.741
Platinum	Pt	78	195.09	21.45	1769	4530	0.134
Plutonium	Pu	94	(244)	19.8	640	3235	0.130
Polonium	Po	84	(210)	9.32	254	—	—
Potassium	K	19	39.102	0.862	63.20	760	0.758
Praseodymium	Pr	59	140.907	6.773	931	3020	0.197
Promethium	Pm	61	(145)	7.22	(1027)	—	—
Protactinium	Pa	91	(231)	15.37 (estimated)	(1230)	—	—
Radium	Ra	88	(226)	5.0	700	—	—
Radon	Rn	86	(222)	9.96×10^{-3} (0°C)	(−71)	−61.8	0.092
Rhenium	Re	75	186.2	21.02	3180	5900	0.134
Rhodium	Rh	45	102.905	12.41	1963	4500	0.243
Roentgenium	Rg	111	(280)	—	—	—	—
Rubidium	Rb	37	85.47	1.532	39.49	688	0.364
Ruthenium	Ru	44	101.107	12.37	2250	4900	0.239
Rutherfordium	Rf	104	261.11	—	—	—	—

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number Z	Molar Mass, g/mol	Density, g/cm^3 at 20°C	Melting Point, °C	Boiling Point, °C	Specific Heat, J/(g·°C) at 25°C
Samarium	Sm	62	150.35	7.52	1072	1630	0.197
Scandium	Sc	21	44.956	2.99	1539	2730	0.569
Seaborgium	Sg	106	263.118	—	—	—	—
Selenium	Se	34	78.96	4.79	221	685	0.318
Silicon	Si	14	28.086	2.33	1412	2680	0.712
Silver	Ag	47	107.870	10.49	960.8	2210	0.234
Sodium	Na	11	22.9898	0.9712	97.85	892	1.23
Strontium	Sr	38	87.62	2.54	768	1380	0.737
Sulfur	S	16	32.064	2.07	119.0	444.6	0.707
Tantalum	Ta	73	180.948	16.6	3014	5425	0.138
Technetium	Tc	43	(99)	11.46	2200	—	0.209
Tellurium	Te	52	127.60	6.24	449.5	990	0.201
Terbium	Tb	65	158.924	8.229	1357	2530	0.180
Thallium	Tl	81	204.37	11.85	304	1457	0.130
Thorium	Th	90	(232)	11.72	1755	(3850)	0.117
Thulium	Tm	69	168.934	9.32	1545	1720	0.159
Tin	Sn	50	118.69	7.2984	231.868	2270	0.226
Titanium	Ti	22	47.90	4.54	1670	3260	0.523
Tungsten	W	74	183.85	19.3	3380	5930	0.134
Unnamed	Uut	113	(284)	—	—	—	—
Unnamed	Uup	115	(288)	—	—	—	—
Unnamed	Uus	117	—	—	—	—	—
Unnamed	Uuo	118	(294)	—	—	—	—
Uranium	U	92	(238)	18.95	1132	3818	0.117
Vanadium	V	23	50.942	6.11	1902	3400	0.490
Xenon	Xe	54	131.30	5.495×10^{-3}	−111.79	−108	0.159
Ytterbium	Yb	70	173.04	6.965	824	1530	0.155
Yttrium	Y	39	88.905	4.469	1526	3030	0.297
Zinc	Zn	30	65.37	7.133	419.58	906	0.389
Zirconium	Zr	40	91.22	6.506	1852	3580	0.276

The values in parentheses in the column of molar masses are the mass numbers of the longest-lived isotopes of those elements that are radioactive. Melting points and boiling points in parentheses are uncertain.

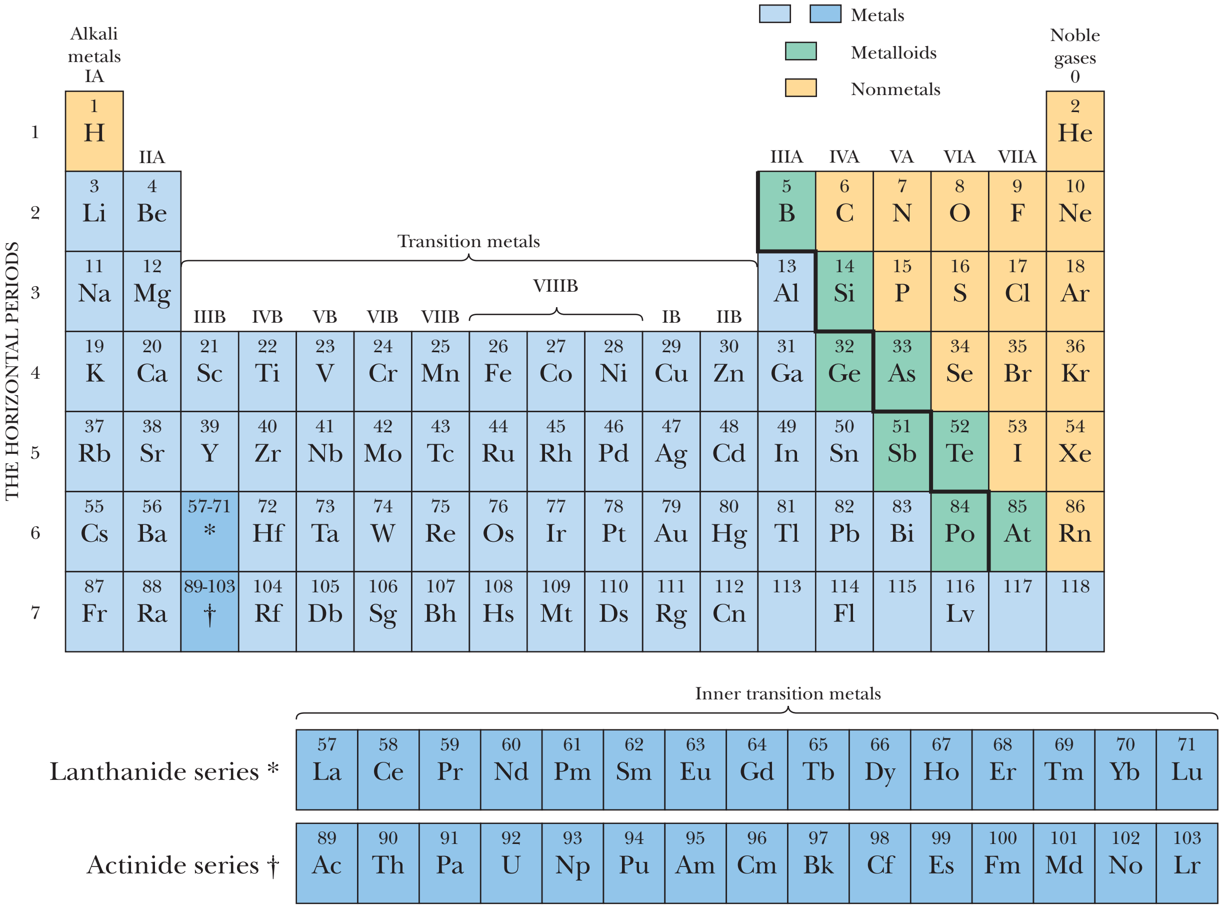
The data for gases are valid only when these are in their usual molecular state, such as H_2, He, O_2, Ne, etc. The specific heats of the gases are the values at constant pressure.

Source: Adapted from J. Emsley, *The Elements,* 3rd ed., 1998, Clarendon Press, Oxford. See also www.webelements.com for the latest values and newest elements.

*The names and symbols for elements 114 (Flerovium, Fl) and 116 (Livermorium, Lv) have been suggested but are not official.

A P P E N D I X G

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS



🟦 🟦 Metals
🟩 Metalloids
🟨 Nonmetals

THE HORIZONTAL PERIODS	Alkali metals IA	IIA	IIIB	IVB	VB	VIB	VIIB	VIIIB	VIIIB	VIIIB	IB	IIB	IIIA	IVA	VA	VIA	VIIA	Noble gases 0
			Transition metals															
1	1 H																	2 He
2	3 Li	4 Be											5 B	6 C	7 N	8 O	9 F	10 Ne
3	11 Na	12 Mg											13 Al	14 Si	15 P	16 S	17 Cl	18 Ar
4	19 K	20 Ca	21 Sc	22 Ti	23 V	24 Cr	25 Mn	26 Fe	27 Co	28 Ni	29 Cu	30 Zn	31 Ga	32 Ge	33 As	34 Se	35 Br	36 Kr
5	37 Rb	38 Sr	39 Y	40 Zr	41 Nb	42 Mo	43 Tc	44 Ru	45 Rh	46 Pd	47 Ag	48 Cd	49 In	50 Sn	51 Sb	52 Te	53 I	54 Xe
6	55 Cs	56 Ba	57-71 *	72 Hf	73 Ta	74 W	75 Re	76 Os	77 Ir	78 Pt	79 Au	80 Hg	81 Tl	82 Pb	83 Bi	84 Po	85 At	86 Rn
7	87 Fr	88 Ra	89-103 †	104 Rf	105 Db	106 Sg	107 Bh	108 Hs	109 Mt	110 Ds	111 Rg	112 Cn	113	114 Fl	115	116 Lv	117	118

	Inner transition metals														
Lanthanide series *	57 La	58 Ce	59 Pr	60 Nd	61 Pm	62 Sm	63 Eu	64 Gd	65 Tb	66 Dy	67 Ho	68 Er	69 Tm	70 Yb	71 Lu
Actinide series †	89 Ac	90 Th	91 Pa	92 U	93 Np	94 Pu	95 Am	96 Cm	97 Bk	98 Cf	99 Es	100 Fm	101 Md	102 No	103 Lr

Evidence for the discovery of elements 113 through 118 has been reported. See www.webelements.com for the latest information and newest elements. The names and symbols for elements 114 and 116 have been suggested but are not official.

This page intentionally left blank

ANSWERS

To Checkpoints and Odd-Numbered Questions and Problems

Chapter 1

P **1.** (a) 4.00×10^4 km; (b) $5.10 \times 10^8\text{ km}^2$; (c) $1.08 \times 10^{12}\text{ km}^3$ **3.** (a) $10^9\ \mu\text{m}$; (b) 10^{-4}; (c) $9.1 \times 10^5\ \mu\text{m}$ **5.** (a) 160 rods; (b) 40 chains **7.** 1.1×10^3 acre-feet **9.** $1.9 \times 10^{22}\text{ cm}^3$ **11.** (a) 1.43; (b) 0.864 **13.** (a) 495 s; (b) 141 s; (c) 198 s; (d) -245 s **15.** $1.21 \times 10^{12}\ \mu\text{s}$ **17.** C, D, A, B, E; the important criterion is the consistency of the daily variation, not its magnitude **19.** 5.2×10^6 m **21.** 9.0×10^{49} atoms **23.** (a) 1×10^3 kg; (b) 158 kg/s **25.** 1.9×10^5 kg **27.** (a) $1.18 \times 10^{-29}\text{ m}^3$; (b) 0.282 nm **29.** 1.75×10^3 kg **31.** 1.43 kg/min **33.** (a) 293 U.S. bushels; (b) 3.81×10^3 U.S. bushels **35.** (a) 22 pecks; (b) 5.5 Imperial bushels; (c) 200 L **37.** 8×10^2 km **39.** (a) 18.8 gallons; (b) 22.5 gallons **41.** 0.3 cord **43.** 3.8 mg/s **45.** (a) yes; (b) 8.6 universe seconds **47.** 0.12 AU/min **49.** (a) 3.88; (b) 7.65; (c) 156 ken^3; (d) $1.19 \times 10^3\text{ m}^3$ **51.** (a) 3.9 m, 4.8 m; (b) 3.9×10^3 mm, 4.8×10^3 mm; (c) 2.2 m^3, 4.2 m^3 **53.** (a) 4.9×10^{-6} pc; (b) 1.6×10^{-5} ly **55.** (a) 3 nebuchadnezzars, 1 methuselah; (b) 0.37 standard bottle; (c) 0.26 L **57.** 10.7 habaneros **59.** 700 to 1500 oysters

Chapter 2

CP **1.** b and c **2.** (check the derivative dx/dt) (a) 1 and 4; (b) 2 and 3 **3.** (a) plus; (b) minus; (c) minus; (d) plus **4.** 1 and 4 ($a = d^2x/dt^2$ must be constant) **5.** (a) plus (upward displacement on y axis); (b) minus (downward displacement on y axis); (c) $a = -g = -9.8\text{ m/s}^2$

Q **1.** (a) negative; (b) positive; (c) yes; (d) positive; (e) constant **3.** (a) all tie; (b) 4, tie of 1 and 2, then 3 **5.** (a) positive direction; (b) negative direction; (c) 3 and 5; (d) 2 and 6 tie, then 3 and 5 tie, then 1 and 4 tie (zero) **7.** (a) D; (b) E **9.** (a) 3, 2, 1; (b) 1, 2, 3; (c) all tie; (d) 1, 2, 3 **11.** 1 and 2 tie, then 3

P **1.** 13 m **3.** (a) +40 km/h; (b) 40 km/h **5.** (a) 0; (b) -2 m; (c) 0; (d) 12 m; (e) +12 m; (f) +7 m/s **7.** 60 km **9.** 1.4 m **11.** 128 km/h **13.** (a) 73 km/h; (b) 68 km/h; (c) 70 km/h; (d) 0 **15.** (a) -6 m/s; (b) $-x$ direction; (c) 6 m/s; (d) decreasing; (e) 2 s; (f) no **17.** (a) 28.5 cm/s; (b) 18.0 cm/s; (c) 40.5 cm/s; (d) 28.1 cm/s; (e) 30.3 cm/s **19.** -20 m/s^2 **21.** (a) 1.10 m/s; (b) 6.11 mm/s^2; (c) 1.47 m/s; (d) 6.11 mm/s^2 **23.** $1.62 \times 10^{15}\text{ m/s}^2$ **25.** (a) 30 s; (b) 300 m **27.** (a) +1.6 m/s; (b) +18 m/s **29.** (a) 10.6 m; (b) 41.5 s **31.** (a) 3.1×10^6 s; (b) 4.6×10^{13} m **33.** (a) 3.56 m/s^2; (b) 8.43 m/s **35.** 0.90 m/s^2 **37.** (a) 4.0 m/s^2; (b) $+x$ **39.** (a) -2.5 m/s^2; (b) 1; (d) 0; (e) 2 **41.** 40 m **43.** (a) 0.994 m/s^2 **45.** (a) 31 m/s; (b) 6.4 s **47.** (a) 29.4 m; (b) 2.45 s **49.** (a) 5.4 s; (b) 41 m/s **51.** (a) 20 m; (b) 59 m **53.** 4.0 m/s **55.** (a) 857 m/s^2; (b) up **57.** (a) $1.26 \times 10^3\text{ m/s}^2$; (b) up **59.** (a) 89 cm; (b) 22 cm **61.** 20.4 m **63.** 2.34 m **65.** (a) 2.25 m/s; (b) 3.90 m/s **67.** 0.56 m/s **69.** 100 m **71.** (a) 2.00 s; (b) 12 cm; (c) -9.00 cm/s^2; (d) right; (e) left; (f) 3.46 s **73.** (a) 82 m; (b) 19 m/s **75.** (a) 0.74 s; (b) 6.2 m/s^2 **77.** (a) 3.1 m/s^2; (b) 45 m; (c) 13 s **79.** 17 m/s **81.** +47 m/s **83.** (a) 1.23 cm; (b) 4 times; (c) 9 times; (d) 16 times; (e) 25 times **85.** 25 km/h **87.** 1.2 h **89.** $4H$ **91.** (a) 3.2 s; (b) 1.3 s **93.** (a) 8.85 m/s; (b) 1.00 m **95.** (a) 2.0 m/s^2; (b) 12 m/s; (c) 45 m **97.** (a) 48.5 m/s; (b) 4.95 s; (c) 34.3 m/s; (d) 3.50 s **99.** 22.0 m/s **101.** (a) $v = (v_0^2 + 2gh)^{0.5}$; (b) $t = [(v_0^2 + 2gh)^{0.5} - v_0]\,/\,g$; (c) same as (a); (d) $t = [(v_0^2 + 2gh)^{0.5} + v_0]\,/\,g$, greater **103.** 414 ms **105.** 90 m **107.** 0.556 s **109.** (a) 0.28 m/s^2; (b) 0.28 m/s^2 **111.** (a) 10.2 s; (b) 10.0 m **113.** (a) 5.44 s; (b) 53.3 m/s; (c) 5.80 m **115.** 2.3 cm/min **117.** 0.15 m/s **119.** (a) 1.0 cm/s; (b) 1.6 cm/s, 1.1 cm/s, 0; (c) -0.79 cm/s^2; (d) 0, -0.87 cm/s^2, -1.2 cm/s^2

Chapter 3

CP **1.** (a) 7 m ($\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are in same direction); (b) 1 m ($\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are in opposite directions) **2.** c, d, f (components must be head to tail; $\vec{a}$ must extend from tail of one component to head of the other) **3.** (a) $+, +$; (b) $+, -$; (c) $+, +$ (draw vector from tail of $\vec{d}_1$ to head of $\vec{d}_2$) **4.** (a) 90°; (b) 0° (vectors are parallel—same direction); (c) 180° (vectors are antiparallel—opposite directions) **5.** (a) 0° or 180°; (b) 90°

Q **1.** yes, when the vectors are in same direction **3.** Either the sequence $\vec{d}_2, \vec{d}_1$ or the sequence $\vec{d}_2, \vec{d}_2, \vec{d}_3$ **5.** all but (e) **7.** (a) yes; (b) yes; (c) no **9.** (a) $+x$ for (1), $+z$ for (2), $+z$ for (3); (b) $-x$ for (1), $-z$ for (2), $-z$ for (3) **11.** $\vec{s}, \vec{p}, \vec{r}$ or $\vec{p}, \vec{s}, \vec{r}$ **13.** Correct: c, d, f, h. Incorrect: a (cannot dot a vector with a scalar), b (cannot cross a vector with a scalar), e, g, i, j (cannot add a scalar and a vector).

P **1.** (a) -2.5 m; (b) -6.9 m **3.** (a) 47.2 m; (b) 122° **5.** (a) 156 km; (b) 39.8° west of due north **7.** (a) parallel; (b) antiparallel; (c) perpendicular **9.** (a) $(3.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (2.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (5.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) $(5.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (4.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (3.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (c) $(-5.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (4.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (3.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **11.** (a) $(-9.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (10\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 13 m; (c) 132° **13.** 4.74 km **15.** (a) 1.59 m; (b) 12.1 m; (c) 12.2 m; (d) 82.5° **17.** (a) 38 m; (b) $-37.5°$; (c) 130 m; (d) 1.2°; (e) 62 m; (f) 130° **19.** 5.39 m at 21.8° left of forward **21.** (a) -70.0 cm; (b) 80.0 cm; (c) 141 cm; (d) $-172°$ **23.** 3.2 **25.** 2.6 km **27.** (a) $8\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 16\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $2\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 4\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **29.** (a) 7.5 cm; (b) 90°; (c) 8.6 cm; (d) 48° **31.** (a) 9.51 m; (b) 14.1 m; (c) 13.4 m; (d) 10.5 m **33.** (a) 12; (b) $+z$; (c) 12; (d) $-z$; (e) 12; (f) $+z$ **35.** (a) -18.8 units; (b) 26.9 units, $+z$ direction **37.** (a) -21; (b) -9; (c) $5\hat{\mathrm{i}} - 11\hat{\mathrm{j}} - 9\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **39.** 70.5° **41.** 22° **43.** (a) 3.00 m; (b) 0; (c) 3.46 m; (d) 2.00 m; (e) -5.00 m; (f) 8.66 m; (g) -6.67; (h) 4.33 **45.** (a) -83.4; (b) $(1.14 \times 10^3)\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (c) 1.14×10^3, θ not defined, $\phi = 0°$; (d) 90.0°; (e) $-5.14\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 6.13\hat{\mathrm{j}} + 3.00\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (f) 8.54, $\theta = 130°$, $\phi = 69.4°$ **47.** (a) 140°; (b) 90.0°; (c) 99.1° **49.** (a) 103 km; (b) 60.9° north of due west **51.** (a) 27.8 m; (b) 13.4 m **53.** (a) 30; (b) 52 **55.** (a) -2.83 m; (b) -2.83 m; (c) 5.00 m; (d) 0; (e) 3.00 m; (f) 5.20 m; (g) 5.17 m; (h) 2.37 m; (i) 5.69 m; (j) 25° north of due east; (k) 5.69 m; (l) 25° south of due west **57.** 4.1 **59.** (a) $(9.19\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}}' + (7.71\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}'$; (b) $(14.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}}' + (3.41\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}'$ **61.** (a) $11\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 5.0\hat{\mathrm{j}} - 7.0\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) 120°; (c) -4.9; (d) 7.3 **63.** (a) 3.0 m^2; (b) 52 m^3; (c) $(11\text{ m}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (9.0\text{ m}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (3.0\text{ m}^2)\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **65.** (a) $(-40\hat{\mathrm{i}} - 20\hat{\mathrm{j}} + 25\hat{\mathrm{k}})$ m; (b) 45 m **67.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) -1; (d) west; (e) up; (f) west **69.** (a) 168 cm; (b) 32.5° **71.** (a) 15 m; (b) south; (c) 6.0 m; (d) north **73.** (a) $2\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) 26; (c) 46; (d) 5.81 **75.** (a) up; (b) 0; (c) south; (d) 1; (e) 0 **77.** (a) $(1300\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (2200\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (410\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) 2.56×10^3 m **79.** 8.4

Chapter 4

CP **1.** (draw $\vec{v}$ tangent to path, tail on path) (a) first; (b) third **2.** (take second derivative with respect to time) (1) and (3) a_x and a_y are both constant and thus $\vec{a}$ is constant; (2) and (4) a_y is constant but a_x is not, thus $\vec{a}$ is not **3.** yes **4.** (a) v_x constant; (b) v_y initially positive, decreases to zero, and then becomes progressively more negative; (c) $a_x = 0$ throughout; (d) $a_y = -g$ throughout **5.** (a) $-(4\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (b) $-(8\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}}$

Q **1.** *a* and *c* tie, then *b* **3.** decreases **5.** *a*, *b*, *c* **7.** (a) 0; (b) 350 km/h; (c) 350 km/h; (d) same (nothing changed about the vertical motion) **9.** (a) all tie; (b) all tie; (c) 3, 2, 1; (d) 3, 2, 1 **11.** 2, then 1 and 4 tie, then 3 **13.** (a) yes; (b) no; (c) yes **15.** (a) decreases; (b) increases **17.** maximum height

P **1.** (a) 6.2 m **3.** $(-2.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (6.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (10\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **5.** (a) 7.59 km/h; (b) 22.5° east of due north **7.** $(-0.70\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (1.4\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (0.40\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **9.** (a) 0.83 cm/s; (b) 0°; (c) 0.11 m/s; (d) −63° **11.** (a) $(6.00\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (106\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $(19.0\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (224\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (c) $(24.0\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (336\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (d) −85.2° **13.** (a) $(8\text{ m/s}^2)t\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (1\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) $(8\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **15.** (a) $(-1.50\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $(4.50\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (2.25\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **17.** $(32\text{ m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **19.** (a) $(72.0\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (90.7\text{ m})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 49.5° **21.** (a) 18 cm; (b) 1.9 m **23.** (a) 3.03 s; (b) 758 m; (c) 29.7 m/s **25.** 43.1 m/s (155 km/h) **27.** (a) 10.0 s; (b) 897 m **29.** 78.5° **31.** 3.35 m **33.** (a) 202 m/s; (b) 806 m; (c) 161 m/s; (d) −171 m/s **35.** 4.84 cm **37.** (a) 1.60 m; (b) 6.86 m; (c) 2.86 m **39.** (a) 32.3 m; (b) 21.9 m/s; (c) 40.4°; (d) below **41.** 55.5° **43.** (a) 11 m; (b) 23 m; (c) 17 m/s; (d) 63° **45.** (a) ramp; (b) 5.82 m; (c) 31.0° **47.** (a) yes; (b) 2.56 m **49.** (a) 31°; (b) 63° **51.** (a) 2.3°; (b) 1.1 m; (c) 18° **53.** (a) 75.0 m; (b) 31.9 m/s; (c) 66.9°; (d) 25.5 m **55.** the third **57.** (a) 7.32 m; (b) west; (c) north **59.** (a) 12 s; (b) 4.1 m/s^2; (c) down; (d) 4.1 m/s^2; (e) up **61.** (a) 1.3×10^5 m/s; (b) 7.9×10^5 m/s^2; (c) increase **63.** 2.92 m **65.** $(3.00\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (6.00\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **67.** 160 m/s^2 **69.** (a) 13 m/s^2; (b) eastward; (c) 13 m/s^2; (d) eastward **71.** 1.67 **73.** (a) $(80\text{ km/h})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (60\text{ km/h})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 0°; (c) answers do not change **75.** 32 m/s **77.** 60° **79.** (a) 38 knots; (b) 1.5° east of due north; (c) 4.2 h; (d) 1.5° west of due south **81.** (a) $(-32\text{ km/h})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (46\text{ km/h})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $[(2.5\text{ km}) - (32\text{ km/h})t]\hat{\mathrm{i}} + [(4.0\text{ km}) - (46\text{ km/h})t]\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (c) 0.084 h; (d) 2×10^2 m **83.** (a) −30°; (b) 69 min; (c) 80 min; (d) 80 min; (e) 0°; (f) 60 min **85.** (a) 2.7 km; (b) 76° clockwise **87.** (a) 44 m; (b) 13 m; (c) 8.9 m **89.** (a) 45 m; (b) 22 m/s **91.** (a) 2.6×10^2 m/s; (b) 45 s; (c) increase **93.** (a) 63 km; (b) 18° south of due east; (c) 0.70 km/h; (d) 18° south of due east; (e) 1.6 km/h; (f) 1.2 km/h; (g) 33° north of due east **95.** (a) 1.5; (b) (36 m, 54 m) **97.** (a) 62 ms; (b) 4.8×10^2 m/s **99.** 2.64 m **101.** (a) 2.5 m; (b) 0.82 m; (c) 9.8 m/s^2; (d) 9.8 m/s^2 **103.** (a) 6.79 km/h; (b) 6.96° **105.** (a) 16 m/s; (b) 23°; (c) above; (d) 27 m/s; (e) 57°; (f) below **107.** (a) 4.2 m, 45°; (b) 5.5 m, 68°; (c) 6.0 m, 90°; (d) 4.2 m, 135°; (e) 0.85 m/s, 135°; (f) 0.94 m/s, 90°; (g) 0.94 m/s, 180°; (h) 0.30 m/s^2, 180°; (i) 0.30 m/s^2, 270° **109.** (a) 5.4×10^{-13} m; (b) decrease **111.** (a) 0.034 m/s^2; (b) 84 min **113.** (a) 8.43 m; (b) −129° **115.** (a) 2.00 ns; (b) 2.00 mm; (c) 1.00×10^7 m/s; (d) 2.00×10^6 m/s **117.** (a) 24 m/s; (b) 65° **119.** 93° from the car's direction of motion **121.** (a) 4.6×10^{12} m; (b) 2.4×10^5 s **123.** (a) 6.29°; (b) 83.7° **125.** (a) 3×10^1 m **127.** (a) $(6.0\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 4.2\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ m/s; (b) $(18\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 6.3\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ m **129.** (a) 38 ft/s; (b) 32 ft/s; (c) 9.3 ft **131.** (a) 11 m; (b) 45 m/s **133.** (a) 5.8 m/s; (b) 17 m; (c) 67° **135.** (a) 32.4 m; (b) −37.7 m **137.** 88.6 km/h

Chapter 5

CP **1.** *c*, *d*, and *e* ($\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ must be head to tail, $\vec{F}_{\text{net}}$ must be from tail of one of them to head of the other) **2.** (a) and (b) 2 N, leftward (acceleration is zero in each situation) **3.** (a) equal; (b) greater (acceleration is upward, thus net force on body must be upward) **4.** (a) equal; (b) greater; (c) less **5.** (a) increase; (b) yes; (c) same; (d) yes

Q **1.** (a) 2, 3, 4; (b) 1, 3, 4; (c) 1, +*y*; 2, +*x*; 3, fourth quadrant; 4, third quadrant **3.** increase **5.** (a) 2 and 4; (b) 2 and 4 **7.** (a) *M*; (b) *M*; (c) *M*; (d) 2*M*; (e) 3*M* **9.** (a) 20 kg; (b) 18 kg; (c) 10 kg; (d) all tie; (e) 3, 2, 1 **11.** (a) increases from initial value *mg*; (b) decreases from *mg* to zero (after which the block moves up away from the floor)

P **1.** 2.9 m/s^2 **3.** (a) 1.88 N; (b) 0.684 N; (c) $(1.88\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (0.684\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **5.** (a) $(0.86\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (0.16\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 0.88 m/s^2; (c) −11° **7.** (a) $(-32.0\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (20.8\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 38.2 N; (c) −147° **9.** (a) 8.37 N; (b) −133°; (c) −125° **11.** 9.0 m/s^2 **13.** (a) 4.0 kg; (b) 1.0 kg; (c) 4.0 kg; (d) 1.0 kg **15.** (a) 108 N; (b) 108 N; (c) 108 N **17.** (a) 42 N; (b) 72 N; (c) 4.9 m/s^2 **19.** 1.2×10^5 N **21.** (a) 11.7 N; (b) −59.0° **23.** (a) $(285\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (705\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $(285\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (115\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (c) 307 N; (d) −22.0°; (e) 3.67 m/s^2; (f) −22.0° **25.** (a) 0.022 m/s^2; (b) 8.3×10^4 km; (c) 1.9×10^3 m/s **27.** 1.5 mm **29.** (a) 494 N; (b) up; (c) 494 N; (d) down **31.** (a) 1.18 m; (b) 0.674 s; (c) 3.50 m/s **33.** 1.8×10^4 N **35.** (a) 46.7°; (b) 28.0° **37.** (a) 0.62 m/s^2; (b) 0.13 m/s^2; (c) 2.6 m **39.** (a) 2.2×10^{-3} N; (b) 3.7×10^{-3} N **41.** (a) 1.4 m/s^2; (b) 4.1 m/s **43.** (a) 1.23 N; (b) 2.46 N; (c) 3.69 N; (d) 4.92 N; (e) 6.15 N; (f) 0.250 N **45.** (a) 31.3 kN; (b) 24.3 kN **47.** 6.4×10^3 N **49.** (a) 2.18 m/s^2; (b) 116 N; (c) 21.0 m/s^2 **51.** (a) 3.6 m/s^2; (b) 17 N **53.** (a) 0.970 m/s^2; (b) 11.6 N; (c) 34.9 N **55.** (a) 1.1 N **57.** (a) 0.735 m/s^2; (b) down; (c) 20.8 N **59.** (a) 4.9 m/s^2; (b) 2.0 m/s^2; (c) up; (d) 120 N **61.** $2Ma/(a + g)$ **63.** (a) 8.0 m/s; (b) $+x$ **65.** (a) 0.653 m/s^3; (b) 0.896 m/s^3; (c) 6.50 s **67.** 81.7 N **69.** 2.4 N **71.** 16 N **73.** (a) 2.6 N; (b) 17° **75.** (a) 0; (b) 0.83 m/s^2; (c) 0 **77.** (a) 0.74 m/s^2; (b) 7.3 m/s^2 **79.** (a) 11 N; (b) 2.2 kg; (c) 0; (d) 2.2 kg **81.** 195 N **83.** (a) 4.6 m/s^2; (b) 2.6 m/s^2 **85.** (a) rope breaks; (b) 1.6 m/s^2 **87.** (a) 65 N; (b) 49 N **89.** (a) 4.6×10^3 N; (b) 5.8×10^3 N **91.** (a) 1.8×10^2 N; (b) 6.4×10^2 N **93.** (a) 44 N; (b) 78 N; (c) 54 N; (d) 152 N **95.** (a) 4 kg; (b) 6.5 m/s^2; (c) 13 N **97.** (a) $(1.0\hat{\mathrm{i}} - 2.0\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ N; (b) 2.2 N; (c) −63°; (d) 2.2 m/s^2; (e) −63°

Chapter 6

CP **1.** (a) zero (because there is no attempt at sliding); (b) 5 N; (c) no; (d) yes; (e) 8 N **2.** ($\vec{a}$ is directed toward center of circular path) (a) $\vec{a}$ downward, $\vec{F}_N$ upward; (b) $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{F}_N$ upward; (c) same; (d) greater at lowest point

Q **1.** (a) decrease; (b) decrease; (c) increase; (d) increase; (e) increase **3.** (a) same; (b) increases; (c) increases; (d) no **5.** (a) upward; (b) horizontal, toward you; (c) no change; (d) increases; (e) increases **7.** At first, $\vec{f}_s$ is directed up the ramp and its magnitude increases from $mg \sin\theta$ until it reaches $f_{s,\max}$. Thereafter the force is kinetic friction directed up the ramp, with magnitude f_k (a constant value smaller than $f_{s,\max}$). **9.** 4, 3, then 1, 2, and 5 tie **11.** (a) all tie; (b) all tie; (c) 2, 3, 1 **13.** (a) increases; (b) increases; (c) decreases; (d) decreases; (e) decreases

P **1.** 36 m **3.** (a) 2.0×10^2 N; (b) 1.2×10^2 N **5.** (a) 6.0 N; (b) 3.6 N; (c) 3.1 N **7.** (a) 1.9×10^2 N; (b) 0.56 m/s^2 **9.** (a) 11 N; (b) 0.14 m/s^2 **11.** (a) 3.0×10^2 N; (b) 1.3 m/s^2 **13.** (a) 1.3×10^2 N; (b) no; (c) 1.1×10^2 N; (d) 46 N; (e) 17 N **15.** 2° **17.** (a) $(17\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (b) $(20\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (c) $(15\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **19.** (a) no; (b) $(-12\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (5.0\text{ N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **21.** (a) 19°; (b) 3.3 kN **23.** 0.37 **25.** 1.0×10^2 N **27.** (a) 0; (b) $(-3.9\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (c) $(-1.0\text{ m/s}^2)\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **29.** (a) 66 N; (b) 2.3 m/s^2 **31.** (a) 3.5 m/s^2; (b) 0.21 N **33.** 9.9 s **35.** 4.9×10^2 N **37.** (a) 3.2×10^2 km/h; (b) 6.5×10^2 km/h; (c) no **39.** 2.3 **41.** 0.60 **43.** 21 m **45.** (a) light; (b) 778 N; (c) 223 N; (d) 1.11 kN **47.** (a) 10 s; (b) 4.9×10^2 N; (c) 1.1×10^3 N **49.** 1.37×10^3 N **51.** 2.2 km **53.** 12° **55.** 2.6×10^3 N **57.** 1.81 m/s **59.** (a) 8.74 N; (b) 37.9 N; (c) 6.45 m/s; (d) radially inward **61.** (a) 27 N; (b) 3.0 m/s^2 **63.** (b) 240 N; (c) 0.60 **65.** (a) 69 km/h; (b) 139 km/h; (c) yes **67.** $g(\sin\theta - 2^{0.5}\mu_k \cos\theta)$ **69.** 3.4 m/s^2 **71.** (a) 35.3 N; (b) 39.7 N; (c) 320 N **73.** (a) 7.5 m/s^2; (b) down; (c) 9.5 m/s^2; (d) down **75.** (a) 3.0×10^5 N; (b) 1.2° **77.** 147 m/s **79.** (a) 13 N; (b) 1.6 m/s^2 **81.** (a) 275 N; (b) 877 N **83.** (a) 84.2 N; (b) 52.8 N; (c) 1.87 m/s^2 **85.** 3.4% **87.** (a) 3.21×10^3 N; (b) yes **89.** (a) 222 N; (b) 334 N; (c) 311 N; (d) 311 N; (e) c, d **91.** (a) $v_0^2/(4g\sin\theta)$; (b) no **93.** (a) 0.34; (b) 0.24 **95.** (a) $\mu_k mg/(\sin\theta - \mu_k\cos\theta)$; (b) $\theta_0 = \tan^{-1}\mu_s$ **97.** 0.18 **99.** (a) 56 N; (b) 59 N; (c) 1.1×10^3 N **101.** 0.76 **103.** (a) bottom of circle; (b) 9.5 m/s **105.** 0.56

Chapter 7

CP **1.** (a) decrease; (b) same; (c) negative, zero **2.** (a) positive; (b) negative; (c) zero **3.** zero

Q **1.** all tie **3.** (a) positive; (b) negative; (c) negative **5.** *b* (positive work), *a* (zero work), *c* (negative work), *d* (more negative work) **7.** all tie **9.** (a) *A*; (b) *B* **11.** 2, 3, 1

P **1.** (a) 2.9×10^{7} m/s; (b) 2.1×10^{-13} J **3.** (a) 5×10^{14} J; (b) 0.1 megaton TNT; (c) 8 bombs **5.** (a) 2.4 m/s; (b) 4.8 m/s **7.** 0.96 J **9.** 20 J **11.** (a) 62.3°; (b) 118° **13.** (a) 1.7×10^{2} N; (b) 3.4×10^{2} m; (c) -5.8×10^{4} J; (d) 3.4×10^{2} N; (e) 1.7×10^{2} m; (f) -5.8×10^{4} J **15.** (a) 1.50 J; (b) increases **17.** (a) 12 kJ; (b) −11 kJ; (c) 1.1 kJ; (d) 5.4 m/s **19.** 25 J **21.** (a) $-3Mgd/4$; (b) Mgd; (c) $Mgd/4$; (d) $(gd/2)^{0.5}$ **23.** 4.41 J **25.** (a) 25.9 kJ; (b) 2.45 N **27.** (a) 7.2 J; (b) 7.2 J; (c) 0; (d) −25 J **29.** (a) 0.90 J; (b) 2.1 J; (c) 0 **31.** (a) 6.6 m/s; (b) 4.7 m **33.** (a) 0.12 m; (b) 0.36 J; (c) −0.36 J; (d) 0.060 m; (e) 0.090 J **35.** (a) 0; (b) 0 **37.** (a) 42 J; (b) 30 J; (c) 12 J; (d) 6.5 m/s, $+x$ axis; (e) 5.5 m/s, $+x$ axis; (f) 3.5 m/s, $+x$ axis **39.** 4.00 N/m **41.** 5.3×10^{2} J **43.** (a) 0.83 J; (b) 2.5 J; (c) 4.2 J; (d) 5.0 W **45.** 4.9×10^{2} W **47.** (a) 1.0×10^{2} J; (b) 8.4 W **49.** 7.4×10^{2} W **51.** (a) 32.0 J; (b) 8.00 W; (c) 78.2° **53.** (a) 1.20 J; (b) 1.10 m/s **55.** (a) 1.8×10^{5} ft · lb; (b) 0.55 hp **57.** (a) 797 N; (b) 0; (c) −1.55 kJ; (d) 0; (e) 1.55 kJ; (f) F varies during displacement **59.** (a) 11 J; (b) −21 J **61.** −6 J **63.** (a) 314 J; (b) −155 J; (c) 0; (d) 158 J **65.** (a) 98 N; (b) 4.0 cm; (c) 3.9 J; (d) −3.9 J **67.** (a) 23 mm; (b) 45 N **69.** 165 kW **71.** −37 J **73.** (a) 13 J; (b) 13 J **75.** 235 kW **77.** (a) 6 J; (b) 6.0 J **79.** (a) 0.6 J; (b) 0; (c) −0.6 J **81.** (a) 3.35 m/s; (b) 22.5 J; (c) 0; (d) 0; (e) 0.212 m **83.** (a) -5.20×10^{-2} J; (b) −0.160 J **85.** 6.63 m/s

Chapter 8

CP **1.** no (consider round trip on the small loop) **2.** 3, 1, 2 (see Eq. 8-6) **3.** (a) all tie; (b) all tie **4.** (a) *CD*, *AB*, *BC* (0) (check slope magnitudes); (b) positive direction of x **5.** all tie

Q **1.** (a) 3, 2, 1; (b) 1, 2, 3 **3.** (a) 12 J; (b) −2 J **5.** (a) increasing; (b) decreasing; (c) decreasing; (d) constant in *AB* and *BC*, decreasing in *CD* **7.** +30 J **9.** 2, 1, 3 **11.** −40 J

P **1.** 89 N/cm **3.** (a) 167 J; (b) −167 J; (c) 196 J; (d) 29 J; (e) 167 J; (f) −167 J; (g) 296 J; (h) 129 J **5.** (a) 4.31 mJ; (b) −4.31 mJ; (c) 4.31 mJ; (d) −4.31 mJ; (e) all increase **7.** (a) 13.1 J; (b) −13.1 J; (c) 13.1 J; (d) all increase **9.** (a) 17.0 m/s; (b) 26.5 m/s; (c) 33.4 m/s; (d) 56.7 m; (e) all the same **11.** (a) 2.08 m/s; (b) 2.08 m/s; (c) increase **13.** (a) 0.98 J; (b) −0.98 J; (c) 3.1 N/cm **15.** (a) 2.6×10^{2} m; (b) same; (c) decrease **17.** (a) 2.5 N; (b) 0.31 N; (c) 30 cm **19.** (a) 784 N/m; (b) 62.7 J; (c) 62.7 J; (d) 80.0 cm **21.** (a) 8.35 m/s; (b) 4.33 m/s; (c) 7.45 m/s; (d) both decrease **23.** (a) 4.85 m/s; (b) 2.42 m/s **25.** -3.2×10^{2} J **27.** (a) no; (b) 9.3×10^{2} N **29.** (a) 35 cm; (b) 1.7 m/s **31.** (a) 39.2 J; (b) 39.2 J; (c) 4.00 m **33.** (a) 2.40 m/s; (b) 4.19 m/s **35.** (a) 39.6 cm; (b) 3.64 cm **37.** −18 mJ **39.** (a) 2.1 m/s; (b) 10 N; (c) $+x$ direction; (d) 5.7 m; (e) 30 N; (f) $-x$ direction **41.** (a) −3.7 J; (c) 1.3 m; (d) 9.1 m; (e) 2.2 J; (f) 4.0 m; (g) $(4 - x)e^{-x/4}$; (h) 4.0 m **43.** (a) 5.6 J; (b) 3.5 J **45.** (a) 30.1 J; (b) 30.1 J; (c) 0.225 **47.** 0.53 J **49.** (a) −2.9 kJ; (b) 3.9×10^{2} J; (c) 2.1×10^{2} N **51.** (a) 1.5 MJ; (b) 0.51 MJ; (c) 1.0 MJ; (d) 63 m/s **53.** (a) 67 J; (b) 67 J; (c) 46 cm **55.** (a) −0.90 J; (b) 0.46 J; (c) 1.0 m/s **57.** 1.2 m **59.** (a) 19.4 m; (b) 19.0 m/s **61.** (a) 1.5×10^{-2} N; (b) $(3.8 \times 10^{2})g$ **63.** (a) 7.4 m/s; (b) 90 cm; (c) 2.8 m; (d) 15 m **65.** 20 cm **67.** (a) 7.0 J; (b) 22 J **69.** 3.7 J **71.** 4.33 m/s **73.** 25 J **75.** (a) 4.9 m/s; (b) 4.5 N; (c) 71°; (d) same **77.** (a) 4.8 N; (b) $+x$ direction; (c) 1.5 m; (d) 13.5 m; (e) 3.5 m/s **79.** (a) 24 kJ; (b) 4.7×10^{2} N **81.** (a) 5.00 J; (b) 9.00 J; (c) 11.0 J; (d) 3.00 J; (e) 12.0 J; (f) 2.00 J; (g) 13.0 J; (h) 1.00 J; (i) 13.0 J; (j) 1.00 J; (l) 11.0 J; (m) 10.8 m; (n) It returns to $x = 0$ and stops. **83.** (a) 6.0 kJ; (b) 6.0×10^{2} W; (c) 3.0×10^{2} W; (d) 9.0×10^{2} W **85.** 880 MW **87.** (a) $v_0 = (2gL)^{0.5}$; (b) $5mg$; (c) $-mgL$; (d) $-2mgL$ **89.** (a) 109 J; (b) 60.3 J; (c) 68.2 J; (d) 41.0 J **91.** (a) 2.7 J; (b) 1.8 J; (c) 0.39 m **93.** (a) 10 m; (b) 49 N; (c) 4.1 m; (d) 1.2×10^{2} N **95.** (a) 5.5 m/s; (b) 5.4 m; (c) same **97.** 80 mJ **99.** 24 W **101.** −12 J **103.** (a) 8.8 m/s; (b) 2.6 kJ; (c) 1.6 kW **105.** (a) 7.4×10^{2} J; (b) 2.4×10^{2} J **107.** 15 J **109.** (a) 2.35×10^{3} J; (b) 352 J **111.** 738 m **113.** (a) −3.8 kJ; (b) 31 kN **115.** (a) 300 J; (b) 93.8 J; (c) 6.38 m **117.** (a) 5.6 J; (b) 12 J; (c) 13 J **119.** (a) 1.2 J; (b) 11 m/s; (c) no; (d) no **121.** (a) 2.1×10^{6} kg; (b) $(100 + 1.5t)^{0.5}$ m/s; (c) $(1.5 \times 10^{6})/(100 + 1.5t)^{0.5}$ N; (d) 6.7 km **123.** 54% **125.** (a) 2.7×10^{9} J; (b) 2.7×10^{9} W; (c) \$$2.4 \times 10^{8}$ **127.** 5.4 kJ **129.** 3.1×10^{11} W **131.** because your force on the cabbage (as you lower it) does work **135.** (a) 8.6 kJ; (b) 8.6×10^{2} W; (c) 4.3×10^{2} W; (d) 1.3 kW

Chapter 9

CP **1.** (a) origin; (b) fourth quadrant; (c) on y axis below origin; (d) origin; (e) third quadrant; (f) origin **2.** (a) – (c) at the center of mass, still at the origin (their forces are internal to the system and cannot move the center of mass) **3.** (Consider slopes and Eq. 9-23.) (a) 1, 3, and then 2 and 4 tie (zero force); (b) 3 **4.** (a) unchanged; (b) unchanged (see Eq. 9-32); (c) decrease (Eq. 9-35) **5.** (a) zero; (b) positive (initial p_y down y; final p_y up y); (c) positive direction of y **6.** (No net external force; $\vec{P}$ conserved.) (a) 0; (b) no; (c) $-x$ **7.** (a) 10 kg · m/s; (b) 14 kg · m/s; (c) 6 kg · m/s **8.** (a) 4 kg · m/s; (b) 8 kg · m/s; (c) 3 J **9.** (a) 2 kg · m/s (conserve momentum along x); (b) 3 kg · m/s (conserve momentum along y)

Q **1.** (a) 2 N, rightward; (b) 2 N, rightward; (c) greater than 2 N, rightward **3.** b, c, a **5.** (a) x yes, y no; (b) x yes, y no; (c) x no, y yes **7.** (a) *c*, kinetic energy cannot be negative; *d*, total kinetic energy cannot increase; (b) *a*; (c) *b* **9.** (a) one was stationary; (b) 2; (c) 5; (d) equal (pool player's result) **11.** (a) *C*; (b) *B*; (c) 3

P **1.** (a) −1.50 m; (b) −1.43 m **3.** (a) −6.5 cm; (b) 8.3 cm; (c) 1.4 cm **5.** (a) −0.45 cm; (b) −2.0 cm **7.** (a) 0; (b) 3.13×10^{-11} m **9.** (a) 28 cm; (b) 2.3 m/s **11.** $(-4.0\text{ m})\hat{\imath} + (4.0\text{ m})\hat{\jmath}$ **13.** 53 m **15.** (a) $(2.35\hat{\imath} - 1.57\hat{\jmath})$ m/s^2; (b) $(2.35\hat{\imath} - 1.57\hat{\jmath})t$ m/s, with t in seconds; (d) straight, at downward angle 34° **17.** 4.2 m **19.** (a) 7.5×10^{4} J; (b) 3.8×10^{4} kg · m/s; (c) 39° south of due east **21.** (a) 5.0 kg · m/s; (b) 10 kg · m/s **23.** 1.0×10^{3} to 1.2×10^{3} kg · m/s **25.** (a) 42 N · s; (b) 2.1 kN **27.** (a) 67 m/s; (b) $-x$; (c) 1.2 kN; (d) $-x$ **29.** 5 N **31.** (a) 2.39×10^{3} N · s; (b) 4.78×10^{5} N; (c) 1.76×10^{3} N · s; (d) 3.52×10^{5} N **33.** (a) 5.86 kg · m/s; (b) 59.8°; (c) 2.93 kN; (d) 59.8° **35.** 9.9×10^{2} N **37.** (a) 9.0 kg · m/s; (b) 3.0 kN; (c) 4.5 kN; (d) 20 m/s **39.** 3.0 mm/s **41.** (a) $-(0.15\text{ m/s})\hat{\imath}$; (b) 0.18 m **43.** 55 cm **45.** (a) $(1.00\hat{\imath} - 0.167\hat{\jmath})$ km/s; (b) 3.23 MJ **47.** (a) 14 m/s; (b) 45° **49.** 3.1×10^{2} m/s **51.** (a) 721 m/s; (b) 937 m/s **53.** (a) 33%; (b) 23%; (c) decreases **55.** (a) +2.0 m/s; (b) −1.3 J; (c) +40 J; (d) system got energy from some source, such as a small explosion **57.** (a) 4.4 m/s; (b) 0.80 **59.** 25 cm **61.** (a) 99 g; (b) 1.9 m/s; (c) 0.93 m/s **63.** (a) 3.00 m/s; (b) 6.00 m/s **65.** (a) 1.2 kg; (b) 2.5 m/s **67.** −28 cm **69.** (a) 0.21 kg; (b) 7.2 m **71.** (a) 4.15×10^{5} m/s; (b) 4.84×10^{5} m/s **73.** 120° **75.** (a) 433 m/s; (b) 250 m/s **77.** (a) 46 N; (b) none **79.** (a) 1.57×10^{6} N; (b) 1.35×10^{5} kg; (c) 2.08 km/s **81.** (a) 7290 m/s; (b) 8200 m/s; (c) 1.271×10^{10} J; (d) 1.275×10^{10} J **83.** (a) 1.92 m; (b) 0.640 m **85.** (a) 1.78 m/s; (b) less; (c) less; (d) greater **87.** (a) 3.7 m/s; (b) 1.3 N · s; (c) 1.8×10^{2} N **89.** (a) $(7.4 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}\cdot\text{s})\hat{\imath} - (7.4 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}\cdot\text{s})\hat{\jmath}$; (b) $(-7.4 \times 10^{3}\text{ N}\cdot\text{s})\hat{\imath}$; (c) 2.3×10^{3} N; (d) 2.1×10^{4} N; (e) −45° **91.** +4.4 m/s **93.** 1.18×10^{4} kg **95.** (a) 1.9 m/s; (b) −30°; (c) elastic **97.** (a) 6.9 m/s; (b) 30°; (c) 6.9 m/s; (d) −30°; (e) 2.0 m/s; (f) −180° **99.** (a) 25 mm; (b) 26 mm; (c) down; (d) 1.6×10^{-2} m/s^2 **101.** 29 J **103.** 2.2 kg **105.** 5.0 kg **107.** (a) 50 kg/s; (b) 1.6×10^{2} kg/s **109.** (a) 4.6×10^{3} km; (b) 73% **111.** 190 m/s

113. 28.8 N **115.** (a) 0.745 mm; (b) 153°; (c) 1.67 mJ **117.** (a) $(2.67\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (-3.00\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) 4.01 m/s; (c) 48.4° **119.** (a) -0.50 m; (b) -1.8 cm; (c) 0.50 m **121.** 0.22% **123.** 36.5 km/s **125.** (a) $(-1.00 \times 10^{-19}\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 0.67 \times 10^{-19}\hat{\mathrm{j}})\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m/s}$; (b) 1.19×10^{-12} J **127.** 2.2×10^{-3}

Chapter 10

CP **1.** b and c **2.** (a) and (d) ($\alpha = d^2\theta/dt^2$ must be a constant) **3.** (a) yes; (b) no; (c) yes; (d) yes **4.** all tie **5.** 1, 2, 4, 3 (see Eq. 10-36) **6.** (see Eq. 10-40) 1 and 3 tie, 4, then 2 and 5 tie (zero) **7.** (a) downward in the figure ($\tau_{\mathrm{net}} = 0$); (b) less (consider moment arms)

Q **1.** (a) *c*, *a*, then *b* and *d* tie; (b) *b*, then *a* and *c* tie, then *d* **3.** all tie **5.** (a) decrease; (b) clockwise; (c) counterclockwise **7.** larger **9.** *c*, *a*, *b* **11.** less

P **1.** 14 rev **3.** (a) 4.0 rad/s; (b) 11.9 rad/s **5.** 11 rad/s **7.** (a) 4.0 m/s; (b) no **9.** (a) 3.00 s; (b) 18.9 rad **11.** (a) 30 s; (b) 1.8×10^3 rad **13.** (a) 3.4×10^2 s; (b) $-4.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (c) 98 s **15.** 8.0 s **17.** (a) 44 rad; (b) 5.5 s; (c) 32 s; (d) -2.1 s; (e) 40 s **19.** (a) 2.50×10^{-3} rad/s; (b) $20.2\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (c) 0 **21.** 6.9×10^{-13} rad/s **23.** (a) 20.9 rad/s; (b) 12.5 m/s; (c) $800\ \mathrm{rev/min^2}$; (d) 600 rev **25.** (a) 7.3×10^{-5} rad/s; (b) 3.5×10^2 m/s; (c) 7.3×10^{-5} rad/s; (d) 4.6×10^2 m/s **27.** (a) $73\ \mathrm{cm/s^2}$; (b) 0.075; (c) 0.11 **29.** (a) 3.8×10^3 rad/s; (b) 1.9×10^2 m/s **31.** (a) 40 s; (b) $2.0\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$ **33.** $12.3\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **35.** (a) 1.1 kJ; (b) 9.7 kJ **37.** $0.097\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **39.** (a) 49 MJ; (b) 1.0×10^2 min **41.** (a) $0.023\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) 1.1 mJ **43.** $4.7 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **45.** $-3.85\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **47.** $4.6\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **49.** (a) $28.2\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (b) $338\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **51.** (a) $6.00\ \mathrm{cm/s^2}$; (b) 4.87 N; (c) 4.54 N; (d) $1.20\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (e) $0.0138\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **53.** 0.140 N **55.** $2.51 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **57.** (a) $4.2 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (b) 5.0×10^2 rad/s **59.** $396\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **61.** (a) -19.8 kJ; (b) 1.32 kW **63.** 5.42 m/s **65.** (a) $5.32\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (b) $8.43\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (c) 41.8° **67.** 9.82 rad/s **69.** $6.16 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **71.** (a) $31.4\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (b) $0.754\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (c) 56.1 N; (d) 55.1 N **73.** (a) 4.81×10^5 N; (b) $1.12 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$; (c) 1.25×10^6 J **75.** (a) $2.3\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (b) $1.4\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$ **77.** (a) $-67\ \mathrm{rev/min^2}$; (b) 8.3 rev **81.** 3.1 rad/s **83.** (a) $1.57\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (b) 4.55 N; (c) 4.94 N **85.** 30 rev **87.** $0.054\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **89.** $1.4 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **91.** (a) 10 J; (b) 0.27 m **93.** $4.6\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$ **95.** 2.6 J **97.** (a) $5.92 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (b) $4.39 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{s^{-2}}$ **99.** (a) $0.791\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) $1.79 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **101.** (a) 1.5×10^2 cm/s; (b) 15 rad/s; (c) 15 rad/s; (d) 75 cm/s; (e) 3.0 rad/s **103.** (a) $7.0\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) 7.2 m/s; (c) 71° **105.** (a) 0.32 rad/s; (b) 1.0×10^2 km/h **107.** (a) 1.4×10^2 rad; (b) 14 s

Chapter 11

CP **1.** (a) same; (b) less **2.** less (consider the transfer of energy from rotational kinetic energy to gravitational potential energy) **3.** (draw the vectors, use right-hand rule) (a) $\pm z$; (b) $+y$; (c) $-x$ **4.** (see Eq. 11-21) (a) 1 and 3 tie; then 2 and 4 tie, then 5 (zero); (b) 2 and 3 **5.** (see Eqs. 11-23 and 11-16) (a) 3, 1; then 2 and 4 tie (zero); (b) 3 **6.** (a) all tie (same τ, same t, thus same ΔL); (b) sphere, disk, hoop (reverse order of I) **7.** (a) decreases; (b) same ($\tau_{\mathrm{net}} = 0$, so L is conserved); (c) increases

Q **1.** *a*, then *b* and *c* tie, then *e*, *d* (zero) **3.** (a) spins in place; (b) rolls toward you; (c) rolls away from you **5.** (a) 1, 2, 3 (zero); (b) 1 and 2 tie, then 3; (c) 1 and 3 tie, then 2 **7.** (a) same; (b) increase; (c) decrease; (d) same, decrease, increase **9.** *D*, *B*, then *A* and *C* tie **11.** (a) same; (b) same

P **1.** (a) 0; (b) $(22\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (c) $(-22\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (d) 0; (e) $1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (f) $1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (g) $(22\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (h) $(44\ \mathrm{m/s})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (i) 0; (j) 0; (k) $1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (l) $1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ **3.** -3.15 J **5.** 0.020 **7.** (a) 63 rad/s; (b) 4.0 m **9.** 4.8 m **11.** (a) $(-4.0\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$; (b) $0.60\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$ **13.** 0.50 **15.** (a) $-(0.11\ \mathrm{m})\omega$; (b) $-2.1\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (c) $-47\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (d) 1.2 s; (e) 8.6 m; (f) 6.1 m/s **17.** (a) $13\ \mathrm{cm/s^2}$; (b) 4.4 s; (c) 55 cm/s; (d) 18 mJ; (e) 1.4 J; (f) 27 rev/s **19.** $(-2.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **21.** (a) $(6.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} + (8.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) $(-22\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **23.** (a) $(-1.5\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (4.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (1.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) $(-1.5\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} - (4.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{j}} - (1.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **25.** (a) $(50\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) 90° **27.** (a) 0; (b) $(8.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (8.0\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **29.** (a) $9.8\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (b) $+z$ direction **31.** (a) 0; (b) $-22.6\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (c) $-7.84\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$; (d) $-7.84\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **33.** (a) $(-1.7 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (b) $(+56\ \mathrm{N \cdot m})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$; (c) $(+56\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s^2})\hat{\mathrm{k}}$ **35.** (a) $48t\hat{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$; (b) increasing **37.** (a) $4.6 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) $1.1 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (c) $3.9 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$ **39.** (a) $1.47\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$; (b) 20.4 rad; (c) -29.9 J; (d) 19.9 W **41.** (a) $1.6\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) $4.0\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$ **43.** (a) 1.5 m; (b) 0.93 rad/s; (c) 98 J; (d) 8.4 rad/s; (e) 8.8×10^2 J; (f) internal energy of the skaters **45.** (a) 3.6 rev/s; (b) 3.0; (c) forces on the bricks from the man transferred energy from the man's internal energy to kinetic energy **47.** 0.17 rad/s **49.** (a) 750 rev/min; (b) 450 rev/min; (c) clockwise **51.** (a) 267 rev/min; (b) 0.667 **53.** 1.3×10^3 m/s **55.** 3.4 rad/s **57.** (a) 18 rad/s; (b) 0.92 **59.** 11.0 m/s **61.** 1.5 rad/s **63.** 0.070 rad/s **65.** (a) 0.148 rad/s; (b) 0.0123; (c) 181° **67.** (a) 0.180 m; (b) clockwise **69.** 0.041 rad/s **71.** (a) $1.6\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; (b) $16\ \mathrm{rad/s^2}$; (c) $(4.0\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{i}}$ **73.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) $-30t^3\hat{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (d) $-90t^2\hat{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$; (e) $30t^3\hat{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (f) $90t^2\hat{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m}$ **75.** (a) $149\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2}$; (b) $158\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (c) 0.744 rad/s **77.** (a) $6.65 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{kg \cdot m^2/s}$; (b) no; (c) 0; (d) yes **79.** (a) 0.333; (b) 0.111 **81.** (a) 58.8 J; (b) 39.2 J **83.** (a) 61.7 J; (b) 3.43 m; (c) no **85.** (a) $mvR/(I + MR^2)$; (b) $mvR^2/(I + MR^2)$

Chapter 12

CP **1.** *c*, *e*, *f* **2.** (a) no; (b) at site of $\vec{F}_1$, perpendicular to plane of figure; (c) 45 N **3.** *d*

Q **1.** (a) 1 and 3 tie, then 2; (b) all tie; (c) 1 and 3 tie, then 2 (zero) **3.** *a* and *c* (forces and torques balance) **5.** (a) 12 kg; (b) 3 kg; (c) 1 kg **7.** (a) at *C* (to eliminate forces there from a torque equation); (b) plus; (c) minus; (d) equal **9.** increase **11.** *A* and *B*, then *C*

P **1.** (a) 1.00 m; (b) 2.00 m; (c) 0.987 m; (d) 1.97 m **3.** (a) 9.4 N; (b) 4.4 N **5.** 7.92 kN **7.** (a) 2.8×10^2 N; (b) 8.8×10^2 N; (c) 71° **9.** 74.4 g **11.** (a) 1.2 kN; (b) down; (c) 1.7 kN; (d) up; (e) left; (f) right **13.** (a) 2.7 kN; (b) up; (c) 3.6 kN; (d) down **15.** (a) 5.0 N; (b) 30 N; (c) 1.3 m **17.** (a) 0.64 m; (b) increased **19.** 8.7 N **21.** (a) 6.63 kN; (b) 5.74 kN; (c) 5.96 kN **23.** (a) 192 N; (b) 96.1 N; (c) 55.5 N **25.** 13.6 N **27.** (a) 1.9 kN; (b) up; (c) 2.1 kN; (d) down **29.** (a) $(-80\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (1.3 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$; (b) $(80\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{i}} + (1.3 \times 10^2\ \mathrm{N})\hat{\mathrm{j}}$ **31.** 2.20 m **33.** (a) 60.0°; (b) 300 N **35.** (a) 445 N; (b) 0.50; (c) 315 N **37.** 0.34 **39.** (a) 207 N; (b) 539 N; (c) 315 N **41.** (a) slides; (b) 31°; (c) tips; (d) 34° **43.** (a) $6.5 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$; (b) 1.1×10^{-5} m **45.** (a) 0.80; (b) 0.20; (c) 0.25 **47.** (a) 1.4×10^9 N; (b) 75 **49.** (a) 866 N; (b) 143 N; (c) 0.165 **51.** (a) 1.2×10^2 N; (b) 68 N **53.** (a) 1.8×10^7 N; (b) 1.4×10^7 N; (c) 16 **55.** 0.29 **57.** 76 N **59.** (a) 8.01 kN; (b) 3.65 kN; (c) 5.66 kN **61.** 71.7 N **63.** (a) $L/2$; (b) $L/4$; (c) $L/6$; (d) $L/8$; (e) $25L/24$ **65.** (a) 88 N; (b) $(30\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 97\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ N **67.** $2.4 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ **69.** 60° **71.** (a) $\mu < 0.57$; (b) $\mu > 0.57$ **73.** (a) $(35\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 200\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ N; (b) $(-45\hat{\mathrm{i}} + 200\hat{\mathrm{j}})$ N; (c) 1.9×10^2 N **75.** (a) *BC*, *CD*, *DA*; (b) 535 N; (c) 757 N **77.** (a) 1.38 kN; (b) 180 N **79.** (a) $a_1 = L/2$, $a_2 = 5L/8$, $h = 9L/8$; (b) $b_1 = 2L/3$, $b_2 = L/2$, $h = 7L/6$ **81.** $L/4$ **83.** (a) 106 N; (b) 64.0° **85.** 1.8×10^2 N **87.** (a) -24.4 N; (b) 1.60 N; (c) $-3.75°$

Chapter 13

CP **1.** all tie **2.** (a) 1, tie of 2 and 4, then 3; (b) line *d* **3.** (a) increase; (b) negative **4.** (a) 2; (b) 1 **5.** (a) path 1 (decreased E (more negative) gives decreased a); (b) less (decreased a gives decreased T)

Q **1.** $3GM^2/d^2$, leftward **3.** Gm^2/r^2, upward **5.** *b* and *c* tie, then *a* (zero) **7.** 1, tie of 2 and 4, then 3 **9.** (a) positive *y*; (b) yes, rotates counterclockwise until it points toward particle *B* **11.** *b*, *d*, and *f* all tie, then *e*, *c*, *a*

P **1.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **3.** 19 m **5.** 0.8 m **7.** $-5.00d$ **9.** 2.60×10^5 km **11.** (a) $M = m$; (b) 0 **13.** 8.31×10^{-9} N **15.** (a) $-1.88d$; (b) $-3.90d$; (c) $0.489d$ **17.** (a) 17 N; (b) 2.4 **19.** 2.6×10^6 m **21.** 5×10^{24} kg **23.** (a) 7.6 m/s^2; (b) 4.2 m/s^2 **25.** (a) $(3.0 \times 10^{-7}$ N/kg$)m$; (b) $(3.3 \times 10^{-7}$ N/kg$)m$; (c) $(6.7 \times 10^{-7}$ N/kg $\cdot$ m$)mr$ **27.** (a) 9.83 m/s^2; (b) 9.84 m/s^2; (c) 9.79 m/s^2 **29.** 5.0×10^9 J **31.** (a) 0.74; (b) 3.8 m/s^2; (c) 5.0 km/s **33.** (a) 0.0451; (b) 28.5 **35.** -4.82×10^{-13} J **37.** (a) 0.50 pJ; (b) -0.50 pJ **39.** (a) 1.7 km/s; (b) 2.5×10^5 m; (c) 1.4 km/s **41.** (a) 82 km/s; (b) 1.8×10^4 km/s **43.** (a) 7.82 km/s; (b) 87.5 min **45.** 6.5×10^{23} kg **47.** 5×10^{10} stars **49.** (a) 1.9×10^{13} m; (b) $6.4R_P$ **51.** (a) 6.64×10^3 km; (b) 0.0136 **53.** 5.8×10^6 m **57.** 0.71 y **59.** $(GM/L)^{0.5}$ **61.** (a) 3.19×10^3 km; (b) lifting **63.** (a) 2.8 y; (b) 1.0×10^{-4} **65.** (a) $r^{1.5}$; (b) r^{-1}; (c) $r^{0.5}$; (d) $r^{-0.5}$ **67.** (a) 7.5 km/s; (b) 97 min; (c) 4.1×10^2 km; (d) 7.7 km/s; (e) 93 min; (f) 3.2×10^{-3} N; (g) no; (h) yes **69.** 1.1 s **71.** (a) $GMmx(x^2 + R^2)^{-3/2}$; (b) $[2GM(R^{-1} - (R^2 + x^2)^{-1/2})]^{1/2}$ **73.** (a) 1.0×10^3 kg; (b) 1.5 km/s **75.** 3.2×10^{-7} N **77.** $037\hat{\text{j}}$ μN **79.** $2\pi r^{1.5}G^{-0.5}(M + m/4)^{-0.5}$ **81.** (a) 2.2×10^{-7} rad/s; (b) 89 km/s **83.** (a) 2.15×10^4 s; (b) 12.3 km/s; (c) 12.0 km/s; (d) 2.17×10^{11} J; (e) -4.53×10^{11} J; (f) -2.35×10^{11} J; (g) 4.04×10^7 m; (h) 1.22×10^3 s; (i) elliptical **85.** 2.5×10^4 km **87.** (a) 1.4×10^6 m/s; (b) 3×10^6 m/s^2 **89.** (a) 0; (b) 1.8×10^{32} J; (c) 1.8×10^{32} J; (d) 0.99 km/s **91.** (a) Gm^2/R_i; (b) $Gm^2/2R_i$; (c) $(Gm/R_i)^{0.5}$; (d) $2(Gm/R_i)^{0.5}$; (e) Gm^2/R_i; (f) $(2Gm/R_i)^{0.5}$; (g) The center-of-mass frame is an inertial frame, and in it the principle of conservation of energy may be written as in Chapter 8; the reference frame attached to body *A* is noninertial, and the principle cannot be written as in Chapter 8. Answer (d) is correct. **93.** 2.4×10^4 m/s **95.** $-0.044\hat{\text{j}}$ μN **97.** $GM_\text{E}m/12R_\text{E}$ **99.** 1.51×10^{-12} N **101.** 3.4×10^5 km

Chapter 14

CP **1.** all tie **2.** (a) all tie (the gravitational force on the penguin is the same); (b) $0.95\rho_0, \rho_0, 1.1\rho_0$ **3.** 13 cm^3/s, outward **4.** (a) all tie; (b) 1, then 2 and 3 tie, 4 (wider means slower); (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 (wider and lower mean more pressure)

Q **1.** (a) moves downward; (b) moves downward **3.** (a) downward; (b) downward; (c) same **5.** *b*, then *a* and *d* tie (zero), then *c* **7.** (a) 1 and 4; (b) 2; (c) 3 **9.** *B*, *C*, *A*

P **1.** 0.074 **3.** 1.1×10^5 Pa **5.** 2.9×10^4 N **7.** (b) 26 kN **9.** (a) 1.0×10^3 torr; (b) 1.7×10^3 torr **11.** (a) 94 torr; (b) 4.1×10^2 torr; (c) 3.1×10^2 torr **13.** 1.08×10^3 atm **15.** -2.6×10^4 Pa **17.** 7.2×10^5 N **19.** 4.69×10^5 N **21.** 0.635 J **23.** 44 km **25.** 739.26 torr **27.** (a) 7.9 km; (b) 16 km **29.** 8.50 kg **31.** (a) 6.7×10^2 kg/m^3; (b) 7.4×10^2 kg/m^3 **33.** (a) 2.04×10^{-2} m^3; (b) 1.57 kN **35.** five **37.** 57.3 cm **39.** (a) 1.2 kg; (b) 1.3×10^3 kg/m^3 **41.** (a) 0.10; (b) 0.083 **43.** (a) 637.8 cm^3; (b) 5.102 m^3; (c) 5.102×10^3 kg **45.** 0.126 m^3 **47.** (a) 1.80 m^3; (b) 4.75 m^3 **49.** (a) 3.0 m/s; (b) 2.8 m/s **51.** 8.1 m/s **53.** 66 W **55.** 1.4×10^5 J **57.** (a) 1.6×10^{-3} m^3/s; (b) 0.90 m **59.** (a) 2.5 m/s; (b) 2.6×10^5 Pa **61.** (a) 3.9 m/s; (b) 88 kPa **63.** 1.1×10^2 m/s **65.** (b) 2.0×10^{-2} m^3/s **67.** (a) 74 N; (b) 1.5×10^2 m^3 **69.** (a) 0.0776 m^3/s; (b) 69.8 kg/s **71.** (a) 35 cm; (b) 30 cm; (c) 20 cm **73.** 1.5 g/cm^3 **75.** 5.11×10^{-7} kg **77.** 44.2 g **79.** 6.0×10^2 kg/m^3 **81.** 45.3 cm^3 **83.** (a) 3.2 m/s; (b) 9.2×10^4 Pa; (c) 10.3 m **85.** 1.07×10^3 g **87.** 26.3 m^2 **89.** (a) 5.66×10^9 N; (b) 25.4 atm

Chapter 15

CP **1.** (sketch *x* versus *t*) (a) $-x_m$; (b) $+x_m$; (c) 0 **2.** c (*a* must have the form of Eq. 15-8) **3.** a (*F* must have the form of Eq. 15-10) **4.** (a) 5 J; (b) 2 J; (c) 5 J **5.** all tie (in Eq. 15-29, *m* is included in *I*) **6.** 1, 2, 3 (the ratio *m*/*b* matters; *k* does not)

Q **1.** a and b **3.** (a) 2; (b) positive; (c) between 0 and $+x_m$ **5.** (a) between *D* and *E*; (b) between $3\pi/2$ rad and 2π rad **7.** (a) all tie; (b) 3, then 1 and 2 tie; (c) 1, 2, 3 (zero); (d) 1, 2, 3 (zero); (e) 1, 3, 2 **9.** *b* (infinite period, does not oscillate), *c*, *a* **11.** (a) greater; (b) same; (c) same; (d) greater; (e) greater

P **1.** (a) 0.50 s; (b) 2.0 Hz; (c) 18 cm **3.** 37.8 m/s^2 **5.** (a) 1.0 mm; (b) 0.75 m/s; (c) 5.7×10^2 m/s^2 **7.** (a) 498 Hz; (b) greater **9.** (a) 3.0 m; (b) -49 m/s; (c) -2.7×10^2 m/s^2; (d) 20 rad; (e) 1.5 Hz; (f) 0.67 s **11.** 39.6 Hz **13.** (a) 0.500 s; (b) 2.00 Hz; (c) 12.6 rad/s; (d) 79.0 N/m; (e) 4.40 m/s; (f) 27.6 N **15.** (a) $0.18A$; (b) same direction **17.** (a) 5.58 Hz; (b) 0.325 kg; (c) 0.400 m **19.** (a) 25 cm; (b) 2.2 Hz **21.** 54 Hz **23.** 3.1 cm **25.** (a) 0.525 m; (b) 0.686 s **27.** (a) 0.75; (b) 0.25; (c) $2^{-0.5}x_m$ **29.** 37 mJ **31.** (a) 2.25 Hz; (b) 125 J; (c) 250 J; (d) 86.6 cm **33.** (a) 1.1 m/s; (b) 3.3 cm **35.** (a) 3.1 ms; (b) 4.0 m/s; (c) 0.080 J; (d) 80 N; (e) 40 N **37.** (a) 2.2 Hz; (b) 56 cm/s; (c) 0.10 kg; (d) 20.0 cm **39.** (a) 39.5 rad/s; (b) 34.2 rad/s; (c) 124 rad/s^2 **41.** (a) 0.205 kg$\cdot$m^2; (b) 47.7 cm; (c) 1.50 s **43.** (a) 1.64 s; (b) equal **45.** 8.77 s **47.** 0.366 s **49.** (a) 0.845 rad; (b) 0.0602 rad **51.** (a) 0.53 m; (b) 2.1 s **53.** 0.0653 s **55.** (a) 2.26 s; (b) increases; (c) same **57.** 6.0% **59.** (a) 14.3 s; (b) 5.27 **61.** (a) $F_m/b\omega$; (b) F_m/b **63.** 5.0 cm **65.** (a) 2.8×10^3 rad/s; (b) 2.1 m/s; (c) 5.7 km/s^2 **67.** (a) 1.1 Hz; (b) 5.0 cm **69.** 7.2 m/s **71.** (a) 7.90 N/m; (b) 1.19 cm; (c) 2.00 Hz **73.** (a) 1.3×10^2 N/m; (b) 0.62 s; (c) 1.6 Hz; (d) 5.0 cm; (e) 0.51 m/s **75.** (a) 16.6 cm; (b) 1.23% **77.** (a) 1.2 J; (b) 50 **79.** 1.53 m **81.** (a) 0.30 m; (b) 0.28 s; (c) 1.5×10^2 m/s^2; (d) 11 J **83.** (a) 1.23 kN/m; (b) 76.0 N **85.** 1.6 kg **87.** (a) 0.735 kg $\cdot$ m^2; (b) 0.0240 N $\cdot$ m; (c) 0.181 rad/s **89.** (a) 3.5 m; (b) 0.75 s **91.** (a) 0.35 Hz; (b) 0.39 Hz; (c) 0 (no oscillation) **93.** (a) 245 N/m; (b) 0.284 s **95.** 0.079 kg $\cdot$ m^2 **97.** (a) 8.11×10^{-5} kg $\cdot$ m^2; (b) 3.14 rad/s **99.** 14.0° **101.** (a) 3.2 Hz; (b) 0.26 m; (c) $x = (0.26 \text{ m}) \cos(20t - \pi/2)$, with *t* in seconds **103.** (a) 0.44 s; (b) 0.18 m **105.** (a) 0.45 s; (b) 0.10 m above and 0.20 m below; (c) 0.15 m; (d) 2.3 J **107.** 7×10^2 N/m **109.** 0.804 m **111.** (a) 0.30 m; (b) 30 m/s^2; (c) 0; (d) 4.4 s **113.** (a) F/m; (b) $2F/mL$; (c) 0 **115.** 2.54 m

Chapter 16

CP **1.** a, 2; b, 3; c, 1 (compare with the phase in Eq. 16-2, then see Eq. 16-5) **2.** (a) 2, 3, 1 (see Eq. 16-12); (b) 3, then 1 and 2 tie (find amplitude of dy/dt) **3.** (a) same (independent of *f*); (b) decrease ($\lambda = v/f$); (c) increase; (d) increase **4.** 0.20 and 0.80 tie, then 0.60, 0.45 **5.** (a) 1; (b) 3; (c) 2 **6.** (a) 75 Hz; (b) 525 Hz

Q **1.** (a) 1, 4, 2, 3; (b) 1, 4, 2, 3 **3.** *a*, upward; *b*, upward; *c*, downward; *d*, downward; *e*, downward; *f*, downward; *g*, upward; *h*, upward **5.** intermediate (closer to fully destructive) **7.** (a) 0, 0.2 wavelength, 0.5 wavelength (zero); (b) $4P_{\text{avg},1}$ **9.** *d* **11.** *c*, *a*, *b*

P **1.** 1.1 ms **3.** (a) 3.49 m^{-1}; (b) 31.5 m/s **5.** (a) 0.680 s; (b) 1.47 Hz; (c) 2.06 m/s **7.** (a) 64 Hz; (b) 1.3 m; (c) 4.0 cm; (d) 5.0 m^{-1}; (e) 4.0×10^2 s^{-1}; (f) $\pi/2$ rad; (g) minus **9.** (a) 3.0 mm; (b) 16 m^{-1}; (c) 2.4×10^2 s^{-1}; (d) minus **11.** (a) negative; (b) 4.0 cm; (c) 0.31 cm^{-1}; (d) 0.63 s^{-1}; (e) π rad; (f) minus; (g) 2.0 cm/s; (h) -2.5 cm/s **13.** (a) 11.7 cm; (b) π rad **15.** (a) 0.12 mm; (b) 141 m^{-1}; (c) 628 s^{-1}; (d) plus **17.** (a) 15 m/s; (b) 0.036 N **19.** 129 m/s **21.** 2.63 m **23.** (a) 5.0 cm; (b) 40 cm; (c) 12 m/s; (d) 0.033 s; (e) 9.4 m/s; (f) 16 m^{-1}; (g) 1.9×10^2 s^{-1}; (h) 0.93 rad; (i) plus **27.** 3.2 mm **29.** 0.20 m/s **31.** $1.41y_m$ **33.** (a) 9.0 mm; (b) 16 m^{-1}; (c) 1.1×10^3 s^{-1}; (d) 2.7 rad; (e) plus **35.** 5.0 cm **37.** (a) 3.29 mm; (b) 1.55 rad; (c) 1.55 rad **39.** 84° **41.** (a) 82.0 m/s; (b) 16.8 m; (c) 4.88 Hz **43.** (a) 7.91 Hz; (b) 15.8 Hz; (c) 23.7 Hz **45.** (a) 105 Hz; (b) 158 m/s **47.** 260 Hz **49.** (a) 144 m/s; (b) 60.0 cm; (c) 241 Hz **51.** (a) 0.50 cm;

(b) $3.1\ \text{m}^{-1}$; (c) $3.1 \times 10^2\ \text{s}^{-1}$; (d) minus **53.** (a) 0.25 cm; (b) 1.2×10^2 cm/s; (c) 3.0 cm; (d) 0 **55.** 0.25 m **57.** (a) 2.00 Hz; (b) 2.00 m; (c) 4.00 m/s; (d) 50.0 cm; (e) 150 cm; (f) 250 cm; (g) 0; (h) 100 cm; (i) 200 cm **59.** (a) 324 Hz; (b) eight **61.** 36 N **63.** (a) 75 Hz; (b) 13 ms **65.** (a) 2.0 mm; (b) 95 Hz; (c) +30 m/s; (d) 31 cm; (e) 1.2 m/s **67.** (a) 0.31 m; (b) 1.64 rad; (c) 2.2 mm **69.** (a) $0.83y_1$; (b) 37° **71.** (a) 3.77 m/s; (b) 12.3 N; (c) 0; (d) 46.4 W; (e) 0; (f) 0; (g) ±0.50 cm **73.** 1.2 rad **75.** (a) 300 m/s; (b) no **77.** (a) $[k\,\Delta\ell(\ell + \Delta\ell)/m]^{0.5}$ **79.** (a) 144 m/s; (b) 3.00 m; (c) 1.50 m; (d) 48.0 Hz; (e) 96.0 Hz **81.** (a) 1.00 cm; (b) $3.46 \times 10^3\ \text{s}^{-1}$; (c) $10.5\ \text{m}^{-1}$; (d) plus **83.** (a) $2\pi y_m/\lambda$; (b) no **85.** (a) 240 cm; (b) 120 cm; (c) 80 cm **87.** (a) 1.33 m/s; (b) 1.88 m/s; (c) $16.7\ \text{m/s}^2$; (d) $23.7\ \text{m/s}^2$ **89.** (a) 0.52 m; (b) 40 m/s; (c) 0.40 m **91.** (a) 0.16 m; (b) 2.4×10^2 N; (c) $y(x, t) = (0.16\ \text{m}) \sin[(1.57\ \text{m}^{-1})x] \sin[(31.4\ \text{s}^{-1})t]$ **93.** (c) 2.0 m/s; (d) $-x$ **95.** (a) ∞; (b) 1.0; (c) 4.0%

Chapter 17

CP **1.** beginning to decrease (example: mentally move the curves of Fig. 17-6 rightward past the point at $x = 42$ cm) **2.** (a) 1 and 2 tie, then 3 (see Eq. 17-28); (b) 3, then 1 and 2 tie (see Eq. 17-26) **3.** second (see Eqs.17-39 and 17-41) **4.** *a*, greater; *b*, less; *c*, can't tell; *d*, can't tell; *e*, greater; *f*, less

Q **1.** (a) 0, 0.2 wavelength, 0.5 wavelength (zero); (b) $4P_{\text{avg},1}$ **3.** *C*, then *A* and *B* tie **5.** *E*, *A*, *D*, *C*, *B* **7.** 1, 4, 3, 2 **9.** 150 Hz and 450 Hz **11.** 505, 507, 508 Hz or 501, 503, 508 Hz

P **1.** (a) 79 m; (b) 41 m; (c) 89 m **3.** (a) 2.6 km; (b) 2.0×10^2 **5.** 1.9×10^3 km **7.** 40.7 m **9.** 0.23 ms **11.** (a) 76.2 μm; (b) 0.333 mm **13.** 960 Hz **15.** (a) 2.3×10^2 Hz; (b) higher **17.** (a) 143 Hz; (b) 3; (c) 5; (d) 286 Hz; (e) 2; (f) 3 **19.** (a) 14; (b) 14 **21.** (a) 343 Hz; (b) 3; (c) 5; (d) 686 Hz; (e) 2; (f) 3 **23.** (a) 0; (b) fully constructive; (c) increase; (d) 128 m; (e) 63.0 m; (f) 41.2 m **25.** 36.8 nm **27.** (a) 1.0×10^3; (b) 32 **29.** 15.0 mW **31.** 2 μW **33.** 0.76 μm **35.** (a) $5.97 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{W/m}^2$; (b) 4.48 nW **37.** (a) 0.34 nW; (b) 0.68 nW; (c) 1.4 nW; (d) 0.88 nW; (e) 0 **39.** (a) 405 m/s; (b) 596 N; (c) 44.0 cm; (d) 37.3 cm **41.** (a) 833 Hz; (b) 0.418 m **43.** (a) 3; (b) 1129 Hz; (c) 1506 Hz **45.** (a) 2; (b) 1 **47.** 12.4 m **49.** 45.3 N **51.** 2.25 ms **53.** 0.020 **55.** (a) 526 Hz; (b) 555 Hz **57.** 0 **59.** (a) 1.022 kHz; (b) 1.045 kHz **61.** 41 kHz **63.** 155 Hz **65.** (a) 2.0 kHz; (b) 2.0 kHz **67.** (a) 485.8 Hz; (b) 500.0 Hz; (c) 486.2 Hz; (d) 500.0 Hz **69.** (a) 42°; (b) 11 s **71.** 1 cm **73.** 2.1 m **75.** (a) 39.7 $\mu\text{W/m}^2$; (b) 171 nm; (c) 0.893 Pa **77.** 0.25 **79.** (a) 2.10 m; (b) 1.47 m **81.** (a) 59.7; (b) 2.81×10^{-4} **83.** (a) rightward; (b) 0.90 m/s; (c) less **85.** (a) 11 ms; (b) 3.8 m **87.** (a) 9.7×10^2 Hz; (b) 1.0 kHz; (c) 60 Hz, no **89.** (a) 21 nm; (b) 35 cm; (c) 24 nm; (d) 35 cm **91.** (a) 7.70 Hz; (b) 7.70 Hz **93.** (a) 5.2 kHz; (b) 2 **95.** (a) 10 W; (b) $0.032\ \text{W/m}^2$; (c) 99 dB **97.** (a) 0; (b) 0.572 m; (c) 1.14 m **99.** 171 m **101.** (a) 3.6×10^2 m/s; (b) 150 Hz **103.** 400 Hz **105.** (a) 14; (b) 12 **107.** 821 m/s **109.** (a) 39.3 Hz; (b) 118 Hz **111.** 4.8×10^2 Hz

Chapter 18

CP **1.** (a) all tie; (b) 50°X, 50°Y, 50°W **2.** (a) 2 and 3 tie, then 1, then 4; (b) 3, 2, then 1 and 4 tie (from Eqs. 18-9 and 18-10, assume that change in area is proportional to initial area) **3.** *A* (see Eq. 18-14) **4.** *c* and *e* (maximize area enclosed by a clockwise cycle) **5.** (a) all tie (ΔE_{int} depends on *i* and *f*, not on path); (b) 4, 3, 2, 1 (compare areas under curves); (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 (see Eq. 18-26) **6.** (a) zero (closed cycle); (b) negative (W_{net} is negative; see Eq. 18-26) **7.** *b* and *d* tie, then *a*, *c* (P_{cond} identical; see Eq. 18-32)

Q **1.** *c*, then the rest tie **3.** *B*, then *A* and *C* tie **5.** (a) *f*, because ice temperature will not rise to freezing point and then drop; (b) *b* and *c* at freezing point, *d* above, *e* below; (c) in *b* liquid partly freezes and no ice melts; in *c* no liquid freezes and no ice melts; in *d* no liquid freezes and ice fully melts; in *e* liquid fully freezes and no ice melts **7.** (a) both clockwise; (b) both clockwise **9.** (a) greater; (b) 1, 2, 3; (c) 1, 3, 2; (d) 1, 2, 3; (e) 2, 3, 1 **11.** *c*, *b*, *a*

P **1.** 1.366 **3.** 348 K **5.** (a) 320°F; (b) −12.3°F **7.** −92.1°X **9.** 2.731 cm **11.** 49.87 cm^3 **13.** 29 cm^3 **15.** 360°C **17.** 0.26 cm^3 **19.** 0.13 mm **21.** 7.5 cm **23.** 160 s **25.** 94.6 L **27.** 42.7 kJ **29.** 33 m^2 **31.** 33 g **33.** 3.0 min **35.** 13.5 C° **37.** (a) 5.3°C; (b) 0; (c) 0°C; (d) 60 g **39.** 742 kJ **41.** (a) 0°C; (b) 2.5°C **43.** (a) 1.2×10^2 J; (b) 75 J; (c) 30 J **45.** −30 J **47.** (a) 6.0 cal; (b) −43 cal; (c) 40 cal; (d) 18 cal; (e) 18 cal **49.** 60 J **51.** (a) 1.23 kW; (b) 2.28 kW; (c) 1.05 kW **53.** 1.66 kJ/s **55.** (a) 16 J/s; (b) 0.048 g/s **57.** (a) $1.7 \times 10^4\ \text{W/m}^2$; (b) 18 W/m^2 **59.** 0.50 min **61.** 0.40 cm/h **63.** −4.2°C **65.** 1.1 m **67.** 10% **69.** (a) 80 J; (b) 80 J **71.** 4.5×10^2 J/kg·K **73.** 0.432 cm^3 **75.** 3.1×10^2 J **77.** 79.5°C **79.** 23 J **81.** (a) $11p_1V_1$; (b) $6p_1V_1$ **83.** $4.83 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{cm}^3$ **85.** 10.5°C **87.** (a) 90 W; (b) 2.3×10^2 W; (c) 3.3×10^2 W **89.** (a) 1.87×10^4; (b) 10.4 h **91.** 333 J **93.** 8.6 J **95.** (a) −45 J; (b) +45 J **97.** 4.0×10^3 min **99.** −6.1 nW **101.** 1.17 C° **103.** $8.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^2$ **105.** (a) too fast; (b) 0.79 s/h **107.** 1.9

Chapter 19

CP **1.** all but *c* **2.** (a) all tie; (b) 3, 2, 1 **3.** gas *A* **4.** 5 (greatest change in *T*), then tie of 1, 2, 3, and 4 **5.** 1, 2, 3 ($Q_3 = 0$, Q_2 goes into work W_2, but Q_1 goes into greater work W_1 and increases gas temperature)

Q **1.** *d*, then *a* and *b* tie, then *c* **3.** 20 J **5.** (a) 3; (b) 1; (c) 4; (d) 2; (e) yes **7.** (a) 1, 2, 3, 4; (b) 1, 2, 3 **9.** constant-volume process

P **1.** 0.933 kg **3.** (a) 0.0388 mol; (b) 220°C **5.** 25 molecules/cm^3 **7.** (a) 3.14×10^3 J; (b) from **9.** 186 kPa **11.** 5.60 kJ **13.** (a) 1.5 mol; (b) 1.8×10^3 K; (c) 6.0×10^2 K; (d) 5.0 kJ **15.** 360 K **17.** 2.0×10^5 Pa **19.** (a) 511 m/s; (b) −200°C; (c) 899°C **21.** 1.8×10^2 m/s **23.** 1.9 kPa **25.** (a) 5.65×10^{-21} J; (b) 7.72×10^{-21} J; (c) 3.40 kJ; (d) 4.65 kJ **27.** (a) 6.76×10^{-20} J; (b) 10.7 **29.** (a) 6×10^9 km **31.** (a) 3.27×10^{10} molecules/cm^3; (b) 172 m **33.** (a) 6.5 km/s; (b) 7.1 km/s **35.** (a) 420 m/s; (b) 458 m/s; (c) yes **37.** (a) 0.67; (b) 1.2; (c) 1.3; (d) 0.33 **39.** (a) 1.0×10^4 K; (b) 1.6×10^5 K; (c) 4.4×10^2 K; (d) 7.0×10^3 K; (e) no; (f) yes **41.** (a) 7.0 km/s; (b) 2.0×10^{-8} cm; (c) 3.5×10^{10} collisions/s **43.** (a) 3.49 kJ; (b) 2.49 kJ; (c) 997 J; (d) 1.00 kJ **45.** (a) 6.6×10^{-26} kg; (b) 40 g/mol **47.** (a) 0; (b) +374 J; (c) +374 J; (d) $+3.11 \times 10^{-22}$ J **49.** 15.8 J/mol·K **51.** 8.0 kJ **53.** (a) 6.98 kJ; (b) 4.99 kJ; (c) 1.99 kJ; (d) 2.99 kJ **55.** (a) 14 atm; (b) 6.2×10^2 K **57.** (a) diatomic; (b) 446 K; (c) 8.10 mol **59.** −15 J **61.** −20 J **63.** (a) 3.74 kJ; (b) 3.74 kJ; (c) 0; (d) 0; (e) −1.81 kJ; (f) 1.81 kJ; (g) −3.22 kJ; (h) −1.93 kJ; (i) −1.29 kJ; (j) 520 J; (k) 0; (l) 520 J; (m) 0.0246 m^3; (n) 2.00 atm; (o) 0.0373 m^3; (p) 1.00 atm **65.** (a) monatomic; (b) 2.7×10^4 K; (c) 4.5×10^4 mol; (d) 3.4 kJ; (e) 3.4×10^2 kJ; (f) 0.010 **67.** (a) 2.00 atm; (b) 333 J; (c) 0.961 atm; (d) 236 J **69.** 349 K **71.** (a) −374 J; (b) 0; (c) +374 J; (d) $+3.11 \times 10^{-22}$ J **73.** $7.03 \times 10^9\ \text{s}^{-1}$ **75.** (a) 900 cal; (b) 0; (c) 900 cal; (d) 450 cal; (e) 1200 cal; (f) 300 cal; (g) 900 cal; (h) 450 cal; (i) 0; (j) −900 cal; (k) 900 cal; (l) 450 cal **77.** (a) $3/v_0^3$; (b) $0.750v_0$; (c) $0.775v_0$ **79.** (a) −2.37 kJ; (b) 2.37 kJ **81.** (b) 125 J; (c) to **83.** (a) 8.0 atm; (b) 300 K; (c) 4.4 kJ; (d) 3.2 atm; (e) 120 K; (f) 2.9 kJ; (g) 4.6 atm; (h) 170 K; (i) 3.4 kJ **85.** (a) 38 L; (b) 71 g **87.** −3.0 J **89.** 22.8 m **95.** 1.40 **97.** 4.71

Chapter 20

CP **1.** a, b, c **2.** smaller (*Q* is smaller) **3.** c, b, a **4.** a, d, c, b **5.** b

Q **1.** *b*, *a*, *c*, *d* **3.** unchanged **5.** *a* and *c* tie, then *b* and *d* tie **7.** (a) same; (b) increase; (c) decrease **9.** A, first; B, first and second; C, second; D, neither

P **1.** (a) 9.22 kJ; (b) 23.1 J/K; (c) 0 **3.** 14.4 J/K **5.** (a) 5.79×10^4 J; (b) 173 J/K **7.** (a) 320 K; (b) 0; (c) +1.72 J/K **9.** +0.76 J/K **11.** (a) 57.0°C; (b) −22.1 J/K; (c) +24.9 J/K; (d) +2.8 J/K **13.** (a) −710 mJ/K; (b) +710 mJ/K; (c) +723 mJ/K; (d) −723 mJ/K; (e) +13 mJ/K; (f) 0 **15.** (a) −943 J/K; (b) +943 J/K; (c) yes **17.** (a) 0.333; (b) 0.215; (c) 0.644; (d) 1.10; (e) 1.10; (f) 0; (g) 1.10; (h) 0; (i) −0.889; (j) −0.889; (k) −1.10; (l) −0.889; (m) 0; (n) 0.889; (o) 0 **19.** (a) 0.693; (b) 4.50; (c) 0.693; (d) 0; (e) 4.50; (f) 23.0 J/K; (g) −0.693; (h) 7.50; (i) −0.693; (j) 3.00; (k) 4.50; (l) 23.0 J/K **21.** −1.18 J/K **23.** 97 K **25.** (a) 266 K; (b) 341 K **27.** (a) 23.6%; (b) 1.49×10^4 J **29.** (a) 2.27 kJ; (b) 14.8 kJ; (c) 15.4%; (d) 75.0%; (e) greater **31.** (a) 33 kJ; (b) 25 kJ; (c) 26 kJ; (d) 18 kJ **33.** (a) 1.47 kJ; (b) 554 J; (c) 918 J; (d) 62.4% **35.** (a) 3.00; (b) 1.98; (c) 0.660; (d) 0.495; (e) 0.165; (f) 34.0% **37.** 440 W **39.** 20 J **41.** 0.25 hp **43.** 2.03 **47.** (a) $W = N!/(n_1!\, n_2!\, n_3!)$; (b) $[(N/2)!\,(N/2)!]/[(N/3)!\,(N/3)!\,(N/3)!]$; (c) 4.2×10^{16} **49.** 0.141 J/K·s **51.** (a) 87 m/s; (b) 1.2×10^2 m/s; (c) 22 J/K **53.** (a) 78%; (b) 82 kg/s **55.** (a) 40.9°C; (b) −27.1 J/K; (c) 30.3 J/K; (d) 3.18 J/K **57.** +3.59 J/K **59.** 1.18×10^3 J/K **63.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) −23.0 J/K; (d) 23.0 J/K **65.** (a) 25.5 kJ; (b) 4.73 kJ; (c) 18.5% **67.** (a) 1.95 J/K; (b) 0.650 J/K; (c) 0.217 J/K; (d) 0.072 J/K; (e) decrease **69.** (a) 4.45 J/K; (b) no **71.** (a) 1.26×10^{14}; (b) 4.71×10^{13}; (c) 0.37; (d) 1.01×10^{29}; (e) 1.37×10^{28}; (f) 0.14; (g) 9.05×10^{58}; (h) 1.64×10^{57}; (i) 0.018; (j) decrease **73.** (a) 42.6 kJ; (b) 7.61 kJ **75.** (a) 1; (b) 1; (c) 3; (d) 10; (e) 1.5×10^{-23} J/K; (f) 3.2×10^{-23} J/K **77.** $e = (1 + K)^{-1}$ **79.** 6.7

Chapter 21

CP **1.** *C* and *D* attract; *B* and *D* attract **2.** (a) leftward; (b) leftward; (c) leftward **3.** (a) *a*, *c*, *b*; (b) less than **4.** $-15e$ (net charge of $-30e$ is equally shared)

Q **1.** 3, 1, 2, 4 (zero) **3.** *a* and *b* **5.** $2kq^2/r^2$, up the page **7.** *b* and *c* tie, then *a* (zero) **9.** (a) same; (b) less than; (c) cancel; (d) add; (e) adding components; (f) positive direction of *y*; (g) negative direction of *y*; (h) positive direction of *x*; (i) negative direction of *x* **11.** (a) $+4e$; (b) $-2e$ upward; (c) $-3e$ upward; (d) $-12e$ upward

P **1.** 0.500 **3.** 1.39 m **5.** 2.81 N **7.** −4.00 **9.** (a) −1.00 μC; (b) 3.00 μC **11.** (a) 0.17 N; (b) −0.046 N **13.** (a) −14 cm; (b) 0 **15.** (a) 35 N; (b) −10°; (c) −8.4 cm; (d) +2.7 cm **17.** (a) 1.60 N; (b) 2.77 N **19.** (a) 3.00 cm; (b) 0; (c) −0.444 **21.** 3.8×10^{-8} C **23.** (a) 0; (b) 12 cm; (c) 0; (d) 4.9×10^{-26} N **25.** 6.3×10^{11} **27.** (a) 3.2×10^{-19} C; (b) 2 **29.** (a) −6.05 cm; (b) 6.05 cm **31.** 122 mA **33.** 1.3×10^7 C **35.** (a) 0; (b) 1.9×10^{-9} N **37.** (a) ^{9}B; (b) ^{13}N; (c) ^{12}C **39.** 1.31×10^{-22} N **41.** (a) 5.7×10^{13} C; (b) cancels out; (c) 6.0×10^5 kg **43.** (b) 3.1 cm **45.** 0.19 MC **47.** −45 μC **49.** 3.8 N **51.** (a) 2.00×10^{10} electrons; (b) 1.33×10^{10} electrons **53.** (a) 8.99×10^9 N; (b) 8.99 kN **55.** (a) 0.5; (b) 0.15; (c) 0.85 **57.** 1.7×10^8 N **59.** -1.32×10^{13} C **61.** (a) $(0.829\ \text{N})\hat{\text{i}}$; (b) $(-0.621\ \text{N})\hat{\text{j}}$ **63.** 2.2×10^{-6} kg **65.** 4.68×10^{-19} N **67.** (a) $2.72L$; (b) 0 **69.** (a) 5.1×10^2 N; (b) 7.7×10^{28} m/s^2 **71.** (a) 0; (b) 3.43×10^9 m/s^2 **73.** (a) 2.19×10^6 m/s; (b) 1.09×10^6 m/s; (c) decrease **75.** 4.16×10^{42}

Chapter 22

CP **1.** (a) rightward; (b) leftward; (c) leftward; (d) rightward (p and e have same charge magnitude, and p is farther) **2.** (a) toward positive *y*; (b) toward positive *x*; (c) toward negative *y* **3.** (a) leftward; (b) leftward; (c) decrease **4.** (a) all tie; (b) 1 and 3 tie, then 2 and 4 tie

Q **1.** *a*, *b*, *c* **3.** (a) yes; (b) toward; (c) no (the field vectors are not along the same line); (d) cancel; (e) add; (f) adding components; (g) toward negative *y* **5.** (a) to their left; (b) no **7.** (a) 4, 3, 1, 2; (b) 3, then 1 and 4 tie, then 2 **9.** *a*, *b*, *c* **11.** *e*, *b*, then *a* and *c* tie, then *d* (zero) **13.** *a*, *b*, *c*

P **3.** (a) 3.07×10^{21} N/C; (b) outward **5.** 56 pC **7.** $(1.02 \times 10^5\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{j}}$ **9.** (a) 1.38×10^{-10} N/C; (b) 180° **11.** −30 cm **13.** (a) 3.60×10^{-6} N/C; (b) 2.55×10^{-6} N/C; (c) 3.60×10^{-4} N/C; (d) 7.09×10^{-7} N/C; (e) As the proton nears the disk, the forces on it from electrons e_s more nearly cancel. **15.** (a) 160 N/C; (b) 45° **17.** (a) −90°; (b) +2.0 μC; (c) −1.6 μC **19.** (a) $qd/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r^3$; (b) −90° **23.** 0.506 **25.** (a) 1.62×10^6 N/C; (b) −45° **27.** (a) 23.8 N/C; (b) −90° **29.** 1.57 **31.** (a) -5.19×10^{-14} C/m; (b) 1.57×10^{-3} N/C; (c) −180°; (d) 1.52×10^{-8} N/C; (e) 1.52×10^{-8} N/C **35.** 0.346 m **37.** 28% **39.** $-5e$ **41.** (a) 1.5×10^3 N/C; (b) 2.4×10^{-16} N; (c) up; (d) 1.6×10^{-26} N; (e) 1.5×10^{10} **43.** 3.51×10^{15} m/s^2 **45.** 6.6×10^{-15} N **47.** (a) 1.92×10^{12} m/s^2; (b) 1.96×10^5 m/s **49.** (a) 0.245 N; (b) −11.3°; (c) 108 m; (d) −21.6 m **51.** 2.6×10^{-10} N; (b) 3.1×10^{-8} N; (c) moves to stigma **53.** 27 μm **55.** (a) 2.7×10^6 m/s; (b) 1.0 kN/C **57.** (a) 9.30×10^{-15} C·m; (b) 2.05×10^{-11} J **59.** 1.22×10^{-23} J **61.** $(1/2\pi)(pE/I)^{0.5}$ **63.** (a) 8.87×10^{-15} N; (b) 120 **65.** 217° **67.** 61 N/C **69.** (a) 47 N/C; (b) 27 N/C **71.** 38 N/C **73.** (a) −1.0 cm; (b) 0; (c) 10 pC **75.** +1.00 μC **77.** (a) 6.0 mm; (b) 180° **79.** 9:30 **81.** (a) −0.029 C; (b) repulsive forces would explode the sphere **83.** (a) -1.49×10^{-26} J; (b) $(-1.98 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{N·m})\hat{\text{k}}$; (c) 3.47×10^{-26} J **85.** (a) top row: 4, 8, 12; middle row: 5, 10, 14; bottom row: 7, 11, 16; (b) 1.63×10^{-19} C **87.** (a) $(-1.80\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{i}}$; (b) $(43.2\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{i}}$; (c) $(-6.29\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{i}}$

Chapter 23

CP **1.** (a) $+EA$; (b) $-EA$; (c) 0; (d) 0 **2.** (a) 2; (b) 3; (c) 1 **3.** (a) equal; (b) equal; (c) equal **4.** 3 and 4 tie, then 2, 1

Q **1.** (a) 8 N·m^2/C; (b) 0 **3.** all tie **5.** all tie **7.** *a*, *c*, then *b* and *d* tie (zero) **9.** (a) 2, 1, 3; (b) all tie ($+4q$) **11.** (a) impossible; (b) $-3q_0$; (c) impossible

P **1.** −0.015 N·m^2/C **3.** (a) 0; (b) −3.92 N·m^2/C; (c) 0; (d) 0 **5.** 3.01 nN·m^2/C **7.** 2.0×10^5 N·m^2/C **9.** (a) 8.23 N·m^2/C; (b) 72.9 pC; (c) 8.23 N·m^2/C; (d) 72.9 pC **11.** −1.70 nC **13.** 3.54 μC **15.** (a) 0; (b) 0.0417 **17.** (a) 37 μC; (b) 4.1×10^6 N·m^2/C **19.** (a) 4.5×10^{-7} C/m^2; (b) 5.1×10^4 N/C **21.** (a) -3.0×10^{-6} C; (b) $+1.3 \times 10^{-5}$ C **23.** (a) 0.32 μC; (b) 0.14 μC **25.** 5.0 μC/m **27.** 3.8×10^{-8} C/m^2 **29.** (a) 0.214 N/C; (b) inward; (c) 0.855 N/C; (d) outward; (e) -3.40×10^{-12} C; (f) -3.40×10^{-12} C **31.** (a) 2.3×10^6 N/C; (b) outward; (c) 4.5×10^5 N/C; (d) inward **33.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) $(-7.91 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{i}}$ **35.** −1.5 **37.** (a) 5.3×10^7 N/C; (b) 60 N/C **39.** 5.0 nC/m^2 **41.** 0.44 mm **43.** (a) 0; (b) 1.31 μN/C; (c) 3.08 μN/C; (d) 3.08 μN/C **45.** (a) 2.50×10^4 N/C; (b) 1.35×10^4 N/C **47.** −7.5 nC **49.** (a) 0; (b) 56.2 mN/C; (c) 112 mN/C; (d) 49.9 mN/C; (e) 0; (f) 0; (g) −5.00 fC; (h) 0 **51.** 1.79×10^{-11} C/m^2 **53.** (a) 7.78 fC; (b) 0; (c) 5.58 mN/C; (d) 22.3 mN/C **55.** $6K\varepsilon_0 r^3$ **57.** (a) 0; (b) 2.88×10^4 N/C; (c) 200 N/C **59.** (a) 5.4 N/C; (b) 6.8 N/C **61.** (a) 0; (b) $q_a/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r^2$; (c) $(q_a + q_b)/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r^2$ **63.** −1.04 nC **65.** (a) 0.125; (b) 0.500 **67.** (a) +2.0 nC; (b) −1.2 nC; (c) +1.2 nC; (d) +0.80 nC **69.** $(5.65 \times 10^4\ \text{N/C})\hat{\text{j}}$ **71.** (a) -2.53×10^{-2} N·m^2/C; (b) $+2.53 \times 10^{-2}$ N·m^2/C **75.** 3.6 nC **77.** (a) +4.0 μC; (b) −4.0 μC **79.** (a) 693 kg/s; (b) 693 kg/s; (c) 347 kg/s; (d) 347 kg/s; (e) 575 kg/s **81.** (a) $0.25R$; (b) $2.0R$

Chapter 24

CP **1.** (a) negative; (b) increase; (c) positive; (d) higher **2.** (a) rightward; (b) 1, 2, 3, 5: positive; 4, negative; (c) 3, then 1, 2, and 5 tie, then 4 **3.** all tie **4.** *a*, *c* (zero), *b* **5.** (a) 2, then 1 and 3 tie; (b) 3; (c) accelerate leftward

Q **1.** $-4q/4\pi\varepsilon_0 d$ **3.** (a) 1 and 2; (b) none; (c) no; (d) 1 and 2, yes; 3 and 4, no **5.** (a) higher; (b) positive; (c) negative; (d) all tie **7.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) 0; (d) all three quantities still 0 **9.** (a) 3 and 4 tie, then 1 and 2 tie; (b) 1 and 2, increase; 3 and 4, decrease **11.** a, b, c

P **1.** (a) 3.0×10^5 C; (b) 3.6×10^6 J **3.** 2.8×10^5 **5.** 8.8 mm **7.** -32.0 V **9.** (a) 1.87×10^{-21} J; (b) -11.7 mV **11.** (a) -0.268 mV; (b) -0.681 mV **13.** (a) 3.3 nC; (b) 12 nC/m^2 **15.** (a) 0.54 mm; (b) 790 V **17.** 0.562 mV **19.** (a) 6.0 cm; (b) -12.0 cm **21.** 16.3 μV **23.** (a) 24.3 mV; (b) 0 **25.** (a) -2.30 V; (b) -1.78 V **27.** 13 kV **29.** 32.4 mV **31.** 47.1 μV **33.** 18.6 mV **35.** $(-12\text{ V/m})\hat{\text{i}}+(12\text{ V/m})\hat{\text{j}}$ **37.** 150 N/C **39.** $(-4.0 \times 10^{-16}\text{ N})\hat{\text{i}} + (1.6 \times 10^{-16}\text{ N})\hat{\text{j}}$ **41.** (a) 0.90 J; (b) 4.5 J **43.** -0.192 pJ **45.** 2.5 km/s **47.** 22 km/s **49.** 0.32 km/s **51.** (a) $+6.0 \times 10^4$ V; (b) -7.8×10^5 V; (c) 2.5 J; (d) increase; (e) same; (f) same **53.** (a) 0.225 J; (b) *A* 45.0 m/s^2, *B* 22.5 m/s^2; (c) *A* 7.75 m/s, *B* 3.87 m/s **55.** 1.6×10^{-9} m **57.** (a) 3.0 J; (b) -8.5 m **59.** (a) proton; (b) 65.3 km/s **61.** (a) 12; (b) 2 **63.** (a) -1.8×10^2 V; (b) 2.9 kV; (c) -8.9 kV **65.** 2.5×10^{-8} C **67.** (a) 12 kN/C; (b) 1.8 kV; (c) 5.8 cm **69.** (a) 64 N/C; (b) 2.9 V; (c) 0 **71.** $p/2\pi\varepsilon_0 r^3$ **73.** (a) 3.6×10^5 V; (b) no **75.** 6.4×10^8 V **77.** 2.90 kV **79.** 7.0×10^5 m/s **81.** (a) 1.8 cm; (b) 8.4×10^5 m/s; (c) 2.1×10^{-17} N; (d) positive; (e) 1.6×10^{-17} N; (f) negative **83.** (a) $+7.19 \times 10^{-10}$ V; (b) $+2.30 \times 10^{-28}$ J; (c) $+2.43 \times 10^{-29}$ J **85.** 2.30×10^{-28} J **87.** 2.1 days **89.** 2.30×10^{-22} J **91.** 1.48×10^7 m/s **93.** -1.92 MV **95.** (a) $Q/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r$; (b) $(\rho/3\varepsilon_0)\,(1.5r_2^2 - 0.50r^2 - r_1^3\,r^{-1})$, $\rho = Q/[(4\pi/3)(r_2^3 - r_1^3)]$; (c) $(\rho/2\varepsilon_0)(r_2^2 - r_1^2)$, with ρ as in (b); (d) yes **97.** (a) 38 s; (b) 2.7×10^2 days **101.** (a) 0.484 MeV; (b) 0 **103.** -1.7

Chapter 25

CP **1.** (a) same; (b) same **2.** (a) decreases; (b) increases; (c) decreases **3.** (a) $V, q/2$; (b) $V/2; q$

Q **1.** a, 2; b, 1; c, 3 **3.** (a) no; (b) yes; (c) all tie **5.** (a) same; (b) same; (c) more; (d) more **7.** a, series; b, parallel; c, parallel **9.** (a) increase; (b) same; (c) increase; (d) increase; (e) increase; (f) increase **11.** parallel, C_1 alone, C_2 alone, series

P **1.** (a) 3.5 pF; (b) 3.5 pF; (c) 57 V **3.** (a) 144 pF; (b)17.3 nC **5.** 0.280 pF **7.** 6.79×10^{-4} F/m^2 **9.** 315 mC **11.** 3.16 μF **13.** 43 pF **15.** (a) 3.00 μF; (b) 60.0 μC; (c) 10.0 V; (d) 30.0 μC; (e) 10.0 V; (f) 20.0 μC; (g) 5.00 V; (h) 20.0 μC **17.** (a) 789 μC; (b) 78.9 V **19.** (a) 4.0 μF; (b) 2.0 μF **21.** (a) 50 V; (b) 5.0×10^{-5} C; (c) 1.5×10^{-4} C **23.** (a) 4.5×10^{14}; (b) 1.5×10^{14}; (c) 3.0×10^{14}; (d) 4.5×10^{14}; (e) up; (f) up **25.** 3.6 pC **27.** (a) 9.00 μC; (b) 16.0 μC; (c) 9.00 μC; (d) 16.0 μC; (e) 8.40 μC; (f) 16.8 μC; (g) 10.8 μC; (h) 14.4 μC **29.** 72 F **31.** 0.27 J **33.** 0.11 J/m^3 **35.** (a) 9.16×10^{-18} J/m^3; (b) 9.16×10^{-6} J/m^3; (c) 9.16×10^6 J/m^3; (d) 9.16×10^{18} J/m^3; (e) ∞ **37.** (a) 16.0 V; (b) 45.1 pJ; (c) 120 pJ; (d) 75.2 pJ **39.** (a) 190 V; (b) 95 mJ **41.** 81 pF/m **43.** Pyrex **45.** 66 μJ **47.** 0.63 m^2 **49.** 17.3 pF **51.** (a) 10 kV/m; (b) 5.0 nC; (c) 4.1 nC **53.** (a) 89 pF; (b) 0.12 nF; (c) 11 nC; (d) 11 nC; (e) 10 kV/m; (f) 2.1 kV/m; (g) 88 V; (h) -0.17 μJ **55.** (a) 0.107 nF; (b) 7.79 nC; (c) 7.45 nC **57.** 45 μC **59.** 16 μC **61.** (a) 7.20 μC; (b) 18.0 μC; (c) Battery supplies charges only to plates to which it is connected; charges on other plates are due to electron transfers between plates, in accord with new distribution of voltages across the capacitors. So the battery does not directly supply charge on capacitor 4. **63.** (a) 10 μC; (b) 20 μC **65.** 1.06 nC **67.** (a) 2.40 μF; (b) 0.480 mC; (c) 80 V; (d) 0.480 mC; (e) 120 V **69.** 4.9% **71.** (a) 0.708 pF; (b) 0.600 ; (c) 1.02×10^{-9} J; (d) sucked in **73.** 5.3 V **75.** 40 μF **77.** (a) 200 kV/m; (b) 200 kV/m; (c) 1.77 μC/m^2; (d) 4.60 μC/m^2; (e) -2.83 μC/m^2 **79.** (a) $q^2/2\varepsilon_0 A$

Chapter 26

CP **1.** 8 A, rightward **2.** (a)$-$(c) rightward **3.** a and c tie, then b **4.** device 2 **5.** (a) and (b) tie, then (d), then (c)

Q **1.** tie of A, B, and C, then tie of $A + B$ and $B + C$, then $A + B + C$ **3.** (a) top-bottom, front-back, left-right; (b) top-bottom, front-back, left-right; (c) top-bottom, front-back, left-right; (d) top-bottom, front-back, left-right **5.** a, b, and c all tie, then d **7.** (a) B, A, C; (b) B, A, C **9.** (a) C, B, A; (b) all tie; (c) A, B, C; (d) all tie **11.** (a) a and c tie, then b (zero); (b) a, b, c; (c) a and b tie, then c

P **1.** (a) 1.2 kC; (b) 7.5×10^{21} **3.** 6.7 μC/m^2 **5.** (a) 6.4 A/m^2; (b) north; (c) cross-sectional area **7.** 0.38 mm **9.** 18.1 μA **11.** (a) 1.33 A; (b) 0.666 A; (c) J_a **13.** 13 min **15.** 2.4 Ω **17.** $2.0 \times 10^6\ (\Omega\cdot\text{m})^{-1}$ **19.** $2.0 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega\cdot$m **21.** (1.8×10^3)°C **23.** $8.2 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega\cdot$m **25.** 54 Ω **27.** 3.0 **29.** 3.35×10^{-7} C **31.** (a) 6.00 mA; (b) 1.59×10^{-8} V; (c) 21.2 nΩ **33.** (a) 38.3 mA; (b) 109 A/m^2; (c) 1.28 cm/s; (d) 227 V/m **35.** 981 kΩ **39.** 150 s **41.** (a) 1.0 kW; (b) US\$0.25 **43.** 0.135 W **45.** (a) 10.9 A; (b) 10.6 Ω; (c) 4.50 MJ **47.** (a) 5.85 m; (b) 10.4 m **49.** (a) US\$4.46; (b) 144 Ω; (c) 0.833 A **51.** (a) 5.1 V; (b) 10 V; (c) 10 W; (d) 20 W **53.** (a) 28.8 Ω; (b) 2.60×10^{19} s^{-1} **55.** 660 W **57.** 28.8 kC **59.** (a) silver; (b) 51.6 nΩ **61.** (a) 2.3×10^{12}; (b) 5.0×10^3; (c) 10 MV **63.** 2.4 kW **65.** (a) 1.37; (b) 0.730 **67.** (a) -8.6%; (b) smaller **69.** 146 kJ **71.** (a) 250°C; (b) yes **73.** 3.0×10^6 J/kg **75.** 560 W **77.** 0.27 m/s **79.** (a) 10 A/cm^2; (b) eastward **81.** (a) 9.4×10^{13} s^{-1}; (b) 2.40×10^2 W **83.** 113 min **85.** (a) 225 μC; (b) 60.0 μA; (c) 0.450 mW

Chapter 27

CP **1.** (a) rightward; (b) all tie; (c) b, then a and c tie; (d) b, then a and c tie **2.** (a) all tie; (b) R_1, R_2, R_3 **3.** (a) less; (b) greater; (c) equal **4.** (a) $V/2, i$; (b) $V, i/2$ **5.** (a) 1, 2, 4, 3; (b) 4, tie of 1 and 2, then 3

Q **1.** (a) equal; (b) more **3.** parallel, R_2, R_1, series **5.** (a) series; (b) parallel; (c) parallel **7.** (a) less; (b) less; (c) more **9.** (a) parallel; (b) series **11.** (a) same; (b) same; (c) less; (d) more **13.** (a) all tie; (b) 1, 3, 2

P **1.** (a) 0.50 A; (b) 1.0 W; (c) 2.0 W; (d) 6.0 W; (e) 3.0 W; (f) supplied; (g) absorbed **3.** (a) 14 V; (b) 1.0×10^2 W; (c) 6.0×10^2 W; (d) 10 V; (e) 1.0×10^2 W **5.** 11 kJ **7.** (a) 80 J; (b) 67 J; (c) 13 J **9.** (a) 12.0 eV; (b) 6.53 W **11.** (a) 50 V; (b) 48 V; (c) negative **13.** (a) 6.9 km; (b) 20 Ω **15.** 8.0 Ω **17.** (a) 0.004 Ω; (b) 1 **19.** (a) 4.00 Ω; (b) parallel **21.** 5.56 A **23.** (a) 50 mA; (b) 60 mA; (c) 9.0 V **25.** $3d$ **27.** 3.6×10^3 A **29.** (a) 0.333 A; (b) right; (c) 720 J **31.** (a) -11 V; (b) -9.0 V **33.** 48.3 V **35.** (a) 5.25 V; (b) 1.50 V; (c) 5.25 V; (d) 6.75 V **37.** 1.43 Ω **39.** (a) 0.150 Ω; (b) 240 W **41.** (a) 0.709 W; (b) 0.050 W; (c) 0.346 W; (d) 1.26 W; (e) -0.158 W **43.** 9 **45.** (a) 0.67 A; (b) down; (c) 0.33 A; (d) up; (e) 0.33 A; (f) up; (g) 3.3 V **47.** (a) 1.11 A; (b) 0.893 A; (c) 126 m **49.** (a) 0.45 A **51.** (a) 55.2 mA; (b) 4.86 V; (c) 88.0 Ω; (d) decrease **53.** -3.0% **57.** 0.208 ms **59.** 4.61 **61.** (a) 2.41 μs; (b) 161 pF **63.** (a) 1.1 mA; (b) 0.55 mA; (c) 0.55 mA; (d) 0.82 mA; (e) 0.82 mA; (f) 0; (g) 4.0×10^2 V; (h) 6.0×10^2 V **65.** 411 μA **67.** 0.72 MΩ **69.** (a) 0.955 μC/s; (b) 1.08 μW; (c) 2.74 μW; (d) 3.82 μW **71.** (a) 3.00 A; (b) 3.75 A; (c) 3.94 A **73.** (a) 1.32×10^7 A/m^2; (b) 8.90 V; (c) copper; (d) 1.32×10^7 A/m^2; (e) 51.1 V; (f) iron **75.** (a) 3.0 kV; (b) 10 s; (c) 11 GΩ **77.** (a) 85.0 Ω; (b) 915 Ω **81.** 4.0 V **83.** (a) 24.8 Ω; (b) 14.9 kΩ **85.** the cable **87.** -13 μC **89.** 20 Ω **91.** (a) 3.00 A; (b) down; (c) 1.60 A; (d) down; (e) supply; (f) 55.2 W; (g) supply; (h) 6.40 W **93.** (a) 1.0 V; (b) 50 mΩ **95.** 3 **99.** (a) 1.5 mA; (b) 0; (c) 1.0 mA **101.** 7.50 V

103. (a) 60.0 mA; (b) down; (c) 180 mA; (d) left; (e) 240 mA; (f) up **105.** (a) 4.0 A; (b) up; (c) 0.50 A; (d) down; (e) 64 W; (f) 16 W; (g) supplied; (h) absorbed

Chapter 28

CP **1.** a, $+z$; b, $-x$; c, $\vec{F}_B = 0$ **2.** (a) 2, then tie of 1 and 3 (zero); (b) 4 **3.** (a) electron; (b) clockwise **4.** $-y$ **5.** (a) all tie; (b) 1 and 4 tie, then 2 and 3 tie

Q **1.** (a) no, because $\vec{v}$ and $\vec{F}_B$ must be perpendicular; (b) yes; (c) no, because $\vec{B}$ and $\vec{F}_B$ must be perpendicular **3.** (a) $+z$ and $-z$ tie, then $+y$ and $-y$ tie, then $+x$ and $-x$ tie (zero); (b) $+y$ **5.** (a) $\vec{F}_E$; (b) $\vec{F}_B$ **7.** (a) $\vec{B}_1$; (b) $\vec{B}_1$ into page, $\vec{B}_2$ out of page; (c) less **9.** (a) positive; (b) $2 \rightarrow 1$ and $2 \rightarrow 4$ tie, then $2 \rightarrow 3$ (which is zero) **11.** (a) negative; (b) equal; (c) equal; (d) half-circle

P **1.** (a) 400 km/s; (b) 835 eV **3.** (a) $(6.2 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{N})\hat{\text{k}}$; (b) $(-6.2 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{N})\hat{\text{k}}$ **5.** -2.0 T **7.** $(-11.4\ \text{V/m})\hat{\text{i}} - (6.00\ \text{V/m})\hat{\text{j}} + (4.80\ \text{V/m})\hat{\text{k}}$ **9.** $-(0.267\ \text{mT})\hat{\text{k}}$ **11.** 0.68 MV/m **13.** 7.4 μV **15.** (a) $(-600\ \text{mV/m})\hat{\text{k}}$; (b) 1.20 V **17.** (a) 2.60×10^6 m/s; (b) 0.109 μs; (c) 0.140 MeV; (d) 70.0 kV **19.** 1.2×10^{-9} kg/C **21.** (a) 2.05×10^7 m/s; (b) 467 μT; (c) 13.1 MHz; (d) 76.3 ns **23.** 21.1 μT **25.** (a) 0.978 MHz; (b) 96.4 cm **27.** (a) 495 mT; (b) 22.7 mA; (c) 8.17 MJ **29.** 65.3 km/s **31.** 5.07 ns **33.** (a) 0.358 ns; (b) 0.166 mm; (c) 1.51 mm **35.** (a) 200 eV; (b) 20.0 keV; (c) 0.499% **37.** 2.4×10^2 m **39.** (a) 28.2 N; (b) horizontally west **41.** (a) 467 mA; (b) right **43.** (a) 0; (b) 0.138 N; (c) 0.138 N; (d) 0 **45.** $(-2.50\ \text{mN})\hat{\text{j}} + (0.750\ \text{mN})\hat{\text{k}}$ **47.** (a) 0.10 T; (b) 31° **49.** $(-4.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m})\hat{\text{j}}$ **51.** 2.45 A **55.** (a) 2.86 A·m^2; (b) 1.10 A·m^2 **57.** (a) 12.7 A; (b) 0.0805 N·m **59.** (a) 0.30 A·m^2; (b) 0.024 N·m **61.** (a) -72.0 μJ; (b) $(96.0\hat{\text{i}} + 48.0\hat{\text{k}})\ \mu\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ **63.** (a) $-(9.7 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m})\hat{\text{i}} - (7.2 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m})\hat{\text{j}} + (8.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m})\hat{\text{k}}$; (b) -6.0×10^{-4} J **65.** (a) 90°; (b) 1; (c) 1.28×10^{-7} N·m **67.** (a) 20 min; (b) 5.9×10^{-2} N·m **69.** 8.2 mm **71.** 127 u **73.** (a) 6.3×10^{14} m/s^2; (b) 3.0 mm **75.** (a) 1.4; (b) 1.0 **77.** $(-500\ \text{V/m})\hat{\text{j}}$ **79.** (a) 0.50; (b) 0.50; (c) 14 cm; (d) 14 cm **81.** $(0.80\hat{\text{j}} - 1.1\hat{\text{k}})$ mN **83.** -40 mC **85.** (a) $(12.8\hat{\text{i}} + 6.41\hat{\text{j}}) \times 10^{-22}$ N; (b) 90°; (c) 173° **87.** (a) up the conducting path; (b) rim; (c) 47.1 V; (d) 47.1 V; (e) 2.36 kW **89.** $(mV/2ed^2)^{0.5}$ **91.** $n = JB/eE$

Chapter 29

CP **1.** b, c, a **2.** d, tie of a and c, then b **3.** d, a, tie of b and c (zero)

Q **1.** c, a, b **3.** c, d, then a and b tie (zero) **5.** a, c, b **7.** c and d tie, then b, a **9.** b, a, d, c (zero) **11.** (a) 1, 3, 2; (b) less

P **1.** (a) 3.3 μT; (b) yes **3.** (a) 16 A; (b) east **5.** (a) 1.0 mT; (b) out; (c) 0.80 mT; (d) out **7.** (a) 0.102 μT; (b) out **9.** (a) opposite; (b) 30 A **11.** (a) 4.3 A; (b) out **13.** 50.3 nT **15.** (a) 1.7 μT; (b) into; (c) 6.7 μT; (d) into **17.** 132 nT **19.** 5.0 μT **21.** 256 nT **23.** $(-7.75 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{N})\hat{\text{i}}$ **25.** 2.00 rad **27.** 61.3 mA **29.** $(80\ \mu\text{T})\hat{\text{j}}$ **31.** (a) 20 μT; (b) into **33.** $(22.3\ \text{pT})\hat{\text{j}}$ **35.** 88.4 pN/m **37.** $(-125\ \mu\text{N/m})\hat{\text{i}} + (41.7\ \mu\text{N/m})\hat{\text{j}}$ **39.** 800 nN/m **41.** $(3.20\ \text{mN})\hat{\text{j}}$ **43.** (a) 0; (b) 0.850 mT; (c) 1.70 mT; (d) 0.850 mT **45.** (a) -2.5 μT·m; (b) 0 **47.** (a) 0; (b) 0.10 μT; (c) 0.40 μT **49.** (a) 533 μT; (b) 400 μT **51.** 0.30 mT **53.** 0.272 A **55.** (a) 4.77 cm; (b) 35.5 μT **57.** (a) 2.4 A·m^2; (b) 46 cm **59.** 0.47 A·m^2 **61.** (a) 79 μT; (b) 1.1×10^{-6} N·m **63.** (a) $(0.060\ \text{A}\cdot\text{m}^2)\hat{\text{j}}$; (b) $(96\ \text{pT})\hat{\text{j}}$ **65.** 1.28 mm **69.** (a) 15 A; (b) $-z$ **71.** 7.7 mT **73.** (a) 15.3 μT **75.** (a) $(0.24\hat{\text{i}})$ nT; (b) 0; (c) $(-43\hat{\text{k}})$ pT; (d) $(0.14\hat{\text{k}})$ nT **79.** (a) 4.8 mT; (b) 0.93 mT; (c) 0 **83.** $(-0.20\ \text{mT})\hat{\text{k}}$ **87.** (a) $\mu_0 ir/2\pi c^2$; (b) $\mu_0 i/2\pi r$; (c) $\mu_0 i(a^2 - r^2)/2\pi(a^2 - b^2)r$; (d) 0

Chapter 30

CP **1.** b, then d and e tie, and then a and c tie (zero) **2.** a and b tie, then c (zero) **3.** c and d tie, then a and b tie **4.** b, out; c, out; d, into; e, into **5.** d and e **6.** (a) 2, 3, 1 (zero); (b) 2, 3, 1 **7.** a and b tie, then c

Q **1.** out **3.** (a) all tie (zero); (b) 2, then 1 and 3 tie (zero) **5.** d and c tie, then b, a **7.** (a) more; (b) same; (c) same; (d) same (zero) **9.** (a) all tie (zero); (b) 1 and 2 tie, then 3; (c) all tie (zero) **11.** b

P **1.** 0 **3.** 30 mA **5.** 0 **7.** (a) 31 mV; (b) left **9.** 0.198 mV **11.** (b) 0.796 m^2 **13.** 29.5 mC **15.** (a) 21.7 V; (b) counterclockwise **17.** (a) 1.26×10^{-4} T; (b) 0; (c) 1.26×10^{-4} T; (d) yes; (e) 5.04×10^{-8} V **19.** 5.50 kV **21.** (a) 40 Hz; (b) 3.2 mV **23.** (a) $\mu_0 iR^2\pi r^2/2x^3$; (b) $3\mu_0 i\pi R^2 r^2 v/2x^4$; (c) counterclockwise **25.** (a) 13 μWb/m; (b) 17%; (c) 0 **27.** (a) 80 μV; (b) clockwise **29.** (a) 48.1 mV; (b) 2.67 mA; (c) 0.129 mW **31.** 3.68 μW **33.** (a) 240 μV; (b) 0.600 mA; (c) 0.144 μW; (d) 2.87×10^{-8} N; (e) 0.144 μW **35.** (a) 0.60 V; (b) up; (c) 1.5 A; (d) clockwise; (e) 0.90 W; (f) 0.18 N; (g) 0.90 W **37.** (a) 71.5 μV/m; (b) 143 μV/m **39.** 0.15 V/m **41.** (a) 2.45 mWb; (b) 0.645 mH **43.** 1.81 μH/m **45.** (a) decreasing; (b) 0.68 mH **47.** (b) $L_{\text{eq}} = \Sigma L_j$, sum from $j = 1$ to $j = N$ **49.** 59.3 mH **51.** 46 Ω **53.** (a) 8.45 ns; (b) 7.37 mA **55.** 6.91 **57.** (a) 1.5 s **59.** (a) $i[1 - \exp(-Rt/L)]$; (b) $(L/R)\ln 2$ **61.** (a) 97.9 H; (b) 0.196 mJ **63.** 25.6 ms **65.** (a) 18.7 J; (b) 5.10 J; (c) 13.6 J **67.** (a) 34.2 J/m^3; (b) 49.4 mJ **69.** 1.5×10^8 V/m **71.** (a) 1.0 J/m^3; (b) 4.8×10^{-15} J/m^3 **73.** (a) 1.67 mH; (b) 6.00 mWb **75.** 13 μH **77.** (b) have the turns of the two solenoids wrapped in opposite directions **79.** (a) 2.0 A; (b) 0; (c) 2.0 A; (d) 0; (e) 10 V; (f) 2.0 A/s; (g) 2.0 A; (h) 1.0 A; (i) 3.0 A; (j) 10 V; (k) 0; (l) 0 **81.** (a) 10 μT; (b) out; (c) 3.3 μT; (d) out **83.** 0.520 ms **85.** (a) $(4.4 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}^2)\hat{\text{i}}$; (b) 0; (c) $(-4.4 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}^2)\hat{\text{i}}$ **87.** (a) 0.40 V; (b) 20 A **89.** (a) 10 A; (b) 1.0×10^2 J **91.** (a) 0; (b) 8.0×10^2 A/s; (c) 1.8 mA; (d) 4.4×10^2 A/s; (e) 4.0 mA; (f) 0 **93.** 1.15 W **95.** (a) 20 A/s; (b) 0.75 A **97.** 12 A/s **99.** 3×10^{36} J **101.** (a) 13.9 H; (b) 120 mA

Chapter 31

CP **1.** (a) $T/2$; (b) T; (c) $T/2$; (d) $T/4$ **2.** (a) 5 V; (b) 150 μJ **3.** (a) remains the same; (b) remains the same **4.** (a) C, B, A; (b) 1, A; 2, B; 3, S; 4, C; (c) A **5.** (a) remains the same; (b) increases; (c) remains the same; (d) decreases **6.** (a) 1, lags; 2, leads; 3, in phase; (b) 3 ($\omega_d = \omega$ when $X_L = X_C$) **7.** (a) increase (circuit is mainly capacitive; increase C to decrease X_C to be closer to resonance for maximum P_{avg}); (b) closer **8.** (a) greater; (b) step-up

Q **1.** b, a, c **3.** (a) $T/4$; (b) $T/4$; (c) $T/2$; (d) $T/2$ **5.** c, b, a **7.** a inductor; b resistor; c capacitor **9.** (a) positive; (b) decreased (to decrease X_L and get closer to resonance); (c) decreased (to increase X_C and get closer to resonance) **11.** (a) rightward, increase (X_L increases, closer to resonance); (b) rightward, increase (X_C decreases, closer to resonance); (c) rightward, increase (ω_d/ω increases, closer to resonance) **13.** (a) inductor; (b) decrease

P **1.** (a) 1.17 μJ; (b) 5.58 mA **3.** (a) 6.00 μs; (b) 167 kHz; (c) 3.00 μs **5.** 45.2 mA **7.** (a) 1.25 kg; (b) 372 N/m; (c) 1.75×10^{-4} m; (d) 3.02 mm/s **9.** 7.0×10^{-4} s **11.** (a) 6.0; (b) 36 pF; (c) 0.22 mH **13.** (a) 0.180 mC; (b) 70.7 μs; (c) 66.7 W **15.** (a) 3.0 nC; (b) 1.7 mA; (c) 4.5 nJ **17.** (a) 275 Hz; (b) 365 mA **21.** (a) 356 μs; (b) 2.50 mH; (c) 3.20 mJ **23.** (a) 1.98 μJ; (b) 5.56 μC; (c) 12.6 mA; (d) $-46.9°$; (e) $+46.9°$ **25.** 8.66 mΩ **29.** (a) 95.5 mA; (b) 11.9 mA **31.** (a) 0.65 kHz; (b) 24 Ω **33.** (a) 6.73 ms; (b) 11.2 ms; (c) inductor; (d) 138 mH **35.** 89 Ω **37.** 7.61 A **39.** (a) 267 Ω; (b) $-41.5°$; (c) 135 mA **41.** (a) 206 Ω; (b) 13.7°; (c) 175 mA **43.** (a) 218 Ω; (b) 23.4°; (c) 165 mA **45.** (a) yes; (b) 1.0 kV **47.** (a) 224 rad/s; (b) 6.00 A; (c) 219 rad/s; (d) 228 rad/s; (e) 0.040 **49.** (a) 796 Hz; (b) no change; (c) decreased; (d) increased **53.** (a) 12.1 Ω; (b) 1.19 kW

55. 1.84 A **57.** (a) 117 μF; (b) 0; (c) 90.0 W; (d) 0°; (e) 1; (f) 0; (g) −90°; (h) 0 **59.** (a) 2.59 A; (b) 38.8 V; (c) 159 V; (d) 224 V; (e) 64.2 V; (f) 75.0 V; (g) 100 W; (h) 0; (i) 0 **61.** (a) 0.743; (b) lead; (c) capacitive; (d) no; (e) yes; (f) no; (g) yes; (h) 33.4 W **63.** (a) 2.4 V; (b) 3.2 mA; (c) 0.16 A **65.** (a) 1.9 V; (b) 5.9 W; (c) 19 V; (d) 5.9×10^2 W; (e) 0.19 kV; (f) 59 kW **67.** (a) 6.73 ms; (b) 2.24 ms; (c) capacitor; (d) 59.0 μF **69.** (a) −0.405 rad; (b) 2.76 A; (c) capacitive **71.** (a) 64.0 Ω; (b) 50.9 Ω; (c) capacitive **73.** (a) 2.41 μH; (b) 21.4 pJ; (c) 82.2 nC **75.** (a) 39.1 Ω; (b) 21.7 Ω; (c) capacitive **79.** (a) $0.577Q$; (b) 0.152 **81.** (a) 45.0°; (b) 70.7 Ω **83.** 1.84 kHz **85.** (a) 0.689 μH; (b) 17.9 pJ; (c) 0.110 μC **87.** (a) 165 Ω; (b) 313 mH; (c) 14.9 μF **93.** (a) 36.0 V; (b) 29.9 V; (c) 11.9 V; (d) −5.85 V

Chapter 32

CP **1.** d, b, c, a (zero) **2.** a, c, b, d (zero) **3.** tie of b, c, and d, then a **4.** (a) 2; (b) 1 **5.** (a) away; (b) away; (c) less **6.** (a) toward; (b) toward; (c) less

Q **1.** 1 a, 2 b, 3 c and d **3.** a, decreasing; b, decreasing **5.** supplied **7.** (a) a and b tie, then c, d; (b) none (because plate lacks circular symmetry, $\vec{B}$ not tangent to any circular loop); (c) none **9.** (a) 1 up, 2 up, 3 down; (b) 1 down, 2 up, 3 zero **11.** (a) 1, 3, 2; (b) 2

P **1.** +3 Wb **3.** (a) 47.4 μWb; (b) inward **5.** 2.4×10^{13} V/m·s **7.** (a) 1.18×10^{-19} T; (b) 1.06×10^{-19} T **9.** (a) 5.01×10^{-22} T; (b) 4.51×10^{-22} T **11.** (a) 1.9 pT **13.** 7.5×10^5 V/s **17.** (a) 0.324 V/m; (b) 2.87×10^{-16} A; (c) 2.87×10^{-18} **19.** (a) 75.4 nT; (b) 67.9 nT **21.** (a) 27.9 nT; (b) 15.1 nT **23.** (a) 2.0 A; (b) 2.3×10^{11} V/m·s; (c) 0.50 A; (d) 0.63 μT·m **25.** (a) 0.63 μT; (b) 2.3×10^{12} V/m·s **27.** (a) 0.71 A; (b) 0; (c) 2.8 A **29.** (a) 7.60 μA; (b) 859 kV·m/s; (c) 3.39 mm; (d) 5.16 pT **31.** 55 μT **33.** (a) 0; (b) 0; (c) 0; (d) $\pm 3.2 \times 10^{-25}$ J; (e) -3.2×10^{-34} J·s; (f) 2.8×10^{-23} J/T; (g) -9.7×10^{-25} J; (h) $\pm 3.2 \times 10^{-25}$ J **35.** (a) -9.3×10^{-24} J/T; (b) 1.9×10^{-23} J/T **37.** (b) $+x$; (c) clockwise; (d) $+x$ **39.** yes **41.** 20.8 mJ/T **43.** (b) K_i/B; (c) $-z$; (d) 0.31 kA/m **47.** (a) 1.8×10^2 km; (b) 2.3×10^{-5} **49.** (a) 3.0 μT; (b) 5.6×10^{-10} eV **51.** 5.15×10^{-24} A·m^2 **53.** (a) 0.14 A; (b) 79 μC **55.** (a) 6.3×10^8 A; (b) yes; (c) no **57.** 0.84 kJ/T **59.** (a) $(1.2 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{T}) \exp[-t/(0.012\ \text{s})]$; (b) 5.9×10^{-15} T **63.** (a) 27.5 mm; (b) 110 mm **65.** 8.0 A **67.** (a) -8.8×10^{15} V/m·s; (b) 5.9×10^{-7} T·m **69.** (b) sign is minus; (c) no, because there is compensating positive flux through open end nearer to magnet **71.** (b) $-x$; (c) counterclockwise; (d) $-x$ **73.** (a) 7; (b) 7; (c) $3h/2\pi$; (d) $3eh/4\pi m$; (e) $3.5h/2\pi$; (f) 8 **75.** (a) 9; (b) 3.71×10^{-23} J/T; (c) $+9.27 \times 10^{-24}$ J; (d) -9.27×10^{-24} J

Chapter 33

CP **1.** (a) (Use Fig. 33-5.) On right side of rectangle, $\vec{E}$ is in negative y direction; on left side, $\vec{E} + d\vec{E}$ is greater and in same direction; (b) $\vec{E}$ is downward. On right side, $\vec{B}$ is in negative z direction; on left side, $\vec{B} + d\vec{B}$ is greater and in same direction. **2.** positive direction of x **3.** (a) same; (b) decrease **4.** a, d, b, c (zero) **5.** a

Q **1.** (a) positive direction of z; (b) x **3.** (a) same; (b) increase; (c) decrease **5.** (a) and (b) $A = 1, n = 4, \theta = 30°$ **7.** a, b, c **9.** B **11.** none

P **1.** 7.49 GHz **3.** (a) 515 nm; (b) 610 nm; (c) 555 nm; (d) 5.41×10^{14} Hz; (e) 1.85×10^{-15} s **5.** 5.0×10^{-21} H **7.** 1.2 MW/m^2 **9.** 0.10 MJ **11.** (a) 6.7 nT; (b) y; (c) negative direction of y **13.** (a) 1.03 kV/m; (b) 3.43 μT **15.** (a) 87 mV/m; (b) 0.29 nT; (c) 6.3 kW **17.** (a) 6.7 nT; (b) 5.3 mW/m^2; (c) 6.7 W **19.** 1.0×10^7 Pa **21.** 5.9×10^{-8} Pa **23.** (a) 4.68×10^{11} W; (b) any chance disturbance could move sphere from directly above source—the two force vectors no longer along the same axis **27.** (a) 1.0×10^8 Hz; (b) 6.3×10^8 rad/s; (c) 2.1 m^{-1}; (d) 1.0 μT; (e) z; (f) 1.2×10^2 W/m^2; (g) 8.0×10^{-7} N; (h) 4.0×10^{-7} Pa **29.** 1.9 mm/s **31.** (a) 0.17 μm; (b) toward the Sun **33.** 3.1% **35.** 4.4 W/m^2 **37.** (a) 2 sheets; (b) 5 sheets **39.** (a) 1.9 V/m; (b) 1.7×10^{-11} Pa **41.** 20° or 70° **43.** 0.67 **45.** 1.26 **47.** 1.48 **49.** 180° **51.** (a) 56.9°; (b) 35.3° **55.** 1.07 m **57.** 182 cm **59.** (a) 48.9°; (b) 29.0° **61.** (a) 26.8°; (b) yes **63.** (a) $(1 + \sin^2\theta)^{0.5}$; (b) $2^{0.5}$; (c) yes; (d) no **65.** 23.2° **67.** (a) 1.39; (b) 28.1°; (c) no **69.** 49.0° **71.** (a) 0.50 ms; (b) 8.4 min; (c) 2.4 h; (d) 5446 B.C. **73.** (a) $(16.7\ \text{nT}) \sin[(1.00 \times 10^6\ \text{m}^{-1})z + (3.00 \times 10^{14}\ \text{s}^{-1})t]$; (b) 6.28 μm; (c) 20.9 fs; (d) 33.2 mW/m^2; (e) x; (f) infrared **75.** 1.22 **77.** (c) 137.6°; (d) 139.4°; (e) 1.7° **81.** (a) z axis; (b) 7.5×10^{14} Hz; (c) 1.9 kW/m^2 **83.** (a) white; (b) white dominated by red end; (c) no refracted light **85.** 1.5×10^{-9} m/s^2 **87.** (a) 3.5 μW/m^2; (b) 0.78 μW; (c) 1.5×10^{-17} W/m^2; (d) 1.1×10^{-7} V/m; (e) 0.25 fT **89.** (a) 55.8°; (b) 55.5° **91.** (a) 83 W/m^2; (b) 1.7 MW **93.** 35° **97.** $\cos^{-1}(p/50)^{0.5}$ **99.** $8RI/3c$ **101.** 0.034 **103.** 9.43×10^{-10} T **105.** (a) $-y$; (b) z; (c) 1.91 kW/m^2; (d) $E_z = (1.20\ \text{kV/m}) \sin[(6.67 \times 10^6\ \text{m}^{-1})y + (2.00 \times 10^{15}\ \text{s}^{-1})t]$; (e) 942 nm; (f) infrared **107.** (a) 1.60; (b) 58.0°

Chapter 34

CP **1.** $0.2d, 1.8d, 2.2d$ **2.** (a) real; (b) inverted; (c) same **3.** (a) e; (b) virtual, same **4.** virtual, same as object, diverging

Q **1.** (a) a; (b) c **3.** (a) a and c; (b) three times; (c) you **5.** convex **7.** (a) all but variation 2; (b) 1, 3, 4: right, inverted; 5, 6: left, same **9.** d (infinite), tie of a and b, then c **11.** (a) x; (b) no; (c) no; (d) the direction you are facing

P **1.** 9.10 m **3.** 1.11 **5.** 351 cm **7.** 10.5 cm **9.** (a) +24 cm; (b) +36 cm; (c) −2.0; (d) R; (e) I; (f) same **11.** (a) −20 cm; (b) −4.4 cm; (c) +0.56; (d) V; (e) NI; (f) opposite **13.** (a) +36 cm; (b) −36 cm; (c) +3.0; (d) V; (e) NI; (f) opposite **15.** (a) −16 cm; (b) −4.4 cm; (c) +0.44; (d) V; (e) NI; (f) opposite **17.** (b) plus; (c) +40 cm; (e) −20 cm; (f) +2.0; (g) V; (h) NI; (i) opposite **19.** (a) convex; (b) −20 cm; (d) +20 cm; (f) +0.50; (g) V; (h) NI; (i) opposite **21.** (a) concave; (c) +40 cm; (e) +60 cm; (f) −2.0; (g) R; (h) I; (i) same **23.** (a) convex; (b) minus; (c) −60 cm; (d) +1.2 m; (e) −24 cm; (g) V; (h) NI; (i) opposite **25.** (a) concave; (b) +8.6 cm; (c) +17 cm; (e) +12 cm; (f) minus; (g) R; (i) same **27.** (a) convex; (c) −60 cm; (d) +30 cm; (f) +0.50; (g) V; (h) NI; (i) opposite **29.** (b) −20 cm; (c) minus; (d) +5.0 cm; (e) minus; (f) +0.80; (g) V; (h) NI; (i) opposite **31.** (b) 0.56 cm/s; (c) 11 m/s; (d) 6.7 cm/s **33.** (c) −33 cm; (e) V; (f) same **35.** (d) −26 cm; (e) V; (f) same **37.** (c) +30 cm; (e) V; (f) same **39.** (a) 2.00; (b) none **41.** (a) +40 cm; (b) ∞ **43.** 5.0 mm **45.** 1.86 mm **47.** (a) 45 mm; (b) 90 mm **49.** 22 cm **51.** (a) −48 cm; (b) +4.0; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **53.** (a) −4.8 cm; (b) +0.60; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **55.** (a) −8.6 cm; (b) +0.39; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **57.** (a) +36 cm; (b) −0.80; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **59.** (a) +55 cm; (b) −0.74; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **61.** (a) −18 cm; (b) +0.76; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **63.** (a) −30 cm; (b) +0.86; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **65.** (a) −7.5 cm; (b) +0.75; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **67.** (a) +84 cm; (b) −1.4; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **69.** (a) C; (d) −10 cm; (e) +2.0; (f) V; (g) NI; (h) same **71.** (a) D; (b) −5.3 cm; (d) −4.0 cm; (f) V; (g) NI; (h) same **73.** (a) C; (b) +3.3 cm; (d) +5.0 cm; (f) R; (g) I; (h) opposite **75.** (a) D; (b) minus; (d) −3.3 cm; (e) +0.67; (f) V; (g) NI **77.** (a) C; (b) +80 cm; (d) −20 cm; (f) V; (g) NI; (h) same **79.** (a) C; (b) plus; (d) −13 cm; (e) +1.7; (f)V; (g) NI; (h) same

81. (a) +24 cm; (b) +6.0; (c) R; (d) NI; (e) opposite **83.** (a) +3.1 cm; (b) −0.31; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **85.** (a) −4.6 cm; (b) +0.69; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **87.** (a) −5.5 cm; (b) +0.12; (c) V; (d) NI; (e) same **89.** (a) 13.0 cm; (b) 5.23 cm; (c) −3.25; (d) 3.13; (e) −10.2 **91.** (a) 2.35 cm; (b) decrease **93.** (a) 3.5; (b) 2.5 **95.** (a) +8.6 cm; (b) +2.6; (c) R; (d) NI; (e) opposite **97.** (a) +7.5 cm; (b) −0.75; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **99.** (a) +24 cm; (b) −0.58; (c) R; (d) I; (e) opposite **105.** (a) 3.00 cm; (b) 2.33 cm **107.** (a) 40 cm; (b) 20 cm; (c) −40 cm; (d) 40 cm **109.** (a) 20 cm; (b) 15 cm **111.** (a) 6.0 mm; (b) 1.6 kW/m^2; (c) 4.0 cm **113.** 100 cm **115.** 2.2 mm^2 **119.** (a) −30 cm; (b) not inverted; (c) virtual; (d) 1.0 **121.** (a) −12 cm **123.** (a) 80 cm; (b) 0 to 12 cm **127.** (a) 8.0 cm; (b) 16 cm; (c) 48 cm **129.** (a) $\alpha = 0.500$ rad: 7.799 cm; $\alpha = 0.100$ rad: 8.544 cm; $\alpha = 0.0100$ rad: 8.571 cm; mirror equation: 8.571 cm; (b) $\alpha = 0.500$ rad: −13.56 cm; $\alpha = 0.100$ rad: −12.05 cm; $\alpha = 0.0100$ rad: −12.00 cm; mirror equation: −12.00 cm **131.** 42 mm **133.** (b) P_n **135.** (a) $(0.5)(2 - n)r/(n - 1)$; (b) right **137.** 2.67 cm **139.** (a) 3.33 cm; (b) left; (c) virtual; (d) not inverted **141.** (a) $1 + (25\text{ cm})/f$; (b) $(25\text{ cm})/f$; (c) 3.5; (d) 2.5

Chapter 35

CP **1.** b (least n), c, a **2.** (a) top; (b) bright intermediate illumination (phase difference is 2.1 wavelengths) **3.** (a) 3λ, 3; (b) 2.5λ, 2.5 **4.** a and d tie (amplitude of resultant wave is $4E_0$), then b and c tie (amplitude of resultant wave is $2E_0$) **5.** (a) 1 and 4; (b) 1 and 4

Q **1.** (a) decrease; (b) decrease; (c) decrease; (d) blue **3.** (a) $2d$; (b) (odd number)$\lambda/2$; (c) $\lambda/4$ **5.** (a) intermediate closer to maximum, $m = 2$; (b) minimum, $m = 3$; (c) intermediate closer to maximum, $m = 2$; (d) maximum, $m = 1$ **7.** (a) maximum; (b) minimum; (c) alternates **9.** (a) peak; (b) valley **11.** c, d **13.** c

P **1.** (a) 155 nm; (b) 310 nm **3.** (a) 3.60 μm; (b) intermediate closer to fully constructive **5.** 4.55×10^7 m/s **7.** 1.56 **9.** (a) 1.55 μm; (b) 4.65 μm **11.** (a) 1.70; (b) 1.70; (c) 1.30; (d) all tie **13.** (a) 0.833; (b) intermediate closer to fully constructive **15.** 648 nm **17.** 16 **19.** 2.25 mm **21.** 72 μm **23.** 0 **25.** 7.88 μm **27.** 6.64 μm **29.** 2.65 **31.** $27 \sin(\omega t + 8.5°)$ **33.** $(17.1\ \mu\text{V/m}) \sin[(2.0 \times 10^{14}\text{ rad/s})t]$ **35.** 120 nm **37.** 70.0 nm **39.** (a) 0.117 μm; (b) 0.352 μm **41.** 161 nm **43.** 560 nm **45.** 478 nm **47.** 509 nm **49.** 273 nm **51.** 409 nm **53.** 338 nm **55.** (a) 552 nm; (b) 442 nm **57.** 608 nm **59.** 528 nm **61.** 455 nm **63.** 248 nm **65.** 339 nm **67.** 329 nm **69.** 1.89 μm **71.** 0.012° **73.** 140 **75.** $[(m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda R]^{0.5}$, for $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ **77.** 1.00 m **79.** 588 nm **81.** 1.00030 **83.** (a) 50.0 nm; (b) 36.2 nm **85.** 0.23° **87.** (a) 1500 nm; (b) 2250 nm; (c) 0.80 **89.** $x = (D/2a)(m + 0.5)\lambda$, for $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ **91.** (a) 22°; (b) refraction reduces θ **93.** 600 nm **95.** (a) 1.75 μm; (b) 4.8 mm **97.** $I_m \cos^2(2\pi x/\lambda)$ **99.** (a) 42.0 ps; (b) 42.3 ps; (c) 43.2 ps; (d) 41.8 ps; (e) 4 **101.** 33 μm **103.** (a) bright; (b) 594 nm; (c) Primary reason: the colored bands begin to overlap too much to be distinguished. Secondary reason: the two reflecting surfaces are too separated for the light reflecting from them to be coherent.

Chapter 36

CP **1.** (a) expand; (b) expand **2.** (a) second side maximum; (b) 2.5 **3.** (a) red; (b) violet **4.** diminish **5.** (a) left; (b) less

Q **1.** (a) $m = 5$ minimum; (b) (approximately) maximum between the $m = 4$ and $m = 5$ minima **3.** (a) A, B, C; (b) A, B, C **5.** (a) 1 and 3 tie, then 2 and 4 tie; (b) 1 and 2 tie, then 3 and 4 tie **7.** (a) larger; (b) red **9.** (a) decrease; (b) same; (c) remain in place **11.** (a) A; (b) left; (c) left; (d) right **13.** (a) 1 and 2 tie, then 3; (b) yes; (c) no

P **1.** (a) 2.5 mm; (b) 2.2×10^{-4} rad **3.** (a) 70 cm; (b) 1.0 mm **5.** (a) 700 nm; (b) 4; (c) 6 **7.** 60.4 μm **9.** 1.77 mm **11.** 160° **13.** (a) 0.18°; (b) 0.46 rad; (c) 0.93 **15.** (d) 52.5°; (e) 10.1°; (f) 5.06° **17.** (b) 0; (c) −0.500; (d) 4.493 rad; (e) 0.930; (f) 7.725 rad; (g) 1.96 **19.** (a) 19 cm; (b) larger **21.** (a) 1.1×10^4 km; (b) 11 km **23.** (a) 1.3×10^{-4} rad; (b) 10 km **25.** 50 m **27.** 1.6×10^3 km **29.** (a) 8.8×10^{-7} rad; (b) 8.4×10^7 km; (c) 0.025 mm **31.** (a) 0.346°; (b) 0.97° **33.** (a) 17.1 m; (b) 1.37×10^{-10} **35.** 5 **37.** 3 **39.** (a) 5.0 μm; (b) 20 μm **41.** (a) 7.43×10^{-3}; (b) between the $m = 6$ minimum (the seventh one) and the $m = 7$ maximum (the seventh side maximum); (c) between the $m = 3$ minimum (the third one) and the $m = 4$ minimum (the fourth one) **43.** (a) 9; (b) 0.255 **45.** (a) 62.1°; (b) 45.0°; (c) 32.0° **47.** 3 **49.** (a) 6.0 μm; (b) 1.5 μm; (c) 9; (d) 7; (e) 6 **51.** (a) 2.1°; (b) 21°; (c) 11 **53.** (a) 470 nm; (b) 560 nm **55.** 3.65×10^3 **57.** (a) 0.032°/nm; (b) 4.0×10^4; (c) 0.076°/nm; (d) 8.0×10^4; (e) 0.24°/nm; (f) 1.2×10^5 **59.** 0.15 nm **61.** (a) 10 μm; (b) 3.3 mm **63.** 1.09×10^3 rulings/mm **65.** (a) 0.17 nm; (b) 0.13 nm **67.** (a) 25 pm; (b) 38 pm **69.** 0.26 nm **71.** (a) 15.3°; (b) 30.6°; (c) 3.1°; (d) 37.8° **73.** (a) $0.7071a_0$; (b) $0.4472a_0$; (c) $0.3162a_0$; (d) $0.2774a_0$; (e) $0.2425a_0$ **75.** (a) 625 nm; (b) 500 nm; (c) 416 nm **77.** 3.0 mm **83.** (a) 13; (b) 6 **85.** 59.5 pm **87.** 4.9 km **89.** 1.36×10^4 **91.** 2 **93.** 4.7 cm **97.** 36 cm **99.** (a) fourth; (b) seventh **103.** (a) 2.4 μm; (b) 0.80 μm; (c) 2 **107.** 9

Chapter 37

CP **1.** (a) same (speed of light postulate); (b) no (the start and end of the flight are spatially separated); (c) no (because his measurement is not a proper time) **2.** (a) Eq. 2; (b) $+0.90c$; (c) 25 ns; (d) −7.0 m **3.** (a) right; (b) more **4.** (a) equal; (b) less

Q **1.** c **3.** b **5.** (a) C_1'; (b) C_1' **7.** (a) 4 s; (b) 3 s; (c) 5 s; (d) 4 s; (e) 10 s **9.** (a) a tie of 3, 4, and 6, then a tie of 1, 2, and 5; (b) 1, then a tie of 2 and 3, then 4, then a tie of 5 and 6; (c) 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; (d) 2 and 4; (e) 1, 2, 5 **11.** (a) 3, tie of 1 and 2, then 4; (b) 4, tie of 1 and 2, then 3; (c) 1, 4, 2, 3

P **1.** 0.990 50 **3.** (a) 0.999 999 50 **5.** 0.446 ps **7.** 2.68×10^3 y **9.** (a) 87.4 m; (b) 394 ns **11.** 1.32 m **13.** (a) 26.26 y; (b) 52.26 y; (c) 3.705 y **15.** (a) 0.999 999 15; (b) 30 ly **17.** (a) 138 km; (b) −374 μs **19.** (a) 25.8 μs; (b) small flash **21.** (a) $\gamma[1.00\ \mu\text{s} - \beta(400\text{ m})/(2.998 \times 10^8\text{ m/s})]$; (d) 0.750; (e) $0 < \beta < 0.750$; (f) $0.750 < \beta < 1$; (g) no **23.** (a) 1.25; (b) 0.800 μs **25.** (a) 0.480; (b) negative; (c) big flash; (d) 4.39 μs **27.** $0.81c$ **29.** (a) 0.35; (b) 0.62 **31.** 1.2 μs **33.** (a) 1.25 y; (b) 1.60 y; (c) 4.00 y **35.** 22.9 MHz **37.** $0.13c$ **39.** (a) 550 nm; (b) yellow **41.** (a) 196.695; (b) 0.999 987 **43.** (a) 1.0 keV; (b) 1.1 MeV **45.** 110 km **47.** 1.01×10^7 km **49.** (a) 0.222 cm; (b) 701 ps; (c) 7.40 ps **51.** $2.83mc$ **53.** $\gamma(2\pi m/|q|B)$; (b) no; (c) 4.85 mm; (d) 15.9 mm; (e) 16.3 ps; (f) 0.334 ns **55.** (a) 0.707; (b) 1.41; (c) 0.414 **57.** 18 smu/y **59.** (a) 2.08 MeV; (b) −1.21 MeV **61.** (d) 0.801 **63.** (a) $vt \sin \theta$; (b) $t[1 - (v/c) \cos \theta]$; (c) $3.24c$ **67.** (b) $+0.44c$ **69.** (a) 1.93 m; (b) 6.00 m; (c) 13.6 ns; (d) 13.6 ns; (e) 0.379 m; (f) 30.5 m; (g) −101 ns; (h) no; (i) 2; (k) no; (l) both **71.** (a) 5.4×10^4 km/h; (b) 6.3×10^{-10} **73.** 189 MeV **75.** 8.7×10^{-3} ly **77.** 7 **79.** 2.46 MeV/c **81.** $0.27c$ **83.** (a) 5.71 GeV; (b) 6.65 GeV; (c) 6.58 GeV/c; (d) 3.11 MeV; (e) 3.62 MeV; (f) 3.59 MeV/c **85.** $0.95c$ **87.** (a) 256 kV; (b) $0.745c$ **89.** (a) $0.858c$; (b) $0.185c$ **91.** $0.500c$ **93.** (a) 119 MeV; (b) 64.0 MeV/c; (c) 81.3 MeV; (d) 64.0 MeV/c **95.** 4.00 u, probably a helium nucleus **97.** (a) 534; (b) 0.999 998 25; (c) 2.23 T **99.** (a) 415 nm; (b) blue **101.** (a) 88 kg; (b) no **103.** (a) 3×10^{-18}; (b) 2×10^{-12}; (c) 8.2×10^{-8}; (d) 6.4×10^{-6}; (e) 1.1×10^{-6}; (f) 3.7×10^{-5}; (g) 9.9×10^{-5}; (h) 0.10

Chapter 38

CP **1.** b, a, d, c **2.** (a) lithium, sodium, potassium, cesium; (b) all tie **3.** (a) same; (b)–(d) x rays **4.** (a) proton; (b) same; (c) proton **5.** same

Q **1.** (a) greater; (b) less **3.** potassium **5.** only e **7.** none **9.** (a) decreases by a factor of $(1/2)^{0.5}$; (b) decreases by a factor of 1/2 **11.** amplitude of reflected wave is less than that of incident wave **13.** electron, neutron, alpha particle **15.** all tie

P **1.** (a) 2.1 μm; (b) infrared **3.** 1.0×10^{45} photons/s **5.** 2.047 eV **7.** 1.1×10^{-10} W **9.** (a) 2.96×10^{20} photons/s; (b) 4.86×10^{7} m; (c) 5.89×10^{18} photons/m$^2 \cdot$s **11.** (a) infrared; (b) 1.4×10^{21} photons/s **13.** 4.7×10^{26} photons **15.** 170 nm **17.** 676 km/s **19.** 1.3 V; (b) 6.8×10^{2} km/s **21.** (a) 3.1 keV; (b) 14 keV **23.** (a) 2.00 eV; (b) 0; (c) 2.00 V; (d) 295 nm **25.** (a) 382 nm; (b) 1.82 eV **27.** (a) 2.73 pm; (b) 6.05 pm **29.** (a) 8.57×10^{18} Hz; (b) 3.55×10^{4} eV; (c) 35.4 keV/c **31.** 300% **33.** (a) -8.1×10^{-9}%; (b) -4.9×10^{-4}%; (c) -8.9%; (d) -66% **35.** (a) 2.43 pm; (b) 1.32 fm; (c) 0.511 MeV; (d) 939 MeV **37.** (a) 41.8 keV; (b) 8.2 keV **39.** 44° **41.** (a) 2.43 pm; (b) 4.11×10^{-6}; (c) -8.67×10^{-6} eV; (d) 2.43 pm; (e) 9.78×10^{-2}; (f) -4.45 keV **43.** (a) 2.9×10^{-10} m; (b) x ray; (c) 2.9×10^{-8} m; (d) ultraviolet **45.** (a) 9.35 μm; (b) 1.47×10^{-5} W; (c) 6.93×10^{14} photons/s; (d) 2.33×10^{-37} W; (e) 5.87×10^{-19} photons/s **47.** 7.75 pm **49.** (a) 1.9×10^{-21} kg $\cdot$ m/s; (b) 346 fm **51.** 4.3 μeV **53.** (a) 1.24 μm; (b) 1.22 nm; (c) 1.24 fm; (d) 1.24 fm **55.** (a) 15 keV; (b) 120 keV **57.** neutron **59.** (a) 3.96×10^{6} m/s; (b) 81.7 kV **67.** 2.1×10^{-24} kg $\cdot$ m/s **71.** (a) 1.45×10^{11} m^{-1}; (b) 7.25×10^{10} m^{-1}; (c) 0.111; (d) 5.56×10^{4} **73.** 4.81 mA **75.** (a) 9.02×10^{-6}; (b) 3.0 MeV; (c) 3.0 MeV; (d) 7.33×10^{-8}; (e) 3.0 MeV; (f) 3.0 MeV **77.** (a) -20%; (b) -10%; (c) $+15$% **79.** (a) no; (b) plane wavefronts of infinite extent, perpendicular to x axis **83.** (a) 38.8 meV; (b) 146 pm **85.** (a) 4.14×10^{-15} eV $\cdot$ s; (b) 2.31 eV **89.** (a) no; (b) 544 nm; (c) green

Chapter 39

CP **1.** b, a, c **2.** (a) all tie; (b) a, b, c **3.** a, b, c, d **4.** $E_{1,1}$ (neither n_x nor n_y can be zero) **5.** (a) 5; (b) 7

Q **1.** a, c, b **3.** (a) 18; (b) 17 **5.** equal **7.** c **9.** (a) decrease; (b) increase **11.** $n = 1, n = 2, n = 3$ **13.** (a) $n = 3$; (b) $n = 1$; (c) $n = 5$ **15.** b, c, and d

P **1.** 1.41 **3.** 0.65 eV **5.** 0.85 nm **7.** 1.9 GeV **9.** (a) 72.2 eV; (b) 13.7 nm; (c) 17.2 nm; (d) 68.7 nm; (e) 41.2 nm; (g) 68.7 nm; (h) 25.8 nm **11.** (a) 13; (b) 12 **13.** (a) 0.020; (b) 20 **15.** (a) 0.050; (b) 0.10; (c) 0.0095 **17.** 56 eV **19.** 109 eV **23.** 3.21 eV **25.** 1.4×10^{-3} **27.** (a) 8; (b) 0.75; (c) 1.00; (d) 1.25; (e) 3.75; (f) 3.00; (g) 2.25 **29.** (a) 7; (b) 1.00; (c) 2.00; (d) 3.00; (e) 9.00; (f) 8.00; (g) 6.00 **31.** 4.0 **33.** (a) 12.1 eV; (b) 6.45×10^{-27} kg $\cdot$ m/s; (c) 102 nm **35.** (a) 291 nm^{-3}; (b) 10.2 nm^{-1} **41.** (a) 0.0037; (b) 0.0054 **43.** (a) 13.6 eV; (b) -27.2 eV **45.** (a) $(r^4/8a^5)[\exp(-r/a)] \cos^2 \theta$; (b) $(r^4/16a^5)[\exp(-r/a)] \sin^2 \theta$ **47.** 4.3×10^{3} **49.** (a) 13.6 eV; (b) 3.40 eV **51.** 0.68 **59.** (b) $(2\pi/h)[2m(U_0 - E)]^{0.5}$ **61.** (b) meter$^{-2.5}$ **63.** (a) n; (b) $2\ell + 1$; (c) n^2 **65.** (a) $nh/\pi md^2$; (b) $n^2h^2/4\pi^2md^2$ **67.** (a) 3.9×10^{-22} eV; (b) 10^{20}; (c) 3.0×10^{-18} K **71.** (a) $e^2r/4\pi\varepsilon_0a^3$; (b) $e/(4\pi\varepsilon_0ma_0^3)^{0.5}$ **73.** 18.1, 36.2, 54.3, 66.3, 72.4 μeV

Chapter 40

CP **1.** 7 **2.** (a) decrease; (b)–(c) remain the same **3.** A, C, B

Q **1.** (a) 2; (b) 8; (c) 5; (d) 50 **3.** all true **5.** same number (10) **7.** 2, -1, 0, and 1 **9.** (a) 2; (b) 3 **11.** (a) n; (b) n and ℓ **13.** In addition to the quantized energy, a helium atom has kinetic energy; its total energy can equal 20.66 eV.

P **1.** 24.1° **3.** (a) 3.65×10^{-34} J $\cdot$ s; (b) 3.16×10^{-34} J $\cdot$ s **5.** (a) 3; (b) 3 **7.** (a) 4; (b) 5; (c) 2 **9.** (a) 3.46; (b) 3.46; (c) 3; (d) 3; (e) -3; (f) 30.0°; (g) 54.7°; (h) 150° **13.** 72 km/s^2 **15.** (a) 54.7°; (b) 125° **17.** 19 mT **19.** 5.35 cm **21.** 44 **23.** 42 **25.** (a) 51; (b) 53; (c) 56 **27.** (a) $(2, 0, 0, +\frac{1}{2}), (2, 0, 0, -\frac{1}{2})$; (b) $(2, 1, 1, +\frac{1}{2}), (2, 1, 1, -\frac{1}{2}), (2, 1, 0, +\frac{1}{2}), (2, 1, 0, -\frac{1}{2}), (2, 1, -1, +\frac{1}{2}), (2, 1, -1, -\frac{1}{2})$ **29.** g **31.** (a) $4p$; (b) 4; (c) $4p$; (d) 5; (e) $4p$; (f) 6 **33.** 12.4 kV **35.** (a) 35.4 pm; (b) 56.5 pm; (c) 49.6 pm **39.** 0.563 **41.** 80.3 pm **43.** (a) 69.5 kV; (b) 17.8 pm; (c) 21.3 pm; (d) 18.5 pm **45.** (a) 49.6 pm; (b) 99.2 pm **47.** 2.0×10^{16} s^{-1} **49.** 2×10^{7} **51.** 9.0×10^{-7} **53.** 7.3×10^{15} s^{-1} **55.** (a) 3.60 mm; (b) 5.24×10^{17} **57.** (a) 0; (b) 68 J **59.** 3.0 eV **61.** (a) 3.03×10^{5}; (b) 1.43 GHz; (d) 3.31×10^{-6} **63.** 186 **65.** (a) 2.13 meV; (b) 18 T **69.** (a) no; (b) 140 nm **71.** $n > 3$; $\ell = 3$; $m_\ell = +3, +2, +1, 0, -1, -2, -3$; $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}$ **73.** (a) 6.0; (b) 3.2×10^{6} y **75.** argon **79.** $(Ze/4\pi\varepsilon_0)(r^{-2} - rR^{-3})$

Chapter 41

CP **1.** larger **2.** a, b, and c

Q **1.** b, c, d (the latter due to thermal expansion) **3.** 8 **5.** below **7.** increase **9.** much less than **11.** b and d

P **3.** 8.49×10^{28} m^{-3} **5.** (b) 6.81×10^{27} m^{-3} eV$^{-3/2}$; (c) 1.52×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1} **7.** (a) 0; (b) 0.0955 **9.** (a) 5.86×10^{28} m^{-3}; (b) 5.49 eV; (c) 1.39×10^{3} km/s; (d) 0.522 nm **11.** (a) 1.36×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1}; (b) 1.68×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1}; (c) 9.01×10^{27} m^{-3} eV^{-1}; (d) 9.56×10^{26} m^{-3} eV^{-1}; (e) 1.71×10^{18} m^{-3} eV^{-1} **13.** (a) 6.81 eV; (b) 1.77×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1}; (c) 1.59×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1} **15.** (a) 2.50×10^{3} K; (b) 5.30×10^{3} K **17.** 3 **19.** (a) 1.0; (b) 0.99; (c) 0.50; (d) 0.014; (e) 2.4×10^{-17}; (f) 7.0×10^{2} K **21.** (a) 0.0055; (b) 0.018 **25.** (a) 19.7 kJ; (b) 197 s **27.** (a) 1.31×10^{29} m^{-3}; (b) 9.43 eV; (c) 1.82×10^{3} km/s; (d) 0.40 nm **29.** 57.1 kJ **31.** (a) 226 nm; (b) ultraviolet **33.** (a) 1.5×10^{-6}; (b) 1.5×10^{-6} **35.** 0.22 μg **37.** (a) 4.79×10^{-10}; (b) 0.0140; (c) 0.824 **39.** 6.0×10^{5} **41.** 4.20 eV **43.** 13 μm **47.** (a) 109.5°; (b) 238 pm **49.** (b) 1.8×10^{28} m^{-3} eV^{-1} **53.** 3.49×10^{3} atm

Chapter 42

CP **1.** ^{90}As and ^{158}Nd **2.** a little more than 75 Bq (elapsed time is a little less than three half-lives) **3.** ^{206}Pb

Q **1.** (a) ^{196}Pt; (b) no **3.** yes **5.** (a) less; (b) greater **7.** ^{240}U **9.** no effect **11.** yes **13.** (a) all except ^{198}Au; (b) ^{132}Sn and ^{208}Pb **15.** d

P **1.** 1.3×10^{-13} m **3.** 46.6 fm **5.** (a) 0.390 MeV; (b) 4.61 MeV **7.** (a) 2.3×10^{17} kg/m^3; (b) 2.3×10^{17} kg/m^3; (d) 1.0×10^{25} C/m^3; (e) 8.8×10^{24} C/m^3 **9.** (a) 6; (b) 8 **11.** (a) 6.2 fm; (b) yes **13.** 13 km **17.** 1.0087 u **19.** (a) 9.303%; (b) 11.71% **21.** (b) 7.92 MeV/nucleon **25.** 5.3×10^{22} **27.** (a) 0.250; (b) 0.125 **29.** (a) 64.2 h; (b) 0.125; (c) 0.0749 **31.** (a) 7.5×10^{16} s^{-1}; (b) 4.9×10^{16} s^{-1} **33.** 1×10^{13} atoms **37.** 265 mg **39.** (a) 8.88×10^{10} s^{-1}; (b) 1.19×10^{15}; (c) 0.111 μg **41.** 1.12×10^{11} y **43.** 9.0×10^{8} Bq **45.** (a) 3.2×10^{12} Bq; (b) 86 Ci **47.** (a) 2.0×10^{20}; (b) 2.8×10^{9} s^{-1} **49.** (a) 1.2×10^{-17}; (b) 0 **51.** 4.269 MeV **53.** 1.21 MeV **55.** 0.783 MeV **57.** (b) 0.961 MeV **59.** 78.3 eV **61.** (a) 1.06×10^{19}; (b) 0.624×10^{19}; (c) 1.68×10^{19}; (d) 2.97×10^{9} y **63.** 1.7 mg **65.** 1.02 mg **67.** 2.50 mSv **69.** (a) 6.3×10^{18}; (b) 2.5×10^{11}; (c) 0.20 J; (d) 2.3 mGy; (e) 30 mSv **71.** (a) 6.6 MeV; (b) no **73.** (a) 25.4 MeV; (b) 12.8 MeV; (c) 25.0 MeV **75.** ^{7}Li **77.** 3.2×10^{4} y **79.** 730 cm^2 **81.** ^{225}Ac **83.** 30 MeV **89.** 27 **91.** (a) 11.906 83 u; (b) 236.2025 u **93.** 600 keV **95.** (a) 59.5 d; (b) 1.18 **97.** (a) 4.8×10^{-18} s^{-1}; (b) 4.6×10^{9} y

Chapter 43

CP **1.** c and d **2.** e

Q **1.** (a) 101; (b) 42 **3.** ^{239}Np **5.** ^{140}I, ^{105}Mo, ^{152}Nd, ^{123}In, ^{115}Pd **7.** increased **9.** less than **11.** still equal to 1

P **1.** (a) 16 day^{-1}; (b) 4.3×10^8 **3.** 4.8 MeV **5.** 1.3×10^3 kg **7.** $3.1 \times 10^{10}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ **9.** (a) 2.6×10^{24}; (b) 8.2×10^{13} J; (c) 2.6×10^4 y **11.** -23.0 MeV **13.** (a) 251 MeV; (b) typical fission energy is 200 MeV **15.** (a) 84 kg; (b) 1.7×10^{25}; (c) 1.3×10^{25} **17.** (a) ^{153}Nd; (b) 110 MeV; (c) 60 MeV; (d) 1.6×10^7 m/s; (e) 8.7×10^6 m/s **21.** 557 W **23.** 0.99938 **25.** (b) 1.0; (c) 0.89; (d) 0.28; (e) 0.019; (f) 8 **27.** (a) 75 kW; (b) 5.8×10^3 kg **29.** 1.7×10^9 y **31.** 170 keV **33.** 1.41 MeV **35.** 10^{-12} m **37.** (a) 4.3×10^9 kg/s; (b) 3.1×10^{-4} **41.** 1.6×10^8 y **43.** (a) 24.9 MeV; (b) 8.65 megatons TNT **45.** (a) $1.8 \times 10^{38}\ \text{s}^{-1}$; (b) $8.2 \times 10^{28}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ **47.** (a) 4.1 eV/atom; (b) 9.0 MJ/kg; (c) 1.5×10^3 y **49.** 14.4 kW **51.** $^{238}\text{U} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{Np} + \text{e} + \nu$, $^{239}\text{Np} \rightarrow {}^{239}\text{Pu} + \text{e} + \nu$ **55.** (a) 3.1×10^{31} protons/m^3; (b) 1.2×10^6 **57.** (a) 227 J; (b) 49.3 mg; (c) 22.7 kW

Chapter 44

CP **1.** (a) the muon family; (b) a particle; (c) $L_\mu = +1$ **2.** b and e **3.** c

Q **1.** b, c, d **3.** (a) 1; (b) positively charged **5.** a, b, c, d **7.** d **9.** c **11.** (a) lepton; (b) antiparticle; (c) fermion; (d) yes

P **1.** $\pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}$ **3.** 2.4 pm **5.** 2.4×10^{-43} **7.** 769 MeV **9.** 2.7 cm/s **11.** (a) angular momentum, L_e; (b) charge, L_μ; (c) energy, L_μ **15.** (a) energy; (b) strangeness; (c) charge **17.** (a) yes; (b)–(d) no **19.** (a) 0; (b) -1; (c) 0 **21.** (a) K^+; (b) $\bar{\text{n}}$; (c) K^0 **23.** (a) 37.7 MeV; (b) 5.35 MeV; (c) 32.4 MeV **25.** (a) $\bar{\text{u}}\bar{\text{u}}\bar{\text{d}}$; (b) $\bar{\text{u}}\bar{\text{d}}\bar{\text{d}}$ **27.** $\text{s}\bar{\text{d}}$ **29.** (a) Ξ^0; (b) Σ^- **31.** 2.77×10^8 ly **33.** 668 nm **35.** 1.4×10^{10} ly **37.** (a) 2.6 K; (b) 976 nm **39.** (b) 5.7 H atoms/m^3 **41.** 4.57×10^3 **43.** (a) 121 m/s; (b) 0.00406; (c) 248 y **47.** 1.08×10^{42} J **49.** (a) $0.785c$; (b) $0.993c$; (c) C2; (d) C1; (e) 51 ns; (f) 40 ns **51.** (c) $r\alpha/c + (r\alpha/c)^2 + (r\alpha/c)^3 + \cdots$; (d) $r\alpha/c$; (e) $\alpha = H$; (f) 6.5×10^8 ly; (g) 6.9×10^8 y; (h) 6.5×10^8 y; (i) 6.9×10^8 ly; (j) 1.0×10^9 ly; (k) 1.1×10^9 y; (l) 3.9×10^8 ly **53.** (a) ssd; (b) $\bar{\text{s}}\bar{\text{s}}\bar{\text{d}}$

INDEX

Figures are noted by page numbers in *italics*, tables are indicated by t following the page number.

This page intentionally left blank

SOME PHYSICAL CONSTANTS*

Speed of light	c	2.998×10^{8} m/s
Gravitational constant	G	6.673×10^{-11} N · m^2/kg^2
Avogadro constant	N_A	6.022×10^{23} mol^{-1}
Universal gas constant	R	8.314 J/mol · K
Mass–energy relation	c^2	8.988×10^{16} J/kg 931.49 MeV/u
Permittivity constant	ε_0	8.854×10^{-12} F/m
Permeability constant	μ_0	1.257×10^{-6} H/m
Planck constant	h	6.626×10^{-34} J · s 4.136×10^{-15} eV · s
Boltzmann constant	k	1.381×10^{-23} J/K 8.617×10^{-5} eV/K
Elementary charge	e	1.602×10^{-19} C
Electron mass	m_e	9.109×10^{-31} kg
Proton mass	m_p	1.673×10^{-27} kg
Neutron mass	m_n	1.675×10^{-27} kg
Deuteron mass	m_d	3.344×10^{-27} kg
Bohr radius	a	5.292×10^{-11} m
Bohr magneton	μ_B	9.274×10^{-24} J/T 5.788×10^{-5} eV/T
Rydberg constant	R	$1.097\,373 \times 10^{7}$ m^{-1}

*For a more complete list, showing also the best experimental values, see Appendix B.

THE GREEK ALPHABET

Alpha	A	α	Iota	I	ι	Rho	P	ρ
Beta	B	β	Kappa	K	κ	Sigma	Σ	σ
Gamma	Γ	γ	Lambda	Λ	λ	Tau	T	τ
Delta	Δ	δ	Mu	M	μ	Upsilon	Υ	υ
Epsilon	E	ϵ	Nu	N	ν	Phi	Φ	ϕ, φ
Zeta	Z	ζ	Xi	Ξ	ξ	Chi	X	χ
Eta	H	η	Omicron	O	o	Psi	Ψ	ψ
Theta	Θ	θ	Pi	Π	π	Omega	Ω	ω

SOME CONVERSION FACTORS*

Mass and Density

1 kg = 1000 g = 6.02×10^{26} u

1 slug = 14.59 kg

1 u = 1.661×10^{-27} kg

1 kg/m^3 = 10^{-3} g/cm^3

Length and Volume

1 m = 100 cm = 39.4 in. = 3.28 ft

1 mi = 1.61 km = 5280 ft

1 in. = 2.54 cm

1 nm = 10^{-9} m = 10 Å

1 pm = 10^{-12} m = 1000 fm

1 light-year = 9.461×10^{15} m

1 m^3 = 1000 L = 35.3 ft^3 = 264 gal

Time

1 d = 86 400 s

1 y = $365\frac{1}{4}$ d = 3.16×10^7 s

Angular Measure

1 rad = 57.3° = 0.159 rev

π rad = 180° = $\frac{1}{2}$ rev

Speed

1 m/s = 3.28 ft/s = 2.24 mi/h

1 km/h = 0.621 mi/h = 0.278 m/s

Force and Pressure

1 N = 10^5 dyne = 0.225 lb

1 lb = 4.45 N

1 ton = 2000 lb

1 Pa = 1 N/m^2 = 10 dyne/cm^2
= 1.45×10^{-4} lb/in.^{2}

1 atm = 1.01×10^5 Pa = 14.7 lb/in.^{2}
= 76.0 cm Hg

Energy and Power

1 J = 10^7 erg = 0.2389 cal = 0.738 ft · lb

1 kW · h = 3.6×10^6 J

1 cal = 4.1868 J

1 eV = 1.602×10^{-19} J

1 horsepower = 746 W = 550 ft · lb/s

Magnetism

1 T = 1 Wb/m^2 = 10^4 gauss

---

*See Appendix D for a more complete list.